

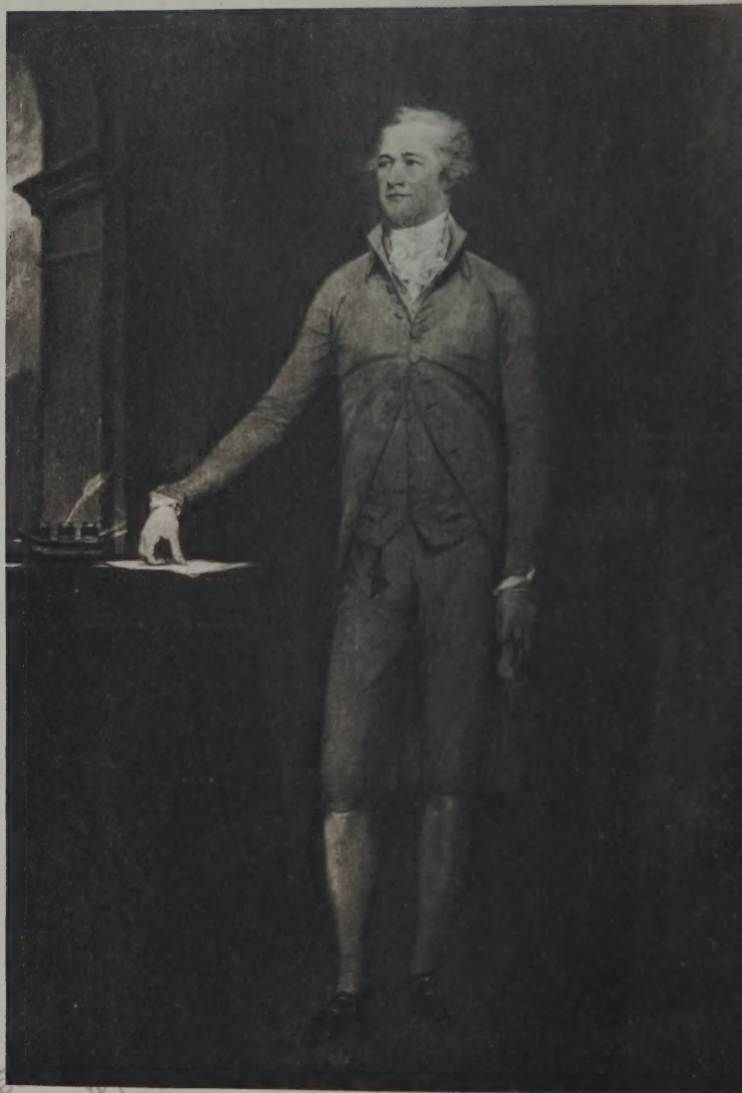
PROPERTY OF THE

Shelf No.

2405.101



From the Bates Fund.



A Hamilton

THE CRITICAL PERIOD OF AMERICAN HISTORY

1783-1789

BY

JOHN FISKE

I am uneasy and apprehensive, more so than during
the war. — JAY to WASHINGTON, *June 27, 1786*



BOSTON AND NEW YORK
HOUGHTON, MIFFLIN AND COMPANY
The Riverside Press, Cambridge

PUBLIC LIBRARY
OF THE
CITY OF BOSTON

7932

COPYRIGHT 1888 BY JOHN FISKE
COPYRIGHT 1902 BY HOUGHTON, MIFFLIN & CO.

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

Bto
Apr 14 1900
C
120

WABU 11000
JAN 70
101208 70Y10

TO
MY DEAR CLASSMATES
FRANCIS LEE HIGGINSON
AND
CHARLES CABOT JACKSON

I Dedicate this Book





PREFACE

THIS book contains the substance of the course of lectures given in the Old South Meeting-House in Boston in December, 1884, at the Washington University in St. Louis in May, 1885, and in the theatre of the University Club in New York in March, 1886. In its present shape it may serve as a sketch of the political history of the United States from the end of the Revolutionary War to the adoption of the Federal Constitution. It makes no pretensions to completeness, either as a summary of the events of that period or as a discussion of the political questions involved in them. I have aimed especially at grouping facts in such a way as to bring out and emphasize their causal sequence, and it is accordingly hoped that the book may prove useful to the student of American history.

My title was suggested by the fact of Thomas Paine's stopping the publication of the "Crisis," on hearing the news of the treaty of 1783, with the remark, "The times that tried men's souls are over." Commenting upon this, on page

PREFACE

59 of the present work, I observed that so far from the crisis being over in 1783, the next five years were to be the most critical time of all. I had not then seen Mr. Trescot's "Diplomatic History of the Administrations of Washington and Adams," on page 9 of which he uses almost the same words: "It must not be supposed that the treaty of peace secured the national life. Indeed, it would be more correct to say that the most critical period of the country's history embraced the time between 1783 and the adoption of the Constitution in 1788."

That period was preëminently the turning-point in the development of political society in the western hemisphere. Though small in their mere dimensions, the events here summarized were in a remarkable degree germinal events, fraught with more tremendous alternatives of future welfare or misery for mankind than it is easy for the imagination to grasp. As we now stand upon the threshold of that mighty future, in the light of which all events of the past are clearly destined to seem dwindled in dimensions and significant only in the ratio of their potency as causes; as we discern how large a part of that future must be the outcome of the creative work, for good or ill, of men of English speech; we are put into the proper mood for estimating

PREFACE

the significance of the causes which determined a century ago that the continent of North America should be dominated by a single powerful and pacific federal nation instead of being parcelled out among forty or fifty small communities, wasting their strength and lowering their moral tone by perpetual warfare, like the states of ancient Greece, or by perpetual preparation for warfare, like the nations of modern Europe. In my book entitled "American Political Ideas, viewed from the Standpoint of Universal History," I have tried to indicate the pacific influence likely to be exerted upon the world by the creation and maintenance of such a political structure as our Federal Union. The present narrative may serve as a commentary upon what I had in mind on page 133 of that book, in speaking of the work of our Federal Convention as "the finest specimen of constructive statesmanship that the world has ever seen." On such a point it is pleasant to find one's self in accord with a statesman so wise and noble as Mr. Gladstone, whose opinion is here quoted on page 264.

To some persons it may seem as if the years 1861-65 were of more cardinal importance than the years 1783-89. Our civil war was indeed an event of prodigious magnitude, as measured by any standard that history affords; and there

PREFACE

can be little doubt as to its decisiveness. The measure of that decisiveness is to be found in the completeness of the reconciliation that has already, despite the feeble wails of unscrupulous place-hunters and unteachable bigots, cemented the Federal Union so powerfully that all likelihood of its disruption may be said to have disappeared forever. When we consider this wonderful harmony which so soon has followed the deadly struggle, we may well believe it to be the index of such a stride toward the ultimate pacification of mankind as was never made before. But it was the work done in the years 1783-89 that created a federal nation capable of enduring the storm and stress of the years 1861-65. It was in the earlier crisis that the pliant twig was bent; and as it was bent, so has it grown; until it has become indeed a goodly and a sturdy tree.

CAMBRIDGE, *October 10, 1888.*

NOTE

THE text of this edition was carefully revised by Mr. Fiske in October, 1897, and in some places important additions or changes were then made.

CONTENTS

I

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

	PAGE
Fall of Lord North's ministry	1
Sympathy between British Whigs and the revolutionary party in America	2
It weakened the Whig party in England	3
Character of Lord Shelburne	5
Political instability of the Rockingham ministry	6, 7
Obstacles in the way of a treaty of peace	9
Oswald talks with Franklin	11
Grenville has an interview with Vergennes	14
Effects of Rodney's victory	16
Misunderstanding between Fox and Shelburne	17
Fall of the Rockingham ministry	18
Shelburne becomes prime minister	19
Defeat of the Spaniards and French at Gibraltar	20
French policy opposed to American interests	21
The valley of the Mississippi ; Aranda's prophecy	22
The Newfoundland fisheries	24
Jay detects the schemes of Vergennes	25
And sends Dr. Vaughan to visit Shelburne	25, 26
John Adams arrives in Paris and joins with Jay in insist- ing upon a separate negotiation with England	27
The separate American treaty, as agreed upon :	
1. Boundaries	29
2. Fisheries ; commercial intercourse	30
3. Private debts	32

CONTENTS

4. Compensation of loyalists	33-38
Secret article relating to the Yazoo boundary	39
Vergennes does not like the way in which it has been done	39
On the part of the Americans it was a great diplomatic victory	40, 41
Which the commissioners won by disregarding the instructions of Congress and acting on their own responsibility	42
The Spanish treaty	42
The French treaty	43
Coalition of Fox with North	44-49
They attack the American treaty in Parliament	50
And compel Shelburne to resign	50, 51
Which leaves England without a government, while for several weeks the king is too angry to appoint ministers	52
Until at length he succumbs to the coalition, which presently adopts and ratifies the American treaty	53
The coalition ministry is wrecked upon Fox's India Bill	53, 54
Constitutional crisis ends in the overwhelming victory of Pitt in the elections of May, 1784	55
And this, although apparently a triumph for the king, was really a death-blow to his system of personal government	57, 58

II

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

Cessation of hostilities in America	59
Departure of the British troops	61
Washington resigns his command	62
And goes home to Mount Vernon	62
His "legacy" to the American people	64
The next five years were the most critical years in American history	65

CONTENTS

Absence of a sentiment of union, and consequent danger of anarchy	65-67
European statesmen, whether hostile or friendly, had little faith in the stability of the Union	68, 69
False historic analogies	69
Influence of railroad and telegraph upon the perpetuity of the Union	71
Difficulty of travelling a hundred years ago	72
Local jealousies and antipathies, an inheritance from primeval savagery	73
Conservative character of the American Revolution	75
State governments remodelled; assemblies continued from colonial times	76, 77
Origin of the senates in the governor's council of assistants	78
Governors viewed with suspicion	79
Analogies with British institutions	80, 81
The judiciary	81
Restrictions upon suffrage	82
Abolition of primogeniture, entails, and manorial privileges	83
Steps toward the abolition of slavery and the slave-trade	84-89
Progress toward religious freedom	89-92
Church and state in Virginia	93, 94
Persecution of dissenters	95
Madison and the Religious Freedom Act	96
Temporary overthrow of the church	97
Difficulties in regard to ordination; the case of Mason Weems	98, 99
Ordination of Samuel Seabury by non-jurors at Aberdeen	100, 101
Francis Asbury and the Methodists	102
Presbyterians and Congregationalists	103
Roman Catholics	103, 104
Except in the instance of slavery, all the changes described in this chapter were favourable to the union of the states	105

CONTENTS

But while the state governments, in all these changes, are seen working smoothly, we have next to observe, by contrast, the clumsiness and inefficiency of the federal government	105, 106
--	----------

III

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

The several states have never enjoyed complete sover- eignty	108
But in the very act of severing their connection with Great Britain, they entered into some sort of union	108, 109
Anomalous character of the Continental Congress	110
The articles of confederation ; they sought to establish a “league of friendship” between the states	111-115
But failed to create a federal government endowed with real sovereignty	115-120
Military weakness of the government	120-122
Extreme difficulty of obtaining a revenue	123, 124
Congress, being unable to pay the army, was afraid of it	125, 126
Supposed scheme for making Washington king	127
Greene’s experience in South Carolina	128
Gates’s staff officers and the Newburgh address	129, 130
The danger averted by Washington	130-132
Congress driven from Philadelphia by mutinous sol- diers	133, 134
The Commutation Act denounced in New England	134, 135
Order of the Cincinnati	136-140
Reasons for the dread which it inspired	140, 141
Congress finds itself unable to carry out the provisions of the treaty with Great Britain	142
Persecution of the loyalists	143, 144
It was especially severe in New York	145, 146

CONTENTS

Trespass Act of 1784 directed against the loyalists . . .	147
Character and early career of Alexander Hamilton . . .	147-150
The case of Rutgers v. Waddington	150-153
Wholesale emigration of Tories	153, 154
Congress unable to enforce payment of debts to British creditors	156
England retaliates by refusing to surrender the fortresses on the northwestern frontier	157, 158

IV

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

The barbarous superstitions of the Middle Ages concern- ing trade were still rife in the eighteenth century . . .	159
The old theory of the uses of a colony	160
Pitt's unsuccessful attempt to secure free trade between Great Britain and the United States	162
Ship-building in New England	163
British navigation acts and orders in council directed against American commerce	164
John Adams tried in vain to negotiate a commercial treaty with Great Britain	165, 166
And could see no escape from the difficulties except in systematic reprisal	166-168
But any such reprisal was impracticable, for the several states imposed conflicting duties	168, 169
Attempts to give Congress the power of regulating com- merce were unsuccessful	170, 171
And the several states began to make commercial war upon one another	172
Attempts of New York to oppress New Jersey and Con- necticut	173
Retaliatory measures of the two latter states	174
The quarrel between Connecticut and Pennsylvania over the possession of the valley of Wyoming	175-178

CONTENTS

The quarrel between New York and New Hampshire over the possession of the Green Mountains	179-181
Failure of American diplomacy because European states could not tell whether they were dealing with one nation or with thirteen	182-184
Failure of American credit; John Adams begging in Holland	184-186
The Barbary pirates	187-189
American citizens kidnapped and sold into slavery	190
Lord Sheffield's outrageous pamphlet	190
Tripoli's demand for blackmail	192
Congress unable to protect American citizens	192
Financial distress after the Revolutionary War	193-196
State of the coinage	196, 197
Cost of the war in money	198
Robert Morris and his immense services	198, 199
The craze for paper money	200
Agitation in the southern and middle states	201-204
Distress in New England	204
Imprisonment for debt	205
Rag-money victorious in Rhode Island; the "Know Ye" measures	206-209
Rag-money defeated in Massachusetts; the Shays insur- rection	210-214
The insurrection suppressed by state troops	215, 216
Conduct of the neighbouring states	217
The rebels pardoned	218, 219
Timidity of Congress	220

V

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

Creation of a national domain beyond the Allegha- nies	221, 222
Conflicting claims to the western territory	222, 223

CONTENTS

Claims of Massachusetts and Connecticut	224
Claims of New York	225
Virginia's claims	225
Maryland's novel and beneficent suggestion	226, 227
The several states yield their claims in favour of the United States	228, 229
Magnanimity of Virginia	230, 231
Jefferson proposes a scheme of government for the north- western territory	232
Names of the proposed ten states	234
Jefferson wishes to prohibit slavery in the national do- main	234
North Carolina's cession of western land	236
John Sevier and the state of Franklin	237, 238
The northwestern territory	239, 240
Origin of the Ohio company	240-242
The Ordinance of 1787	242-244
Theory of folk-land upon which the ordinance was based	244, 245
Spain, hearing of the secret article in the treaty of 1783, loses her temper and threatens to shut up the Missis- sippi River	246, 247
Gardoqui and Jay	248, 249
Threats of secession in Kentucky and New England	250
Washington's views on the political importance of canals between east and west	251, 252
His far-sighted genius and self-devotion	253
Maryland confers with Virginia regarding the navigation of the Potomac	253
The Madison-Tyler motion in the Virginia legisla- ture	254, 255
Convention at Annapolis, Sept. 11, 1786	256
Hamilton's address calling for a convention at Philadel- phia	257, 258
The impost amendment defeated by the action of New York ; last ounce upon the camel's back	259-261

CONTENTS

Sudden changes in popular sentiment	262
The Federal Convention meets at Philadelphia, May, 1787	263
Mr. Gladstone's opinion of the work of the convention	264
The men who were assembled there	264-267
Character of James Madison	268-270
The other leading members	270
Washington chosen president of the convention	272

VI

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

Why the proceedings of the convention were kept secret for so many years	273
Difficulty of the problem to be solved	274, 275
Symptoms of cowardice repressed by Washington's impassioned speech	275
The root of all the difficulties ; the edicts of the federal government had operated only upon states, not upon individuals, and therefore could not be enforced without danger of war	276-279
The Virginia plan, of which Madison was the chief author, offered a radical cure	280
And was felt to be revolutionary in its character	281-283
Fundamental features of the Virginia plan	284-286
How it was at first received	287
The House of Representatives must be directly elected by the people	288, 289
Question as to the representation of states brings out the antagonism between large and small states	289, 290
William Paterson presents the New Jersey plan ; not a radical cure, but a feeble palliative	290, 291
Struggle between the Virginia and New Jersey plans	292-296
The Connecticut compromise, according to which the	

CONTENTS

national principle is to prevail in the House of Representatives, and the federal principle in the Senate, meets at first with fierce opposition . . .	297, 298
But is at length adopted	299
And proves a decisive victory for Madison and his methods	300, 301
A few irreconcilable members go home in dudgeon . . .	301
But the small states, having been propitiated, are suddenly converted to Federalism, and make the victory complete	302
Vague dread of the future west	303
The struggle between pro-slavery and anti-slavery parties began in the convention, and was quieted by two compromises	304
Should representation be proportioned to wealth or to population?	305
Were slaves to be reckoned as persons or as chattels? . . .	306
Attitude of the Virginia statesmen	307
It was absolutely necessary to satisfy South Carolina . .	308
The three fifths compromise, suggested by Madison, was a genuine English solution, if ever there was one . . .	309
There was neither rhyme nor reason in it, but for all that, it was the best solution attainable at the time . .	309-311
The next compromise was between New England and South Carolina as to the foreign slave-trade and the power of the federal government over commerce . . .	311, 312
George Mason calls the slave-trade an "infernal traffic"	313
And the compromise offends and alarms Virginia . . .	313, 314
Belief in the moribund condition of slavery	316
The foundations of the Constitution were laid in compromise	317
Powers granted to the federal government	318
Use of federal troops in suppressing insurrections . . .	318, 319
Various federal powers	320, 321
Provision for a federal city under federal jurisdiction . .	321

CONTENTS

The Federal Congress might compel the attendance of members	322
Powers denied to the several states	323
Should the federal government be allowed to make its promissory notes a legal tender in payment of debts ?	
powerful speech of Gouverneur Morris	323, 324
Emphatic and unmistakable condemnation of paper money by all the leading delegates	324, 325
The convention refused to grant to the federal government the power of issuing inconvertible paper, but did not think an express prohibition necessary	326
If they could have foreseen some recent judgments of the supreme court, they would doubtless have made the prohibition explicit and absolute	327
Debates as to the federal executive	328, 329
Sherman's suggestion as to the true relation of the executive to the legislature	330
There was to be a single chief magistrate, but how should he be chosen ?	331
Objections to an election by Congress	332
Ellsworth and King suggest the device of an electoral college, which is at first rejected	333
But afterwards adopted	334
Provisions for an election by Congress in the case of a failure of choice by the electoral college	335, 337
Provisions for counting the electoral votes	337
It was not intended to leave anything to be decided by the president of the Senate	338
The convention foresaw imaginary dangers, but not the real ones	339
Hamilton's opinion of the electoral scheme	340
How it has actually worked	341, 342
In this part of its work the convention tried to copy from the British Constitution	343
In which they supposed the legislative and executive departments to be distinct and separate	344

CONTENTS

Here they were misled by Montesquieu and Blackstone	345
What our government would be if it were really like that of Great Britain	346-348
In the British government the executive department is not separated from the legislative	349, 350
Circumstances which obscured the true aspect of the case a century ago	351-354
Veto power and independence of the executive	354-357
The American cabinet is analogous, not to the British cabinet, but to the privy council	358
The federal judiciary, and its remarkable character	359-361
Provisions for amending the Constitution	362
The document is signed by all but three of the delegates present	363-365
And the convention breaks up	365
With a pleasant remark from Franklin	366

VII

CROWNING THE WORK

Franklin lays the Constitution before the legislature of Pennsylvania	367
It is submitted to Congress, which refers it to the legis- latures of the thirteen states, to be ratified or rejected by the people in conventions	368
First American parties, Federalists and Antifederalists	370
The contest in Pennsylvania	371-373
How to make a quorum	373
A war of pamphlets and newspaper squibs	374-376
Ending in the ratification of the Constitution by Dela- ware, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey	377
Rejoicings and mutterings	378
Georgia and Connecticut ratify	379
The outlook in Massachusetts	379-382

CONTENTS

The Massachusetts convention meets	382
And overhauls the Constitution clause by clause	383, 384
On the subject of an army Mr. Nason waxes eloquent	385
The clergymen oppose a religious test	385, 386
And Rev. Samuel West argues on the assumption that all men are not totally depraved	387
Feeling of distrust in the mountain districts	388
Timely speech of a Berkshire farmer	389-392
Attitude of Samuel Adams	391, 392
Meeting of mechanics at the Green Dragon	392
Charges of bribery	393
Washington's fruitful suggestion	394
Massachusetts ratifies, but proposes amendments	396
The Long Lane has a turning and becomes Federal Street	396
New Hampshire hesitates, but Maryland ratifies, and all eyes are turned upon South Carolina	397
Objections of Rawlins Lowndes answered by Cotesworth Pinckney	398, 399
South Carolina ratifies the Constitution	400
Important effect upon Virginia, where thoughts of a southern confederacy had been entertained	401-403
Madison and Marshall prevail in the Virginia conven- tion, and it ratifies the Constitution	404
New Hampshire had ratified four days before	405
Rejoicings at Philadelphia; riots at Providence and Albany	406
The struggle in New York	407, 408
Origin of the "Federalist"	409-411
Hamilton wins the victory, and New York ratifies	412
All serious anxiety is now at an end; the laggard states, North Carolina and Rhode Island	413, 414
First presidential election, January 7, 1789; Washing- ton is unanimously chosen	415
Why Samuel Adams was not selected for vice-president	416
Selection of John Adams	417
Washington's Journey to New York, April 16-23	417, 418
His inauguration	419, 420

CONTENTS

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE	421
MEMBERS OF THE FEDERAL CONVENTION . . .	430
PRESIDENTS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS . .	434
INDEX	435

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
ALEXANDER HAMILTON (<i>photogravure</i>)	Frontispiece
From the original painting by Trumbull in the New York Chamber of Commerce, by kind permission of Alexander E. Orr, Esq., its president.	
BOUNDARIES OF THE UNITED STATES, CANADA, AND THE SPANISH POSSESSIONS, ACCORDING TO THE PROPOSALS OF THE COURT OF FRANCE IN 1782 (<i>coloured map</i>).	24
From Lord Edmond Fitzmaurice's <i>Life of the Earl of Shelburne</i> .	
JOHN JAY (<i>photogravure</i>)	32
From the original portrait by Stuart, in Bedford House, the homestead of the Jays, at Katonah, N. Y. Autograph from Tuckerman's <i>William Jay</i> .	
COUNT VERGENNES (<i>photogravure</i>)	36
From the frontispiece to Doniol, <i>Histoire de la Participation de la France à l'Etablissement des Etats-Unis d'Amérique</i> , Paris, 1886, 5 vols., 4to, vol. i. ; an engraving by Vangelisti, from the original painting by Antoine François Callet. Autograph from the same book.	
WASHINGTON'S COACH AND FOUR (<i>photogravure</i>)	72
From a photograph, in the Emmet Collection, Lenox Library	
PLAN OF THE CITY OF NEW YORK, 1776	126, 127
From <i>Reminiscences of an Old New Yorker</i> , in the Emmet Collection, Lenox Library.	
CONNECTICUT SETTLEMENTS IN PENNSYLVANIA	176
Abridged, and slightly modified, from the large map in Hoyt's <i>Brief of a Title in the Seventeen Townships in the County of Luzerne</i> , Harrisburg, 1879.	
ROBERT MORRIS (<i>photogravure</i>)	198
From the original portrait by Stuart, through the kind permission of the owner, C. F. M. Stark, Esq., of Winchester, Mass. Autograph from the Declaration of Independence.	

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

SPECIMENS OF CONTINENTAL CURRENCY	200
These specimens of paper currency are culled from Dr. Emmet's superb collection in the Lenox Library.	
THOMAS JEFFERSON (<i>photogravure</i>)	222
From an old copy, in the author's possession, of the original crayon portrait by St. Mémin. Autograph from the Declaration of Independence.	
JEFFERSON'S PROPOSED STATES IN THE NORTHWEST, 1784	232
Abridged from the map in Winsor's <i>America</i> , vii. 529. This abridgment seems to have cut off "Sylvania," west of Lake Superior.	
STATE OF FRANKLIN, 1784-88 (<i>coloured map</i>)	234
The author had never seen, nor found any one who had seen, a map of this short-lived state; and, therefore, did the best he could, subject to correction.	
SPANISH CLAIM IN THE SOUTHWEST (<i>coloured map</i>) . .	252
JAMES MADISON (<i>photogravure</i>)	268
From the original painting by Gilbert Stuart, at Bowdoin College. Autograph from Lenox Library, New York.	
GEORGE MASON (<i>photogravure</i>)	314
From a painting by Herbert Walsh, in Independence Hall, after the original by Stuart. Autograph from <i>Annapolis Convention</i> , in the Emmet Collection, Lenox Library.	
ROGER SHERMAN (<i>photogravure</i>)	330
From a painting by Hicks, in Independence Hall, after the original by Earle. Autograph from the Declaration of Independence.	
FACSIMILE OF SIGNATURES TO THE CONSTITUTION . .	364
From a photograph of the original document, kindly lent by Andrew H. Allen, Esq., from the Bureau of Rolls, Department of State, at Washington.	
JOHN MARSHALL (<i>photogravure</i>)	404
Photographed from a miniature by St. Mémin, in the possession of Miss Anne Harvie, of Richmond, a daughter of the only daughter of Chief Justice Marshall. The negative was kindly lent by Mrs. Sallie Marshall Hardy, of Louisville, Ky. Autograph from MS. collection in the Library of the Boston Athenæum.	

THE CRITICAL PERIOD OF AMERICAN HISTORY

I

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

THE 20th of March, 1782, the day which witnessed the fall of Lord North's ministry, was a day of good omen for men of English race on both sides of the Atlantic. Within two years from that date, the treaty which established the independence of the United States was successfully negotiated at Paris; and at the same time, as part of the series of events which resulted in the treaty, there went on in England a rapid dissolution and reorganization of parties, which ended in the overwhelming defeat of the king's attempt to make the forms of the constitution subservient to his selfish purposes, and established the liberty of the people upon a broader and sounder basis than it had ever occupied before. Great indignation was expressed at the time, and has sometimes been echoed by British historians, over the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

conduct of those Whigs who never lost an opportunity of expressing their approval of the American revolt. The Duke of Richmond, at the beginning of the contest, expressed a hope that the Americans might succeed, because they were in the right. Charles Fox spoke of General Howe's first victory as "the terrible news from Long Island." Wraxall says that the celebrated buff and blue colours of the Whig party were adopted by Fox in imitation of the Continental uniform; but his unsupported statement is open to question. It is certain, however, that in the House of Commons the Whigs habitually alluded to Washington's army as "our army," and to the American cause as "the cause of liberty;" and Burke, with characteristic vehemence, declared that he would rather be a prisoner in the Tower with Mr. Laurens than enjoy the blessings of freedom in company with the men who were seeking to enslave America. Still more, the Whigs did all in their power to discourage enlistments, and in various ways so thwarted and vexed the government that the success of the Americans was by many people ascribed to their assistance. A few days before Lord North's resignation, George Onslow, in an able defence of the prime minister, exclaimed, "Why have we failed so miserably in this war

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

against America, if not from the support and countenance given to rebellion in this very House? ”

Now the violence of party leaders like Burke and Fox owed much of its strength, no doubt, to mere rancorousness of party spirit. But, after making due allowance for this, we must admit that it was essentially based upon the intensity of their conviction that the cause of English liberty was inseparably bound up with the defeat of the king's attempt upon the liberties of America. Looking beyond the quarrels of the moment, they preferred to have freedom guaranteed, even at the cost of temporary defeat and partial loss of empire. Time has shown that they were right in this, but the majority of the people could hardly be expected to comprehend their attitude. It seemed to many that the great Whig leaders were forgetting their true character as English statesmen, and there is no doubt that for many years this was the chief source of the weakness of the Whig party. It weakened the Whigs in England Sir Gilbert Elliot said, with truth, that if the Whigs had not thus to a considerable extent arrayed the national feeling against themselves, Lord North's ministry would have fallen some years sooner than it did. The king thoroughly understood the advantage which accrued to him from this state of things ; and with that short-sighted shrewd-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ness of the mere political wire-puller, in which few modern politicians have excelled him, he had from the outset preferred to fight his battle on constitutional questions in America rather than in England, in order that the national feeling of Englishmen might be arrayed on his side. He was at length thoroughly beaten on his own ground, and as the fatal day approached he raved and stormed as he had not stormed since the spring of 1778, when he had been asked to entrust the government to Lord Chatham. Like the child who refuses to play when he sees the game going against him, George threatened to abdicate the throne and go over to Hanover, leaving his son to get along with the Whig statesmen. But presently he took heart again, and began to resort to the same kind of political management which had served him so well in the earlier years of his reign. Among the Whig statesmen, the Marquis of Rockingham had the largest political following. He represented the old Whig aristocracy, his section of the party had been first to urge the recognition of American independence, and his principal followers were Fox and Burke. For all these reasons he was especially obnoxious to the king. On the other hand, the Earl of Shelburne was, in a certain sense, the political heir of Lord Chatham, and represented principles far more lib-

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

eral than those of the Old Whigs. Shelburne was one of the most enlightened statesmen of his time. He was an earnest advocate of parliamentary reform and of free trade. He had paid especial attention to political economy, and looked with disgust upon the whole barbaric system of discriminative duties and commercial monopolies which had been so largely instrumental in bringing about the American Revolution. But being in these respects in advance of his age, Lord Shelburne had but few followers. Moreover, although a man of undoubted integrity, quite exempt from sordid or selfish ambition, there was a cynical harshness about him which made him generally disliked and distrusted. He was so suspicious of other men that other men were suspicious of him ; so that, in spite of many admirable qualities, he was extremely ill adapted for the work of a party manager.

Character
of Lord
Shelburne

It was doubtless for these reasons that the king, when it became clear that a new government must be formed, made up his mind that Lord Shelburne would be the safest man to conduct it. In his hands the Whig power would not be likely to grow too strong, and dissensions would be sure to arise, from which the king might hope to profit. The first place in the treasury was accordingly offered to Shel-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

burne; and when he refused it, and the king found himself forced to appeal to Lord Rockingham, the manner in which the bitter pill was taken was quite characteristic of George III. He refused to meet Rockingham in person, but sent all his communications to him through Shelburne, who, thus conspicuously singled out as the object of royal preference, was certain to incur the distrust of his fellow ministers.

The structure of the new cabinet was unstable enough, however, to have satisfied even such an enemy as the king. Beside Rockingham himself, Lord John Cavendish, Charles Fox, Lord Keppel, and the Duke of Richmond were all Old Whigs. To offset these five there were five New Whigs, the Duke of Grafton, Lords Shelburne, Camden, and Ashburton, and General Conway; while the eleventh member was none other than the Tory chancellor, Lord Thurlow, who was kept over from Lord North's ministry. Burke was made paymaster of the forces, but had no seat in the cabinet. In this curiously constructed cabinet, the prime minister, Lord Rockingham, counted for but little. Though a good party leader, he was below mediocrity as a statesman, and his health was failing, so that he could not attend to business. The master spirits were the two secretaries of state, Fox and Shelburne, and they wrangled perpetually, while

Political instability of the Rockingham ministry

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

Thurlow carried the news of all their quarrels to the king, and in cabinet meetings usually voted with Shelburne. The ministry had not lasted five weeks when Fox began to predict its downfall. On the great question of parliamentary reform, which was brought up in May by the young William Pitt, the government was hopelessly divided. Shelburne's party was in favour of reform, and this time Fox was found upon the same side, as well as the Duke of Richmond, who went so far as to advocate universal suffrage. On the other hand, the Whig aristocracy, led by Rockingham, were as bitterly opposed as the king himself to any change in the method of electing parliaments; and, incredible as it may seem, even such a man as Burke maintained that the old system, rotten boroughs and all, was a sacred part of the British Constitution, which none could handle rudely without endangering the country! But in this moment of reaction against the evil influences which had brought about the loss of the American colonies, there was a strong feeling in favour of reform, and Pitt's motion was only lost by a minority of twenty in a total vote of three hundred. Half a century was to elapse before the reformers were again to come so near to victory.

But Lord Rockingham's weak and short-lived ministry was nevertheless remarkable for

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the amount of good work it did in spite of the king's dogged opposition. It contained great administrative talent, which made itself felt in the most adverse circumstances. To add to the difficulty, the ministry came into office at the critical moment of a great agitation in Ireland. In less than three months, not only was the trouble successfully removed, but the important bills for disfranchising revenue officers and excluding contractors from the House of Commons were carried, and a tremendous blow was thus struck at the corrupt influence of the crown upon elections. Burke's great scheme of economical reform was also put into operation, cutting down the pension list and diminishing the secret service fund, and thus destroying many sources of corruption. At no time perhaps, since the expulsion of the Stuarts, had so much been done toward purifying English political life as during the spring of 1782. But during the progress of these important measures, the jealousies and bickerings in the cabinet became more and more painfully apparent, and as the question of peace with America came into the foreground, these difficulties hastened to a crisis.

From the policy which George III. pursued with regard to Lord Shelburne at this time, one would suppose that in his secret heart the king wished, by foul means since all others had

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

failed, to defeat the negotiations for peace and to prolong the war. Seldom has there been a more oddly complicated situation. Peace was to be made with America, France, Spain, and Holland. Of these powers, America and France were leagued together by one treaty of alliance, and France and Spain by another, and these treaties in some respects conflicted with one another in the duties which they entailed upon the combatants. Spain, though at war with England for purposes of her own, was bitterly hostile to the United States; and France, thus leagued with two allies which pulled in opposite directions, felt bound to satisfy both, while pursuing her own ends against England. To deal with such a chaotic state of things, an orderly and harmonious government in England should have seemed indispensably necessary. Yet on the part of England the negotiation of a treaty of peace was to be the work of two secretaries of state who were both politically and personally hostile to each other. Fox, as secretary of state for foreign affairs, had to superintend the negotiations with France, Spain, and Holland. Shelburne was secretary of state for home and colonial affairs; and as the United States were still officially regarded as colonies, the American negotiations belonged to his department. With such a complication of conflicting interests,

Obstacles in
the way of a
treaty of
peace

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

George III. might well hope that no treaty could be made.

The views of Fox and Shelburne as to the best method of conceding American independence were very different. Fox understood that France was really in need of peace, and he believed that she would not make further demands upon England if American independence should once be recognized. Accordingly, Fox would have made this concession at once as a preliminary to the negotiation. On the other hand, Shelburne felt sure that France would insist upon further concessions, and he thought it best to hold in reserve the recognition of independence as a consideration to be bargained for. Informal negotiations began between Shelburne and Franklin, who for many years had been warm friends. In view of the impending change of government, Franklin had in March sent a letter to Shelburne, expressing a hope that peace might soon be restored. When the letter reached London the new ministry had already been formed, and Shelburne, with the consent of the cabinet, answered it by sending over to Paris an agent, to talk with Franklin informally, and ascertain the terms upon which the Americans would make peace. The person chosen for this purpose was Richard Oswald, a Scotch merchant, who owned large estates in America, — a man of very frank disposition and

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

liberal views, and a friend of Adam Smith. In April, Oswald had several conversations with Franklin. In one of these conversations Franklin suggested that, in order to make a durable peace, it was desirable to remove all occasion for future quarrel ; that the line of frontier between New York and Canada was inhabited by a lawless set of men, who in time of peace would be likely to breed trouble between their respective governments ; and that therefore it would be well for England to cede Canada to the United States. A similar reasoning would apply to Nova Scotia. By ceding these countries to the United States it would be possible, from the sale of unappropriated lands, to indemnify the Americans for all losses of private property during the war, and also to make reparation to the Tories, whose estates had been confiscated. By pursuing such a policy, England, which had made war on America unjustly, and had wantonly done it great injuries, would achieve not merely peace, but reconciliation, with America ; and reconciliation, said Franklin, is "a sweet word." No doubt this was a bold tone for Franklin to take, and perhaps it was rather cool in him to ask for Canada and Nova Scotia ; but he knew that almost every member of the Whig ministry had publicly expressed the opinion that the war against America was an unjust and wanton war ;

Oswald
talks with
Franklin

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

and being, moreover, a shrewd hand at a bargain, he began by setting his terms high. Oswald doubtless looked at the matter very much from Franklin's point of view, for on the suggestion of the cession of Canada he expressed neither surprise nor reluctance. Franklin had written on a sheet of paper the main points of his conversation, and, at Oswald's request, he allowed him to take the paper to London to show to Lord Shelburne — first writing upon it a note expressly declaring its informal character. Franklin also sent a letter to Shelburne, describing Oswald as a gentleman with whom he found it very pleasant to deal. On Oswald's arrival in London, Shelburne did not show the notes of the conversation to any of his colleagues, except Lord Ashburton. He kept the paper over one night, and then returned it to Franklin without any formal answer. But the letter he showed to the cabinet, and on the 23d of April it was decided to send Oswald back to Paris, to represent to Franklin that, on being restored to the same situation in which she was left by the treaty of 1763, Great Britain would be willing to recognize the independence of the United States. Fox was authorized to make a similar representation to the French government, and the person whom he sent to Paris for this purpose was Thomas Grenville, son of the author of the Stamp Act.

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

As all British subjects were prohibited from entering into negotiations with the revolted colonies, it was impossible for Oswald to take any decisive step until an enabling act should be carried through Parliament. But while waiting for this he might still talk informally with Franklin. Fox thought that Oswald's presence in Paris indicated a desire on Shelburne's part to interfere with the negotiations with the French government; and indeed, the king, out of his hatred of Fox and his inborn love of intrigue, suggested to Shelburne that Oswald "might be a useful check on that part of the negotiation which was in other hands." But Shelburne paid no heed to this crooked advice, and there is nothing to show that he had the least desire to intrigue against Fox. If he had, he would certainly have selected some other agent than Oswald, who was the most straightforward of men, and scarcely close-mouthed enough for a diplomatist. He told Oswald to impress it upon Franklin that if America was to be independent at all she must be independent of the whole world, and must not enter into any secret arrangement with France which might limit her entire freedom of action in the future. To the private memorandum which desired the cession of Canada for three reasons, his answers were as follows: "1. *By way of reparation.* — Answer. No reparation can be heard of. 2.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

To prevent future wars. — Answer. It is to be hoped that some more friendly method will be found. 3. *As a fund of indemnification to loyalists.* — Answer. No independence to be acknowledged without their being taken care of." Besides, added Shelburne, the Americans would be expected to make some compensation for the surrender of Charleston, Savannah, and the city of New York, still held by British troops. From this it appears that Shelburne, as well as Franklin, knew how to begin by asking more than he was likely to get.

While Oswald submitted these answers to Franklin, Grenville had his interview with Vergennes, and told him that, if England recognized the independence of the United States, she should expect France to restore the islands of the West Indies which she had taken from England. Why not, since the independence of the United States was the sole avowed object for which France had gone to war? Now this was on the 8th of May, and the news of the destruction of the French fleet in the West Indies, nearly four weeks ago, had not yet reached Europe. Flushed with the victories of Grasse, and exulting in the prowess of the most formidable naval force that France had ever sent out, Vergennes not only expected to keep the islands which he had got, but was waiting eagerly for the news that he had acquired

Grenville has
an interview
with Ver-
gennes

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

Jamaica besides. In this mood he returned a haughty answer to Grenville. He reminded him that nations often went to war for a specified object, and yet seized twice as much if favoured by fortune ; and, recurring to the instance which rankled most deeply in the memories of Frenchmen, he cited the events of the last war. In 1756 England went to war with France over the disputed right to some lands on the Ohio River and the Maine frontier. After seven years of fighting she not only kept these lands, but all of Canada, Louisiana, and Florida, and ousted the French from India into the bargain. No, said Vergennes, he would not rest content with the independence of America. He would not even regard such an offer as a concession to France in any way, or as a price in return for which France was to make a treaty favourable to England. As regards the recognition of independence, England must treat directly with America.

Grenville was disappointed and chagrined by this answer, and the ministry made up their minds that there would be no use in trying to get an honourable peace with France for the present. Accordingly, it seemed better to take Vergennes at his word, though not in the sense in which he meant it, and, by granting all that the Americans could reasonably desire, to detach them from the French alliance as soon as possi-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ble. On the 18th of May there came the news of the stupendous victory of Rodney over Grasse, and all England rang with jubilee. Again it had been shown that "Britannia rules the wave;" and it seemed that, if America could be separately pacified, the House of Bourbon might be successfully defied. Accordingly, on the 23d, five days after the news of victory, the ministry decided "to propose the independence of America in the first instance, instead of making it the condition of a general treaty." Upon this Fox rather hastily maintained that the United States were put at once into the position of an independent and foreign power, so that the business of negotiating with them passed from Shelburne's department into his own. Shelburne, on the other hand, argued that, as the recognition of independence could not take effect until a treaty of peace should be concluded, the negotiation with America still belonged to him, as secretary for the colonies. Following Fox's instructions, Grenville now claimed the right of negotiating with Franklin as well as with Vergennes; but as his written credentials only authorized him to treat with France, the French minister suspected foul play, and turned a cold shoulder to Grenville. For the same reason, Grenville found Franklin very reserved and indisposed to talk on the subject of the treaty. While Grenville was thus rebuffed

Effects of
Rodney's
victory

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

and irritated he had a talk with Oswald, in the course of which he got from that simple and high-minded gentleman the story of the private paper relating to the cession of Canada, which Franklin had permitted Lord Shelburne to see. Grenville immediately took offence; he made up his mind that something underhanded was going on, and that this was the reason for the coldness of Franklin and Vergennes; and he wrote an indignant letter about it to Fox. From the wording of this letter, Fox got the impression that Franklin's proposal was much more serious than it really was. It naturally puzzled him and made him angry, for the attitude of America implied in the request for a cession of Canada was far different from the attitude presumed by the theory that the mere offer of independence would be enough to detach her from her alliance with France. The plan of the ministry seemed imperilled. Fox showed Grenville's letter to Rockingham, Richmond, and Cavendish; and they all inferred that Shelburne was playing a secret part, for purposes of his own. This was doubtless unjust to Shelburne. Perhaps his keeping the matter to himself was simply one more illustration of his want of confidence in Fox; or, perhaps he did not think it worth while to stir up the cabinet over a question which seemed too preposterous ever to come to anything. Fox, however, cried out against Shel-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

burne's alleged duplicity, and made up his mind at all events to get the American negotiations transferred to his own department. To this end he moved in the cabinet, on the last day of June, that the independence of the United States

Fall of the
Rockingham
ministry,
July 1, 1782 should be unconditionally acknowledged, so that England might treat as with a foreign power. The motion was lost, and Fox announced that he should resign his office. His resignation would probably of itself have broken up the ministry, but, by a curious coincidence, on the next day Lord Rockingham died; and so the first British government begotten of Washington's victory at Yorktown came prematurely to an end.

The Old Whigs now found some difficulty in choosing a leader. Burke was the greatest statesman in the party, but he had not the qualities of a party leader, and his connections were not sufficiently aristocratic. Fox was distrusted by many people for his gross vices, and because of his waywardness in politics. In the dissipated gambler, who cast in his lot first with one party and then with the other, and who had shamefully used his matchless eloquence in defending some of the worst abuses of the time, there seemed as yet but little promise of the great reformer of later years, the Charles Fox who came to be loved and idolized by all enlightened Englishmen. Next to Fox, the ablest leader in

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

the party was the Duke of Richmond, but his advanced views on parliamentary reform put him out of sympathy with the majority of the party. In this embarrassment, the choice fell upon the Duke of Portland, a man of great wealth and small talent, concerning whom Horace Walpole observed, "It is very entertaining that two or three great families should persuade themselves that they have a hereditary and exclusive right of giving us a head without a tongue!" The choice was a weak one, and played directly into the hands of the king. When urged to make the Duke of Portland his prime minister, the king replied that he had already offered that position to Lord Shelburne. Here-
upon Fox and Cavendish resigned, but
Richmond remained in office, thus
Shelburne
prime min-
ister
virtually breaking his connection with the Old Whigs. Lord Keppel also remained. Many members of the party followed Richmond and went over to Shelburne. William Pitt, now twenty-three years old, succeeded Cavendish as chancellor of the exchequer; Thomas Townshend became secretary of state for home and colonies, and Lord Grantham became foreign secretary. The closing days of Parliament were marked by altercations which showed how wide the breach had grown between the two sections of the Whig party. Fox and Burke believed that Shelburne was not only playing a false part,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

but was really as subservient to the king as Lord North had been. In a speech ridiculous for its furious invective, Burke compared the new prime minister with Borgia and Catiline. And so Parliament was adjourned on the 11th of July, and did not meet again until December.

The task of making a treaty of peace was simplified both by this change of ministry and by the total defeat of the Spaniards and French at Gibraltar in September. Six months before, England had seemed worsted in every quarter. Now England, though defeated in America, was victorious as regarded France and Spain. The avowed object for which France had entered into alliance with the Americans was to secure the independence of the United States, and this point was now substantially gained. The chief object for which Spain had entered into alliance with France was to drive the English from Gibraltar, and this point was now decidedly lost. France had bound herself not to desist from the war until Spain should recover Gibraltar; but now there was little hope of accomplishing this, except by some fortunate bargain in the treaty, and Vergennes tried to persuade England to cede the great stronghold in exchange for West Florida, which Spain had lately conquered, or for Oran or Guadaloupe. Failing in this, he adopted a plan for satisfying Spain at the expense of the United States; and

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

he did this the more willingly as he had no love for the Americans, and did not wish to see them become too powerful. France had strictly kept her pledges; she had given us valuable and timely aid in gaining our independence; and the sympathies of the French people were entirely with the American cause. But the object of the French government had been simply to humiliate England, and this end was sufficiently accomplished by depriving her of her thirteen colonies.

French policy
opposed to
American
interests

The immense territory extending from the Alleghany Mountains to the Mississippi River, and from the border of West Florida to the Great Lakes, had passed from the hands of France into those of England at the peace of 1763; and by the Quebec Act of 1774 England had declared the southern boundary of Canada to be the Ohio River. At present the whole territory, from Lake Superior down to the southern boundary of what is now Kentucky, belonged to the state of Virginia, whose backwoodsmen had conquered it from England in 1779. In December, 1780, Virginia had provisionally ceded the portion north of the Ohio to the United States, but the cession was not yet completed. The region which is now Tennessee belonged to North Carolina, which had begun to make settlements there as long

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ago as 1758. The trackless forests included between Tennessee and West Florida were still in the hands of wild tribes of Cherokees and Choctaws, Chickasaws and Creeks. Several thousand pioneers from North Carolina and Virginia had already settled beyond the mountains, and the white population was rapidly increasing. This territory the French government was very unwilling to leave in American hands. The possibility of enormous expansion which it would afford to the new nation was distinctly foreseen by sagacious men. Count Aranda, the representative of Spain in these negotiations, wrote a letter to his king just after the treaty was concluded, in which he uttered this notable prophecy: "This federal republic is born a pygmy. A day will come when it will be a giant, even a colossus, formidable in these countries. Liberty of conscience, the facility for establishing a new population on immense lands, as well as the advantages of the new government, will draw thither farmers and artisans from all the nations. In a few years we shall watch with grief the tyrannical existence of this same colossus." The letter went on to predict that the Americans would presently get possession of Florida and attack Mexico. Similar arguments were doubtless used by Aranda in his interviews with Vergennes, and France, as well

The valley
of the
Mississippi;
Aranda's
prophecy

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

as Spain, sought to prevent the growth of the dreaded colossus. To this end Vergennes maintained that the Americans ought to recognize the Quebec Act and give up to England all the territory north of the Ohio River. The region south of this limit should, he thought, be made an Indian territory, and placed under the protection of Spain and the United States. A line was to be drawn from the mouth of the Cumberland River, following that stream about as far as the site of Nashville, thence running southward to the Tennessee, thence curving eastward nearly to the Alleghanies, and descending through what is now eastern Alabama to the Florida line. The territory to the east of this irregular line was to be under the protection of the United States ; the territory to the west of it was to be under the protection of Spain. In this division, the settlers beyond the mountains would retain their connection with the United States, which would not touch the Mississippi River at any point. Vergennes held that this was all the Americans could reasonably demand, and he agreed with Aranda that they had as yet gained no foothold upon the eastern bank of the great river, unmindful of the fact that at that very moment the fortresses at Cahokia and Kaskaskia were occupied by Virginian garrisons.

Upon another important point the views of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the French government were directly opposed to American interests. The right to catch fish on the banks of Newfoundland had been shared by treaty between France and England ; and the New England fishermen, as subjects of the king of Great Britain, had participated in this privilege. The matter was of very great importance, not only to New England, but to the United States in general. Not only were the fisheries a source of lucrative trade to the New England people, but they were the training-school of a splendid race of seamen, the nursery of naval heroes whose exploits were by and by to astonish the world. To deprive the Americans of their share in these fisheries was to strike a serious blow at the strength and resources of the new nation. The British government was not inclined to grant the privilege, and on this point Vergennes took sides with England, in order to establish a claim upon her for concessions advantageous to France in some other quarter. With these views, Vergennes secretly aimed at delaying the negotiations ; for as long as hostilities were kept up, he might hope to extort from his American allies a recognition of the Spanish claims and a renouncement of the fisheries, simply by threatening to send them no further assistance in men or money. In order to retard the proceedings, he refused to take any

The New-
foundland
fisheries



MAP OF NORTH AMERICA,

Showing the Boundaries of the UNITED STATES, CANADA, and the SPANISH POSSESSIONS, according to the proposals of the Court of France in 1782.

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

steps whatever until the independence of the United States should first be irrevocably acknowledged by Great Britain, without reference to the final settlement of the rest of the treaty. In this Vergennes was supported by Franklin, as well as by Jay, who had lately arrived in Paris to take part in the negotiations. But the reasons of the American commissioners were very different from those of Vergennes. They feared that, if they began to treat before independence was acknowledged, they would be unfairly dealt with by France and Spain, and unable to gain from England the concessions upon which they were determined.

Jay soon began to suspect the designs of the French minister. He found that he was sending M. de Rayneval as a secret emissary to Lord Shelburne under an assumed name; he ascertained that the right of the United States to the Mississippi valley was to be denied; and he got hold of a dispatch from Marbois, the French secretary of legation at Philadelphia, to Vergennes, opposing the American claim to the Newfoundland fisheries.

Jay detects
the schemes
of Vergennes

As soon as Jay learned these facts, he sent his friend Dr. Benjamin Vaughan to Lord Shelburne to put him on his guard, and while reminding him that it was greatly for the interest of England to dissolve the alliance between America and France, he declared himself ready

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to begin the negotiations without waiting for the recognition of independence, provided that Oswald's commission should speak of the thirteen United States of America, instead of calling them colonies and naming them separately. This decisive step was taken by Jay on his own responsibility, and without the knowledge of Franklin, who had been averse to anything like a separate negotiation with England. It served to set the ball rolling at once. After meeting the messengers from Jay and Vergennes, Lord Shelburne at once perceived the antagonism that had arisen between the allies, and promptly took advantage of it. A new commission was made out for Oswald, in which the British government first described our country as "the United States;" and early in October negotiations were begun and proceeded rapidly. On the part of England, the affair was conducted by Oswald, assisted by Strachey and Fitzherbert, who had succeeded Grenville. In the course of the month John Adams arrived in Paris, and a few weeks later Henry Laurens, who had been exchanged for Lord Cornwallis and released from the Tower, was added to the company. Adams had a holy horror of Frenchmen in general, and of Count Vergennes in particular. He shared that common but grossly mistaken view of Frenchmen which regards them as shallow, frivolous, and insincere; and he was

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

indignant at the position taken by Vergennes on the question of the fisheries. In this, John Adams felt as all New Englanders felt, and he realized the importance of the question from a national point of view, as became the man who in later years was to earn lasting renown as one of the chief founders of the American navy. His behaviour on reaching Paris was characteristic. It is said that he left Count Vergennes to learn of his arrival through the newspapers. It was certainly some time before he called upon him, and he took occasion, besides, to express his opinions about republics and monarchies in terms which courtly Frenchmen thought very rude.

The arrival of Adams fully decided the matter as to a separate negotiation with England. He agreed with Jay that Vergennes should be kept as far as possible in the dark until everything was cut and dried, and Franklin was reluctantly obliged to yield. The treaty of alliance between France and the United States had expressly stipulated that neither power should ever make peace without the consent of the other, and in view of this Franklin was loath to do anything which might seem like abandoning the ally whose timely interposition had alone enabled Washington to achieve the crowning triumph of Yorktown. In justice to Vergennes, it should

Franklin
overruled
by Jay and
Adams

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

be borne in mind that he had kept strict faith with us in regard to every point that had been expressly stipulated; and Franklin, who felt that he understood Frenchmen better than his colleagues, was naturally unwilling to seem behindhand in this respect. At the same time, in regard to matters not expressly stipulated, Vergennes was clearly playing a sharp game against us; and it is undeniable that, without departing technically from the obligations of the alliance, Jay and Adams — two men as honourable as ever lived — played a very sharp defensive game against him. The traditional French subtlety was no match for Yankee shrewdness. The treaty with England was not concluded until the consent of France had been obtained, and thus the express stipulation was respected; but a thorough and detailed agreement was reached as to what the purport of the treaty should be, while our not too friendly ally was kept in the dark. The annals of modern diplomacy have afforded few stranger spectacles. With the indispensable aid of France we had just got the better of England in fight, and now we proceeded amicably to divide territory and commercial privileges with the enemy, and to make arrangements in which the ally was virtually ignored. It ceases to be a paradox, however, when we remember that with the change of government in England some essential conditions

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

of the case were changed. The England against which we had fought was the hostile England of Lord North; the England with which we were now dealing was the friendly England of Shelburne and Pitt. For the moment, the English race, on both sides of the Atlantic, was united in its main purpose and divided only by questions of detail, while the rival colonizing power, which sought to work in a direction contrary to the general interests of English-speaking people, was in great measure disregarded.

As soon as the problem was thus virtually reduced to a negotiation between the American commissioners and Lord Shelburne's ministry, the air was cleared in a moment. The principal questions had already been discussed between Franklin and Oswald. Independence being first acknowledged, the question of boundaries came up for settlement. England had little interest in regaining the territory between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, the forts in which were already held by American soldiers, and she relinquished all claim upon it. The Mississippi River thus became the dividing line between the United States and the Spanish possessions, and its navigation was made free alike to British and American ships. Franklin's suggestion of a cession of Canada and Nova Scotia was abandoned without discussion. It was agreed that

The separate
American
treaty, as
agreed upon :
1. Boundaries

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the boundary line should start at the mouth of the river St. Croix, and, running to a point near Lake Madawaska in the highlands separating the Atlantic watershed from that of the St. Lawrence, should follow these highlands to the head of the Connecticut River, and then descend the middle of the river to the forty-fifth parallel, thence running westward and through the centre of the water communications of the Great Lakes to the Lake of the Woods, thence to the source of the Mississippi, which was supposed to be west of this lake. This line was marked in red ink by Oswald on one of Mitchell's maps of North America, to serve as a memorandum establishing the precise meaning of the words used in the description. It ought to have been accurately fixed in its details by surveys made upon the spot; but no commissioners were appointed for this purpose. The language relating to the northeastern portion of the boundary contained some inaccuracies which were revealed by later surveys, and the map used by Oswald was lost. Hence a further question arose between Great Britain and the United States, which was finally settled by the Ashburton treaty in 1842.

The Americans retained the right of catching fish on the banks of Newfoundland and in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, but lost the right of drying their fish on the Newfoundland coast. On the other hand,

2. Fisheries ;
commercial
intercourse

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

no permission was given to British subjects to fish on the coasts of the United States. As regarded commercial intercourse, Jay sought to establish complete reciprocal freedom between the two countries, and a clause was proposed to the effect that "all British merchants and merchant ships, on the one hand, shall enjoy in the United States, and in all places belonging to them, the same protection and commercial privileges, and be liable only to the same charges and duties as their own merchants and merchant ships; and, on the other hand, the merchants and merchant ships of the United States shall enjoy in all places belonging to his Britannic Majesty the same protection and commercial privileges, and be liable only to the same charges and duties as British merchants and merchant ships, saving always to the chartered trading companies of Great Britain such exclusive use and trade, and the respective ports and establishments, as neither the other subjects of Great Britain nor any the most favoured nation participate in." Unfortunately for both countries, this liberal provision was rejected on the ground that the ministry had no authority to interfere with the Navigation Act.

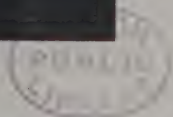
Only two questions were now left to be disposed of,—the question of paying private debts, and that of compensating the American loyalists for the loss of property and general

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

rough treatment which they had suffered. There were many old debts outstanding from American to British merchants. These had
3. Private debts been for the most part incurred before 1775, and while many honest debtors, impoverished during the war, felt unable to pay, there were doubtless many others who were ready to take advantage of circumstances and refuse the payment which they were perfectly able to make. It was scarcely creditable to us that any such question should have arisen. Franklin, indeed, argued that these debts were more than fully offset by damages done to private property by British soldiers: as, for example, in the wanton raids on the coasts of Connecticut and Virginia in 1779, or in Prevost's buccaneering march against Charleston. To cite these atrocities, however, as a reason for the non-payment of debts legitimately owed to innocent merchants in London and Glasgow was to argue as if two wrongs could make a right. The strong sense of John Adams struck at once to the root of the matter. He declared "he had no notion of cheating anybody. The questions of paying debts and compensating Tories were two." This terse statement carried the day, and it was finally decided that all private debts on either side, whether incurred before or after 1775, remained still binding, and must be discharged at their full value in sterling money.



John Jay—



RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

The last question of all was the one most difficult to settle. There were many loyalists in the United States who had sacrificed everything in the support of the British cause, and it was unquestionably the duty of the British government to make every possible effort to insure them against further injury, and, if practicable, to make good their losses already incurred. From Virginia and the New England states, where they were few in number, they had mostly fled, and their estates had been confiscated. In New York and South Carolina, where they remained in great numbers, they were still waging a desultory war with the patriots, which far exceeded in cruelty and bitterness the struggle between the regular armies. In many cases they had, at the solicitation of the British government, joined the invading army, and been organized into companies and regiments. The regular troops defeated at King's Mountain, and those whom Arnold took with him to Virginia, were nearly all American loyalists. Lord Shelburne felt that it would be wrong to abandon these unfortunate men to the vengeance of their fellow countrymen, and he insisted that the treaty should contain an amnesty clause providing for the restoration of the Tories to their civil rights, with compensation for their confiscated property. However disagreeable such a course

4. Compensation of loyalists

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

might seem to the victorious Americans, there were many precedents for it in European history. It had indeed come to be customary at the close of civil wars, and the effect of such a policy had invariably been good. Cromwell, in his hour of triumph, inflicted no disabilities upon his political enemies; and when Charles II. was restored to the throne the healing effect of the amnesty act then passed was so great that historians sometimes ask what in the world had become of that Puritan party which a moment before had seemed supreme in the land. At the close of the war of the Spanish Succession, the rebellious people of Catalonia were indemnified for their losses, at the request of England, and with a similar good effect. In view of such European precedents, Vergennes agreed with Shelburne as to the propriety of securing compensation and further immunity for the Tories in America. John Adams insinuated that the French minister took this course because he foresaw that the presence of the Tories in the United States would keep the people perpetually divided into a French party and an English party; but such a suspicion was quite uncalled for. There is no reason to suppose that in this instance Vergennes had anything at heart but the interests of humanity and justice.

On the other hand, the Americans brought

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

forward very strong reasons why the Tories should not be indemnified by Congress. First, as Franklin urged, many of them had, by their misrepresentations to the British government, helped to stir up the disputes which led to the war; and as they had made their bed, so they must lie in it. Secondly, such of them as had been concerned in burning and plundering defenceless villages, and wielding the tomahawk in concert with bloodthirsty Indians, deserved no compassion. It was rather for them to make compensation for the misery they had wrought. Thirdly, the confiscated Tory property had passed into the hands of purchasers who had bought it in good faith and could not now be dispossessed, and in many cases it had been distributed here and there and lost sight of. An estimate of the gross amount might be made, and a corresponding sum appropriated for indemnification. But, fourthly, the country was so impoverished by the war that its own soldiers, the brave men whose heroic exertions had won the independence of the United States, were at this moment in sore distress for the want of the pay which Congress could not give them, but to which its honour was sacredly pledged. The American government was clearly bound to pay its just debts to the friends who had suffered so much in its behalf before it should proceed to entertain a chimeri-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

cal scheme for satisfying its enemies. For, fifthly, any such scheme was in the present instance clearly chimerical. The acts under which Tory property had been confiscated were acts of state legislatures, and Congress had no jurisdiction over such a matter. If restitution was to be made, it must be made by the separate states. The question could not for a moment be entertained by the general government or its agents.

Upon these points the American commissioners were united and inexorable. Various suggestions were offered in vain by the British. Their troops still held the city of New York, and it was doubtful whether the Americans could hope to capture it in another campaign. It was urged that England might fairly claim in exchange for New York a round sum of money wherewith the Tories might be indemnified. It was further urged that certain unappropriated lands in the Mississippi valley might be sold for the same purpose. But the Americans would not hear of buying one of their own cities, whose independence was already acknowledged by the first article of the treaty which recognized the independence of the United States; and as for the western lands, they were wanted as a means of paying our own war debts and providing for our veteran soldiers. Several times Shelburne sent word to Paris that



D. V. Zeyner

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

he would break off the negotiation unless the loyalist claims were in some way recognized. But the Americans were obdurate. They had one advantage, and knew it. Parliament was soon to meet, and it was doubtful whether Lord Shelburne could command a sufficient majority to remain long in office. He was, accordingly, very anxious to complete the treaty of peace, or at least to detach America from the French alliance, as soon as possible. The American commissioners were also eager to conclude the treaty. They had secured very favourable terms, and were loath to run any risk of spoiling what had been done. Accordingly, they made a proposal in the form of a compromise, which nevertheless settled the point in their favour. The matter, they said, was beyond the jurisdiction of Congress, but they agreed that Congress should *recommend* to the several states to desist from further proceedings against the Tories, and to reconsider their laws on this subject; it should further recommend that persons with claims upon confiscated lands might be authorized to use legal means of recovering them, and to this end might be allowed to pass to and fro without personal risk for the term of one year. The British commissioners accepted this compromise, unsatisfactory as it was, because it was really impossible to obtain anything better without throwing the whole negotiation over-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

board. The constitutional difficulty was a real one indeed. As Adams told Oswald, if the point were further insisted upon, Congress would be obliged to refer it to the several states, and no one could tell how long it might be before any decisive result could be reached in this way. Meanwhile, the state of war would continue, and it would be cheaper for England to indemnify the loyalists herself than to pay the war bills for a single month. Franklin added that, if the loyalists were to be indemnified, it would be necessary also to reckon up the damage they had done in burning houses and kidnapping slaves, and then strike a balance between the two accounts ; and he gravely suggested that a special commission might be appointed for this purpose. At the prospect of endless discussion which this suggestion involved, the British commissioners gave way and accepted the American terms, although they were frankly told that too much must not be expected from the recommendation of Congress. The articles were signed on the 30th of November, six days before the meeting of Parliament. Hostilities in America were to cease at once, and upon the completion of the treaty the British fleets and armies were to be immediately withdrawn from every place which they held within the limits of the United States. A supplementary and secret article pro-

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

vided that if England, on making peace with Spain, should recover West Florida, the northern boundary of that province should be a line running due east from the mouth of the Yazoo River to the Chattahoochee.

Thus by skilful diplomacy the Americans had gained all that could reasonably be asked, while the work of making a general peace was greatly simplified. It was declared in the preamble that the articles here signed were provisional, and that the treaty was not to take effect until terms of peace should be agreed on between England and France. Without delay, Franklin laid the whole matter, except the secret article, before Vergennes, who forthwith accused the Americans of ingratitude and bad faith. Franklin's reply, that at the worst they could only be charged with want of diplomatic courtesy, has sometimes been condemned as insincere, but on inadequate grounds. He had consented with reluctance to the separate nego-

Vergennes
does not like
the way in
which it has
been done

tiation, because he did not wish to give France any possible ground for complaint, whether real or ostensible. There does not seem, however, to have been sufficient justification for so grave a charge as was made by Vergennes. If the French negotiations had failed until after the overthrow of the Shelburne ministry; if Fox, on coming into power, had taken advantage of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the American treaty to continue the war against France ; and if under such circumstances the Americans had abandoned their ally, then undoubtedly they would have become guilty of ingratitude and treachery. There is no reason for supposing that they would ever have done so, had the circumstances arisen. Their preamble made it impossible for them honourably to abandon France until a full peace should be made, and more than this France could not reasonably demand. The Americans had kept to the strict letter of their contract, as Vergennes had kept to the strict letter of his, and beyond this they meted out exactly the same measure of frankness which they received. To say that our debt of gratitude to France was such as to require us to acquiesce in her scheme for enriching our enemy Spain at our expense is simply childish. Franklin was undoubtedly right. The commissioners may have been guilty of a breach of diplomatic courtesy, but nothing more. Vergennes might be sarcastic about it for the moment, but the cordial relations between France and America remained undisturbed.

On the part of the Americans the treaty of Paris was one of the most brilliant triumphs in the whole history of modern diplomacy. Had the affair been managed by men of ordinary ability, some of the greatest results of the Revolutionary War

A great
diplomatic
victory

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

would probably have been lost ; the new republic would have been cooped up between the Atlantic Ocean and the Alleghany Mountains ; our westward expansion would have been impossible without further warfare in which European powers would have been involved ; and the formation of our Federal Union would doubtless have been effectively hindered, if not, indeed, altogether prevented. To the grand triumph the varied talents of Franklin, Adams, and Jay alike contributed. To the latter is due the credit of detecting and baffling the sinister designs of France ; but without the tact of Franklin this probably could not have been accomplished without offending France in such wise as to spoil everything. It is, however, to the rare discernment and boldness of Jay, admirably seconded by the sturdy Adams, that the chief praise is due. The turning-point of the whole affair was the visit of Dr. Vaughan to Lord Shelburne. The foundation of success was the separate negotiation with England, and here there had stood in the way a more formidable obstacle than the mere reluctance of Franklin. The chevalier Luzerne and his secretary Marbois had been busy with Congress, and that body had sent well-meant but silly and pusillanimous instructions to its commissioners at Paris to be guided in all things by the wishes of the French court. To disregard

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

such instructions required all the lofty courage for which Jay and Adams were noted, and for the moment it brought upon them something like a rebuke from Congress, conveyed in a letter from Robert Livingston. As Adams said, in his vehement way, "Congress surrendered their own sovereignty into the hands of a French minister. Blush! blush! ye guilty records! blush and perish! It is glory to have broken such infamous orders." True enough; the commissioners knew that in diplomacy, as in warfare, to the agent at a distance from his principal some discretionary power must be allowed. They assumed great responsibility, and won a victory of incalculable grandeur.

The course of the Americans produced no effect upon the terms obtained by France, but it seriously modified the case with Spain. Unable to obtain Gibraltar by arms, that The Spanish treaty power hoped to get it by diplomacy; and with the support of France she seemed disposed to make the cession of the great fortress an ultimatum, without which the war must go on. Shelburne, on his part, was willing to exchange Gibraltar for an island in the West Indies; but it was difficult to get the cabinet to agree on the matter, and the scheme was violently opposed by the people, for the heroic defence of the stronghold had invested it with a halo of romance and endeared it to every one.

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

Nevertheless, so persistent was Spain, and so great the desire for peace on the part of the ministry, that they had resolved to exchange Gibraltar for Guadaloupe, when the news arrived of the treaty with America. The ministers now took a bold stand, and refused to hear another word about giving up Gibraltar. Spain scolded, and threatened a renewal of hostilities, but France was unwilling to give further assistance, and the matter was settled by England's surrendering East Florida, and allowing the Spaniards to keep West Florida and Minorca, which were already in their hands.

By the treaty with France, the West India islands of Granada, St. Vincent, St. Christopher, Dominica, Nevis, and Montserrat were restored to England, which in turn The French treaty restored St. Lucia and ceded Tobago to France. The French were allowed to fortify Dunkirk, and received some slight concessions in India and Africa; they retained their share in the Newfoundland fisheries, and recovered the little neighbouring islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon. For the fourteen hundred million francs which France had expended in the war, she had the satisfaction of detaching the American colonies from England, thus inflicting a blow which it was confidently hoped would prove fatal to the maritime power of her ancient rival; but beyond this short-lived satisfaction,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the fallaciousness of which events were soon to show, she obtained very little. On the 20th of January, 1783, the preliminaries of peace were signed between England, on the one hand, and France and Spain, on the other. A truce was at the same time concluded with Holland, which was soon followed by a peace, in which most of the conquests on either side were restored.

A second English ministry was now about to be wrecked on the rock of this group of treaties. Lord Shelburne's government had at no time been a strong one. He had made many enemies by his liberal and reforming measures, and he had alienated most of his colleagues by his reserved demeanour and seeming want of confidence in them. In December several of the ministers resigned. The strength of parties in the House of Commons was thus quaintly reckoned by Gibbon: "Minister 140; Reynard 90; Boreas 120; the rest unknown or uncertain." But "Reynard" and "Boreas" were now about to join forces in one of the strangest coalitions ever known in the history of politics. No statesman ever attacked another more ferociously than Fox had attacked North during the past ten years. He had showered abuse upon him; accused him of "treachery and falsehood," of "public perfidy," and "breach of a solemn specific promise;"

Coalition of
Fox with
North

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

and had even gone so far as to declare to his face a hope that he would be called upon to expiate his abominable crimes upon the scaffold. Within a twelvemonth he had thus spoken of Lord North and his colleagues: "From the moment when I shall make any terms with one of them, I will rest satisfied to be called the most infamous of mankind. I would not for an instant think of a coalition with men who, in every public and private transaction as ministers, have shown themselves void of every principle of honour and honesty. In the hands of such men I would not trust my honour even for a moment." Still more recently, when at a loss for words strong enough to express his belief in the wickedness of Shelburne, he declared that he had no better opinion of that man than to deem him capable of forming an alliance with North. We may judge, then, of the general amazement when, in the middle of February, it turned out that Fox had himself done this very thing. An "ill-omened marriage," William Pitt called it in the House of Commons. "If this ill-omened marriage is not already solemnized, I know a just and lawful impediment, and in the name of the public safety I here forbid the banns." Throughout the country the indignation was great. Many people had blamed Fox for not following up his charges by actually bringing articles of impeachment against Lord

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

North. That the two enemies should thus suddenly become leagued in friendship seemed utterly monstrous. It injured Fox extremely in the opinion of the country, and it injured North still more, for it seemed like a betrayal of the king on his part, and his forgiveness of so many insults looked mean-spirited. It does not appear, however, that there was really any strong personal animosity between North and Fox. They were both men of very amiable character, and almost incapable of cherishing resentment. The language of parliamentary orators was habitually violent, and the huge quantities of wine which gentlemen in those days used to drink may have helped to make it extravagant. The excessive vehemence of political invective often deprived it of half its effect. One day, after Fox had exhausted his vocabulary of abuse upon Lord George Germain, Lord North said to him, "You were in very high feather to-day, Charles, and I am glad you did not fall upon me." On another occasion, it is said that while Fox was thundering against North's unexampled turpitude, the object of his furious tirade cosily dropped off to sleep. Gibbon, who was the friend of both statesmen, expressly declares that they bore each other no ill-will. But while thus alike indisposed to harbour bitter thoughts, there was one man for whom both Fox and North felt an abiding distrust and dislike; and

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

that man was Lord Shelburne, the prime minister.

As a political pupil of Burke, Fox shared that statesman's distrust of the whole school of Lord Chatham, to which Shelburne belonged. In many respects these statesmen were far more advanced than Burke, but they did not sufficiently realize the importance of checking the crown by means of a united and powerful ministry. Fox thoroughly understood that much of the mischief of the past twenty years, including the loss of America, had come from the system of weak and divided ministries, which gave the king such great opportunity for wreaking his evil will. He had himself been a member of such a ministry, which had fallen seven months ago. When the king singled out Shelburne for his confidence, Fox naturally concluded that Shelburne was to be made to play the royal game, as North had been made to play it for so many years. This was very unjust to Shelburne, but there is no doubt that Fox was perfectly honest in his belief. It seemed to him that the present state of things must be brought to an end, at whatever cost. A ministry strong enough to curb the king could be formed only by a coalescence of two out of the three existing parties. A coalescence of Old and New Whigs had been tried last spring, and failed. It only

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

remained now to try the effect of a coalescence of Old Whigs and Tories.

Such was doubtless the chief motive of Fox in this extraordinary move. The conduct of North seems harder to explain, but it was probably due to a reaction of feeling on his part. He had done violence to his own convictions out of weak compassion for George III., and had carried on the American war for four years after he had been thoroughly convinced that peace ought to be made. Remorse for this is said to have haunted him to the end of his life. When in his old age he became blind, he bore his misfortune with his customary lightness of heart; and one day, meeting the veteran Barré, who had also lost his eyesight, he exclaimed, with his unfailing wit, "Well, colonel, in spite of all our differences, I suppose there are no two men in England who would be gladder to *see* each other than you and I." But while Lord North could jest about his blindness, the memory of his ill-judged subservience to the king was something that he could not laugh away, and among his nearest friends he was sometimes heard to reproach himself bitterly. When, therefore, in 1783, he told Fox that he fully agreed with him in thinking that the royal power ought to be curbed, he was doubtless speaking the truth. No man had a better right to such an opinion than that which he

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

had gained through sore experience. In his own ministry, as he said to Fox, he took the system as he found it, and had not vigour and resolution enough to put an end to it; but he was now quite convinced that in such a country as England, while the king should be treated with all outward show of respect, he ought on no account to be allowed to exercise any real power.

Now this was in 1783 the paramount political question in England, just as much as the question of secession was paramount in the United States in 1861. Other questions could be postponed; the question of curbing the king could not. Upon this all-important point North had come to agree with Fox; and as the principal motive of their coalition may be thus explained, the historian is not called upon to lay too much stress upon the lower motives assigned in profusion by their political enemies. This explanation, however, does not quite cover the case. The mass of the Tories would never follow North in an avowed attempt to curb the king, but they agreed with the followers of Fox, though not with Fox himself, in holy horror of parliamentary reform, and were alarmed by a recent declaration of Shelburne that the suffrage must be extended so as to admit a hundred new county members. Thus while the two leaders were urged to coalescence by one motive, their

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

followers were largely swayed by another, and this added much to the mystery and general unintelligibleness of the movement. In taking this step Fox made the mistake which was characteristic of the Old Whig party. He gave too little heed to the great public outside the walls of the House of Commons. The coalition, once made, was very strong in Parliament, but it mystified and scandalized the people, and this popular disapproval by and by made it easy for the king to overthrow it.

It was agreed to choose the treaty as the occasion for the combined attack upon the Shelburne ministry. North, as the minister who had conducted the unsuccessful war, was bound to oppose the treaty, in any case. It would not do

Fall of
Shelburne's
ministry for him to admit that better terms could not have been made. The treaty was also very unpopular with Fox's party, and with the nation at large. It was thought that too much territory had been conceded to the Americans, and fault was found with the article on the fisheries. But the point which excited most indignation was the virtual abandonment of the loyalists, for here the honour of England was felt to be at stake. On this ground the treaty was emphatically condemned by Burke, Sheridan, and Wilberforce, no less than by North. It was ably defended in the Commons by Pitt, and in the Lords by Shel-

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

burne himself, who argued that he had but the alternative of accepting the terms as they stood, or continuing the war ; and since it had come to this, he said, without spilling a drop of blood, or incurring one fifth of the expense of a year's campaign, the comfort and happiness of the American loyalists could be easily secured. By this he meant that, should America fail to make good their losses, it was far better for England to indemnify them herself than to prolong indefinitely a bloody and ruinous struggle. As we shall hereafter see, this liberal and enlightened policy was the one which England really pursued, so far as practicable, and her honour was completely saved. That Shelburne and Pitt were quite right there can now be little doubt. But argument was of no avail against the resistless power of the coalition. On the 17th of February Lord John Cavendish moved an amendment to the ministerial address on the treaty, refusing to approve it. On the 21st he moved a further amendment condemning the treaty. Both motions were carried, and on the 24th Lord Shelburne resigned. He did not dissolve Parliament and appeal to the country, partly because he was aware of his personal unpopularity, and partly because, in spite of the general disgust at the coalition, there was little doubt that on the particular question of the treaty the public opinion agreed with the major-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ity in Parliament, and not with the ministry. For this reason, Pitt, though personally popular, saw that it was no time for him to take the first place in the government, and when the king proceeded to offer it to him he declined.

For more than five weeks, while the treasury was nearly empty, and the question of peace or war still hung in the balance, England was without a regular government, while the angry king went hunting for some one who would consent to be his prime minister. He was determined not to submit to the coalition. He was naturally enraged at Lord North for turning against him. Meeting one day North's father, Lord Guilford, he went up to him, tragically wringing his hands, and exclaimed in accents of woe, "Did I ever think, my Lord Guilford, that your son would thus have betrayed me into the hands of Mr. Fox?" He appealed in vain to Lord Gower, and then to Lord Temple, to form a ministry. Lord Gower suggested that perhaps Thomas Pitt, cousin of William, might be willing to serve. "I desired him," said the king, "to apply to Mr. Thomas Pitt, or Mr. Thomas anybody." It was of no use. By the 2d of April Parliament had become furious at the delay, and George was obliged to yield. The Duke of Portland was brought in as nominal prime minister, with Fox as foreign secretary, North as secretary for home

The king's
wrath

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

and colonies, Cavendish as chancellor of the exchequer, and Keppel as first lord of the admiralty. The only Tory in the cabinet, excepting North, was Lord Stormont, who became president of the council. The commissioners, Fitzherbert and Oswald, were recalled from Paris, and the Duke of Manchester and David Hartley, son of the great philosopher, were appointed in their stead. Negotiations continued through the spring and summer. Attempts were made to change some of the articles, especially the obnoxious article concerning the loyalists, but all to no purpose. Hartley's attempt to negotiate a mutually advantageous commercial treaty with America also unfortunately came to nothing. The definitive treaty which was finally signed on the 3d of September, 1783, was an exact transcript of the treaty which Shelburne had made, and for making which the present ministers had succeeded in turning him out of office. No more emphatic justification of Shelburne's conduct of this business could possibly have been obtained.

The treaty is adopted, after all, by the coalition ministry, which presently falls

The coalition ministry did not long survive the final signing of the treaty. The events of the next few months are curiously instructive as showing the quiet and stealthy way in which a political revolution may be consummated in a thoroughly conservative and constitutional

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

country. Early in the winter session of Parliament Fox brought in his famous bill for organizing the government of the great empire which Clive and Hastings had now built up in India. Popular indignation at the ministry had been strengthened by its adopting the same treaty of peace for the making of which it had assaulted Shelburne; and now, on the passage of the India Bill by the House of Commons, there was a great outcry. Many provisions of the bill were exceedingly unpopular, and its chief object was alleged to be the concentration of the immense patronage of India into the hands of the old Whig families. With the popular feeling thus warmly enlisted against the ministry, George III. was now emboldened to make war on it by violent means, — and, accordingly, when the bill came up in the House of Lords, he caused it to be announced, by Lord Temple, that any peer who should vote in its favour would be regarded as an enemy by the king. Four days later the House of Commons, by a vote of 153 to 80, resolved that “to report any opinion, or pretended opinion, of his majesty upon any bill or other proceeding depending in either house of Parliament, with a view to influence the votes of the members, is a high crime and misdemeanour, derogatory to the honour of the crown, a breach of the fundamental privileges of Parliament, and subversive of the constitution of this

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

country." A more explicit or emphatic defiance to the king would have been hard to frame. Two days afterward the Lords rejected the India Bill, and on the next day, the 18th of December, George turned the ministers out of office.

In this grave constitutional crisis the king invited William Pitt to form a government, and this young statesman, who had consistently opposed the coalition, now saw that his hour was come. He was more than any one

else the favourite of the people. Fox's political reputation was eclipsed, and North's was destroyed, by their unseemly alliance. People were sick of the whole state of things which

Constitutional crisis, ending in the overwhelming victory of Pitt, May, 1784

had accompanied the American war. Pitt, who had only come into Parliament in 1780, was free from these unpleasant associations. The unblemished purity of his life, his incorruptible integrity, his rare disinterestedness, and his transcendent ability in debate were known to every one. As the worthy son of Lord Chat-ham, whose name was associated with the most glorious moment of English history, he was peculiarly dear to the people. His position, however, on taking supreme office at the instance of a king who had just committed an outrageous breach of the constitution, was extremely critical, and only the most consummate skill could have won from the chaos such a vic-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tory as he was about to win. When he became first lord of the treasury and chancellor of the exchequer, in December, 1783, he had barely completed his twenty-fifth year. All his colleagues in the new cabinet were peers, so that he had to fight single-handed in the Commons against the united talents of Burke and Sheridan, Fox and North; and there was a heavy majority against him, besides. In view of this adverse majority, it was Pitt's constitutional duty to dissolve Parliament and appeal to the country. But Fox, unwilling to imperil his great majority by a new election, now made the fatal mistake of opposing a dissolution; thus showing his distrust of the people and his dread of their verdict. With consummate tact, Pitt allowed the debates to go on till March, and then, when the popular feeling in his favour had grown into wild enthusiasm, he dissolved Parliament. In the general election which followed, 160 members of the coalition lost their seats, and Pitt obtained the greatest majority that has ever been given to an English minister.

Thus was completed the political revolution in England which was set on foot by the American victory at Yorktown. Its full significance was only gradually realized. For the moment it might seem that it was the king who had triumphed. He had shattered the alliance which

RESULTS OF YORKTOWN

had been formed for the purpose of curbing him, and the result of the election had virtually condoned his breach of the constitution. This apparent victory, however, had been won only by a direct appeal to the people, and all its advantages accrued to the people, and not to George III. His ingenious system of weak and divided ministries, with himself for balance-wheel, was de-

Overthrow
of George
III.'s system
of personal
government

stroyed. For the next seventeen years the real ruler of England was not George III., but William Pitt, who, with his great popular following, wielded such a power as no English sovereign had possessed since the days of Elizabeth. The political atmosphere was cleared of intrigue; and Fox, in the legitimate attitude of leader of the new opposition, entered upon the glorious part of his career. There was now set in motion that great work of reform which, hindered for a while by the reaction against the French revolutionists, won its decisive victory in 1832. Down to the very moment at which American and British history begin to flow in distinct and separate channels, it is interesting to observe how closely they are implicated with each other. The victory of the Americans not only set on foot the British revolution here described, but it figured most prominently in each of the political changes that we have witnessed, down to the very eve of the overthrow

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of the coalition. The system which George III. had sought to fasten upon America, in order that he might fasten it upon England, was shaken off and shattered by the good people of both countries at almost the same moment of time.

II

THE THIRTEEN COMMON- WEALTHS

THE times that tried men's souls are over," said Thomas Paine in the last number of the "Crisis," which he published after hearing that the negotiations for a treaty of peace had been concluded. The preliminary articles had been signed at Paris on the 20th of January, 1783. The news arrived in America on the 23d of March, in a letter to the president of Congress from Lafayette, who had returned to France soon after the victory at Yorktown. A few days later Sir Guy Carleton received his orders from the ministry to proclaim a cessation of hostilities by land and sea. A similar proclamation made by Congress was formally communicated to the army by Washington on the 19th of April, the eighth anniversary of the first bloodshed on Lexington green. Since Wayne had driven the British from Georgia, early in the preceding year, there had been no military operations between the regular armies. Guerrilla warfare between Whig and Tory had been kept up in parts of South

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Carolina and on the frontier of New York, where Thayendanegea was still alert and defiant; while beyond the mountains the tomahawk and scalping-knife had been busy, and Washington's old friend and comrade, Colonel Crawford, had been scorched to death by the firebrands of the red demons; but the armies had sat still, awaiting the peace which every one felt sure must speedily come. After Cornwallis's surrender, Washington marched his army back to the Hudson, and established his headquarters at Newburgh. Rochambeau followed somewhat later, and in September joined the Americans on the Hudson; but in December the French army marched to Boston, and there embarked for France. After the formal cessation of hostilities on the 19th of April, 1783, Washington granted furloughs to most of his soldiers; and these weather-beaten veterans trudged homeward in all directions, in little groups of four or five, depending largely for their subsistence on the hospitality of the farm-houses along the road. Arrived at home, their muskets were hung over the chimney-piece as trophies for grandchildren to be proud of, the stories of their exploits and their sufferings became household legends, and they turned the furrows and drove the cattle to pasture just as in the "old colony times."

Their furloughs were equivalent to a full

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

discharge, for on the 3d of September the definitive treaty was signed, and the country was at peace. On the 3d of November the army was formally disbanded, and on the 25th of that month Sir Guy

Departure of
the British
troops, Nov.
25, 1783

Carleton's army embarked from New York. Small British garrisons still remained in the frontier posts of Ogdensburg, Oswego, Niagara, Erie, Sandusky, Detroit, and Mackinaw, but it was understood that these places were to be promptly surrendered to the United States. On the 4th of December a barge waited at the South Ferry in New York to carry General Washington across the river to Paulus Hook. He was going to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, in order to resign his command. At Fraunces's Tavern, near the ferry, he took leave of the officers who so long had shared his labours. One after another they embraced their beloved commander, while there were few dry eyes in the company. They followed him to the ferry, and watched the departing boat with hearts too full for words, and then in solemn silence returned up the street. At Philadelphia he handed to the comptroller of the treasury a neatly written manuscript, containing an accurate statement of his expenses in the public service since the day when he took command of the army. The sums which Washington had thus spent out of his private fortune amounted

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to \$64,315. For his personal services he declined to take any pay. At noon of the 23d, in the presence of Congress and of a throng of ladies and gentlemen at Annapolis, the great

Washington
resigns his
command,
Dec. 23 general gave up his command, and requested as an "indulgence" to be allowed to retire into private life.

General Mifflin, who during the winter of Valley Forge had conspired with Gates to undermine the confidence of the people in Washington, was now president of Congress, and it was for him to make the reply. "You retire," said Mifflin, "from the theatre of action with the blessings of your fellow-citizens, but the glory of your virtues will not terminate with your military command; it will continue to animate remotest ages." The next morning Washington hurried away to spend Christmas at his pleasant home at Mount Vernon, which, save for a few hours in the autumn of 1781, he had not set eyes on for more than eight years. His estate had suffered from his long absence, and his highest ambition was to devote himself to its simple interests. To his friends he offered unpretentious hospitality. "My manner of living is plain," he said, "and I do not mean to be put out of it. A glass of wine and a bit of mutton are always ready, and such as will be content to partake of them are always welcome. Those who expect more will be disappointed."

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

To Lafayette he wrote that he was now about to solace himself with those tranquil enjoyments of which the anxious soldier and the weary statesman know but little. "I have not only retired from all public employments, but I am retiring within myself, and shall be able to view the solitary walk and tread the paths of private life with heartfelt satisfaction. Envious of none, I am determined to be pleased with all; and this, my dear friend, being the order of my march, I will move gently down the stream of life until I sleep with my fathers."

In these hopes Washington was to be disappointed. "All the world is touched by his republican virtues," wrote Luzerne to Vergennes, "but it will be useless for him to try to hide himself and live the life of a private man: he will always be the first citizen of the United States." It indeed required no prophet to foretell that the American people could not long dispense with the services of this greatest of citizens. Washington had already put himself most explicitly on record as the leader of the men who were urging the people of the United States toward the formation of a more perfect union. The great lesson of the war had not been lost on him. Bitter experience of the evils attendant upon the weak government of the Continental Congress had impressed upon his mind the urgent necessity of an immediate and

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

thorough reform. On the 8th of June, in view of the approaching disbandment of the army, he had addressed to the governors and presidents of the several states a circular letter, which he wished to have regarded as his legacy to the American people. In this letter he insisted upon four things as essential to the very existence of the United States as an independent power.

His "legacy" to the American people,
June 8, 1783

First, there must be an indissoluble union of all the states under a single federal government, which must possess the power of enforcing its decrees; for without such authority it would be a government only in name. Secondly, the debts incurred by Congress for the purpose of carrying on the war and securing independence must be paid to the uttermost farthing. Thirdly, the militia system must be organized throughout the thirteen states on uniform principles. Fourthly, the people must be willing to sacrifice, if need be, some of their local interests to the common weal; they must discard their local prejudices, and regard one another as fellow citizens of a common country, with interests in the deepest and truest sense identical.

The grandeur of Washington's character, his heroic services, and his utter disinterestedness had given him such a hold upon the people as few statesmen known to history have ever possessed. The noble and sensible words of his

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

circular letter were treasured up in the minds of all the best people in the country, and when the time for reforming the weak and disorderly government had come it was again to Washington that men looked as their leader and guide. But that time had not yet come. Only through the discipline of perplexity and tribulation could the people be brought to realize the indispensable necessity of that indissoluble union of which Washington had spoken. Thomas Paine was sadly mistaken when, in the moment of exultation over the peace, he declared that the trying time was ended. The most trying time of all was just beginning. It is not too much to say that the period of five years following the peace of 1783 was the most critical moment in all the history of the American people. The dangers from which we were saved in 1788 were even greater than the dangers from which we were saved in 1865. In the War of Secession the love of union had come to be so strong that thousands of men gave up their lives for it as cheerfully and triumphantly as the martyrs of older times, who sang their hymns of praise even while their flesh was withering in the relentless flames. In 1783 the love of union, as a sentiment for which men would fight, had scarcely come into existence among the people of these states. The souls of the men of that day had

Absence of
a sentiment
of union, and
consequent
danger of
anarchy

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

not been thrilled by the immortal eloquence of Webster, nor had they gained the historic experience which gave to Webster's words their meaning and their charm. They had not gained control of all the fairest part of the continent, with domains stretching more than three thousand miles from ocean to ocean, and so situated in geographical configuration and commercial relations as to make the very idea of disunion absurd, save for men in whose minds fanaticism for the moment usurped the place of sound judgment. The men of 1783 dwelt in a long, straggling series of republics, fringing the Atlantic coast, bordered on the north and south and west by two European powers whose hostility they had some reason to dread. But nine years had elapsed since, in the first Continental Congress, they had begun to act consistently and independently in common, under the severe pressure of a common fear and an immediate necessity of action. Even under such circumstances the war had languished and come nigh to failure simply through the difficulty of insuring concerted action. Had there been such a government that the whole power of the thirteen states could have been swiftly and vigorously wielded as a unit, the British, fighting at such disadvantage as they did, might have been driven to their ships in less than a year. The length of the war and its worst hardships had

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

been chiefly due to want of organization. Congress had steadily declined in power and in respectability ; it was much weaker at the end of the war than at the beginning ; and there was reason to fear that as soon as the common pressure was removed the need for concerted action would quite cease to be felt, and the scarcely formed Union would break into pieces. There was the greater reason for such a fear in that, while no strong sentiment had as yet grown up in favour of union, there was an intensely powerful sentiment in favour of local self-government. This feeling was scarcely less strong as between states like Connecticut and Rhode Island, or Maryland and Virginia, than it was between Athens and Megara, Argos and Sparta, in the great days of Grecian history. A most wholesome feeling it was, and one which needed not so much to be curbed as to be guided in the right direction. It was a feeling which was shared by some of the foremost Revolutionary leaders, such as Samuel Adams and Richard Henry Lee. But unless the most profound and delicate statesmanship should be forthcoming, to take this sentiment under its guidance, there was much reason to fear that the release from the common adhesion to Great Britain would end in setting up thirteen little republics, ripe for endless squabbling, like the republics of ancient Greece and mediæval Italy, and ready to become

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the prey of England and Spain, even as Greece became the prey of Macedonia.

As such a lamentable result was dreaded by Washington, so by statesmen in Europe it was generally expected, and by our enemies it was eagerly hoped for. Josiah Tucker, Dean of Gloucester, was a far-sighted man in many things; but he said, "As to the future grandeur of America, and its being a rising empire under one head, whether republican or monarchical, it is one of the idlest and most visionary notions that ever was conceived even by writers of romance. The mutual antipathies and clashing interests of the Americans, their difference of governments, habitudes, and manners, indicate that they will have no centre of union and no common interest. They never can be united into one compact empire under any species of government whatever; a dis-united people till the end of time, suspicious and distrustful of each other, they will be divided and subdivided into little commonwealths or principalities, according to natural boundaries, by great bays of the sea, and by vast rivers, lakes, and ridges of mountains." Such were the views of a liberal-minded philosopher who bore us no ill-will. George III. said officially that he hoped the Americans would not suffer from the evils which in history had always followed the throwing off of monarchical gov-

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

ernment : which meant, of course, that he hoped they *would* suffer from such evils. He believed we should get into such a snarl that the several states, one after another, would repent and beg on their knees to be taken back into the British empire. Frederick of Prussia, though friendly to the Americans, argued that the mere extent of country from Maine to Georgia would suffice either to break up the Union, or to make a monarchy necessary. No republic, he said, had ever long existed on so great a scale. The Roman republic had been transformed into a despotism mainly by the excessive enlargement of its area. It was only little states, like Venice, Switzerland, and Holland, that could maintain a republican government. Such arguments were common enough a century ago, but they overlooked three essential differences between the Roman republic and the United States. The Roman republic in Cæsar's time comprised peoples differing widely in blood, in speech, and in degree of civilization ; it was perpetually threatened on all its frontiers by powerful enemies ; and representative assemblies were unknown to it. The only free government of which the Roman knew anything was that of the primary assembly or town meeting. On the other hand, the people of the United States were all English in speech, and mainly English in

False
historic
analogies

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

blood. The differences in degree of civilization between such states as Massachusetts and North Carolina were considerable, but in comparison with such differences as those between Attika and Lusitania they might well be called slight. The attacks of savages on the frontier were cruel and annoying, but never since the time of King Philip had they seemed to threaten the existence of the white man. A very small military establishment was quite enough to deal with the Indians. And to crown all, the American people were thoroughly familiar with the principle of representation, having practised it on a grand scale for more than five centuries in England and America. The governments of the thirteen states were all similar, and the political ideas of one were perfectly intelligible to all the others. It was essentially fallacious, therefore, to liken the case of the United States to that of ancient Rome.

But there was another feature of the case which was quite hidden from the men of 1783. Just before the assembling of the first Continental Congress James Watt had completed his steam-engine; in the summer of 1787, while the Federal Convention was sitting at Philadelphia, John Fitch launched his first steamboat on the Delaware River; and Stephenson's invention of the locomotive was to follow in less than half a century. Even with all other con-

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

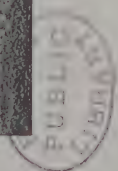
ditions favourable, it is doubtful if the American Union could have been preserved to the present time without the railroad. But for the military aid of railroads our government would hardly have succeeded in putting down the rebellion of the southern states. In the debates on the Oregon Bill in the United States Senate in 1843, the idea that we could ever have an interest in so remote a country as Oregon was loudly ridiculed by some of the members. It would take ten months — said George McDuffie, the very able senator from South Carolina — for representatives to get from that territory to the District of Columbia and back again. Yet since the building of railroads to the Pacific coast, we can go from Boston to the capital of Oregon in much less time than it took John Hancock to make the journey from Boston to Philadelphia. Railroads and telegraphs have made our vast country, both for political and for social purposes, more snug and compact than little Switzerland was in the Middle Ages or New England a century ago.

Influence
of railroad
and telegraph
upon perpe-
tuity of the
American
Union

At the time of our Revolution the difficulties of travelling formed an important social obstacle to the union of the states. In our time the persons who pass in a single day between New York and Boston by six or seven distinct lines of railroad and steamboat are numbered by

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

thousands. In 1783 two stage-coaches were enough for all the travellers, and nearly all the freight besides, that went between these two cities, except such large freight as went by sea around Cape Cod. The journey began at three o'clock in the morning. Horses were changed every twenty miles, and if the roads were in good condition some forty miles would be made by ten o'clock in the evening. In bad weather, when the passengers had to get down and lift the clumsy wheels out of deep ruts, the progress was much slower. The loss of life from accidents, in proportion to the number of travellers, was much greater than it has ever been on the railway. Broad rivers like the Connecticut and Housatonic had no bridges. To drive across them in winter, when they were solidly frozen over, was easy ; and in pleasant summer weather to cross in a rowboat was not a dangerous undertaking. But squalls at some seasons and floating ice at others were things to be feared. More than one instance is recorded where the boats were crushed and passengers drowned, or saved only by scrambling upon ice-floes. After a week or ten days of discomfort and danger the jolted and jaded traveller reached New York. Such was a journey in the most highly civilized part of the United States. The case was still worse in the South, and it was not so very much



THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

better in England and France. In one respect the traveller in the United States fared better than the traveller in Europe: there was less danger from highwaymen.

Such being the difficulty of travelling, people never made long journeys save for very important reasons. Except in the case of the soldiers, most people lived and died without ever having seen any state but their own. And as the mails were irregular and uncertain, and the rates of postage very high, people heard from one another but seldom. Commercial dealings between the different states were inconsiderable. The occupation of the people was chiefly agriculture. Cities were few and small, and each little district for the most part supported itself. Under such circumstances the different parts of the country knew little about each other, and local prejudices were intense. It was not simply free Massachusetts and slaveholding South Carolina, or English Connecticut and Dutch New York, that misunderstood and ridiculed each the other; but even between such neighbouring states as Connecticut and Massachusetts, both of them thoroughly English and Puritan, and in all their social conditions almost exactly alike, it used often to be said that there was no love lost. These unspeakably stupid and contemptible local antipathies are inherited

Local jealousies and antipathies, an inheritance from primeval savagery

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

by civilized men from that far-off time when the clan system prevailed over the face of the earth, and the hand of every clan was raised against its neighbours. They are pale and evanescent survivals from the universal primitive warfare, and the sooner they die out from human society the better for every one. They should be stigmatized and frowned down upon every fit occasion, just as we frown upon swearing as a symbol of anger and contention. But the only thing which can finally destroy them is the widespread and unrestrained intercourse of different groups of people in peaceful social and commercial relations. The rapidity with which this process is now going on is the most encouraging of all the symptoms of our modern civilization. But a century ago the progress made in this direction had been relatively small, and it was a critical moment for the American people.

The thirteen states, as already observed, had worked in concert for only nine years, during which their coöperation had been feeble and halting. But the several state governments had been in operation since the first settlement of the country, and were regarded with intense loyalty by the people of the states. Under the royal governors the local political life of each state had been vigorous and often stormy, as befitted communities of the sturdy descendants

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

of English freemen. The legislative assembly of each state had stoutly defended its liberties against the encroachments of the governor. In the eyes of the people it was the only power on earth competent to lay taxes upon them, it was as supreme in its own sphere as the British Parliament itself, and in behalf of this rooted conviction the people had gone to war and won their independence from England. During the war the people of all the states, except Connecticut and Rhode Island, had carefully remodelled their governments, and in the performance of this work had withdrawn many of their ablest statesmen from the Continental Congress; but except for the expulsion of the royal and proprietary governors, the work had in no instance been revolutionary in its character. It was not so much that the American people gained an increase of freedom by their separation from England, as that they kept the freedom they had always enjoyed, that freedom which was the inalienable birthright of Englishmen, but which George III. had foolishly sought to impair. The American Revolution was therefore in no respect destructive. It was the most conservative revolution known to history, thoroughly English in conception from beginning to end. It had no likeness whatever to the terrible popular convulsion which soon after took place

Conservative
character
of the
Revolution

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in France. The mischievous doctrines of Rousseau had found few readers and fewer admirers among the Americans. The principles upon which their revolution was conducted were those of Sidney and Locke. In remodelling the state governments, as in planning the union of the states, the precedents followed and the principles applied were almost purely English. We must now pass in review the principal changes wrought in the several states, and we shall then be ready to consider the general structure of the Confederation, and to describe the remarkable series of events which led to the adoption of our Federal Constitution.

It will be remembered that at the time of the Declaration of Independence there were three kinds of government in the colonies. Connecticut and Rhode Island had always been true republics, with governors and legislative assemblies elected by the people. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland presented the appearance of limited hereditary monarchies. Their assemblies were chosen by the people, but the lords proprietary appointed their governors, or

State governments remodelled; assemblies continued from colonial times

in some instances acted as governors themselves. In Maryland the office of lord proprietary was hereditary in the Calvert family; in Delaware and Pennsylvania, which, though distinct commonwealths with separate legis-

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

latures, had the same executive head, it was hereditary in the Penn family. The other eight colonies were vice-royalties, with governors appointed by the king, while in all alike the people elected the legislatures. Accordingly, in Connecticut and Rhode Island no change was made necessary by the Revolution, beyond the mere omission of the king's name from legal documents ; and their charters, which dated from the middle of the seventeenth century, continued to do duty as state constitutions till far into the nineteenth. During the Revolutionary War all the other states framed new constitutions, but in most essential respects they took the old colonial charters for their model. The popular legislative body remained unchanged even in its name. In North Carolina its supreme dignity was vindicated in its title of the House of Commons ; in Virginia it was called the House of Burgesses ; in most of the states the House of Representatives. The members were chosen each year, except in South Carolina, where they served for two years. In the New England states they represented the townships, in other states the counties. In all the states except Pennsylvania a property qualification was required of them.

In addition to this House of Representatives all the legislatures except those of Pennsylvania and Georgia contained a second or upper house

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

known as the Senate. The origin of the senate is to be found in the governor's council of colonial times, just as the House of
Origin of
the senates Lords is descended from the Witenagemot or council of great barons summoned by the Old-English kings. The Americans had been used to having the acts of their popular assemblies reviewed by a council, and so they retained this revisory body as an upper house. A higher property qualification was required than for membership of the lower house, and, except in New Hampshire, Massachusetts, and South Carolina, the term of service was longer. In Maryland senators sat for five years, in Virginia and New York for four years, elsewhere for two years. In some states they were chosen by the people, in others by the lower house. In Maryland they were chosen by a college of electors, thus affording a precedent for the method of electing the chief magistrate of the Union under the Federal Constitution.

Governors were unpopular in those days. There was too much flavour of royalty and high prerogative about them. Except in the two republics of Rhode Island and Connecticut, American political history throughout the eighteenth century was chiefly the record of interminable squabbles between governors and legislatures, down to the moment when the detested agents of royalty were clapped into jail,

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

or took refuge behind the bulwarks of a British seventy-four. Accordingly, the new constitutions were very chary of the powers to be exercised by the governor. In Pennsylvania and Delaware, in New Hampshire and Massachusetts, the governor was at first replaced by an executive council, and the president of this council was first magistrate and titular ruler of the state. His dignity was imposing enough, but his authority was merely that of a chairman. The other states had governors chosen by the legislatures, except in New York, where the governor was elected by the people. No one was eligible to the office of governor who did not possess a specified amount of property. In most of the states the governor could not be reëlected, he had no veto upon the acts of the legislature, nor any power of appointing officers. In 1780, in a new constitution drawn up by James Bowdoin and the two Adamses, Massachusetts led the way in the construction of a more efficient executive department. The president was replaced by a governor elected annually by the people, and endowed with the power of appointment and a suspensory veto. The first governor elected under this constitution was John Hancock. In 1783 New Hampshire adopted a similar constitution. In 1790 Pennsylvania added an upper house to its legislature, and vested the executive power

Governors
viewed with
suspicion

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in a governor elected by the people for a term of three years, and twice reëligible. He was entrusted with the power of appointment to offices, with a suspensory veto, and with the royal prerogative of reprieving or pardoning criminals. In 1792 similar changes were made in Delaware. In 1789 Georgia added the upper house to its legislature, and about the same time in several states the governor's powers were enlarged.

Thus the various state governments were repetitions on a small scale of what was then supposed to be the triplex government of England, with its King, Lords, and Commons. The governor answered to the king with his dignity curtailed by election for a short period, and by narrowly limited prerogatives. The senate answered to the House of Lords, except in being a representative and not a hereditary body. It was supposed to represent more especially that part of the community which was possessed of most wealth and consideration ; and in several states the senators were apportioned with some reference to the amount of taxes paid by different parts of the state. The senate of New York, in direct imitation of the House of Lords, was made a supreme court of errors. On the other hand, the assembly answered to the House of Commons, save that its power was limited by the senate to a much greater degree than the

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

power of the House of Commons is limited by the House of Lords. But this peculiarity of the British Constitution was not well understood a century ago ; and the misunderstanding, as we shall hereafter see, exerted a serious influence upon the form of our federal government, as well as upon the constitutions of the several states.

In all the thirteen states the common law of England remained in force, as it does to this day save where modified by statute. British and colonial statutes made prior to the Revolution continued also in force unless expressly repealed. The system of civil and criminal courts, the remedies in common law and equity, the forms of writs, the functions of justices of the peace, the courts of probate, all remained substantially unchanged. In Pennsylvania, Delaware, and New Jersey, the judges held office for a term of seven years; in all the other states they held office for life or during good behav- ^{The} iour. In all the states save Georgia ^{judiciary} they were appointed either by the governor or by the legislature. It was Georgia that in 1812 first set the pernicious example of electing judges for short terms by the people,¹ — a practice which is responsible for much of the degradation that the courts have suffered in

¹ In recent years Georgia has been one of the first states to abandon this bad practice.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

many of our states, and which will have to be abandoned before a proper administration of justice can ever be secured.

In bestowing the suffrage, the new constitutions were as conservative as in all other respects. The general state of opinion in America at that time, with regard to universal suffrage, was far more advanced than the general state of opinion in England, but it was less advanced than the opinions of such statesmen as Pitt and Shelburne and the Duke of Richmond. There was a truly English irregularity in the provisions which were made on this subject. In New Hampshire, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and South Carolina, all resident freemen who paid taxes could vote. In North Carolina all such persons could vote for members of the lower house, but in order to vote for senators a freehold of fifty acres was required. In Virginia none could vote save those who possessed such a freehold of fifty acres. To vote for governor or for senators in New York, one must possess a freehold of \$250, clear of mortgage, and to vote for assemblymen one must either have a freehold of \$50, or pay a yearly rent of \$10. The pettiness of these sums was in keeping with the time when two daily coaches sufficed for the traffic between our two greatest commercial cities. In Rhode Island an unincumbered freehold worth \$134 was required ; but in Rhode Island

The limited
suffrage

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

and Pennsylvania the eldest sons of qualified freemen could vote without payment of taxes. In all the other states the possession of a small amount of property, either real or personal, varying from \$33 to \$200, was the necessary qualification for voting. Thus slowly and irregularly did the states drift toward universal suffrage; but although the impediments in the way of voting were more serious than they seem to us in these days when the community is more prosperous and money less scarce, they were still not very great, and in the opinion of most conservative people they barely sufficed to exclude from the suffrage such shiftless persons as had no visible interest in keeping down the taxes.

At the time of the Revolution the succession to property was regulated in New York and the southern states by the English rule of primogeniture. The eldest son took all. In New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, and the four New England states, the eldest son took a double share. It was Georgia that led the way in decreeing the equal distribution of intestate property, both real and personal; and between 1784 and 1796 the example was followed by all the other states. At the same time entails were either definitely abolished, or the obstacles to cutting them off were removed. In New York

Abolition
of primo-
geniture,
entails, and
manorial
privileges

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the manorial privileges of the great patroons were swept away. In Maryland the old manorial system had long been dying a natural death through the encroachments of the patriarchal system of slavery. The ownership of all ungranted lands within the limits of the thirteen states passed from the Crown not to the Confederacy, but to the several state governments. In Pennsylvania and Maryland such ungranted lands had belonged to the lords proprietary. They were now forfeited to the state. The Penn family was indemnified by Pennsylvania to the amount of half a million dollars; but Maryland made no compensation to the Calverts, inasmuch as their claim was presented by an illegitimate descendant of the last Lord Baltimore.

The success of the American Revolution made it possible for the different states to take measures for the gradual abolition of slavery and the immediate abolition of the foreign slave-trade. On this great question the state of public opinion in America was more advanced than in England. So great a thinker as Edmund Burke, who devoted much thought to the subject, came to the conclusion that slavery was an incurable evil, and that there was not the slightest hope that the trade in slaves could be stopped. The most that he thought could be done by

Steps toward
the abolition
of slavery
and the slave-
trade

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

judicious legislation was to mitigate the horrors which the poor negroes endured on board ship, or to prevent wives from being sold away from their husbands or children from their parents. Such was the outlook to one of the greatest political philosophers of modern times, just eighty-two years before the immortal proclamation of President Lincoln! But how vast was the distance between Burke and his contemporary Thurlow, who in 1799 poured out the vials of his wrath upon "the altogether miserable and contemptible" proposal to abolish the slave-trade. George III. agreed with his chancellor, and resisted the movement for abolition with all the obstinacy of which his hard and narrow nature was capable. In 1769 the Virginia legislature had enacted that the further importation of negroes, to be sold into slavery, should be prohibited. But George III. instructed the governor to veto this act, and it was vetoed. In Jefferson's first draft of the Declaration of Independence, this action of the king was made the occasion of a fierce denunciation of slavery, but in deference to the prejudices of South Carolina and Georgia the clause was struck out by Congress. When George III. and his vetoes had been eliminated from the case, it became possible for the states to legislate freely on the subject. In 1776 negro slaves were held in all the thirteen states,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

but in all except South Carolina and Georgia there was a strong sentiment in favour of emancipation. In North Carolina, which contained a large Quaker population, and in which estates were small and were often cultivated by free labour, the pro-slavery feeling was never so strong as in the southernmost states. In Virginia all the foremost statesmen — Washington, Jefferson, Lee, Randolph, Henry, Madison, and Mason — were opposed to the continuance of slavery ; and their opinions were shared by many of the largest planters. For tobacco culture slavery did not seem so indispensable as for the raising of rice and indigo ; and in Virginia the negroes, half civilized by kindly treatment, were not regarded with dread by their masters, like the ill-treated and ferocious blacks of South Carolina and Georgia. After 1808 the policy and the sentiments of Virginia underwent a marked change. The invention of the cotton-gin, taken in connection with the sudden and prodigious development of manufactures in England, greatly stimulated the growth of cotton in the ever-enlarging area of the Gulf States, and created an immense demand for slave-labour, just at the time when the importation of negroes from Africa came to an end. The breeding of slaves, to be sold to the planters of the Gulf states, then became such a profitable occupation in Virginia as

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

entirely to change the popular feeling about slavery. But until 1808 Virginia sympathized with the anti-slavery sentiment which was growing up in the northern states ; and the same was true of Maryland. Emancipation was, however, much more easy to accomplish in the north, because the number of slaves was small, and economic circumstances distinctly favoured free labour. In the work of gradual emancipation the little state of Delaware led the way. In its new constitution of 1776 the further introduction of slaves was prohibited, all restraints upon emancipation having already been removed. In the assembly of Virginia in 1778 a bill prohibiting the further introduction of slaves was moved and carried by Thomas Jefferson, and the same measure was passed in Maryland in 1783, while both these states removed all restraints upon emancipation. North Carolina was not ready to go quite so far, but in 1786 she sought to discourage the slave-trade by putting a duty of £5 per head on all negroes thereafter imported. New Jersey followed the example of Maryland and Virginia. Pennsylvania went farther. In 1780 its assembly enacted that no more slaves should be brought in, and that all children of slaves born after that date should be free. The same provisions were made by New Hampshire in its new constitution of 1783, and by the assemblies of Connecticut and Rhode Island in

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

1784. New York went farther still, and in 1785 enacted that all children of slaves thereafter born should not only be free, but should be admitted to vote on the same conditions as other freemen. In 1788 Virginia, which contained many free negroes, enacted that any person convicted of kidnapping or selling into slavery any free person should suffer death on the gallows. Summing up all these facts, we see that within two years after the independence of the United States had been acknowledged by England, while the two southernmost states had done nothing to check the growth of slavery, North Carolina had discouraged the importation of slaves; Virginia, Maryland, Delaware, and New Jersey had stopped such importation and removed all restraint upon emancipation; and all the remaining states, except Massachusetts, had made gradual emancipation compulsory. Massachusetts had gone still farther. Before the Revolution the anti-slavery feeling had been very strong there, and cases brought into court for the purpose of testing the legality of slavery had been decided in favour of those who were opposed to the continuance of that barbarous institution. In 1777 an American cruiser brought into the port of Salem a captured British ship with slaves on board, and these slaves were advertised for sale, but on complaint being made before the legis-

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

lature they were set free. The new constitution of 1780 contained a declaration of rights which asserted that all men are born free and have an equal and inalienable right to defend their lives and liberties, to acquire property, and to seek and obtain safety and happiness. The supreme court presently decided that this clause worked the abolition of slavery, and accordingly Massachusetts was the first of American states, within the limits of the Union, to become in the full sense of the words a free commonwealth. Of the negro inhabitants, not more than six thousand in number, a large proportion had already for a long time enjoyed freedom ; and all were now admitted to the suffrage on the same terms as other citizens.

By the revolutionary legislation of the states some progress was also effected in the direction of a more complete religious freedom. Pennsylvania and Delaware were the only states in which all Christian sects stood socially and politically on an equal footing.

Progress toward freedom in religion

In Rhode Island all Protestants enjoyed equal privileges, but Catholics were debarred from voting.¹ In Massachusetts, New

¹ This exclusion of Catholics was contrary to the views of Roger Williams and to the spirit of the Rhode Island charter, if not to its letter also. It was effected, nobody knows just how, by the interpolation of a disabling clause in the "Act declaring the rights and privileges of his Majesty's subjects

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Hampshire, and Connecticut, the old Puritan Congregationalism was the established religion. The Congregational church was supported by taxes, and the minister, once chosen, kept his place for life or during good behaviour. He could not be got rid of unless formally investigated and dismissed by an ecclesiastical council. Laws against blasphemy, which were virtually laws against heresy, were in force in these three states. In Massachusetts, Catholic priests were liable to imprisonment for life. Any one who should dare to speculate too freely about the nature of Christ, or the philosophy of the plan of salvation, or to express a doubt as to the plenary inspiration of every word between the two covers of the Bible, was subject to fine and

within this colony," which ends with the words, "and that all men [professing Christianity and] of competent estates, and of civil conversation, who acknowledge and are obedient to the civil magistrate, though of different judgment in religious affairs [Roman Catholics excepted], shall be admitted freemen, and shall have liberty to choose and be chosen officers in the colony, both military and civil." The first interpolation excludes Jews, as the second excludes Catholics, whereas Williams in his noble scheme of Christian fellowship included both Jews and Catholics. These interpolations were certainly made at some time between 1684 and 1705; probably about 1699. They are undoubtedly a symptom of the anti-Catholic wave of feeling which followed the accession of William and Mary, when Catholic Jacobites were likely to be disloyal. They were repealed in 1783. See Greene's *History of Rhode Island*, ii. 490-494.

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

imprisonment. The tithing-man still arrested Sabbath-breakers and shut them up in the town-cage in the market-place; he stopped all unnecessary riding or driving on Sunday, and haled people off to the meeting-house whether they would or not. Such restraints upon liberty were still endured by people who had dared and suffered so much for liberty's sake. The men of Boston strove hard to secure the repeal of these barbarous laws and the disestablishment of the Congregational church; but they were outvoted by the delegates from the rural towns. The most that could be accomplished was the provision that dissenters might escape the church rate by supporting a church of their own. The nineteenth century was to arrive before church and state were finally separated in Massachusetts. The new constitution of New Hampshire was similarly illiberal, and in Connecticut no change was made. Rhode Island nobly distinguished herself by contrast when in 1783 she extended the franchise to Catholics.

In the six states just mentioned the British government had been hindered by charter, and by the overwhelming opposition of the people, from seriously trying to establish the Episcopal church. The sure fate of any such mad experiment had been well illustrated in the time of Andros. In the other seven states there were no such insuperable obstacles. The church of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

England was maintained with languid acquiescence in New York. By the Quakers and Presbyterians of New Jersey and North Carolina, as well as in half-Catholic, half-Puritan Maryland, its supremacy was unwillingly endured; in the turbulent frontier commonwealth of Georgia it was accepted with easy contempt. Only in South Carolina and Virginia had the Church of England ever possessed any real hold upon the people. The Episcopal clergy of South Carolina, men of learning and high character, elected by their own congregations instead of being appointed to their livings by a patron, were thoroughly independent, and in the late war their powerful influence had been mainly exerted in behalf of the patriot cause. Hence, while they retained their influence after the close of the war, there was no difficulty in disestablishing the church. It felt itself able to stand without government support. As soon as the political separation from England was effected, the Episcopal church was accordingly separated from the state, not only in South Carolina, but in all the states in which it had hitherto been upheld by the authority of the British government; and in the constitutions of New Jersey, Georgia, and the two Carolinas, no less than in those of Delaware and Pennsylvania, it was explicitly provided that no man should be obliged to pay any church rate or attend any religious

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

service save according to his own free and unhampered will.

The case of Virginia was peculiar. At first the Church of England had taken deep root there because of the considerable immigration of members of the Cavalier party after the downfall of Charles I. Most of the great statesmen of Virginia in the Revolution — such as Washington, Madison, Mason, Jefferson, Pendleton, Henry, the Lees, and the Randolphs — were descendants of Cavaliers and members of the Church of England.

Church and
state in Vir-
ginia

But for a long time the Episcopal clergy had been falling into discredit. Many of them were appointed by the British government and ordained by the Bishop of London, and they were affected by the irreligious listlessness and the low moral tone of the English church in the eighteenth century. The Virginia legislature thought it necessary to pass special laws prohibiting these clergymen from drunkenness and riotous living. It was said that they spent more time in hunting foxes and betting on race-horses than in conducting religious services or visiting the sick ; and according to Bishop Meade, many dissolute parsons, discarded from the church in England as unworthy, were yet thought fit to be presented with livings in Virginia. To this general character of the clergy there were many exceptions. There were many excellent

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

clergymen, especially among the native Virginians, whose appointment depended to some extent upon the repute in which they were held by their neighbours. But on the whole the system was such as to illustrate all the worst vices of a church supported by the temporal power. The Revolution achieved the discomfiture of a clergy already thus deservedly discredited. The parsons mostly embraced the cause of the crown, but failed to carry their congregations with them, and thus they found themselves arrayed in hopeless antagonism to popular sentiment in a state which contained perhaps fewer Tories in proportion to its population than any other of the thirteen.

At the same time the Episcopal church itself had gradually come to be a minority in the commonwealth. For more than half a century Scotch-Irish Presbyterians, German Lutherans, English Quakers, and Baptists had been working their way southward from Pennsylvania and New Jersey, and had settled in the fertile country west of the Blue Ridge. Daniel Morgan, who had won the most brilliant battle of the Revolution, was one of these men, and sturdiness was a chief characteristic of most of them. So long as these frontier settlers served as a much needed bulwark against the Indians, the church saw fit to ignore them and let them build meeting-houses and carry on religious

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

services as they pleased. But when the peril of Indian attack had been thrust westward into the Ohio valley, and these dissenting communities had waxed strong and prosperous, the ecclesiastical party in the state undertook to lay taxes on them for the support of the Church of England, and to compel them to receive Episcopal clergymen to preach for them, to bless them in marriage, and to bury their dead. The immediate consequence was a revolt which not only overthrew the established church in Virginia, but nearly effected its ruin. The troubles began in 1768, when the Baptists had made their way into the centre of the state, and three of their preachers were arrested by the sheriff of Spottsylvania. As the indictment was read against these men for "preaching the gospel contrary to law," a deep and solemn voice interrupted the proceedings. Patrick Henry had come on horseback many a mile over roughest roads to listen to the trial, and this phrase, which savoured of the religious despotisms of old, was quite too much for him. "May it please your worships," he exclaimed, "what did I hear read? Did I hear an expression that these men, whom your worships are about to try for misdemeanour, are charged with preaching the gospel of the Son of God!" The shamefast silence which ensued was of ill omen for the success of an undertaking so unwel-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

come to the growing liberalism of the time. The zeal of the persecuted Baptists was presently reinforced by the learning and the dialectic skill of the Presbyterian ministers. Unlike the Puritans of New England, these Scotch-Irish Presbyterians were in favour of the total separation of church from state. It was one of their cardinal principles that the civil magistrate had no right to interfere in any way with matters of religion. By taking this broad ground they secured the powerful aid of Thomas Jefferson, and afterwards of Madison and Mason. The controversy went on through all the years of the Revolutionary War, while all Virginia, from the sea to the mountains, rang with fulminations and arguments. In 1776 Jefferson and Mason succeeded in carrying a bill which released all dissenters from parish rates and legalized all forms of worship. At last in 1785, while Jefferson was in France, Madison won for him the crowning victory in the passage of his Religious Freedom Act, 1785, by which the Church of England was disestablished and all parish rates abolished, and still more, all religious tests were done away with. In this last respect Virginia came to the front among all the American states, as Massachusetts had come to the front in the abolition of negro slavery. Nearly all the states still imposed religious tests upon

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

civil office-holders, from simply declaring a general belief in the infallibleness of the Bible to accepting the doctrine of the Trinity. The Virginia statute, which declared that "opinion in matters of religion shall in nowise diminish, enlarge, or affect civil capacities," was translated into French and Italian, and was widely read and commented on in Europe.

It is the historian's unpleasant duty to add that the victory thus happily won was ungenerously followed up. Theological and political odium combined to overwhelm the Episcopal church in Virginia. The persecuted became persecutors. It was contended that the property of the church, having been largely created by unjustifiable taxation, ought to be forfeited. In 1802 its parsonages and glebe lands were sold, its parishes wiped out, and its clergy left without a calling. "A reckless sensualist," said Dr. Hawks, "administered the morning dram to his guests from the silver cup" used in the communion service. But in all this there is a manifest historic lesson. That it should have been possible thus to deal with the Episcopal church in Virginia shows forcibly the moribund condition into which it had been brought through dependence upon the extraneous aid of a political sovereignty from which the people of Virginia were severing their allegiance. The lesson is most vividly enhanced by the con-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

trast with the church of South Carolina, which, rooted in its own soil, was quite able to stand alone when government aid was withdrawn. In Virginia the church in which George Washington was reared had so nearly vanished by the year 1830 that Chief Justice Marshall said it was folly to dream of reviving so dead a thing. Nevertheless, under the noble ministration of its great bishop, William Meade, the Episcopal church in Virginia, no longer relying upon state aid, but trusting in the divine persuasive power of spiritual truth, was even then entering upon a new life and beginning to exercise a most wholesome influence.

The separation of the English church in America from the English crown was the occasion of a curious difficulty with regard to the ordination of bishops. Until after the Revolution there were no bishops of that church in America, and between 1783 and 1785 it was not clear how candidates for holy orders could receive the necessary consecration. In 1784 a young divinity student from Virginia, named Mason Weems, who had been studying for some time in England, applied to the Bishop of London for admission to holy orders, but was rudely refused. Weems then had recourse to Watson, Bishop of Llandaff, author of the famous reply to Gibbon. Watson treated him kindly and advised

Mason
Weems
and Samuel
Seabury

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

him to get a letter of recommendation from the governor of Maryland, but after this had been obtained he referred him to the Archbishop of Canterbury, who said that nothing could be done without the consent of Parliament. As the law stood, no one could be admitted into the ranks of the English clergy without taking the oath of allegiance and acknowledging the king of England as the head of the church. Weems then wrote to John Adams at the Hague, and to Franklin at Paris, to see if there were any Protestant bishops on the Continent from whom he could obtain consecration. A rather amusing diplomatic correspondence ensued, and finally the king of Denmark, after taking theological advice, kindly offered the services of a Danish bishop, who was to perform the ceremony in Latin. Weems does not seem to have availed himself of this permission, probably because the question soon reached a more satisfactory solution.¹ About the same

¹ It was this same Mason Weems that was afterward known in Virginia as Parson Weems, of Pohick parish, near Mount Vernon. See *Magazine of American History*, iii. 465-472; v. 85-90. At first an eccentric preacher, Parson Weems became an itinerant violin-player and book-peddler, and author of that edifying work, *The Life of George Washington, with Curious Anecdotes equally Honourable to Himself and Exemplary to his Young Countrymen*. On the title-page the author describes himself as "formerly rector of Mount Vernon Parish," — which Bishop Meade calls preposterous. The book

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

time the Episcopal church in Connecticut sent one of its ministers, Samuel Seabury of New London, to England, to be ordained as bishop. The oaths of allegiance and supremacy stood as much in the way of the learned and famous minister as in that of the young and obscure student. Seabury accordingly appealed to the non-juring Jacobite bishops of the Episcopal church of Scotland, and at length was
November 14, 1784
duly ordained at Aberdeen as bishop of the diocese of Connecticut. While Seabury was in England, the churches in the various states chose delegates to a general convention, which framed a constitution for the "Protestant Episcopal Church of the United States of America." Advowsons were abolished, some parts of the liturgy were dropped, and the tenure of ministers, even of bishops, was to be during good behaviour. At the same time a friendly letter was sent to the bishops of England, urging them to secure, if possible, an act of Parliament whereby American clergymen might be ordained without taking the oaths

is a farrago of absurdities, reminding one, alike in its text and its illustrations, of an overgrown English chap-book of the olden time. It has had an enormous sale, and has very likely contributed more than any other single book toward forming the popular notion of Washington. It seems to have been this fiddling parson that first gave currency to the everlasting story of the cherry-tree and the little hatchet.

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

of allegiance and supremacy. Such an act was obtained without much difficulty, and three American bishops were accordingly consecrated in due form. The peculiar ordination of Seabury was also recognized as valid by the general convention, and thus the Episcopal church in America was fairly started on its independent career.

This foundation of a separate episcopacy west of the Atlantic was accompanied by the further separation of the Methodists as a distinct religious society. Although John Wesley regarded the notion of an apostolical succession as superstitious, he had made no attempt to separate his followers from the national church. He translated the titles of "bishop" and "priest" from Greek into Latin and English, calling them "superintendent" and "elder," but he did not deny the king's headship. Meanwhile during the long period of his preaching there had begun to grow up a Methodist church in America. George Whitefield had come over and preached in Georgia in 1737, and in Massachusetts in 1744, where he encountered much opposition on the part of the Puritan clergy. But the first Methodist church in America was founded in the city of New York in 1766. In 1772 Wesley sent over Francis Asbury, a man of shrewd sense and deep religious feeling, to act as his assistant and representative in this

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

country. At that time there were not more than a thousand Methodists, with six preachers, and all these were in the middle and southern colonies; but within five years, largely owing to the zeal and eloquence of Francis Asbury and the Methodists, these numbers had increased sevenfold. At the end of the war, seeing the American Methodists cut loose from the English establishment, Wesley in his own house at Bristol, with the aid of two presbyters, proceeded to ordain ministers enough to make a presbytery, and thereupon set apart Thomas Coke to be "superintendent" or bishop for America. On the same day of November, 1784, on which Scabury was consecrated by the non-jurors at Aberdeen, Coke began preaching and baptizing in Maryland, in rude chapels built of logs or under the shade of forest trees. On Christmas Eve a conference assembled at Baltimore, at which Asbury was chosen bishop by some sixty ministers present, and ordained by Coke, and the constitution of the Methodist church in America was organized. Among the poor white people of the southern states, and among the negroes, the new church rapidly obtained great sway; and at a somewhat later date it began to assume considerable proportions in the north.

Four years after this the Presbyterians, who were most numerous in the middle states, or-

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

ganized their government in a general assembly, which was also attended by Congregationalist delegates from New England in the capacity of simple advisers. The theological difference between these two sects was so slight that an alliance grew up between them, and outside of New England their names have come to be inaccurately used as if synonymous.¹ Such a difference seemed to vanish when confronted with the newer differences that began to spring up soon after the close of the Revolution. The revolt against the doctrine of eternal punishment was already beginning in New England, and among the learned and thoughtful clergy of Massachusetts the seeds of Unitarianism were germinating. The gloomy intolerance of an older time was beginning to yield to more enlightened views. In 1789 the first Roman Catholic church in New England was dedicated in Boston. So great had been the prejudice against this sect that in 1784 there were only 600 Catholics in all New England. In the four southernmost states, on the other hand, there were 2500; in New York and New Jersey there were 1700; in Delaware and Pennsylvania there were 7700; in Maryland there were 20,000; while among the French settlements along the eastern bank of

Presbyterians;
Roman Catholics

¹ Even in Connecticut I have heard Congregationalists called Presbyterians, but never in Massachusetts.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the Mississippi there were supposed to be nearly 12,000. In 1786 John Carroll, a cousin of Charles Carroll of Carrollton, was selected by the Pope as his apostolic vicar, and was afterward successively made bishop of Baltimore and archbishop of the United States. By 1789 all obstacles to the Catholic worship had been done away with in all the states.

In this brief survey of the principal changes wrought in the several states by the separation from England, one cannot fail to be struck with their conservative character. Things proceeded just as they had done from time immemorial with the English race. Forms of government were modified just far enough to adapt them to the new situation and no farther. The abolition of entails, of primogeniture, and of such few manorial privileges as existed, were useful reforms of far less sweeping character than similar changes would have been in England; and they were accordingly effected with ease. Even the abolition of slavery in the northern states, where negroes were few in number and chiefly employed in domestic service, wrought nothing in the remotest degree resembling a social revolution. But nowhere was this constitutionally cautious and precedent-loving mode of proceeding more thoroughly exemplified than in the measures just related, whereby the Episcopal and Methodist churches were separated from

THE THIRTEEN COMMONWEALTHS

the English establishment and placed upon an independent footing in the new world. From another point of view it may be observed that all these changes, except in the instance of slavery, tended to assimilate the states to one another in their political and social condition. So far as they went, these changes were favourable to union, — and this was perhaps especially true in the case of the ecclesiastical bodies, which brought citizens of different states into coöperation in pursuit of specific ends in common.

Except in the instance of slavery, all these changes were favourable to union

At the same time this survey most forcibly reminds us how completely the legislation which immediately affected the daily domestic life of the citizen was the legislation of the single state in which he lived. In the various reforms just passed in review the United States government took no part, and could not from the nature of the case. Even to-day our national government has no power over such matters, and it is to be hoped it never will have. But at the present day our national government performs many important functions of common concern, which a century ago were scarcely performed at all. The organization of the single state was old in principle and well understood by everybody. It therefore worked easily, and such changes as those above described were brought about with little friction. On the other hand, the princi-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ples upon which the various relations of the states to each other were to be adjusted were not well understood. There was wide disagreement upon the subject, and the attempt to compromise between opposing views was not at first successful. Hence, in the management of affairs which concerned the United States as a nation, we shall not find the central machinery working smoothly or quietly. We are about to traverse a period of uncertainty and confusion, in which it required all the political sagacity and all the good temper of the people to save the half-built ship of state from going to pieces on the rocks of civil contention.

III

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

THAT some kind of union existed between the states was doubted by no one. Ever since the assembling of the first Continental Congress in 1774 the thirteen commonwealths had acted in concert, and sometimes most generously, as when Maryland and South Carolina had joined in the Declaration of Independence without any crying grievances of their own, from a feeling that the cause of one should be the cause of all. It has sometimes been said that the Union was in its origin a league of sovereign states, each of which surrendered a specific portion of its sovereignty to the federal government for the sake of the common welfare. Grave political arguments had been based upon this alleged fact, but such an account of the matter is not historically true. There never was a time when Massachusetts or Virginia was an absolutely sovereign state like Holland or France. Sovereign over their own internal affairs they are to-day as they were at the time of the Revolution, but there was never a time when they presented themselves before other

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

nations as sovereign, or were recognized as such. Under the government of England before the Revolution the thirteen commonwealths were independent of one another, and were held together, juxtaposed rather than united, only through their allegiance to the British crown. Had that allegiance been maintained there is no telling how long they might have gone on thus disunited ; and this, it seems, should be one of our chief reasons for rejoicing that the political connection with England was dissolved when it was. A permanent redress of grievances, and even virtual independence such as Canada now enjoys, we might perhaps have gained had we listened to Lord North's proposals after the surrender of Burgoyne ; but the formation of the Federal Union would certainly have been long postponed, and when we realize the grandeur of the work which we are now doing in the world through the simple fact of such a union, we must believe that such an issue would have been unfortunate. However this may be, it is clear that until the connection with England was severed the thirteen commonwealths were not united, nor were they sovereign. It is also clear that in the very act of severing their connection with England these commonwealths entered into some sort of union which was incompatible with their absolute sovereignty

The several
states have
never enjoyed
complete sov-
ereignty

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

taken severally. It was not the people of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, and so on through the list, that declared their independence of Great Britain, but it was the representatives of the United States in Congress assembled, and speaking as a single body in the name of the whole. It was not the segments of the snake, but the creature in its integrity, that captured two British armies.

Three weeks before the Declaration of Independence was adopted, Congress appointed a committee to draw up the "articles of confederation and perpetual union," by which the sovereignty of the several states was expressly limited and curtailed in many important particulars. This committee had finished its work by the 12th of July, but the articles were not adopted by Congress until the autumn of 1777, and they were not finally put into operation until the spring of 1781. During this inchoate period of union the action of the United States was that of a confederation in which some portion of the several sovereignties was understood to be surrendered to the whole. It was the business of the articles to define the precise nature and extent of this surrendered sovereignty which no state by itself ever exercised. In the mean time this sovereignty, undefined in nature and extent, was exercised, as well as circumstances permitted, by the Continental Congress.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

A most remarkable body was this Continental Congress. For the vicissitudes through which it passed, there is perhaps no other revolutionary body, save the Long Parliament, which can be compared with it. For its origin we must look back to the committees of correspondence devised by Jonathan Mayhew, Samuel Adams, and Dabney Carr. First assembled in 1774 to meet an emergency which was generally believed to be only temporary, it continued to sit for nearly seven years before its powers were ever clearly defined; and during those seven years it exercised some of the highest functions of sovereignty which are possible to any governing body. It declared the independence of the United States; it contracted an offensive and defensive alliance with France; it raised and organized a Continental army; it borrowed large sums of money, and pledged what the lenders understood to be the national credit for their repayment; it issued an inconvertible paper currency, granted letters of marque, and built a navy. All this it did in the exercise of what in later times would have been called "implied war powers," and its authority rested upon the general acquiescence in the purposes for which it acted and in the measures which it adopted. Under such circumstances its functions were very inefficiently performed. But the articles of confed-

The Continental Congress; its extraordinary character

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

eration, which in 1781 defined its powers, served at the same time to limit them; so that for the remaining eight years of its existence the Continental Congress grew weaker and weaker, until it was swept away to make room for a more efficient government.

John Dickinson is supposed to have been the principal author of the articles of confederation; but as the work of the committee was done in secret and has never been reported, the point cannot be deter-

The articles
of confederation

mined. In November, 1777, Congress sent the articles to the several state legislatures, with a circular letter recommending them as containing the only plan of union at all likely to be adopted. In the course of the next fifteen months the articles were ratified by all the states except Maryland, which refused to sign until the states laying claim to the northwestern lands, and especially Virginia, should surrender their claims to the confederation. We shall by and by see, when we come to explain this point in detail, that from this action of Maryland there flowed beneficent consequences that were little dreamed of. It was first in the great chain of events which led directly to the formation of the Federal Union. Having carried her point, Maryland ratified the articles on the first day of March, 1781; and thus in the last and most brilliant period of the war, while Greene was leading

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Cornwallis on his fatal chase across North Carolina, the confederation proposed at the time of the Declaration of Independence was finally consummated.

According to the language of the articles, the states entered into a firm league of friendship with each other; and in order to secure and perpetuate such friendship, the freemen of each state were entitled to all the privileges and immunities of freemen in all the other states. Mutual extradition of criminals was established, and in each state full faith and credit was to be given to the records, acts, and judicial proceedings of every other state. This universal inter-citizenship was what gave reality to the nascent and feeble Union. In all the common business relations of life, the man of New Hampshire could deal with the man of Georgia on an equal footing before the law. But this was almost the only effectively cohesive provision in the whole instrument. Throughout the remainder of the articles its language was largely devoted to reconciling the theory that the states were severally sovereign with the visible fact that they were already merged to some extent in a larger political body. The sovereignty of this larger body was vested in the Congress of delegates appointed yearly by the states. No state was to be represented by less than two or more than seven members; no one could be a dele-

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

gate for more than three years out of every six ; and no delegate could hold any salaried office under the United States. As in colonial times the states had, to preserve their self-government, insisted upon paying their governors and judges, instead of allowing them to be paid out of the royal treasury, so now the delegates in Congress were paid by their own states. In determining questions in Congress, each state had one vote, without regard to population ; but a bare majority was not enough to carry any important measure. Not only for such extraordinary matters as wars and treaties, but even for the regular and ordinary business of raising money to carry on the government, not a single step could be taken without the consent of at least nine of the thirteen states ; and this provision well-nigh sufficed of itself to block the wheels of federal legislation. The Congress assembled each year on the first Monday of November, and could not adjourn for a longer period than six months. During its recess the continuity of government was preserved by an executive committee, consisting of one delegate from each state, and known as the "committee of the states." Saving such matters of warfare or treaty as the public interest might require to be kept secret, all the proceedings of Congress were entered in a journal, to be published monthly ; and the years

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

and nays must be entered should any delegate request it. The executive departments of war, finance, and so forth were entrusted at first to committees, until experience soon showed the necessity of single heads. There was a president of Congress, who, as representing the dignity of the United States, was, in a certain sense, the foremost person in the country, but he had no more power than any other delegate. Of the fourteen presidents between 1774 and 1789, perhaps only Randolph, Hancock, and Laurens are popularly remembered in that capacity; Jay, St. Clair, Mifflin, and Lee are remembered for other things; Hanson, Griffin, Gorham, and Boudinot are scarcely remembered at all, save by the student of American history.

Between the Congress thus constituted and the several state governments the attributes of sovereignty were shared in such a way as to produce a minimum of result with a maximum of effort. The states were prohibited from keeping up any naval or military force, except militia, or from entering into any treaty or alliance, either with a foreign power or between themselves, without the consent of Congress. No state could engage in war except by way of defence against a sudden Indian attack. Congress had the sole right of determining on peace and war, of sending and receiving ambassadors,

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

of making treaties, of adjudicating all disputes between the states, of managing Indian affairs, and of regulating the value of coin and fixing the standard of weights and measures. Congress took control of the post-office on condition that no more revenue should be raised from postage than should suffice to discharge the expenses of the service. Congress controlled the army, but was provided with no means of raising soldiers save through requisitions upon the states, and it could only appoint officers above the rank of colonel; the organization of regiments was left entirely in the hands of the states. The traditional and wholesome dread of a standing army was great, but there was no such deep-seated jealousy of a navy, and Congress was accordingly allowed not only to appoint all naval officers, but also to establish courts of admiralty.

Several essential attributes of sovereignty were thus withheld from the states; and by assuming all debts contracted by Congress prior to the adoption of the articles, and solemnly pledging the public faith for their payment, it was implicitly declared that the sovereignty here accorded to Congress was substantially the same as that which it had asserted and exercised ever since the severing of the connection with England. The articles simply defined the relations of the states to the Confederation as they had

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

already shaped themselves. Indeed, the articles, though not finally ratified till 1781, had been known to Congress and to the people ever since 1776 as their expected constitution, and political action had been shaped in general accordance with the theory on which they had been drawn up. They show that political action was at no time based on the view of the states as absolutely sovereign, but they also show that the share of sovereignty accorded to Congress was very inadequate even to the purposes of an effective confederation. The position in which they left Congress was hardly more than that of the deliberative head of a league. For the most

The articles failed to create a federal government endowed with real sovereignty

fundamental of all the attributes of sovereignty — the power of taxation — was not given to Congress. It could neither raise taxes through an excise nor through custom-house duties; it could only make requisitions upon the thirteen members of the confederacy in proportion to the assessed value of their real estate, and it was not provided with any means of enforcing these requisitions. On this point the articles contained nothing beyond the vague promise of the states to obey. The power of levying taxes was thus retained entirely by the states. They not only imposed direct taxes, as they do to-day, but they laid duties on exports and imports, each according

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

to its own narrow view of its local interests. The only restriction upon this was that such state-imposed duties must not interfere with the stipulations of any foreign treaties such as Congress might make in pursuance of treaties already proposed to the courts of France and Spain. Besides all this, the states shared with Congress the powers of coining money, of emitting bills of credit, and of making their promissory notes a legal tender for debts.

Such was the constitution under which the United States had begun to drift toward anarchy even before the close of the Revolutionary War, but which could only be amended by the unanimous consent of all the thirteen states. The historian cannot but regard this difficulty of amendment as a fortunate circumstance ; for in the troubles which presently arose it led the distressed people to seek some other method of relief, and thus prepared the way for the Convention of 1787, which destroyed the whole vicious scheme, and gave us a form of government under which we have just completed a century unparalleled for peace and prosperity. Besides this extreme difficulty of amendment, the fatal defects of the Confederation were three in number. The first defect was the two thirds vote necessary for any important legislation in Congress ; under this rule any five of the states — as, for example, the four southernmost states

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

with Maryland, or the four New England states with New Jersey — could defeat the most sorely needed measures. The second defect was the impossibility of presenting a united front to foreign countries in respect to commerce. The third and greatest defect was the lack of any means, on the part of Congress, of enforcing obedience. Not only was there no federal executive or judiciary worthy of the name, but the central government operated only upon states, and not upon individuals. Congress could call for troops and for money in strict conformity with the articles; but should any state prove delinquent in furnishing its quota, there were no constitutional means of compelling it to obey the call. This defect was seen and deplored at the outset by such men as Washington and Madison, but the only remedy which at first occurred to them was one more likely to kill than to cure. Only six weeks after the ratification of the articles, Madison proposed an amendment "to give to the United States full authority to employ their force, as well by sea as by land, to compel any delinquent state to fulfil its federal engagements." Washington approved of this measure, hoping, as he said, that "a knowledge that this power was lodged in Congress might be the means to prevent its ever being exercised, and the more readily induce obedience. Indeed," added Washington, "if

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Congress were unquestionably possessed of the power, nothing should induce the display of it but obstinate disobedience and the urgency of the general welfare." Madison argued that in the very nature of the Confederation such a right of coercion was necessarily implied, though not expressed in the articles, and much might have been said in behalf of this opinion. The Confederation explicitly declared itself to be perpetual, yet how could it perpetuate itself for a dozen years without the right to coerce its refractory members? Practically, however, the remedy was one which could never have been applied without breaking the Confederation into fragments. To use the army or navy in coercing a state meant nothing less than civil war. The local yeomanry would have turned out against the Continental army with as high a spirit as that with which they swarmed about the British enemy at Lexington or King's Mountain. A government which could not collect the taxes for its yearly budget without firing upon citizens or blockading two or three harbours would have been the absurdest political anomaly imaginable. No such idea could have entered the mind of a statesman save from the hope that if one state should prove refractory, all the others would immediately frown upon it and uphold Congress in overawing it. In such case the knowledge that Congress had the power would doubt-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

less have been enough to make its exercise unnecessary. But in fact this hope was disappointed, for the delinquency of each state simply set an example of disobedience for all the others to follow; and the amendment, had it been carried, would merely have armed Congress with a threat which everybody would have laughed at. So manifestly hopeless was the case to Pelatiah Webster that, as early as May, 1781, he published an able pamphlet, urging the necessity for a federal convention for overhauling the whole scheme of government from beginning to end.

The military weakness due to this imperfect governmental organization may be illustrated by comparing the number of regular troops which Congress was able to keep in the field during the Revolutionary War with the number maintained by the United States government during the War of Secession. A rough estimate, obtained from averages, will suffice to show the broad contrast. In 1863, the middle year of the War of Secession, the total population of the loyal states was about 23,491,600, of whom nearly one fifth, or 4,698,320, were adult males of military age. Supposing one adult male out of every five to have been under arms at one time, the number would have been 939,664. Now the total number of troops enlisted in the northern army

Military
weakness of
the govern-
ment

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

during the four years of war, reduced to a uniform standard, was 2,320,272, or an average of 580,068 under arms in any single year. In point of fact, this average was reached before the middle of the war, and the numbers went on increasing, until at the end there were more than a million men under arms, — at least one out of every five adult males in the northern states. On the other hand, in 1779, the middle year of the Revolutionary War, the white population of the United States was about 2,175,000, of whom 435,000 were adult males of military age. Supposing one out of every five of these to have been under arms at once, the number would have been 87,000. Now in the spring of 1777, when the Continental Congress was at the highest point of authority which it ever reached, when France was willing to lend it money freely, when its paper currency was not yet discredited and it could make liberal offers of bounties, a demand was made upon the states for 80,000 men, or nearly one fifth of the adult male population, to serve for three years or during the war. Only 34,820 were obtained. The total number of men in the field in that most critical year, including the swarms of militia who came to the rescue at Ridgefield and Bennington and Oriskany, and the Pennsylvania militia who turned out while their state was invaded, was 68,720. In 1781, when the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

credit of Congress was greatly impaired, although military activity again rose to a maximum and it was necessary for the people to strain every nerve, the total number of men in the field, militia and all, was only 29,340, of whom only 13,292 were Continentals; and it was left for the genius of Washington and Greene, working with desperate energy and most pitiful resources, to save the country. A more impressive contrast to the readiness with which the demands of the government were met in the War of Secession can hardly be imagined. Had the country put forth its strength in 1781 as it did in 1864, an army of 90,000 men might have overwhelmed Clinton at the north and Cornwallis at the south, without asking any favours of the French fleet. Had it put forth its full strength in 1777, four years of active warfare might have been spared. Mr. Lecky explains this difference by his favourite hypothesis that the American Revolution was the work of a few ultra-radical leaders, with whom the people were not generally in sympathy; and he thinks we could not expect to see great heroism or self-sacrifice manifested by a people who went to war over what he calls a "money dispute."¹ But there is no reason for supposing that the loyalists represented the general sentiment of the country in the Revolutionary War any more

¹ *History of England in the Eighteenth Century*, iii. 447.

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

than the peace party represented the general sentiment of the northern states in the War of Secession. There is no reason for supposing that the people were less at heart in 1781, in fighting for the priceless treasure of self-government, than they were in 1864, when they fought for the maintenance of the pacific principles underlying our Federal Union. The differences in the organization of the government, and in its power of operating directly upon the people, are quite enough to explain the difference between the languid conduct of the earlier war and the energetic conduct of the later.

Impossible as Congress found it to fill the quota of the army, the task of raising a revenue by requisitions upon the states was even more discouraging. Every state had its own war debt, and several were applicants for foreign loans not easy to obtain, so that none could without the greatest difficulty raise a surplus to hand over to Congress.

Extreme
difficulty of
obtaining a
revenue

The Continental rag money had ceased to circulate by the end of 1780, and our foreign credit was nearly ruined. The French government began to complain of the heavy demands which the Americans made upon its exchequer, and Vergennes, in sending over a new loan in the fall of 1782, warned Franklin that no more must be expected. To save American credit from destruction, it was at least necessary that

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the interest on the public debt should be paid. For this purpose Congress in 1781 asked permission to levy a five per cent. duty on imports. The modest request was the signal for a year of angry discussion. Again and again it was asked, If taxes could thus be levied by any power outside the state, why had we ever opposed the Stamp Act or the tea duties? The question was indeed a serious one, and as an instance of reasoning from analogy seemed plausible enough. After more than a year Massachusetts consented, — by a bare majority of two in the House and one in the Senate, — reserving to herself the right of appointing the collectors. The bill was then vetoed by Governor Hancock, though one day too late, and so it was saved. But Rhode Island flatly refused her consent, and so did Virginia, though Madison earnestly pleaded the cause of the public credit. For the current expenses of the government in that same year \$9,000,000 were needed. It was calculated that \$4,000,000 might be raised by a loan, and the other \$5,000,000 were demanded of the states. At the end of the year \$422,000 had been collected, not a cent of which came from Georgia, the Carolinas, or Delaware. Rhode Island, which paid \$38,000, did the best of all according to its resources. Of the Continental taxes assessed in 1783, only one fifth part had been paid by the

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

middle of 1785. And the worst of it was that no one could point to a remedy for this state of things or could assign any probable end to it.

Under such circumstances the public credit sank at home as well as abroad. Foreign creditors — even France, who had been nothing if not generous with her loans — might be made to wait; but there were creditors at home who, should they prove ugly, could not be so easily put off. The disbandment of the army in the summer of 1783, before the British troops had evacuated New York, was hastened by the impossibility of paying the soldiers and the dread of what they might do under such provocation. Though peace had been officially announced, Hamilton and Livingston urged that, for the sake of appearances if for no other reason, the army should be kept together so long as the British remained in New York, if not until they should have surrendered the western frontier posts. But Congress could not pay the army, and was afraid of it — Dread of the army and not without some reason. Discouraged at the length of time which had passed since they had received any money, the soldiers had begun to fear lest, now that their services were no longer needed, their honest claims would be set aside. Among the officers, too, there was grave discontent. In the spring of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

1778, after the dreadful winter at Valley Forge, several officers had thrown up their commissions, and others threatened to do likewise. To avert the danger, Washington had urged Congress to promise half-pay for life to such officers as should serve to the end of the war. It was only with great difficulty that he succeeded in obtaining a promise of half-pay for seven years, and even this raised an outcry throughout the country, which seemed to dread its natural defenders only less than its enemies. In the fall of 1780, however, in the general depression which followed upon the disasters at Charleston and Camden, the collapse of the paper money, and the discovery of Arnold's treason, there was serious danger that the army would fall to pieces. At this critical moment Washington had earnestly appealed to Congress, and against the strenuous opposition of Samuel Adams had at length extorted the promise of half-pay for life. In the spring of 1782, seeing the utter inability of Congress to discharge its pecuniary obligations, many officers began to doubt whether the promise would ever be kept. It had been made before the articles of confederation, which required the assent of nine states to any such measure, had been finally ratified. It was well known that nine states had never been found to favour the measure, and it was now feared that it might be repealed or repudiated,

PLAN OF THE
CITY OF NEW-YORK

Drawn by Major Holland.
SURVEYOR GENERAL.
1776.

Quarter of a Mile
Parliament





REFERENCES

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| A Military Hospital. | O St Pauls |
| B Governors House | P Trinity Church. |
| C Secretary's Office. | Q St Georges Chapel |
| D Custom House | R Old Dutch Church. |
| E Fish Market | S New Dutch Church |
| F Old Style Market | T Lutheran Church. |
| G Meat Market | V Calvinist Church |
| H Fly Market | W French Protestant Church |
| I Pecks Market | X Quakers Meeting. |
| K Overge Market | Y Friends Meeting |
| L Kitching | Z Baptist Meeting |
| M Dutch Free School | a Moravian Meeting |
| N Engine wharf | b New Lutheran Meeting |
| the Club with Fresh Water | c Jews Synagogue |



THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

so loud was the popular clamour against it. All this comes of republican government, said some of the officers; too many cooks spoil the broth; a dozen heads are as bad as no head; you do not know whose promises to trust; a monarchy, with a good king whom all men can trust, would extricate us from these difficulties. In this mood, Colonel Louis Nicola, of the Pennsylvania line, a foreigner by birth, addressed a long and well-argued letter to Washington, setting forth the troubles of the time, and urging him to come forward as a saviour of society, and accept the crown at the hands of his faithful soldiers.

Supposed
scheme for
making
Washington
king

Nicola was an aged man, of excellent character, and in making this suggestion he seemed to be acting as spokesman of a certain clique or party among the officers,—how numerous is not known. Washington instantly replied that Nicola could not have found a person to whom such a scheme could be more odious, and he was at a loss to conceive what he had ever done to have it supposed that he could for one moment listen to a suggestion so fraught with mischief to his country. Lest the affair, becoming known, should enhance the popular distrust of the army, Washington said nothing about it. But as the year went by, and the outcry against half-pay continued, and Congress showed symptoms of its willingness to compromise the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

matter, the discontent of the army increased. Officers and soldiers alike brooded over their wrongs. "The army," said General Macdougall, "is verging to that state which, we are told, will make a wise man mad." The peril of the situation was increased by the well-meant but injudicious whisperings of other public creditors, who believed that if the army would only take a firm stand and insist upon a grant of permanent funds to Congress for liquidating all public debts, the states could probably be prevailed upon to make such a grant. Robert Morris, the able secretary of finance, held this opinion, and did not believe that the states could be brought to terms in any other way. His namesake and assistant, Gouverneur Morris, held similar views, and gave expression to them in February, 1783, in a letter to General Greene, who was still commanding in South Carolina. When Greene received the letter, he urged upon the legislature of that state, in most guarded and moderate language, the paramount need of granting a revenue to Congress, and hinted that the army would not be satisfied with anything less. The assembly straightway flew into a rage, and shouted, "No dictation by a Cromwell!" South Carolina had consented to the five per cent. impost, but now she revoked it, to show her independence, and Greene's eyes were opened at once to the danger of the

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

slightest appearance of military intervention in civil affairs.

At the same time a violent outbreak in the army at Newburgh was barely prevented by the unfailing tact of Washington. A rumour went about the camp that it was generally expected the army would not disband until the question of pay should be settled, and that the public creditors looked to them to make some such demonstration as would overawe the delinquent states. General Gates had lately emerged from the retirement in which he had been fain to hide himself after Camden, and had rejoined the army, where there was now such a field for intrigue. An odious aroma of impotent malice clings about his memory on this last occasion on which the historian needs to notice him. He plotted in secret with officers of the staff and others. One of his staff, Major Armstrong, wrote an anonymous appeal to the troops, and another, Colonel Barber, caused it to be circulated about the camp. It named the next day for a meeting to consider grievances. Its language was inflammatory. "My friends!" it said, "after seven long years your suffering courage has conducted the United States of America through a doubtful and bloody war; and peace returns to bless—whom? A country willing to redress your wrongs, cherish your worth, and

The dangerous Newburgh address, March 11, 1783

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

reward your services? Or is it rather a country that tramples upon your rights, disdains your cries, and insults your distresses? . . . If such be your treatment while the swords you wear are necessary for the defence of America, what have you to expect when those very swords, the instruments and companions of your glory, shall be taken from your sides, and no mark of military distinction left but your wants, infirmities, and scars? If you have sense enough to discover and spirit to oppose tyranny, whatever garb it may assume, awake to your situation. If the present moment be lost, your threats hereafter will be as empty as your entreaties now. Appeal from the justice to the fears of government, and suspect the man who would advise to longer forbearance."

Better English has seldom been wasted in a worse cause. Washington, the man who was aimed at in the last sentence, got hold of the paper next day, just in time, as he said, "to arrest the feet that stood wavering on a precipice." The memory of the revolt of the Pennsylvania line, which had so alarmed the people in 1781, was still fresh in men's minds; and here was an invitation to more wholesale mutiny, which could hardly fail to end in bloodshed, and might precipitate the perplexed and embarrassed country into civil war. Washington issued a general order, recognizing the existence of the

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

manifesto, but overruling it so far as to appoint the meeting for a later day, with the senior major-general, who happened to be Gates, to preside. This order, which neither discipline nor courtesy could disregard, in a measure tied Gates's hands, while it gave Washington time to ascertain the extent of the disaffection. On the appointed day he suddenly came into the meeting, and amid profoundest silence broke forth in a most eloquent and touching speech. Sympathizing keenly with the sufferings of his hearers, and fully admitting their claims, he appealed to their better feelings, and reminded them of the terrible difficulties under which Congress laboured, and of the folly of putting themselves in the wrong. He still counselled forbearance as the greatest of victories, and with consummate skill he characterized the anonymous appeal as undoubtedly the work of some crafty emissary of the British, eager to disgrace the army which they had not been able to vanquish. All were hushed by that majestic presence and those solemn tones. The knowledge that he had refused all pay, while enduring more than any other man in the room, gave added weight to every word. In proof of the good faith of Congress he began reading a letter from one of the members, when, finding his sight dim, he paused and took from his pocket the new pair of spectacles which the astronomer

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

David Rittenhouse had just sent him. He had never worn spectacles in public, and as he put them on he said, in his simple manner and with his pleasant smile, "I have grown gray in your service, and now find myself growing blind." While all hearts were softened he went on reading the letter, and then withdrew, leaving the meeting to its deliberations. There was a sudden and mighty revulsion of feeling. A motion was reported declaring "unshaken confidence in the justice of Congress;" and it was added that "the officers of the American army view with abhorrence and reject with disdain the infamous proposals contained in a late anonymous address to them." The crestfallen Gates, as chairman, had nothing to do but put the question and report it carried unanimously; for if any still remained obdurate they no longer dared to show it. Washington immediately set forth the urgency of the case in an earnest letter to Congress, and one week later the matter was settled by an act commuting half-pay for life into a gross sum equal to five years' full pay, to be discharged at once by certificates bearing interest at six per cent. Such poor paper was all that Congress had to pay with, but it was all ultimately redeemed; and while the commutation was advantageous to the government, it was at the same time greatly for the interest of the officers, while they were looking out for new

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

means of livelihood, to have their claims adjusted at once, and to receive something which could do duty as a respectable sum of money.

Nothing, however, could prevent the story of the Newburgh affair from being published all over the country, and it greatly added to the distrust with which the army was regarded on general principles. What might have happened was forcibly suggested by a miserable occurrence in June, about two months after the disbanding of the army had begun. Some eighty soldiers of the Pennsylvania line, mutinous from discomfort and want of pay, broke from their camp at Lancaster and marched down to Philadelphia, led by a sergeant or two. They drew up in line before the state house, where Congress was assembled, and after passing the grog began throwing stones and pointing their muskets at the windows. They demanded pay, and threatened, if it were not forthcoming, to seize the members of Congress and hold them as hostages, or else to break into the bank where the federal deposits were kept. The executive council of Pennsylvania sat in the same building, and so the federal government appealed to the state government for protection. The appeal was fruitless. President Dickinson had a few state militia at his disposal, but did not dare to summon them, for

Congress
driven from
Philadelphia
by mutinous
soldiers, June
21, 1783

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

fear they should side with the rioters. The city government was equally listless, and the townsfolk went their ways as if it were none of their business ; and so Congress fled across the river and on to Princeton, where the college afforded it shelter. Thus in a city of thirty-two thousand inhabitants, the largest city in the country, the government of the United States, the body which had just completed a treaty browbeating England and France, was ignominiously turned out of doors by a handful of drunken mutineers. The affair was laughed at by many, but sensible men keenly felt the disgrace, and asked what would be thought in Europe of a government which could not even command the services of the police. The army became more unpopular than ever, and during the summer and fall many town meetings were held in New England, condemning the Commutation Act. Are we not poor enough already, cried the farmers, that we must be taxed to support in idle luxury a riotous rabble of soldiery, or create an aristocracy of men with gold lace and epaulets, who will presently plot against our liberties ? The Massachusetts legislature protested ; the people of Connecticut meditated resistance. A convention was held at Middletown in December, at which two thirds of the towns in the state were represented, and the best method of overruling Congress was dis-

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

cussed. Much high-flown eloquence was wasted, but the convention broke up without deciding upon any course of action. The matter had become so serious that wise men changed their minds, and disapproved of proceedings calculated to throw Congress into contempt. Samuel Adams, who had almost violently opposed the grant of half-pay and had been dissatisfied with the Commutation Act, now came completely over to the other side. Whatever might be thought of the policy of the measures, he said, Congress had an undoubted right to adopt them. The army had been necessary for the defence of our liberties, and the public faith had been pledged to the payment of the soldiers. States were as much bound as individuals to fulfil their engagements, and did not the sacred Scriptures say of an honest man that, though he sweareth to his own hurt, he changeth not? Such plain truths prevailed in the Boston town meeting, which voted that "the commutation is wisely blended with the national debt." The agitation in New England presently came to an end, and in this matter the course of Congress was upheld.

In order fully to understand this extravagant distrust of the army, we have to take into account another incident of the summer of 1783, which gave rise to a discussion that sent its reverberation all over the civilized world. Men

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of the present generation who in childhood rummaged in their grandmothers' cosy garrets can hardly fail to have come across scores of musty and worm-eaten pamphlets, their yellow pages crowded with italics and exclamation points, inveighing in passionate language against the wicked and dangerous society of the Cincinnati. Just before the army was disbanded, the officers, at the suggestion of General Knox, formed themselves into a society, for the purpose of keeping up their friendly intercourse and cherishing the heroic memories of the struggle in which they had taken part. With the fondness for classical analogies which char-

Order of the
Cincinnati

acterized that time, they likened themselves to Cincinnatus, who was taken from the plough to lead an army, and returned to his quiet farm so soon as his warlike duties were over. They were modern Cincinnati. A constitution and by-laws were established for the order, and Washington was unanimously chosen to be its president. Its branches in the several states were to hold meetings each Fourth of July, and there was to be a general meeting of the whole society every year in the month of May. French officers who had taken part in the war were admitted to membership, and the order was to be perpetuated by descent through the eldest male representatives of the families of the members. It was further pro-

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

vided that a limited membership should from time to time be granted, as a distinguished honour, to able and worthy citizens, without regard to the memories of the war. A golden American eagle attached to a blue ribbon edged with white was the sacred badge of the order; and to this emblem especial favour was shown at the French court, where the insignia of foreign states were generally, it is said, regarded with jealousy. No political purpose was to be subserved by this order of the Cincinnati, save in so far as the members pledged to one another their determination to promote and cherish the union between the states. In its main intent the society was to be a kind of masonic brotherhood, charged with the duty of aiding the widows and the orphan children of its members in time of need. Innocent as all this was, however, the news of the establishment of such a society was greeted with a howl of indignation all over the country. It was thought that its founders were inspired by a deep-laid political scheme for centralizing the government and setting up a hereditary aristocracy. The press teemed with invective and ridicule, and the feeling thus expressed by the penny-a-liners was shared by able men accustomed to weigh their words. Franklin dealt with it in a spirit of banter, and John Adams in a spirit of abhorrence; while Samuel Adams

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

pointed out the dangers inherent in the principle of hereditary transmission of honours, and in the admission of foreigners into a secret association possessed of political influence in America. What! cried the men of Massachusetts. Have we thrown overboard the effete institutions of Europe, only to have them straightway introduced among us again, after this plausible and surreptitious fashion? At Cambridge it was thought that the general sentiment of the university was in favour of suppressing the order by act of legislature. One of the members, who was a candidate for senator in the spring of 1784, found it necessary to resign in order to save his chances for election. Rhode Island proposed to disfranchise such of her citizens as belonged to the order, albeit her most eminent citizen, Nathanael Greene, was one of them. Ædanus Burke, a judge of the Supreme Court of South Carolina, wrote a violent pamphlet against the society of the Cincinnati under the pseudonym of Cassius, the slayer of tyrants; and this diatribe, translated and amplified by Mirabeau, awakened its dull echoes among readers of Rousseau and haters of privilege in all parts of Europe. A swarm of brochures in rejoinder and rebuttal issued from the press, and the nineteenth century had come in before the controversy was quite forgotten.

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

It is easy for us now to smile at this outcry against the Cincinnati as much ado about nothing, seeing as we do that in the absence of territorial jurisdiction or especial political privileges an order of nobility cannot be created by the mere inheritance of empty titles or badges. For example, since the great revolution which swept away the landlordship and fiscal exemptions of the French nobility, a marquisate or a dukedom in France is of scarcely more political importance than a doctorate of laws in a New England university. Men were nevertheless not to be blamed in 1783 for their hostility toward that ghost of the hereditary principle which the Cincinnati sought to introduce. In a free industrial society like that of America it had no proper place or meaning; and the attempt to set up such a form might well have been cited in illustration of the partial reversion toward militancy which eight years of warfare had effected. The absurdity of the situation was quickly realized by Washington, and he prevailed upon the new society, in its first annual meeting of May, 1784, to abandon the principle of hereditary membership. The agitation was thus allayed, and in the presence of graver questions the much-dreaded brotherhood gradually ceased to occupy popular attention.

The opposition to the Cincinnati is not fully explained unless we consider it in connection

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

with Nicola's letter, the Newburgh address, and the flight of Congress to Princeton. The members of the Cincinnati were pledged to do whatever they could to promote the union between the states; the object of the Newburgh address was to enlist the army in behalf of the public creditors, and in some vaguely imagined fashion to force a stronger government upon the country; the letter of Nicola shows that at least some of the officers had harboured the notion of a monarchy; and the weakness of Congress had been revealed in the most startling manner by its flight before a squad of mutineers. It is one of the lessons of history that, in the virtual absence of a central government for which a need is felt, the want is apt to be supplied by the strongest organization in the country, whatever that may happen to be. It was in this way that the French army, a few years later, got control of the government of France and made its general emperor. In 1783, if the impotence of Congress were to be as explicitly acknowledged as it was implicitly felt, the only national organization left in the country was the army, and when this was disbanded it seemed nevertheless to prolong its life under a new and dangerous form in the brotherhood of the Cincinnati. The cession of western lands to the confederacy was, moreover, completed at about this time, and one of the uses to which

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

the new territory was to be put was the payment of claims due to the soldiers. It was distinctly feared, as is shown in a letter from Samuel Adams to Elbridge Gerry, that the members of the Cincinnati would acquire large tracts of western land under this arrangement, and, importing peasants from Germany, would grant farms to them on terms of military service and fealty, thus introducing into America a kind of feudal system. In order to forestall any such movement, it was provided by Congress that in any new states formed out of the western territory no person holding a hereditary title should be admitted to citizenship.

From the weakness of Congress as illustrated in its inability to raise money to pay the public debt and meet the current expenses of government, and from the popular dread of military usurpation which went along with the uneasy consciousness of that weakness, we have now to turn to another group of affairs in which the same point is still further illustrated and emphasized. We have seen how the commissioners of the United States in Paris had succeeded in making a treaty of peace with Great Britain on extremely favourable terms. So unpopular was the treaty in England, on account of the great concessions made to the Americans, that, as we have seen, the fall of Lord Shelburne's ministry was occasioned thereby. As an offset

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to these liberal concessions, of which the most considerable was the acknowledgment of the

Congress
finds itself
unable to
carry out
the provi-
sions of
the treaty

American claim to the northwestern territory, our confederate government was pledged to do all in its power to effect certain concessions which were demanded by England. That the American loyalists, whose property had been confiscated by various state governments, should be indemnified for their losses was a claim which, whatever Americans might think of it, England felt bound in honour to urge. That private debts, due from American to British creditors, should be faithfully discharged was the plainest dictate of common honesty. Congress, as we have seen, was bound by the treaty to recommend to the several states to desist from the persecution of Tories, and to give them an opportunity of recovering their estates; and it had been further agreed that all private debts should be discharged at their full value in sterling money. It now turned out that Congress was powerless to carry out the provisions of the treaty upon either of these points. The recommendations concerning the Tories were greeted with a storm of popular indignation. Since the beginning of the war these unfortunate persons had been treated with severity both by the legislatures and by the people. Many had been banished; others had

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

fled the country, and against these refugees various harsh laws had been enacted. Their estates had been confiscated, and their return prohibited under penalty of ^{Persecution}_{of Tories} imprisonment or death. Many others, who had remained in the country, were objects of suspicion and dislike in states where they had not, as in New York and the Carolinas, openly aided the enemy or taken part in Indian atrocities. Now, on the conclusion of peace, in utter disregard of Congress, fresh measures of vengeance were taken against these "fawning spaniels," as they were called, these "tools and minions of Britain." An article in the "Massachusetts Chronicle" expressed the common feeling: "As Hannibal swore never to be at peace with the Romans, so let every Whig swear, by his abhorrence of slavery, by liberty and religion, by the shades of departed friends who have fallen in battle, by the ghosts of those of our brethren who have been destroyed on board of prison-ships and in loathsome dungeons, never to be at peace with those fiends and refugees, whose thefts, murders, and treasons have filled the cup of woe." Tons of pamphlets, issued under the customary Latin pseudonyms, were filled with this truculent bombast; and like sentiments were thundered from the pulpit by men who had quite forgotten for the moment their Christian duty of preaching

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

reconciliation and forgiveness of injuries. Why should not these wretches, it was sarcastically asked, be driven at once from the country? Of course they could not desire to live under a free government which they had been at such pains to destroy. Let them go forthwith to his majesty's dominions, and live under the government they preferred. It would never do to let them stay here, to plot treason at their leisure; in a few years they would get control of all the states, and either hand them over to Great Britain again, or set up a Tory despotism on American soil. Such was the rubbish that passed current as argument with the majority of the people. A small party of moderate Whigs saw its absurdity, and urged that the Tories had much better remain at home, where they had lost all political influence, than go and found unfriendly colonies to the northward. The moderate Whigs were in favour of heeding the recommendation of Congress, and acting in accordance with the spirit of the treaty; and these humane and sensible views were shared by Gadsden and Marion in South Carolina, by Theodore Sedgwick in Massachusetts, and by Greene, Hamilton, and Jay. But any man who held such opinions, no matter how conspicuous his services had been, ran the risk of being accused of Tory sympathies. "Time-serving Whigs" and "trimmers" were the

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

strangely inappropriate epithets hurled at men who, had they been in the slightest degree time-servers, would have shrunk from the thankless task of upholding good sense and humanity in the teeth of popular prejudice.

In none of the states did the loyalists receive severer treatment than in New York, and for obvious reasons. Throughout the war the frontier had been the scene of atrocities such as no other state, save perhaps South Carolina, had witnessed. Cherry Valley and Minisink were names of horror not easily forgotten, and the fate of Lieutenant Boyd and countless other victims called loudly for vengeance. The sins of the Butlers and their bloodthirsty followers were visited in robbery and insult upon unoffending men, who were like them in nothing but in being labelled with the epithet "Tory." During the seven years that the city of New York had been occupied by the British army, many of these loyalists had found shelter there. The Whig citizens, on the other hand, had been driven off the island, to shift as best they might in New Jersey, while their comfortable homes were seized and assigned by military orders to these very Tories. For seven years the refugee Whigs from across the Hudson had looked upon New York with feelings like those with which the mediæval exile from Florence or Pisa was wont to regard his native city. They saw

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in it the home of enemies who had robbed them, the prison-house of gallant friends penned up to die of wanton ill-usage in foul ships' holds in the harbour. When at last the king's troops left the city, it was felt that a great day of reckoning had arrived. In September, 1783, two months before the evacuation, more than twelve thousand men, women, and children embarked for the Bahamas or for Nova Scotia, rather than stay and face the troubles that were coming. Many of these were refined and cultivated persons, and not all had been actively hostile to the American cause; many had simply accepted British protection. Against those who remained in the city the returning Whigs now proceeded with great severity. The violent party was dominant in the legislature, and George Clinton, the governor, put himself conspicuously at its head. A bill was passed disfranchising all such persons as had voluntarily stayed in neighbourhoods occupied by the British troops; their offence was called misprision of treason. But the council vetoed this bill as too wholesale in its operation, for it would have left some districts without voters enough to hold an election. An "iron-clad oath" was adopted instead, and no one was allowed to vote unless he could swear that he had never in any wise abetted the enemy. It was voted that no Tory who had left the state should be permitted to return;

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

and a bill was passed known as the Trespass Act, whereby all persons who had quit their homes by reason of the enemy's presence might recover damages in an action of trespass against such persons as had since taken possession of the premises. Defendants in such cases were expressly barred from pleading a military order in justification of their possession. As there was scarcely a building on the island of New York that had not thus changed hands during the British occupation, it was easy to foresee what confusion must ensue. Everybody whose house had once been, for ever so few days, in the hands of a Tory now rushed into court with his action of trespass. Damages were rated at most exorbitant figures, and it became clear that the misdeeds of the enemy were about to be made the excuse for a carnival of spoliation, when all at once the test case of *Rutgers v. Waddington* brought upon the scene a sturdy defender of order, an advocate who was soon to become one of the foremost personages in American history.

Of all the young men of that day, save perhaps William Pitt, the most precocious was Alexander Hamilton. He had already given promise of a great career before the breaking out of the war. He was born on the island of Nevis, in the West Indies, in

The Trespass
Act of New
York, 1784

Alexander
Hamilton

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

1757. His father belonged to that famous Scottish clan from which have come one of the most learned metaphysicians and one of the most original mathematicians of modern times. His mother was a French lady, of Huguenot descent, and biographers have been fond of tracing in his character the various qualities of his parents. To the shrewdness and persistence, the administrative ability, and the taste for abstract reasoning which we are wont to find associated in the highest type of Scottish mind he joined a truly French vivacity and grace. His earnestness, sincerity, and moral courage were characteristic alike of Puritan and of Huguenot. In the course of his short life he exhibited a remarkable many-sidedness. So great was his genius for organization that in many essential respects the American government is moving to-day along the lines which he was the first to mark out. As an economist he shared to some extent in the shortcomings of the age which preceded Adam Smith, but in the special department of finance he has been equalled by no other American statesman save Albert Gallatin. He was a convincing orator and brilliant writer, an excellent lawyer, and a clear-headed and industrious student of political history. He was also eminent as a political leader, although he lacked faith in democratic government, and a generous impatience of temperament sometimes

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

led him to prefer short and arbitrary by-paths toward desirable ends, which can never be securely reached save along the broad but steep and arduous road of popular conviction. But with all Hamilton's splendid qualities, nothing about him is more remarkable than the early age at which these were developed. At the age of fifteen an able newspaper article brought him into such repute in the little island of Nevis that he was sent to New York to avail himself of the best advantages afforded by the King's College, now known as Columbia. He had at first no definite intention of becoming an American citizen, but the thrilling events of the time appealed strongly to the earnest heart and powerful intelligence of this wonderful boy. At a gathering of the people of New York in July, 1774, his generous blood warmed, till a resistless impulse brought him on his feet to speak to the assembled multitude. It was no company of half-drunken idlers that thronged about him, but an assemblage of grave and responsible citizens, who looked with some astonishment upon this boy of seventeen years, short and slight in stature, yet erect and Cæsar-like in bearing, with firm set mouth and great, dark, earnest eyes. His strong and clean-cut speech, full of sense and without a syllable of bombast, held his hearers entranced, and from that day Alexander Hamilton was a marked man. He

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

began publishing anonymous pamphlets, which at first were attributed by some to Jay, and by others to Livingston. When their authorship was discovered, the loyalist party tried in vain to buy off the formidable youth. He kept up the pamphlet war, in the course of which he woefully defeated Dr. Cooper, the Tory president of the college; but shortly afterward he defended the doctor's house against an angry mob, until that unpopular gentleman had succeeded in making his escape to a British ship. Hamilton served in the army throughout the war—for the most part as aid and secretary to Washington; but in 1781 he was a colonel in the line, and stormed a redoubt at Yorktown with distinguished skill and bravery. He married the daughter of Philip Schuyler, began the practice of law, and in 1782, at the age of twenty-five, was chosen a delegate to Congress.

In 1784, when the Trespass Act threw New York into confusion, Hamilton had come to be regarded as one of the most powerful advocates in the country. In the test case which now came before the courts he played a bold and manly part. Elizabeth Rutgers was a widow, who had fled from New York after its capture by General Howe. Her confiscated estate had passed into the hands of Joshua Waddington, a rich Tory merchant,

The case of
Rutgers v.
Waddington

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

and she now brought suit under the Trespass Act for its recovery. It was a case in which popular sympathy was naturally and strongly enlisted in behalf of the poor widow. That she should be turned out of house and home was one of the many gross instances of wickedness wrought by the war. On the other hand, the disturbance wrought by the enforcement of the Trespass Act was already creating fresh wrongs much faster than it was righting old ones; and it is for such reasons as this that both in the common law and in the law of nations the principle has been firmly established that "the fruits of immovables belong to the captor as long as he remains in actual possession of them." The Trespass Act contravened this principle, and it also contravened the treaty. It moreover placed the State of New York in an attitude of defiance toward Congress, which had made the treaty and expressly urged upon the states to suspend their legislation against the Tories. On large grounds of public policy, therefore, the Trespass Act deserved to be set aside by the courts, and when Hamilton was asked to serve as counsel for the defendant he accepted the odious task without hesitation. There can be no better proof of his forensic ability than his winning a verdict, in such a case as this, from a hostile court that was largely influenced by the popular excitement. The decision nullified the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Trespass Act, and forthwith mass meetings of the people and an extra session of the legislature condemned this action of the court. Hamilton was roundly abused, and his conduct was attributed to unworthy motives. But he faced the people as boldly as he had faced the court, and published a letter, under the signature of Phocion, setting forth in the clearest light the injustice and impolicy of extreme measures against the Tories. The popular wrath and disgust at Hamilton's course found expression in a letter from one Isaac Ledyard, a hot-headed pot-house politician, who signed himself Mentor. A war of pamphlets ensued between Mentor and Phocion. It was genius pitted against dullness, reason against passion; and reason wielded by genius won the day. The more intelligent and respectable citizens reluctantly admitted that Hamilton's arguments were unanswerable. A club of boon companions, to which Ledyard belonged, made the same admission by the peculiar manner in which it undertook to silence him. It was gravely proposed that the members of the club should pledge themselves one after another to challenge Hamilton to mortal combat, until some one of them should have the good fortune to kill him! The scheme met with general favour, but was defeated by the exertions of Ledyard himself, whose zeal was not ardent enough to condone treachery and

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

murder. The incident well illustrates the intense bitterness of political passion at the time, as Hamilton's conduct shows him in the light of a courageous and powerful defender of the central government. For nothing was more significant in the verdict which he had obtained than its implicit assertion of the rights of the United States as against the legislature of a single state.

In spite of the efforts of such men as Hamilton, life was made very uncomfortable for the Tories. In some states they were subjected to mob violence. Instances of tarring and feathering were not uncommon. The legislature of South Carolina was honourably distinguished for the good faith with which it endeavoured to enforce the recommendation of Congress; but the people, unable to forget the smoking ruins of plundered homes, were less lenient. Notices were posted ordering prominent loyalists to leave the country; the newspapers teemed with savage warnings; and finally, of those who tarried beyond a certain time, many were shot or hanged to trees. This extremity of bitterness, however, did not long continue. The instances of physical violence were mostly confined to the first two or three years after the close of the war. In most of the states the confiscating acts were after a while repealed, and many of the loyalists were restored

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to their estates. But the emigration which took place between 1783 and 1785 was very large. It has been estimated that 100,000 persons, — or nearly three per cent. of the total white population, — quit the country. Those from the southern states went mostly to the Bahamas and Florida; while those from the north laid the foundation of new British states in New Brunswick and Upper Canada. Many of these refugees appealed to the British government for indemnification for their losses, and their claims received prompt attention. A parliamentary commission was appointed to inquire into the matter, and by the year 1790 some \$16,000,000 had been distributed among about 4,000 sufferers, while many others received grants of crown-lands, or half-pay as military officers, or special annuities, or appointments in the civil service. On the whole, the compensation which the refugees received from Parliament seems to have been much more ample than that which the ragged soldiers of our Revolutionary army ever received from Congress.

While the political passions resulting in this forced emigration of loyalists were such as naturally arise in the course of a civil war, the historian cannot but regret that the United States should have been deprived of the services of so many excellent citizens. In nearly all such cases

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

of wholesale popular vengeance, it is the wrong individuals who suffer. We could well afford to dispense with the border ruffians who abetted the Indians in their carnival of burning and scalping, but the refugees of 1784 were for the most part peaceful and unoffending families, above the average in education and refinement. The vicarious suffering inflicted upon them set nothing right, but simply increased the mass of wrong, while to the general interests of the country the loss of such people was in every way damaging. The immediate political detriment wrought at the time, though it is that which most nearly concerns this moment of our story, was probably the least important. Since Congress was manifestly unable to carry out the treaty, an excuse was furnished to England for declining to fulfil some of its provisions. In regard to the loyalists, indeed, the treaty had recognized that Congress possessed but an advisory power; but in the other provision concerning the payment of private debts, which in the popular mind was very much mixed up with the question of justice to the loyalists, the faith of the United States was distinctly pledged. On this point, also, Congress was powerless to enforce the treaty. Massachusetts, New York, Pennsylvania, Maryland, Virginia, and South Carolina had all enacted laws obstructing the collection of British debts; and

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in flat defiance of the treaty these statutes remained in force until after the downfall of the Confederation. The States were aware that

Congress is
unable to
enforce pay-
ment of debts
to British
creditors.
England
refuses to
surrender the
western posts

such conduct needed an excuse, and one was soon forthcoming. Many negroes had left the country with the British fleet: some doubtless had sought their freedom; others, perhaps, had been kidnapped as booty, and sold to planters in the West Indies. The number of these black men carried away by the English fleet had been magnified tenfold by popular rumour. Complaints had been made to Sir Guy Carleton, but he had replied that any negro who came within his lines was presumably a freeman, and he could not lend his aid in remanding such persons to slavery. Jay, as one of the treaty commissioners, gave it as his opinion that Carleton was quite right in this, but he thought that where a loss of slaves could be proved, Great Britain was bound to make pecuniary compensation to the owners. The matter was wrangled over for years in the state legislatures, in town and county meetings, at dinner-tables, and in taverns, with the general result that, until such compensation should be made, the statutes hindering the collection of debts would not be repealed. In retaliation for this, Great

THE LEAGUE OF FRIENDSHIP

Britain refused to withdraw her garrisons from the northwestern fortresses,¹ which the treaty had surrendered to the United States. This measure was very keenly felt by the people. As an assertion of superior strength, it was peculiarly galling to our weak and divided confederacy, and it also wrought us direct practical injury. It encouraged the Indian tribes in their depredations on the frontier, and it deprived American merchants of a lucrative trade in furs. In the spring of 1787 there were advertised for sale in London more than 360,000 skins, worth \$1,200,000 at the lowest estimate; and had the posts been surrendered according to the treaty, all this would probably have passed through the hands of American merchants. The London fur traders were naturally very unwilling to lose their control over this business, and in the language of modern politics they brought "pressure" to bear on their government to retain the fortresses as long as possible. The American refusal to pay British creditors furnished a plausible excuse, while the weakness of Congress made any kind of reprisal impossible, — and it was not until Washington's second term as president, after our national credit had been fully re-

¹ These were Ogdensburgh, Oswego, Niagara, Detroit, and Mackinaw, with a few others of less importance.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

stored and the strength of our new government made manifest, that Great Britain really surrendered this chain of strongholds commanding the woods and waters of our northwestern frontier.

IV

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

AT the close of the eighteenth century the barbarous superstitions of the Middle Ages concerning trade between nations still flourished with scarcely diminished vitality. The epoch-making work of Adam Smith had been published in the same year in which the United States declared their independence. The one was the great scientific event, as the other was the great political event, of the age; but of neither the one nor the other were the scope and purport fathomed at that time. Among the foremost statesmen, those who, like Shelburne and Gallatin, understood the principles of the "Wealth of Nations" were few indeed. The simple principle that when two parties trade both must be gainers, or one would soon stop trading, was generally lost sight of; and most commercial legislation proceeded upon the theory that in trade, as in gambling or betting, what the one party gains the other must lose. Hence towns, districts, and nations, surrounded themselves with walls of legislative restrictions in-

Barbarous
superstitions
about trade

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tended to keep out the monster Trade, or to admit him only on strictest proof that he could do no harm. On this barbarous theory, the use of a colony consisted in its being a customer which you could compel to trade with yourself, while you could prevent it from trading with anybody else; and having secured this point, you could cunningly arrange things by legislation so as to throw all the loss upon this enforced customer, and keep all the gain to yourself. In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries all the commercial legislation of the great colonizing states was based upon this theory of the use of a colony. For effectiveness, it shared to some extent the characteristic features of legislation for making water run up hill. It retarded commercial development all over the world, fostered monopolies, made the rich richer and the poor poorer, hindered the interchange of ideas and the refinement of manners, and sacrificed millions of human lives in misdirected warfare; but what it was intended to do it did not do. The sturdy race of smugglers — those despised pioneers of a higher civilization — thrived in defiance of kings and parliaments; and as it was impossible to carry out such legislation thoroughly without stopping trade altogether, colonies and mother countries contrived to increase their wealth in spite of it. The colonies, however, understood the *animus*

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

of the theory in so far as it was directed against them, and the revolutionary sentiment in America had gained much of its strength from the protest against this one-sided justice. In one of its most important aspects, the Revolution was a deadly blow aimed at the old system of trade restrictions. It was to a certain extent a step in realization of the noble doctrines of Adam Smith. But where the scientific thinker grasped the whole principle involved in the matter, the practical statesmen saw only the special application which seemed to concern them for the moment. They all understood that the Revolution had set them free to trade with other countries than England, but very few of them understood that, whatever countries trade together, the one cannot hope to benefit by impoverishing the other.

This point is much better understood in England to-day than in the United States; but a century ago there was little to choose between the two countries in ignorance of political economy. England had gained great wealth and power through trade with her rapidly growing American colonies. One of her chief fears, in the event of American independence, had been the possible loss of that trade. English merchants feared that American commerce, when no longer confined to its old paths by legislation, would somehow find its way to France

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

and Holland and Spain and other countries, until nothing would be left for England. The Revolution worked no such change, however. The principal trade of the United States was with England, as before, because England could best supply the goods that Americans wanted; and it is such considerations, and not acts of Parliament, that determine trade in its natural and proper channels. In 1783 Pitt introduced into Parliament a bill which would have secured mutual unconditional free trade between the two countries; and this was what such men as Franklin, Jefferson, and Madison desired. Could this bill have passed, the hard feelings occasioned by the war would soon have died out, the commercial progress of both countries would have been promoted, and the stupid measures which led to a second war within thirty years might have been prevented. But the wisdom of Pitt found less favour in Parliament than the dense stupidity of Lord Sheffield, who thought that to admit Americans to the carrying trade would undermine the naval power of Great Britain. Pitt's measure was defeated, and the regulation of commerce with America was left to the king in council. Orders were forthwith passed as if upon the theory that America poor would be a better customer than America rich.

The carrying trade to the West Indies had

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

been one of the most important branches of American industry. The men of New England were famous for seamanship, and better and cheaper ships could be built in the seaports of Massachusetts than anywhere in Great Britain. An oak vessel could be built at Gloucester or Salem for twenty-four dollars per ton; a ship of live-oak or American cedar cost not more than thirty-eight dollars per ton. On the other hand, fir vessels built on the Baltic cost thirty-five dollars per ton, and nowhere in England, France, or Holland could a ship be made of oak for less than fifty dollars per ton. Often the cost was as high as sixty dollars. It was not strange, therefore, that before the war more than one third of the tonnage afloat under the British flag was launched from American dock-yards. The war had violently deprived England of this enormous advantage, and now she sought to make the privation perpetual, in the delusive hope of confining British trade to British keels, and in the belief that it was the height of wisdom to impoverish the nation which she regarded as her best customer. In July, 1783, an order in council proclaimed that henceforth all trade between the United States and the British West Indies must be carried on in British-built ships, owned and navigated by British subjects. A serious blow was thus dealt not only at

Shipbuilding
in New Eng-
land

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

American shipping, but also at the interchange of commodities between the states and the islands, which was greatly hampered by this restriction. During the whole of the eighteenth century the West India sugar trade with the North American colonies and with Great Britain had been of immense value to all parties, and all had been seriously damaged by the curtailment of it due to the war. Now that the artificial state of things created by the war was to be perpetuated by legislation, the prospect of repairing the loss seemed indefinitely postponed. Moreover, even in trading directly with Great Britain, American ships were only allowed to bring in articles produced in the particular states of which their owners were citizens, — an enactment which seemed to add insult to injury, inasmuch as it directed especial attention to the want of union among the thirteen states. Great indignation was aroused in America, and reprisals were talked of, but efforts were first made to obtain a commercial treaty.

In 1785 Franklin returned from France, and Jefferson was sent as minister in his stead, while John Adams became the first representative of the United States at the British court. Adams was at first very courteously received by George III., and presently set to work to convince

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

Lord Carmarthen, the foreign secretary, of the desirableness of unrestricted intercourse between the two countries. But popular opinion in England was obstinately set against him.

But for the Navigation Act and the orders in council, it was said, all ships would by and by come to be built in

John Adams
tries in vain
to negotiate a
commercial
treaty

America, and every time a frigate was wanted for the navy the Lords of Admiralty would have to send over to Boston or Philadelphia and order one. Rather than do such a thing as this, it was thought that the British navy should content itself with vessels of inferior workmanship and higher cost, built in British dock-yards. Thirty years after, England gathered an unexpected fruit of this narrow policy, when, to her intense bewilderment, she saw frigate after frigate outsailed and defeated in single combat with American antagonists. Owing to her exclusive measures, the rapid improvement in American shipbuilding had gone on quite beyond her ken, until she was thus rudely awakened to it. With similar short-sighted jealousy, it was argued that the American share in the whale-fishery and in the Newfoundland fishery should be curtailed as much as possible. Spermaceti oil was much needed in England: complaints were rife of robbery and murder in the dimly lighted streets of London and other great cities. But it was thought that if American ships could carry oil

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to England and salt fish to Jamaica, the supply of seamen for the British navy would be diminished ; and accordingly such privileges must not be granted the Americans unless valuable privileges could be granted in return. But the government of the United States could grant no privileges because it could impose no restrictions. British-manufactured goods were needed in America, and Congress, which could levy no duties, had no power to keep them out. British merchants and manufacturers, it was argued, already enjoyed all needful privileges in American ports, and accordingly they asked no favours and granted none.

Such were the arguments to which Adams was obliged to listen. The popular feeling was so strong that Pitt could not have stemmed it if he would. It was in vain that Adams threatened reprisals, and urged that the British measures would defeat their own purpose. "The end of the Navigation Act," said he, "as expressed in its own preamble, is to confine the commerce of the colonies to the mother country ; but now we are become independent states, instead of confining our trade to Great Britain, it will drive it to other countries : " and he suggested that the Americans might make a navigation act in their turn, admitting to American ports none but American-built ships, owned and commanded by Americans. But under the

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

articles of confederation such a threat was idle, and the British government knew it to be so. Thirteen separate state governments could never be made to adopt any such measure in concert. The weakness of Congress had been fatally revealed in its inability to protect the loyalists or to enforce the payment of debts, and in its failure to raise a revenue for meeting its current expenses. A government thus slighted at home was naturally despised abroad. Great Britain neglected to send a minister to Philadelphia, and while Adams was treated politely, his arguments were unheeded. Whether in this behaviour Pitt's government was influenced or not by political as well as economical reasons, it was certain that a political purpose was entertained by the king and approved by many people. There was an intention of humiliating the Americans, and it was commonly said that under a sufficient weight of commercial distress the states would break up their feeble union and come straggling back, one after another, to their old allegiance. The fiery spirit of Adams could ill brook this contemptuous treatment of the nation which he represented. Though he favoured very liberal commercial relations with the whole world, he could see no escape from the present difficulties save in systematic retaliation. "I should be sorry," he said, "to adopt a monopoly, but, driven to the necessity of it, I would

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

not do things by halves. . . . If monopolies and exclusions are the only arms of defence against monopolies and exclusions, I would venture upon them without fear of offending Dean Tucker or the ghost of Dr. Quesnay." That is to say, certain commercial privileges must be withheld from Great Britain, in order to be offered to her in return for reciprocal privileges. It was a miserable policy to be forced to adopt, for such restrictions upon trade inevitably cut both ways. Like the non-importation agreement of 1768 and the embargo of 1808, such a policy was open to the objections familiarly urged against biting off one's own nose. It was injuring one's self in the hope of injuring somebody else. It was perpetuating in time of peace the obstacles to commerce generated by a state of war. In a certain sense, it was keeping up a warfare by commercial instead of military methods, and there was danger that it might lead to a renewal of armed conflict. Nevertheless, the conduct of the British government seemed to Adams to leave no other course open. But such "means of preserving ourselves," he said, "can never be secured until Congress shall be made supreme in foreign commerce."

It was obvious enough that the separate action of the states upon such a question was only adding to the general uncertainty and confusion. In 1785 New York laid a double duty on all

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

goods whatever imported in British ships. In the same year Pennsylvania passed the first of the infamous series of American tariff acts, designed to tax the whole community for the benefit of a few greedy manufacturers. Massachusetts sought to establish committees of correspondence for the purpose of entering into a new non-importation agreement, and its legislature resolved that "the present powers of the Congress of the United States, as contained in the articles of confederation, are not fully adequate to the great purposes they were originally designed to effect." The Massachusetts delegates in Congress — Gerry, Holton, and King — were instructed to recommend a general convention of the states for the purpose of revising and amending the articles of confederation ; but the delegates refused to comply with their instructions, and set forth their reasons in a paper which was approved by Samuel Adams, and caused the legislature to reconsider its action. It was feared that a call for a convention might seem too much like an open expression of a want of confidence in Congress, and might thereby weaken it still further without accomplishing any good result. For the present, as a temporary expedient, Massachusetts took counsel with New Hampshire, and the two states passed navigation acts, prohibiting British ships

Reprisal impossible ; the states impose conflicting duties

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

from carrying goods out of their harbours, and imposing a fourfold duty upon all such goods as they should bring in. A discriminating tonnage duty was also laid upon all foreign vessels. Rhode Island soon after adopted similar measures. In Congress a scheme for a uniform navigation act, to be concurred in and passed by all the thirteen states, was suggested by one of the Maryland delegates ; but it was opposed by Richard Henry Lee and most of the delegates from the far south. The southern states, having no ships or seamen of their own, feared that the exclusion of British competition might enable northern ship-owners to charge exorbitant rates for carrying their rice and tobacco, thus subjecting them to a ruinous monopoly ; but the gallant Moultrie, then governor of South Carolina, taking a broader view of the case, wrote to Bowdoin, governor of Massachusetts, asserting the paramount need of harmonious and united action. In the Virginia assembly, a hot-headed member, Rev. Charles Thruston, known as " the warrior parson," declared himself in doubt " whether it would not be better to encourage the British rather than the eastern marine ;" but the remark was greeted with hisses and groans. Amid such mutual jealousies and misgivings, during the year 1785 acts were passed by ten states granting to Congress the power of regulating commerce for the ensuing thirteen

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

years. The three states which refrained from acting were Georgia, South Carolina, and Delaware. The acts of the other ten were, as might have been expected, a jumble of incongruities. North Carolina granted all the power that was asked, but stipulated that when all the states should have done likewise their acts should be summed up in a new article of confederation. Connecticut, Pennsylvania, and Maryland had fixed the date at which the grant was to take effect, while Rhode Island provided that it should not expire until after the lapse of twenty-five years. The grant by New Hampshire allowed the power to be used only in one specified way, — by restricting the duties imposable by the several states. The grants of Massachusetts, New York, New Jersey, and Virginia were not to take effect until all the others should go into operation. The only thing which Congress could do with these acts was to refer them back to the several legislatures, with a polite request to try to reduce them to something like uniformity.

Meanwhile, the different states, with their different tariff and tonnage acts, began to make commercial war upon one another. No sooner had the other three New England states virtually closed their ports to British shipping than Connecticut threw hers wide open, an act which she followed up by laying duties upon imports

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

from Massachusetts. Pennsylvania discriminated against Delaware, and New Jersey, pil-
laged at once by both her greater neigh-
bours, was compared to a cask tapped
at both ends. The conduct of New
York became especially selfish and blameworthy.
That rapid growth which was so soon to carry
the city and the state to a position of primacy
in the Union had already begun. After the de-
parture of the British the revival of business
went on with leaps and bounds. The feeling
of local patriotism waxed strong, and in no one
was it more fully manifested than in George
Clinton, the Revolutionary general, whom the
people elected governor for six successive terms.
He was a kinsman of Sir Henry Clinton, the
British general ; both were descended from Earls
of Lincoln. By dint of shrewdness and untiring
push, George Clinton had come to be for the
moment the most powerful man in the state of
New York. He had come to look upon the
state almost as if it were his own private manor,
and his life was devoted to furthering its inter-
ests as he understood them. It was his first
article of faith that New York must be the
greatest state in the Union. But his conceptions
of statesmanship were extremely narrow. In his
mind, the welfare of New York meant the pull-
ing down and thrusting aside of all her neigh-
bours and rivals. He was the vigorous and

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

steadfast advocate of every illiberal and exclusive measure, and the most uncompromising enemy to a closer union of the states. His great popular strength and the commercial importance of the community in which he held sway made him at this time the most dangerous man in America. The political victories presently to be won by Hamilton, Schuyler, and Livingston, without which our grand and pacific Federal Union could not have been brought into being, were victories won by most desperate fighting against the dogged opposition of Clinton. Under his guidance, the history of New York, during the five years following the peace of 1783, was a shameful story of greedy monopoly and sectional hate. Of all the thirteen states, none behaved worse except Rhode Island.

A single instance, which occurred early in 1787, may serve as an illustration. The city of New York, with its population of 30,000 souls, had long been supplied with firewood from Connecticut, and with its butter and cheese, chickens and garden vegetables, from the thrifty farms of New Jersey. This trade, it was observed, carried thousands of dollars out of the city and into the pockets of detested Yankees and despised Jerseymen. It was ruinous to domestic industry, said the men of New York. It must be stopped by those effective remedies of the Sangrado school of economic doctors, a

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

navigation act and a protective tariff. Acts were accordingly passed, obliging every Yankee sloop which came down through Hell Gate, and every Jersey market boat which was rowed across from Paulus Hook to Cortlandt Street, to pay entrance fees and obtain clearances at the custom-house, just as was done by ships from London or Hamburg; and not a cart-load of Connecticut firewood could be delivered at the back-door of a country-house in Beekman Street until it should have paid a heavy duty. Great and just was the wrath of the farmers and lumbermen. The New Jersey legislature made up its mind to retaliate. The city of New York had lately bought a small patch of ground on Sandy Hook, and had built a lighthouse there. This lighthouse was the one weak spot in the heel of Achilles where a hostile arrow could strike, and New Jersey gave vent to her indignation by laying a tax of \$1,800 a year on it. Connecticut was equally prompt. At a great meeting of business men, held at New London, it was unanimously agreed to suspend all commercial intercourse with New York. Every merchant signed an agreement, under penalty of \$250 for the first offence, not to send any goods whatever into the hated state for a period of twelve months. By such retaliatory measures, it was hoped that New York might be compelled to rescind her odious enactment. But such meet-

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

ings and such resolves bore an ominous likeness to the meetings and resolves which in the years before 1775 had heralded a state of war; and but for the good work done by the federal convention another five years would scarcely have elapsed before shots would have been fired and seeds of perennial hatred sown on the shores that look toward Manhattan Island.

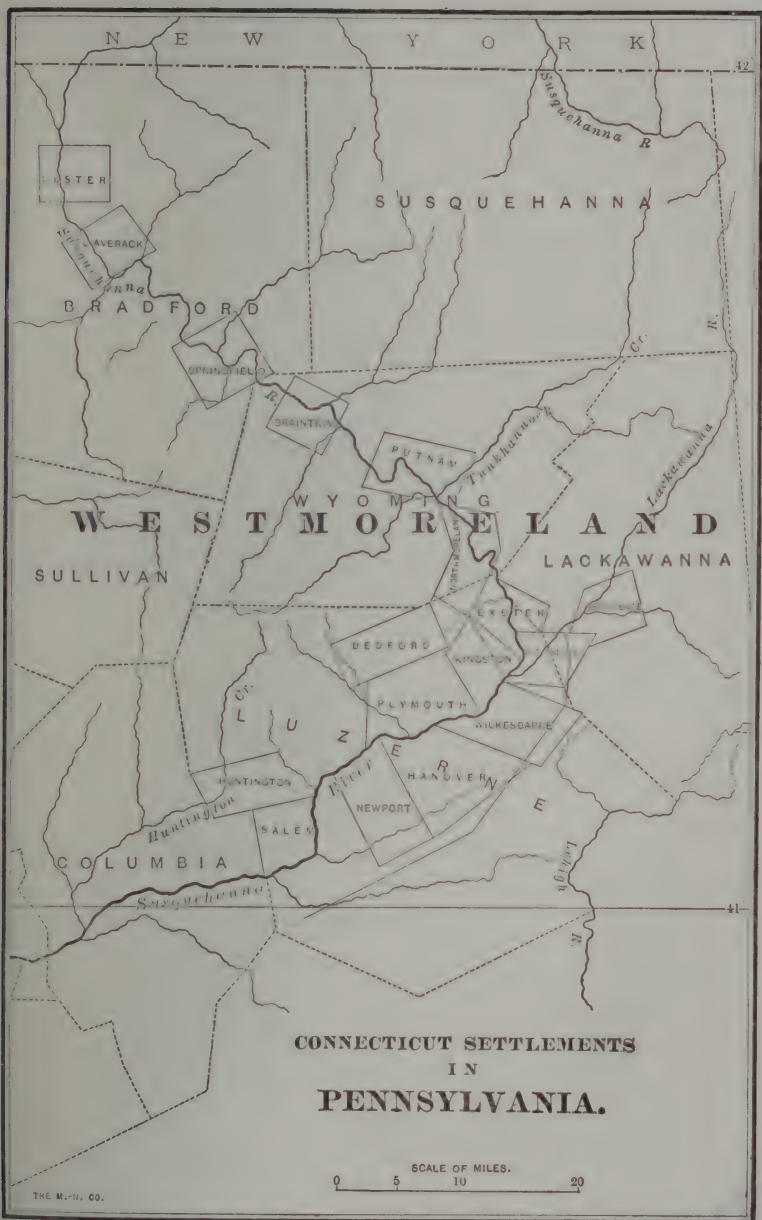
To these commercial disputes there were added disputes about territory. The chronic quarrel between Connecticut and Pennsylvania over the valley of Wyoming was decided in the autumn of 1782 by a special federal court, appointed in accordance with the articles of confederation.

Disputes
about territory;
disasters in the
valley of
Wyoming,
1784

The prize was adjudged to Pennsylvania, and the government of Connecticut submitted as gracefully as was possible. But new troubles were in store for the inhabitants of that beautiful region. The traces of the massacre of 1778 had disappeared, the houses had been rebuilt, new settlers had come in, and the pretty villages had taken on their old look of contentment and thrift, when in the spring of 1784 there came an accumulation of disasters. During a very cold winter great quantities of snow had fallen, and lay piled in huge masses on the mountain sides, until in March a sudden thaw set in. The Susquehanna rose, and overflowed the valley, and great blocks of ice drifted

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

here and there, carrying death and destruction with them. Houses, barns, and fences were swept away, the cattle were drowned, the fruit trees broken down, the stores of food destroyed, and over the whole valley there lay a stratum of gravel and pebbles. The people were starving with cold and hunger, and President Dickinson urged the legislature to send prompt relief to the sufferers. But the hearts of the members were as flint, and their talk was incredibly wicked. Not a penny would they give to help the accursed Yankees. It served them right. If they had stayed in Connecticut, where they belonged, they would have kept out of harm's way. And with a blasphemy thinly veiled in phrases of pious unction, the desolation of the valley was said to have been contrived by the Deity with the express object of punishing these trespassers. But the cruelty of the Pennsylvania legislature was not confined to words. A scheme was devised for driving out the settlers and partitioning their lands among a company of speculators. A force of militia was sent to Wyoming, commanded by a truculent creature named Patterson. The ostensible purpose was to assist in restoring order in the valley, but the behaviour of the soldiers was such as would have disgraced a horde of barbarians. They stole what they could find, dealt out blows to the men and insults to the women, until their vio-



DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

lence was met with violence in return. Then Patterson sent a letter to President Dickinson, accusing the farmers of sedition, and hinting that extreme measures were necessary. Having thus, as he thought, prepared the way, he attacked the settlement, turned some five hundred people out of doors, and burned their houses to the ground. The wretched victims, many of them tender women, or infirm old men, or little children, were driven into the wilderness at the point of the bayonet, and told to find their way to Connecticut without further delay. Heartrending scenes ensued. Many died of exhaustion, or furnished food for wolves. But this was more than the Pennsylvania legislature had intended. Patterson's zeal had carried him too far. He was recalled, and the sheriff of Northumberland County was sent, with a posse of men, to protect the settlers. Patterson disobeyed, however, and withdrawing his men to a fortified lair in the mountains, kept up a guerrilla warfare. All the Connecticut men in the neighbouring country flew to arms. Men were killed on both sides, and presently Patterson was besieged. A regiment of soldiers was then sent from Philadelphia, under Colonel Armstrong, who had formerly been on Gates's staff, the author of the incendiary Newburgh address. On arriving in the valley, Armstrong held a parley with the Connecticut men, and

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

persuaded them to lay down their arms ; assuring them on his honour that they should meet with no ill treatment, and that their enemy, Patterson, should be disarmed also. Having thus fallen into this soldier's clutches, they were forthwith treated as prisoners. Seventy-six of them were handcuffed and sent under guard, some to Easton and some to Northumberland, where they were thrown into jail.¹

Great was the indignation in New England when these deeds were heard of. The matter had become very serious. A war between Connecticut and Pennsylvania might easily grow out of it. But the danger was averted through a singular feature in the Pennsylvania constitution. In order to hold its legislature in check, Pennsylvania had a council of censors, which was assembled once in seven years in order to inquire whether the state had been properly governed during the interval. Soon after the troubles in Wyoming the regular meeting of the censors was held, and the conduct of Armstrong and Patterson was unreservedly condemned. A hot controversy ensued between the legislature and the censors, and as the peo-

¹ See Chapman's *History of Wyoming*, Wilkes-Barre, 1830 ; Miner's *History of Wyoming*, Philadelphia, 1845 ; Stone's *Poetry and History of Wyoming*, New York, 1844 ; Hoyt's *Seventeen Townships in the County of Luzerne*, Harrisburg, 1879.

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

ple set great store by the latter peculiar institution, public sympathy was gradually awakened for the sufferers. The wickedness of the affair began to dawn upon people's minds, and they were ashamed of what had been done. Patterson and Armstrong were frowned down, the legislature disavowed their acts, and it was ordered that full reparation should be made to the persecuted settlers of Wyoming.

In the Green Mountains and on the upper waters of the Connecticut there had been trouble for many years. In the course of the Revolutionary War, the fierce dispute between New York and New Hampshire for the possession of the Green Mountains came in from time to time to influence most curiously the course of events. It was closely connected with the intrigues against General Schuyler, and thus more remotely with the Conway cabal and the treason of Arnold. About the time of Burgoyne's invasion the association of the Green Mountain Boys endeavoured to cut the Gordian knot by declaring Vermont an independent state, and applying to the Continental Congress for admission into the Union.

The New York delegates in Congress succeeded in defeating this scheme, but the Vermont people went on and framed their constitution. Thomas Chittenden, a man of little education but very considerable

Troubles in
the Green
Mountains,
1777-84

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ability, a farmer and innkeeper,¹ like Israel Putnam, was chosen governor, and held that position for many years. New Hampshire thus far had not actively opposed these measures, but fresh grounds of quarrel were soon at hand. Several towns on the east bank of the Connecticut River wished to escape from the jurisdiction of New Hampshire. They preferred to belong to Vermont, because it was not within the Union, and accordingly not liable to requisitions of taxes from the Continental Congress. It was conveniently remembered that by the original grant, in the reign of Charles II., New Hampshire extended only sixty miles from the coast. Vermont was at first inclined to assent, but finding the scheme unpopular in Congress, and not wishing to offend that body, she changed her mind. The towns on both banks of the river then tried to organize themselves into a middle state,—a sort of Lotharingia on the banks of this New World Rhine,—to be called New Connecticut. By this time New Hampshire was aroused, and she called attention to the fact that she still believed herself entitled to dominion over the whole of Vermont. Massachusetts now began to suspect

¹ I have noticed that to readers unfamiliar with the early history of New England, the mention of these occupations is misleading. Both Putnam and Chittenden were gentlemen of eminently respectable ancestry.

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

that the upshot of the matter would be the partition of the whole disputed territory between New Hampshire and New York, and, ransacking her ancient grants and charters, she decided to set up a claim on her own part to the southernmost towns in Vermont. Thus goaded on all sides, Vermont adopted an aggressive policy. She not only annexed the towns east of the Connecticut River, but also asserted sovereignty over the towns in New York as far as the Hudson. New York sent troops to the threatened frontier, New Hampshire prepared to do likewise, and for a moment war seemed inevitable. But here, as in so many other instances, Washington appeared as peacemaker, and prevailed upon Governor Chittenden to use his influence in getting the dangerous claims withdrawn.¹ After the spring of 1784 the outlook was less stormy in the Green Mountains. The conflicting claims were allowed to lie dormant, but the possibilities of mischief remained, and the Vermont question was not finally settled until after the adoption of the Federal Constitution. Meanwhile, on the debatable frontier between Vermont and New York the embers of hatred smouldered. Barns and

¹ The story of the Vermont difficulties has been well summed up by Hildreth, *History of the United States*, vol. iii. pp. 407-410. See, also, Benton, *The Vermont Settlers and the New York Land Speculators*, Minneapolis, 1894.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

houses were set on fire, and belated wayfarers were found mysteriously murdered in the depths of the forest.

Incidents like these of Wyoming and Vermont seem trivial, perhaps, when contrasted with the lurid tales of border warfare in older times between half-civilized peoples of mediæval Europe, as we read them in the pages of Froissart and Sir Walter Scott. But their historic lesson is none the less clear. Though they lift the curtain but a little way, they show us a glimpse of the untold dangers and horrors from which the adoption of our Federal Constitution has so thoroughly freed us that we can only with some effort realize how narrowly we have escaped them. It is fit that they should be borne in mind, that we may duly appreciate the significance of the reign of law and order which has been established on this continent during the greater part of a century. When reported in Europe, such incidents were held to confirm the opinion that the American confederacy was going to pieces. With quarrels about trade and quarrels about boundaries, we seemed to be treading the old-fashioned paths of anarchy, even as they had been trodden in other ages and other parts of the world. It was natural that people in Europe should think so, because there was no historic precedent to help them in forming a different opinion. No one

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

could possibly foresee that within five years a number of gentlemen at Philadelphia, containing among themselves an amount of political sagacity such as has seldom been brought together within the walls of a single room, would amicably discuss the situation and agree upon a new system of government whereby the dangers might be once for all averted. Still less could any one foresee that these gentlemen would not only agree upon a scheme among themselves, but would actually succeed, without serious civil dissension, in making the people of thirteen states adopt, defend, and cherish it. History afforded no example of so large an act of constructive statesmanship. It was, moreover, a strange and apparently fortuitous combination of circumstances that were now preparing the way for it and making its accomplishment possible. No one could forecast the future. When our ministers and agents in Europe raised the question as to making commercial treaties, they were disdainfully asked whether Euro-
pean powers were expected to deal One nation
or thirteen ? with thirteen governments or with one. If it was answered that the United States constituted a single government so far as their relations with foreign powers were concerned, then we were forthwith twitted with our failure to keep our engagements with England with regard to the loyalists and the collection of private debts.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Yes, we see, said the European diplomats ; the United States are one nation to-day and thirteen to-morrow, according as may seem to subserve their selfish interests. Jefferson, at Paris, was told again and again that it was useless for the French government to enter into any agreement with the United States, as there was no certainty that it would be fulfilled on our part ; and the same things were said all over Europe. Toward the close of the war most of the European nations had seemed ready to enter into commercial arrangements with the United States, but all save Holland speedily lost interest in the subject. John Adams had succeeded in making a treaty with Holland in 1782. Frederick the Great treated us more civilly than other sovereigns. One of the last acts of his life was to conclude a treaty for ten years with the United States ; asserting the principle that free ships make free goods, taking arms and military stores out of the class of contraband, agreeing to refrain from privateering even in case of war between the two countries, and in other respects showing a liberal and enlightened spirit.

This treaty was concluded in 1786. It scarcely touched the subject of international trade in time of peace, but it was valuable as regarded the matters it covered, and in the midst of the general failure of American diplomacy in Europe

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

it fell pleasantly upon our ears. Our diplomacy had failed because our weakness had been proclaimed to the world. We were bullied by England, insulted by France and Spain, and looked askance at in Holland. The humiliating position in which our ministers were placed by the beggarly poverty of Congress was something almost beyond credence. It was by no means unusual for the superintendent of finance, when hard pushed for money, to draw upon our foreign ministers, and then sell the drafts for cash. This was not only not unusual ; it was an established custom. It was done again and again, when there was not the smallest ground for supposing that the minister upon whom the draft was made would have any funds wherewith to meet it. He must go and beg the money. That was part of his duty as envoy, — to solicit loans without security for a government that could not raise enough money by taxation to defray its current expenses. It was sickening work. Just before John Adams had been appointed minister to England, and while he was visiting in London, he suddenly learned that drafts upon him had been presented to his bankers in Amsterdam to the amount of more than a million florins. Less than half a million florins were on hand to meet these demands, and unless something were done at once the greater

Failure of
American
credit ; John
Adams beg-
ging in Hol-
land, 1784

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

part of this paper would go back to America protested. Adams lost not a moment in starting for Holland. In these modern days of precision in travel, when we can translate space into time, the distance between London and Amsterdam is eleven hours. It was accomplished by Adams, after innumerable delays and vexations and no little danger, in three weeks. The bankers had contrived, by ingenious excuses, to keep the drafts from going to protest until the minister's arrival, but the gazettes were full of the troubles of Congress and the bickerings of the states, and everybody was suspicious. Adams applied in vain to the regency of Amsterdam. The promise of the American government was not regarded as valid security for a sum equivalent to about three hundred thousand dollars. The members of the regency were polite, but inexorable. They could not make a loan on such terms; it was unbusinesslike and contrary to precedent. Finding them immovable, Adams was forced to apply to professional usurers and Jew brokers, from whom, after three weeks of perplexity and humiliation, he obtained a loan at exorbitant interest, and succeeded in meeting the drafts. It was only too plain, as he mournfully confessed, that American credit was dead.¹

¹ The story is told in John Adams's *Works*, viii. 153-191. In a letter called forth by the affair, Franklin thus hits the nail on the head: "I hope these mischievous events will at length

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

Such were the trials of our American ministers in Europe in the dark days of the League of Friendship. It was not a solitary, but a typical, instance. John Jay's experience at the unfriendly court of Spain was perhaps even more trying.

European governments might treat us with cold disdain, and European bankers might pronounce our securities worthless, but there was one quarter of the world from which even worse measure was meted out to us. Of all the barbarous communities with which the civilized world has had to deal in modern times, perhaps none have made so much trouble as the Mussulman states on the southern shore of the Mediterranean. After the breaking up of the great Moorish kingdoms of the Middle Ages, this region had fallen under the nominal control of the Turkish sultans as lords paramount of the orthodox Mohammedan world. Its miserable populations became the prey of banditti. Swarms of half-savage chieftains settled down upon the land like locusts, and out of such a

convince our people of the truth of what I long since wrote to them, that *the foundation of credit abroad must be laid at home*. When the States have not faith enough in a Congress of their own choosing to trust it with money for the payment of their common debt, how can they expect that that Congress should meet with credit when it wants to borrow more money for their use from strangers." *Franklin to John Adams*, Passy, 5 Feb., 1784.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

pandemonium of robbery and murder as has scarcely been equalled in historic times the pirate states of Morocco and Algiers, Tunis and Tripoli, gradually emerged. Of these communities history has not one good word to say. In these fair lands, once illustrious for the genius and virtues of a Hannibal and the profound philosophy of St. Augustine, there grew up some of the most terrible despotisms ever known to the world. The things done daily by the robber sovereigns were such as to make a civilized imagination recoil with horror. One of these cheerful creatures, who reigned at the beginning of the eighteenth century, and was called Muley Ismail, especially prided himself on his peculiar skill in mounting a horse. Resting his left hand upon the horse's neck, as he sprang into the saddle he simultaneously swung the sharp scimitar in his right hand so deftly as to cut off the head of the groom who held the bridle.¹ From his behaviour in these sportive moods one may judge what he was capable of on serious occasions. He was a fair sample of the Barbary monarchs. The foreign policy of these wretches was summed up in piracy and blackmail. Their corsairs swept the Mediterranean and ventured far out upon the ocean, capturing merchant vessels, and murder-

¹ See Busnot, *History of the Reign of Muley Ismail*, London, 1715, p. 35.

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

ing or enslaving their crews. Of the rich booty, a fixed proportion was paid over to the robber sovereign, and the rest was divided among the gang. So lucrative was this business that it attracted hardy ruffians from all parts of Europe, and the misery they inflicted upon mankind during four centuries was beyond calculation. One of their favourite practices was the kidnapping of eminent or wealthy persons, in the hope of extorting ransom. Cervantes and Vincent de Paul were among the celebrated men who thus tasted the horrors of Moorish slavery; but it was a calamity that might fall to the lot of any man or woman, and it was but rarely that the victims ever regained their freedom.

Against these pirates the governments of Europe contended in vain. Swift cruisers frequently captured their ships, and from the days of Joan of Arc down to the days of Napoleon their skeletons swung from long rows of gibbets on all the coasts of Europe, as a terror and a warning. But their losses were easily repaired, and sometimes they cruised in fleets of seventy or eighty sail, defying the navies of England and France. It was not until after England, in Nelson's time, had acquired supremacy in the Mediterranean that this dreadful scourge was destroyed. Americans, however, have just ground for pride in recollecting that their government was fore-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

most in chastising these pirates in their own harbours. The exploits of our little navy in the Mediterranean at the beginning of the present century form an interesting episode in American history, but in the weak days of the Confederation our commerce was plundered

American
citizens
kidnapped

with impunity, and American citizens were seized and sold into slavery in the markets of Algiers and Tripoli. One reason for the long survival of this villainy was the low state of humanity among European nations. An Englishman's sympathy was but feebly aroused by the plunder of Frenchmen, and the bigoted Spaniard looked on with approval so long as it was Protestants that were kidnapped and bastinadoed. In 1783 Lord Sheffield published a pamphlet on the commerce of the United States, in which he shamelessly declared that the Barbary pirates were really useful to the great maritime powers, because they tended to keep the weaker nations out of their share in the carrying trade. This, he thought, was a valuable offset to the Empress Catherine's device of the armed neutrality, whereby small nations were protected; and on this wicked theory, as Franklin tells us, London merchants had been heard to say that "if there were no Algiers, it would be worth England's while to build one." It was largely because of such feelings that the great states of

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

Europe so long persisted in the craven policy of paying blackmail to the robbers, instead of joining in a crusade and destroying them.

In 1786 Congress felt it necessary to take measures for protecting the lives and liberties of American citizens. The person who was grotesquely called "Emperor" of Morocco at that time was different from most of his kind. He had a taste for reading, and had thus caught a glimmering of the enlightened liberalism which French philosophers were preaching. He wished to be thought a benevolent despot, and with Morocco, accordingly, Congress succeeded in making a treaty. But nothing could be done with the other pirate states without paying blackmail. Few scenes in our history are more amusing or irritating than the interview of John Adams with an envoy from Tripoli in London. The oily-tongued barbarian, with his soft voice and his bland smile, asseverating that his only interest in life was to do good and make other people happy, stands out in fine contrast with the blunt, straightforward, and truthful New Englander; and their conversation reminds one of the old story of Cœur-de-Lion with his curtal-axe and Saladin with the blade that cut the silken cushion. Adams felt sure that the fellow was either saint or devil, but could not quite tell which. The envoy's love for mankind was so great that he could not bear the thought of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

hostility between the Americans and the Barbary States, and he suggested that everything might be happily arranged for a million dollars or so. Adams thought it better to fight than to pay tribute. Tripoli demands black-mail, February, 1786

It would be cheaper in the end, as well as more manly. At the same time, it was better economy to pay a million dollars at once than waste many times that sum in war risks and loss of trade. But Congress could do neither one thing nor the other. It was too poor to build a navy, and too poor to buy off the pirates; and so for several years to come American ships were burned and American sailors enslaved with impunity. With the memory of such wrongs deeply graven in his heart, it was natural that John Adams, on becoming President of the United States, should bend his energies toward founding a strong American navy.

A government touches the lowest point of ignominy when it confesses its inability to protect the lives and property of its citizens. A government which has come to this has failed in discharging the primary function of government, and forthwith ceases to have any reason for existing. In March, 1786, Grayson wrote to Madison that several members of Congress thought seriously of recommending a general convention for remodelling the government. "I have not

Congress
unable to
protect
American
citizens

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

made up my mind," says Grayson, "whether it would not be better to bear the ills we have than fly to those we know not of. I am, however, in no doubt about the weakness of the federal government. If it remains much longer in its present state of imbecility, we shall be one of the most contemptible nations on the face of the earth." "It is clear to me as A B C," said Washington, "that an extension of federal powers would make us one of the most happy, wealthy, respectable, and powerful nations that ever inhabited the terrestrial globe. Without them we shall soon be everything which is the direct reverse. I predict the worst consequences from a half-starved, limping government, always moving upon crutches and tottering at every step."

There is no telling how long the wretched state of things which followed the Revolution might have continued, had not the crisis been precipitated by the wild attempts of the several states to remedy the distress of the people by legislation. That financial distress was widespread and deep-seated was not to be denied. At the beginning of the war the amount of accumulated capital in the country had been very small. The great majority of the people did little more than get from the annual yield of their farms or plantations enough to meet the current expenses of

Financial
distress pre-
cipitates the
political crisis

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the year. Outside of agriculture the chief resources were the carrying trade, the exchange of commodities with England and the West Indies, and the cod and whale fisheries; and in these occupations many people had grown rich. The war had destroyed all these sources of revenue. Imports and exports had alike been stopped, so that there was a distressing scarcity of some of the commonest household articles. The enemy's navy had kept us from the fisheries. Before the war, the dockyards of Nantucket were ringing with the busy sound of adze and hammer, ropewalks covered the island, and two hundred keels sailed yearly in quest of spermaceti. At the return of peace, the docks were silent and grass grew in the streets. The carrying trade and the fisheries began soon to revive, but it was some years before the old prosperity was restored. The war had also wrought serious damage to agriculture, and in some parts of the country the direct destruction of property by the enemy's troops had been very great. To all these causes of poverty there was added the hopeless confusion due to an inconvertible paper currency. The worst feature of this financial device is that it not only impoverishes people, but bemuddles their brains by creating a false and fleeting show of prosperity. By violently disturbing apparent values, it always brings on an era of wild speculation and extravagance in

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

living, followed by sudden collapse and protracted suffering. In such crises the poorest people, those who earn their bread by the sweat of their brows and have no margin of accumulated capital, always suffer the most. Above all men, it is the labouring man who needs sound money and steady values. We have seen all these points amply illustrated since the War of Secession. After the War of Independence, when the margin of accumulated capital was so much smaller, the misery was much greater. While the paper money lasted there was marked extravagance in living, and complaints were loud against the speculators, especially those who operated in breadstuffs. Washington said he would like to hang them all on a gallows higher than that of Haman; but they were, after all, but the inevitable products of this abnormal state of things, and the more guilty criminals were the demagogues who went about preaching the doctrine that the poor man needs cheap money. After the collapse of this continental currency in 1780, it seemed as if there were no money in the country, and at the peace the renewal of trade with England seemed at first to make matters worse. The brisk importation of sorely needed manufactured goods, which then began, would naturally have been paid for in the south by indigo, rice, and tobacco, in the middle states by exports of wheat and furs, and

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in New England by the profits of the fisheries, the shipping, and the West India trade. But in the southern and middle states the necessary revival of agriculture could not be effected in a moment, and British legislation against American shipping and the West India trade fell with crippling force upon New England. Consequently, we had little else but specie with which to pay for imports, and the country was soon drained of what little specie there was. In the absence of a circulating medium there was a reversion to the practice of barter, and the revival of business was thus further impeded. Whiskey in North Carolina, tobacco in Virginia, did duty as measures of value ; and Isaiah Thomas, editor of the Worcester "Spy," announced that he would receive subscriptions for his paper in salt pork.

It is worth while, in this connection, to observe what this specie was, the scarcity of which created so much embarrassment. Until 1785 no national coinage was established, and none was issued until 1793. English, French, Spanish, and German coins, of various and uncertain value, passed from hand to hand. Beside the

State of the	ninepences and fourpence-ha'-pennies,
coinage	there were bits and half-bits, pistareens,
	picayunes, and fips. Of gold pieces there were
	the johannes, or joe, the doubloon, the moidore
	and pistole, with English and French guineas,

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

carolins, ducats, and chequins. Of coppers there were English pence and halfpence and French sous; and pennies were issued at local mints in Vermont, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Jersey, and Pennsylvania. The English shilling had everywhere degenerated in value, but differently in different localities; and among silver pieces the Spanish dollar, from Louisiana and Cuba, had begun to supersede it as a measure of value. In New England the shilling had sunk from nearly one fourth to one sixth of a dollar; in New York to one eighth; in North Carolina to one tenth. It was partly for this reason that in devising a national coinage the more uniform dollar was adopted as the unit. At the same time the decimal system of division was adopted instead of the cumbrous English system, and the result was our present admirably simple currency, which we owe to Gouverneur Morris, aided as to some points by Thomas Jefferson. During the period of the Confederation, the chaotic state of the currency was a serious obstacle to trade, and it afforded endless opportunities for fraud and extortion. Clipping and counterfeiting were carried to such lengths that every moderately cautious person, in taking payment in hard cash, felt it necessary to keep a small pair of scales beside him and carefully weigh each coin, after narrowly scrutinizing its stamp and deciphering its legend.

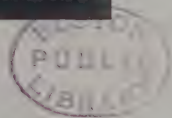
THE CRITICAL PERIOD

In view of all these complicated impediments to business on the morrow of a long and costly war, it was not strange that the whole country was in some measure pauperized. The cost of the war, estimated in cash, had been about \$170,000,000 — a huge sum if we consider the circumstances of the country at that time. To meet this crushing indebtedness Mr. Hil-dreth reckons the total amount raised by the states, whether by means of repudiated paper or of taxes, down to 1784, as not more than \$30,000,000. No wonder if the issue of such a struggle seemed quite hopeless. In many parts of the country, by the year 1786, the payment of taxes had come to be regarded as an amiable eccentricity. At one moment, early in 1782, there was not a single dollar in the treasury. That the government had in any way been able to finish the war, after the downfall of its paper money, was due to the gigantic efforts of one great man, — Robert Morris of Pennsylvania. This statesman was born in England, but he had come to Philadelphia in his boyhood, and had amassed a large fortune, which he devoted without stint to the service of his adopted country. Though opposed to the Declaration of Independence as rash and premature, he had, nevertheless, signed his name to that document, and scarcely any one

Cost of the
war ; Rob-
ert Morris
and his
immense
services



Robt Morris.



DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

had contributed more to the success of the war.¹ It was he who raised the money which enabled Washington to complete the great campaign of Trenton and Princeton. In 1781 he was made superintendent of finance, and by dint of every imaginable device of hard-pressed ingenuity he contrived to support the brilliant work which began at the Cowpens and ended at Yorktown. He established the Bank of North America as an instrument by which government loans might be negotiated. Sometimes his methods were such as doctors call heroic, as when he made sudden drafts upon our ministers in Europe after the manner already described. In every dire emergency he was Washington's chief reliance. It was of ill omen for the fortunes of the weak and disorderly Confederation that in 1784, after three years of herculean struggle with impossibilities, this stout heart and sagacious head could no longer weather the storm. The task of creating wealth out of nothing had become too arduous and too thankless to be endured. Robert Morris resigned his place, and it was taken by a congressional committee of finance, under whose

¹ Probably the winning of independence was due more to Morris than to any other man except Washington. Copious data for studying his career are collected in Sumner's *The Financier and Finances of the American Revolution*, 2 vols., New York, 1891.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

management the disorders only hurried to a crisis.

By 1786, under the universal depression and want of confidence, all trade had well-nigh stopped, and political quackery, with its cheap and dirty remedies, had full control of the field. In the very face of miseries so plainly traceable to the deadly paper currency, it may seem strange that people should now have begun to clamour for a renewal of the experiment which had worked so much evil. Yet so it was. As starving men are said to dream of dainty banquets, so now a craze for fictitious wealth in the shape of paper money ran like an epidemic through the country. There was a Barmecide feast of economic vagaries; only now it was the several states that sought to apply the remedy, each in its own way. And when we have threaded the maze of this rash legislation, we shall the better understand that clause in our federal constitution which forbids the making of laws impairing the obligation of contracts. The events of 1786 impressed upon men's minds more forcibly than ever the wretched and disorderly condition of the country, and went far toward calling into existence the needful popular sentiment in favour of an overruling central government.

The disorders assumed very different forms in the different states, and brought out a great



Obverse



Reverse



Obverse



Reverse

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

diversity of opinion as to the causes of the distress and the efficacy of the proposed remedies. Only two states out of the thirteen — Connecticut and Delaware — escaped the infection, but, on the other hand, it was only in seven states that the paper money party prevailed in the legislatures. North Carolina issued a large amount of paper, and, in order to get it into circulation as quickly as possible, the state government proceeded to buy tobacco with it, paying double the specie value of the tobacco. As a natural consequence, the paper dollar instantly fell to seventy cents, and went on declining. In South Carolina an issue was tried somewhat more cautiously, but the planters soon refused to take the paper at its face value. Coercive measures were then attempted. Planters and merchants were urged to sign a pledge not to discriminate between paper and gold, and if any one dared refuse the fanatics forthwith attempted to make it hot for him. A kind of "Kuklux" society was organized at Charleston, known as the "Hint Club." Its purpose was to hint to such people that they had better look out. If they did not mend their ways, it was unnecessary to inform them more explicitly what they might expect. Houses were combustible then as now, and the use of firearms was well understood. In Georgia the legislature itself attempted coercion.

Agitation in
southern and
middle states

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Paper money was made a legal tender in spite of strong opposition, and a law was passed prohibiting any planter or merchant from exporting any produce without taking affidavit that he had never refused to receive this scrip at its full face value. But somehow people found that the more it was sought to keep up the paper by dint of threats and forcing acts, the faster its value fell. Virginia had issued bills of credit during the campaign of 1781, but it was enacted at the same time that they should not be a legal tender after the next January. The influence of Washington, Madison, and Mason was effectively brought to bear in favour of sound currency, and the people of Virginia were but slightly affected by the craze of 1786. In the autumn of that year a proposition from two counties for an issue of paper was defeated in the legislature by a vote of eighty-five to seventeen, and no more was heard of the matter. In Maryland, after a very obstinate fight, a rag money bill was carried in the house of representatives, but the senate threw it out; and the measure was thus postponed until the discussion over the federal constitution superseded it in popular interest. Pennsylvania had warily begun in May, 1785, to issue a million dollars in bills of credit, which were not made a legal tender for the payment of private debts. They were mainly loaned to farmers on mortgage, and

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

were received by the state as an equivalent for specie in the payment of taxes. By August, 1786, even this carefully guarded paper had fallen some twelve cents below par, — not a bad showing for such a year as that. New York moved somewhat less cautiously. A million dollars were issued in bills of credit receivable for the custom-house duties, which were then paid into the state treasury ; and these bills were made a legal tender for all money received in lawsuits. At the same time the New Jersey legislature passed a bill for issuing half a million paper dollars, to be a legal tender in all business transactions. The bill was vetoed by the governor in council. The aged Governor Livingston was greatly respected by the people ; and so the mob at Elizabethtown, which had duly planted a stake and dragged his effigy up to it, refrained from inflicting the last indignities upon the image, and burned that of one of the members of the council instead. At the next session the governor yielded, and the rag money was issued. But an unforeseen difficulty arose. Most of the dealings of New Jersey people were in the cities of New York and Philadelphia, and in both cities the merchants refused their paper, so that it speedily became worthless.

The business of exchange was thus fast getting into hopeless confusion. It has been said of Bradshaw's Railway Guide, the indispensable

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

companion of the traveller in England, that no man can study it for an hour without qualifying himself for a lunatic asylum. But Bradshaw is pellucid clearness compared with the American tables of exchange in 1786, with their medley of dollars and shillings, moidores, and pistareens. The addition of half a dozen different kinds of paper created such a labyrinth as no human intellect could explore. No wonder that men were counted wise who preferred to take whiskey and pork instead. Nobody who had a yard of cloth to sell could tell how much it was worth. But even worse than all this was the swift and certain renewal of bankruptcy which so many states were preparing for themselves.

Nowhere did the warning come so quickly or so sharply as in New England. Connecticut, indeed, as already observed, came off scot-free. She had issued a little paper money soon after the battle of Lexington, but had stopped it about the time of the surrender of Burgoyne. In 1780 she had wisely and summarily adjusted all relations between debtor and creditor, and the crisis of 1786 found her people poor enough, no doubt, but able to wait for better times and indisposed to adopt violent remedies. It was far otherwise

in Rhode Island and Massachusetts. These were preëminently the maritime states of the Union, and upon them the blows aimed by England at American

Distress in
New Eng-
land

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

commerce had fallen most severely. It was these two maritime states that suffered most from the cutting down of the carrying trade and the restriction of intercourse with the West Indies. These things worked injury to shipbuilding, to the exports of lumber and oil and salted fish, even to the manufacture of Medford rum. Nowhere had the normal machinery of business been thrown out of gear so extensively as in these two states, and in Rhode Island there was the added disturbance due to a prolonged occupation by the enemy's troops. Nowhere, perhaps, was there a larger proportion of the population in debt, and in these preëminently commercial communities private debts were a heavier burden and involved more personal suffering than in the somewhat patriarchal system of life in Virginia or South Carolina. In the time of which we are now treating, imprisonment for debt was common. High-minded but unfortunate men were carried to jail, and herded with thieves and ruffians in loathsome dungeons, for the crime of owing a hundred dollars which they could not promptly pay. Under such circumstances a commercial disturbance, involving widespread debt, entailed an amount of personal suffering and humiliation of which, in these kinder days, we can form no adequate conception. It tended to make the debtor an outlaw, ready to entertain schemes for the subversion

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of society. In the crisis of 1786, the agitation in Rhode Island and Massachusetts reached white heat, and things were done which alarmed the whole country. But the course of events was different in the two states. In Rhode Island the agitators obtained control of the government, and the result was a paroxysm of tyranny. In Massachusetts the agitators failed to secure control of the government, and the result was a paroxysm of rebellion.

The debates over paper money in the Rhode Island legislature began in 1785, but the advocates of a sound currency were victorious. These men were roundly abused in the newspapers, and in the next spring election most of them lost their seats. The legislature of 1786 showed an overwhelming majority in favour of paper money. The farmers from the inland towns were unanimous in supporting the measure. They could not see the difference between the state making a dollar out of paper and a dollar out of gold. The idea that the value did not lie in the government stamp they dismissed as an idle crotchet, a wire-drawn theory, worthy only of "literary fellows." What they could see was the glaring fact that they had no money, hard or soft; and they wanted something that would satisfy their creditors and buy new gowns for their wives, whose raiment was unquestionably the worse for wear. On the other hand,

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

the merchants from seaports like Providence, Newport, and Bristol understood the difference between real money and the promissory notes of a bankrupt government, but they were in a hopeless minority. Half a million dollars were issued in scrip, to be loaned to the farmers on a mortgage of their real estate. No one could obtain the scrip without giving a mortgage for twice the amount, and it was thought that this security would make it as good as gold. But the depreciation began instantly. When the worthy farmers went to the store for dry goods or sugar, and found the prices rising with dreadful rapidity, they were at first astonished, and then enraged. The trouble, as they truly said, was with the wicked merchants, who would not take the paper dollars at their face value. These men were thus thwarting the government, and must be punished. An act was accordingly hurried through the legislature, commanding every one to take paper as an equivalent for gold, under penalty of five hundred dollars fine and loss of the right of suffrage. The merchants in the cities thereupon shut up their shops. During the summer of 1786 all business was at a standstill in Newport and Providence, except in the bar-rooms. There and about the market-places men spent their time angrily discussing politics, and scarcely a day

Rag money
victorious
in Rhode
Island; the
"Know
Ye" mea-
sures

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

passed without street-fights, which at times grew into riots. In the country, too, no less than in the cities, the goddess of discord reigned. The farmers determined to starve the city people into submission, and they entered into an agreement not to send any produce into the cities until the merchants should open their shops and begin selling their goods for paper at its face value. Not wishing to lose their pigs and butter and grain, they tried to dispose of them in Boston and New York, and in the coast towns of Connecticut. But in all these places their proceedings had awakened such lively disgust that placards were posted in the taverns warning purchasers against farm produce from Rhode Island. Disappointed in these quarters, the farmers threw away their milk, used their corn for fuel, and let their apples rot on the ground, rather than supply the detested merchants. Food grew scarce in Providence and Newport, and in the latter city a mob of sailors attempted unsuccessfully to storm the provision stores. The farmers were threatened with armed violence. Town meetings were held all over the state, to discuss the situation, and how long they might have talked to no purpose none can say, when all at once the matter was brought into court. A cabinet-maker in Newport named Trevett went into a meat-market kept by one John Weeden, and selecting a joint of meat,

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

offered paper in payment. Weeden refused to take the paper except at a heavy discount. Trevett went to bed supperless, and next morning informed against the obstinate butcher for disobedience to the forcing act. Should the court find him guilty, it would be a good speculation for Trevett, for half of the five hundred dollars fine was to go to the informer. Hard-money men feared lest the court might prove subservient to the legislature, since that body possessed the power of removing the five judges. The case was tried in September amid furious excitement. Huge crowds gathered about the court-house and far down the street, screaming and cheering like a crowd on the night of a presidential election. The judges were clear-headed men, not to be browbeaten. They declared the forcing act unconstitutional, and dismissed the complaint. Popular wrath then turned upon them. A special session of the legislature was convened, four of the judges were removed, and a new forcing act was prepared. This act provided that no man could vote at elections or hold any office without taking a test oath promising to receive paper money at par. But this was going too far. Many soft-money men were not wild enough to support such a measure; among the farmers there were some who had grown tired of seeing their produce spoiled on their hands; and many of the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

richest merchants had announced their intention of moving out of the state. The new forcing act accordingly failed to pass, and presently the old one was repealed. The paper dollar had been issued in May; in November it passed for sixteen cents.

These outrageous proceedings awakened disgust and alarm among sensible people everywhere, and Rhode Island was ruthlessly reviled and made fun of. One clause of the forcing act had provided that if a debtor should offer paper to his creditor and the creditor should refuse to take it at par, the debtor might carry his rag money to court and deposit it with the judge; and the judge must thereupon issue a certificate discharging the debt. The form of certificate began with the words "Know Ye," and forthwith the unhappy little state was nicknamed Rogues' Island, the home of Know Ye men and Know Ye measures.

While scorn was thus poured out upon Rhode Island, much sympathy was felt for the government of Massachusetts, which was called upon thus early to put down armed rebellion. The pressure of debt was keenly felt in the rural districts of Massachusetts. It is estimated that the private debts in the state amounted to some \$7,000,000, and the state's arrears to the federal government amounted

Rag money
defeated in
Massachu-
setts; the
Shays in-
surrection,
Aug. 1786-
Feb. 1787

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

to some \$7,000,000 more. Adding to these sums the arrears of bounties due to the soldiers, and the annual cost of the state, county, and town governments, there was reached an aggregate equivalent to a tax of more than \$50 on every man, woman, and child in this population of 379,000 souls. Upon every head of a family the average burden was some \$200, at a time when most farmers would have thought such a sum yearly a princely income. In those days of scarcity most of them did not set eyes on so much as \$50 in the course of a year, and happy was he who had tucked away two or three golden guineas or moidores in an old stocking, and sewed up the treasure in his straw mattress or hidden it behind the bricks of the chimney-piece. Under such circumstances the payment of debts and taxes was out of the question ; and as the same state of things made creditors clamorous and ugly, the courts were crowded with lawsuits. The lawyers usually contrived to get their money by exacting retainers in advance, and the practice of champerty was common, whereby the lawyer did his work in consideration of a percentage on the sum which was at last forcibly collected. Homesteads were sold for the payment of foreclosed mortgages, cattle were seized in distrainer, and the farmer himself was sent to jail. The smouldering fires of wrath thus kindled found expression in curses

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

aimed at lawyers, judges, and merchants. The wicked merchants bought foreign goods and drained the state of specie to pay for them, while they drank Madeira wine and dressed their wives in fine velvets and laces. So said the farmers; and city ladies, far kinder than these railers deemed them, formed clubs, of which the members pledged themselves to wear homespun — a poor palliative for the deep-seated ills of the time. In such mood were many of the villagers when in the summer of 1786 they were overtaken by the craze for paper money. At the meeting of the legislature in May, a petition came in from Bristol County, praying for an issue of paper. The petitioners admitted that such money was sure to deteriorate in value, and they doubted the wisdom of trying to keep it up by forcing acts. Instead of this they would have the rate of its deterioration regulated by law, so that a dollar might be worth ninety cents to-day, and presently seventy cents, and by and by fifty cents, and so on till it should go down to zero and be thrown overboard. People would thus know what to expect, and it would be all right. The delicious naïveté of this argument did not prevail with the legislature of Massachusetts, and soft money was frowned down by a vote of ninety-nine to nineteen. Then a bill was brought in seeking to reestablish in legislation the ancient practice of barter, and make horses and cows legal tender

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

for debts ; and this bill was crushed by eighty-nine votes against thirty-five. At the same time this legislature passed a bill to strengthen the federal government by a grant of supplementary funds to Congress, and thus laid a further burden of taxes upon the people.

There was an outburst of popular wrath. A convention at Hatfield in August decided that the court of common pleas ought to be abolished, that no funds should be granted to Congress, and that paper money should be issued at once. Another convention at Lenox denounced such incendiary measures, approved of supporting the federal government, and declared that no good could come from the issue of paper money. But meanwhile the angry farmers had resorted to violence. The legislature, they said, had its sittings in Boston, under the influence of wicked lawyers and merchants, and thus could not be expected to do the will of the people. A cry went up that henceforth the law-makers must sit in some small inland town, where jealous eyes might watch their proceedings. Meanwhile the lawyers must be dealt with ; and at Northampton, Worcester, Great Barrington, and Concord the courts were broken up by armed mobs. At Concord one Job Shattuck brought several hundred armed men into the town and surrounded the court-house, while in a fierce harangue he declared that the time had

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

come for wiping out all debts. "Yes," squeaked a nasal voice from the crowd, — "yes, Job, we know all about them two farms you can't never pay for!" But this repartee did not save the judges, who thought it best to flee from the town. At first the legislature deemed it wise to take a lenient view of these proceedings, and it even went so far as to promise to hold its next session out of Boston. But the agitation had reached a point where it could not be stayed. In September the supreme court was to sit at Springfield, and Governor Bowdoin sent a force of 600 militia under General Shepard to protect it. They were confronted by some 600 insurgents, under the leadership of Daniel Shays. This man had been a captain in the Continental army, and in his force were many of the penniless veterans whom Gates would fain have incited to rebellion at Newburgh. Shays seems to have done what he could to restrain his men from violence, but he was a poor creature, wanting alike in courage and good faith. On the other hand, the militia were lacking in spirit. After a disorderly parley, with much cursing and swearing, they beat a retreat, and the court was prevented from sitting. Fresh riots followed at Worcester and Concord. A regiment of cavalry, sent out by the governor, scoured Middlesex County, and, after a short fight in the woods near Groton, captured Job Shattuck

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

and dispersed his men. But this only exasperated the insurgents. They assembled in Worcester to the number of 1200 or more, where they lived for two months at free quarters, while Shays organized and drilled them.

Meanwhile the habeas corpus act was suspended for eight months, and Governor Bowdoin called out an army of 4400 men, who were placed under command of General Lincoln. As the state treasury was nearly empty, some wealthy gentlemen in Boston subscribed the money needed for equipping these troops, and about the middle of January, 1787, they were collected at Worcester. The rebels had behaved shamefully, burning barns and seizing all the plunder they could lay hands on. As their numbers increased they found their military stores inadequate, and accordingly they marched upon Springfield, with the intent to capture the federal arsenal there, and provide themselves with muskets and cannon. General Shepard held Springfield with 1200 men, and on the 25th of January Shays attacked him with a force of somewhat more than 2000, hoping to crush him and seize the arsenal before Lincoln could come to the rescue. But his plan of attack was faulty, and as soon as his men began falling under Shepard's fire a panic seized them, and they retreated in disorder to Ludlow, and then to Amherst, setting fire to

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

houses and robbing the inhabitants. On the approach of Lincoln's army, three days later, Shays retreated to Pelham, and placed his forces on two steep hills protected at the bottom by huge snow-drifts. Lincoln advanced to Hadley and sought to open negotiations with the rebels. They were reminded that a contest with the state government was hopeless, and that they had already incurred the penalty of death; but if they would now lay down their arms and go home, a free pardon could be obtained for them. Shays seemed willing to yield, and Saturday, the 3d of February, was appointed for a conference between some of the leading rebels and some of the officers. But this was only a stratagem. During the conference Shays decamped and marched his men through Prescott and North Dana to Petersham. Toward nightfall the trick was discovered, and Lincoln set his whole force in motion over the mountain ridges of Shutesbury and New Salem. The day had been mild, but during the night the thermometer dropped below zero and an icy, cutting snow began to fall. There was great suffering during the last ten miles, and indeed the whole march of thirty miles in thirteen hours over steep and snow-covered roads was a worthy exploit for these veterans of the Revolution. Shays and his men had not looked for such a

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

display of energy, and as they were getting their breakfast on Sunday morning at Petersham they were taken by surprise. A few minutes sufficed to scatter them in flight. A hundred and fifty, including Shays himself, were taken prisoners. The rest fled in all directions, most of them to Athol and Northfield, whence they made their way into Vermont. General Lincoln then marched his troops into the mountains of Berkshire, where disturbances still continued. On the 26th of February one Captain Hamlin, with several hundred insurgents, plundered the town of Stockbridge and carried off the leading citizens as hostages. He was pursued as far as Sheffield, defeated there in a sharp skirmish, with a loss of some thirty in killed and wounded, and his troops scattered. This put an end to the insurrection in Massachusetts.

During the autumn similar disturbances had occurred in the states to the northward. At Exeter in New Hampshire and at Windsor and Rutland in Vermont the courts had been broken up by armed mobs, and at Rutland there had been bloodshed. When the Shays rebellion was put down, Governor Bowdoin requested the neighbouring states to lend their aid in bringing the insurgents to justice, and all complied with the request except Vermont and Rhode Island.

Conduct of
neighbouring
states

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

The legislature of Rhode Island sympathized with the rebels, and refused to allow the governor to issue a warrant for their arrest. On the other hand, the governor of Vermont issued a proclamation out of courtesy toward Massachusetts, but he caused it to be understood that this was but an empty form, as the state of Vermont could not afford to discourage immigration! A feeling of compassion for the insurgents was widely spread in Massachusetts. In March the leaders were tried, and fourteen were convicted of treason and sentenced to death; but Governor Bowdoin, whose term was about to expire, granted a reprieve for a few weeks. At the annual election in April the candidates for the governorship were Bowdoin and Hancock, and it was generally believed that the latter would be more likely than the former to pardon the convicted men. So strong was this feeling that, although much gratitude was felt toward Bowdoin, to whose energetic measures the prompt suppression of the rebellion was due, Hancock obtained a large majority. When the question of a pardon came up for discussion, Samuel Adams, who was then president of the senate, was strongly opposed to it, and one of his arguments was very characteristic. "In monarchies," he said, "the crime of treason and rebellion may admit of being pardoned or lightly punished; but the

DRIFTING TOWARD ANARCHY

man who dares to rebel against the laws of a republic ought to suffer death." This was Adams's sensitive point. He wanted the whole world to realize that the rule of a republic is a rule of law and order, and that liberty does not mean license. But in spite of this view, for which there was much to be said, the clemency of the American temperament prevailed, and Governor Hancock pardoned all the prisoners.

Nothing in the history of these disturbances is more instructive than the light incidentally thrown upon the relations between Congress and the state government. Just before the news of the rout at Petersham, Samuel Adams had proposed in the senate that the governor should be requested to write to Congress and inform that body of what was going on in Massachusetts, stating that "although the legislature are firmly persuaded that . . . in all probability they will be able speedily and effectively to suppress the rebellion, yet, if any unforeseen event should take place which may frustrate the measures of government, they rely upon such support from the United States as is expressly and solemnly stipulated by the articles of confederation." A resolution to this effect was carried in the senate, but defeated in the house through the influence of western country members in sympathy with the insurgents; and incredible as it may seem, the argument

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

was freely used that it was incompatible with the dignity of Massachusetts to allow United States troops to set foot upon her soil. When we reflect that the arsenal at Springfield, where the most considerable disturbance occurred, was itself federal property, the climax of absurdity might seem to have been reached.

It was left for Congress itself, however, to cap that climax. The progress of the insurrection in the autumn in Vermont, New Hampshire, and Massachusetts, as well as the troubles in Rhode Island, had alarmed the whole country. It was feared that the insurgents in these states might join forces, and in some way kindle a

Congress
afraid to
interfere

flame that would run through the land. Accordingly Congress in October called upon the states for a continental force, but did not dare to declare openly what it was to be used for. It was thought necessary to say that the troops were wanted for an expedition against the northwestern Indians! National humiliation could go no further than such a confession, on the part of our central government, that it dared not use force in defence of those very articles of confederation to which it owed its existence. Things had come to such a pass that people of all shades of opinion were beginning to agree upon one thing, — that something must be done, and done quickly.

V

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

WHILE the events we have heretofore contemplated seemed to prophesy the speedy dissolution and downfall of the half-formed American Union, a series of causes, obscure enough at first, but emerging gradually into distinctness and then into prominence, were preparing the way for the foundation of a national sovereignty. The growth of this sovereignty proceeded stealthily along such ancient lines of precedent as to take ready hold of people's minds, although few, if any, understood the full purport of what they were doing.

Creation of
a national
domain
beyond the
Alleghanies

Ever since the days when our English forefathers dwelt in village communities in the forests of northern Germany, the idea of a common land or folkland — a territory belonging to the whole community, and upon which new communities might be organized by a process analogous to what physiologists call cell-multiplication — had been perfectly familiar to everybody. Townships budded from village or par-

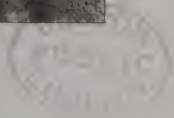
THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ish folkland in Maryland and Massachusetts in the seventeenth century, just as they had done in England before the time of Alfred. The critical period of the Revolution witnessed the repetition of this process on a gigantic scale. It witnessed the creation of a national territory beyond the Alleghanies, — an enormous folkland in which all the thirteen old states had a common interest, and upon which new and derivative communities were already beginning to organize themselves. Questions about public lands are often regarded as the driest of historical deadwood. Discussions about them in newspapers and magazines belong to the class of articles which the general reader usually skips. Yet there is a great deal of the philosophy of history wrapped up in this subject, and it now comes to confront us at a most interesting moment; for without studying this creation of a national domain between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi, we cannot understand how our Federal Union came to be formed.

When England began to contend with France and Spain for the possession of North America, she made royal grants of land upon this continent, in royal ignorance of its extent and configuration. But until the Seven Years' War the eastward and westward partitioning of these grants was of little practical consequence; for English dominion was bounded by the Alle-



Th. Jefferson



GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

ghanies, and everything beyond was in the hands of the French. In that most momentous war the genius of the elder Pitt won the region east of the Mississippi for men of English race, while the vast territory of Louisiana, beyond, passed under the control of Spain. During the Revolutionary War, in a series of romantic expeditions, the state of Virginia took military possession of a great part of the wilderness east of the Mississippi, founding towns in the Ohio and Cumberland valleys, and occupying with garrisons of her state militia the posts at Cahokia, Kaskaskia, and Vincennes. We have seen how, through the skill of our commissioners at Paris, this noble country was secured for the Americans in the treaty of 1783, in spite of the reluctance of France and the hostility of Spain. Throughout the Revolutionary War the Americans claimed this territory as part of the United States; but when once it passed from under the control of Great Britain, into whose hands did it go? To whom did it belong? To this question there were various and conflicting answers. North Carolina, indeed, had already taken possession of what was afterward called Tennessee, and at the beginning of the war Virginia had annexed Kentucky. As to these points there could be little or no dispute. But with the territory north of the Ohio River it was very different.

Conflicting
claims to
the western
territory

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Four states laid claim either to the whole or to parts of this territory, and these claims were not simply conflicting, but irreconcilable.

The charters of Massachusetts and Connecticut were framed at a time when people had not got over the notion that this part of the continent was scarcely wider than Mexico, and accordingly those colonies had received the royal

Claims of
Massachu-
setts and Con-
necticut

permission to extend from sea to sea. The existence of a foreign colony of Dutchmen in the neighbourhood was a trifle about which these documents did not trouble themselves ; but when Charles II. conquered this colony and bestowed it upon his brother, the province of New York became a stubborn fact, which could not be disregarded. Massachusetts and Connecticut peaceably settled their boundary line with New York, and laid no claims to land within the limits of that state ; but they still continued to claim what lay beyond it, as far as the Mississippi River, where the Spanish dominion now began. The regions claimed by Massachusetts have since become the southern halves of the states of Michigan and Wisconsin. The region claimed by Connecticut was a narrow strip running over the northern portions of Pennsylvania, Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois ; and we have seen how much trouble was occasioned in Pennsylvania by this circumstance.

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

But New York laughed to scorn those claims of Connecticut. In the seventeenth century all the Algonquin tribes between Lake Erie and the Cumberland Mountains Claims of New York had become tributary to the Iroquois; and during the hundred years' struggle between France and England for the supremacy of this continent the Iroquois had put themselves under the protection of England, which thenceforth always treated them as an appurtenance to New York. For a hundred years before the Revolution, said New York, she had borne all expense of protecting the Iroquois against the French, and by various treaties she had become lawful suzerain over the Six Nations and their lands and the lands of their Algonquin vassals. On such grounds New York claimed pretty much everything north of the Ohio and east of the Miami.

But, according to Virginia, it made little difference what Massachusetts and Connecticut and New York thought about the matter, for every acre of land, from the Ohio River up to Lake Superior, belonged Virginia's claims to her. Was not she the lordly "Old Dominion," out of which every one of the states had been carved? Even Cape Cod and Cape Ann were said to be in "North Virginia" until, in 1614, Captain John Smith invented the name "New England." It was a fair presumption

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

that any uncarved territory belonged to Virginia ; and it was further held that the original charter of 1609 used language which implicitly covered the northwestern territory, though, as Thomas Paine showed, in a pamphlet entitled "Public Good," this was very doubtful. But besides all this, it was Virginia that had actually conquered the disputed territory, and held every military post in it except those which the British had not yet surrendered ; and who could doubt that possession was nine points in the law ?

Of these conflicting claims, those of New York and Virginia were the most grasping and the most formidable, because they concerned a region into which immigration was beginning rapidly to pour. They were regarded with strong disfavour by the small states — Rhode Island, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland — which were so situated that they never could expand in any direction. They looked forward

Maryland's
novel and
beneficent
suggestion,
Oct. 15,
1777

with dread to a future in which New York and Virginia might wax powerful enough to tyrannize over their smaller neighbours. But of these protesting states it was only Maryland that fairly rose to the occasion, and suggested an idea which seemed startling at first, but from which mighty and unforeseen consequences were

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

soon to follow.¹ It was on the 15th of October, 1777, just two days before Burgoyne's surrender, that this path-breaking idea first found expression in Congress. The articles of confederation were then just about to be presented to the several states to be ratified, and the question arose as to how the conflicting western claims should be settled. A motion was then made that "the United States in Congress assembled shall have the sole and exclusive right and power to ascertain and fix the western boundary of such states as claim to the Mississippi, . . . and lay out the land beyond the boundary so ascertained into separate and independent states, from time to time, as the numbers and circumstances of the people may require." To carry out such a motion, it would be necessary for the four claimant states to surrender their claims into the hands of the United States, and thus create a domain which should be owned by the confederacy in common. So bold a step towards centralization found no favour at the time. No state but Maryland voted for it.

¹ This subject has been treated in a masterly manner by Mr. H. B. Adams, in an essay on "Maryland's Influence upon Land Cessions to the United States," published in the Third Series of the admirable *Johns Hopkins University Studies in History and Politics*. I am indebted to Mr. Adams for many valuable suggestions.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

But Maryland's course was well considered: she pursued it resolutely, and was rewarded with complete success. By February, 1779, all the other states had ratified the articles of confederation. In the following May, Maryland declared that she would not ratify the articles until she should receive some definite assurance that the northwestern territory should become the common property of the United States, — "subject to be parcelled out by Congress into free, convenient, and independent governments." The question, thus boldly brought into the foreground, was earnestly discussed in Congress and in the state legislatures, until in February, 1780, partly through the influence

The several
states yield
their claims
in favour of
the United
States,
1780-85

of General Schuyler, New York decided to cede all her claims to the western lands. This act of New York set things in motion, so that in September Congress recommended to all states having western claims to cede them to the United States. In October, Congress, still pursuing the Maryland idea, went farther, and declared that all such lands as might be ceded should be sold in lots to immigrants and the money used for federal purposes, and that in due season distinct states should be formed there, to be admitted into the Union, with the same rights of sovereignty as the original thirteen states. As an inducement to Virginia, it

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

was further provided that any state which had incurred expense during the war in defending its western possessions should receive compensation. To this general invitation Connecticut immediately responded by offering to cede everything to which she laid claim, except 3,250,000 acres on the southern shore of Lake Erie, which she wished to reserve for educational purposes. Washington disapproved of this reservation, but it was accepted by Congress, though the business was not completed until 1786. This part of the state of Ohio is still commonly spoken of as the "Connecticut Reserve," or "Western Reserve." Half a million acres, known as "Fire Lands," were given to citizens of Connecticut whose property had been destroyed in the British raids that set fire to her coast towns, and the rest were afterward sold for \$1,200,000, in aid of schools and colleges.

In January, 1781, Virginia offered to surrender all the territory northwest of the Ohio, provided that Congress would guarantee her in the possession of Kentucky. This gave rise to a discussion which lasted nearly three years, until Virginia withdrew her proviso and made the cession absolute. It was accepted by Congress on the 1st of March, 1784, and on the 19th of April, in the following year, — the tenth anniversary of Lexington, — Massachu-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

setts surrendered her claims; and the whole northwestern territory — the area of the great states of Michigan, Wisconsin, Illinois, Indiana, and Ohio (excepting the Connecticut Reserve)¹ — thus became the common property of the half-formed nation. Maryland, however, did not wait for this. As soon as New York and Virginia had become thoroughly committed to the movement, she ratified the articles of confederation, which thus went into operation on the 1st of March, 1781.

This acquisition of a common territory speedily led to results not at all contemplated in the theory of union upon which the articles of confederation were based. It led to "the exercise of national sovereignty in the sense of eminent domain," as shown in the ordinances of 1784 and 1787, and prepared men's minds for the work of the Federal Convention. Great credit is due to Maryland for her resolute course in setting in motion this train of events. It aroused fierce indignation at the time, as to many people it looked unfriendly to the Union. Some hot-heads were even heard to say that if Maryland should persist any longer in her refusal to join the confederation, she ought to be summarily divided up between the neighbouring states, and her name erased from the map. But the brave little state had earned a better fate

¹ This was surrendered to the United States in 1800.

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

than that of Poland. When we have come to trace out the results of her action, we shall see that just as it was Massachusetts that took the decisive step in bringing on the Revolutionary War when she threw the tea into Boston harbour, so it was Maryland that, by leading the way toward the creation of a national domain, laid the corner-stone of our Federal Union. Equal credit must be given to Virginia for her magnanimity in making the desired surrender. It was New York, indeed, that set the praiseworthy example ; but New York, after all, surrendered only a shadowy claim, whereas Virginia gave up a magnificent and princely territory of which she was actually in possession. She might have held back and made endless trouble, just as, at the beginning of the Revolution, she might have refused to make common cause with Massachusetts; but in both instances her leading statesmen showed a far-sighted wisdom and a breadth of patriotism for which no words of praise can be too strong. In the later instance, as in the earlier, Thomas Jefferson played an important part. He who in after years, as president of the United States, was destined, by the purchase of Louisiana and the exploration of Oregon, to carry our western frontier beyond the Rocky Mountains, had, in 1779, done more than any one else to support the roman-

Magna-
nimity of
Virginia

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tic campaign in which General Clark had taken possession of the country between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi. He had much to do with the generous policy which gave up the greater part of that country for a national domain, and on the very day on which the act of cession was completed he presented to Congress a remarkable plan for the government of the new territory, which was only partially successful because it attempted too much, but the results of which were in many ways notable.

In ~~this~~ plan, known as the Ordinance of 1784, Jefferson proposed to divide the northwestern territory into ten states, or just twice as many as have actually grown out of it. In each of these states the settlers might establish a local government, under the authority of

Jefferson
proposes a
scheme of
government
for the
northwest-
ern terri-
tory, 1784

Congress; and when in any one of them the population should come to equal that of the least populous of the original states, it might be admitted into the Union by the consent of nine states in Congress. The new states were to have universal suffrage; they must have republican forms of government; they must pay their shares of the federal debt; they must forever remain a part of the United States; and after the year 1800 negro slavery must be prohibited within their limits. The names of these ten states have afforded much amusement

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

to Jefferson's biographers. In those days the schoolmaster was abroad in the land after a peculiar fashion. Just as we are now in the full tide of that Gothic revival which goes back for its beginnings to Sir Walter Scott; as we admire mediæval things, and try to build our houses after old English models, and prefer words of what people call "Saxon" origin, and name our children Roland and Herbert, or Edith and Winifred, so our great-grandfathers lived in a time of classical revival. They were always looking for precedents in Greek and Roman history; they were just beginning to try to make their wooden houses look like temples, with Doric columns; they preferred words of Latin origin; they signed their pamphlets "Brutus" and "Lycurgus," and in sober earnest baptized their children as Cæsar, or Marcellus, or Darius. The map of the United States was just about to bloom forth with towns named Ithaca and Syracuse, Corinth and Sparta; and on the Ohio River, opposite the mouth of Licking Creek, a city had lately been founded, the name of which was truly portentous. "Lasantiville" was this wonderful compound, in which the initial *L* stood for "Licking," while *os* signified "mouth," *anti* "opposite," and *ville* "town;" and the whole read neatly backwards as "Town-opposite-mouth-of-Licking." In 1790 General St. Clair, then governor of the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

northwest territory, changed this name to Cincinnati, in honour of the military order to which he belonged. With such examples in mind, we may see that the names of the proposed ten states, from which the failure of Jefferson's ordinance has delivered us, illustrated the prevalent taste of the time rather than any idiosyncrasy of the man. The proposed names were Sylvania, Michigania, Chersonesus, Assenisipia, Metropotamia, Illinoia, Saratoga, Washington, Polypotamia, and Pelisipia.

It was not the nomenclature that stood in the way of Jefferson's scheme, but the wholesale way in which he tried to deal with the slavery question. He wished to hem in the probable extension of slavery by an impassable barrier, and accordingly he not only provided

He wishes
to prohibit
slavery in
the national
domain

that it should be extinguished in the northwestern territory after the year 1800, but at the same time his anti-slavery ardour led him to try to extend the national dominion southward. He did his best to persuade the legislature of Virginia to crown its work by giving up Kentucky to the United States, and he urged that North Carolina and Georgia should also cede their western territories. As for South Carolina, she was shut in between the two neighbouring states in such wise that her western claims were vague and barren. Jefferson would thus have

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

drawn a north-and-south line from Lake Erie down to the Spanish border of the Floridas, and west of this line he would have had all negro slavery end with the eighteenth century. The policy of restricting slavery, so as to let it die a natural death within a narrowly confined area, — the policy to sustain which Lincoln was elected president in 1860, — was thus first definitely outlined by Jefferson in 1784. It was the policy of forbidding slavery in the national territory. Had this policy succeeded then, it would have been an ounce of prevention worth many a pound of cure. But it failed because of its largeness, because it had too many elements to deal with. For the moment, the proposal to exclude slavery from the northwestern territory was defeated. It got only six states in its favour, where it needed seven.¹ This defeat, however, was retrieved three years later, when the famous Ordinance of 1787 prohibited slavery forever from the national territory north of the Ohio River. But Jefferson's scheme had not only to deal with the national domain as it

¹ "Ten states were present. The 4 Eastern states, N. York, and Penns., were for the clause. Jersey would have been for it, but there were but two members, one of whom was sick in his chambers. South Carolina, Maryland, and ! Virginia! voted against it. N. Carolina was divided, as would have been Virginia, had not one of its delegates been sick in bed." *Jefferson to Madison*, April 25, 1784.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

was, but also to extend that domain southward to Florida; and in this it failed. Virginia could not be persuaded to give up Kentucky until too late. When Kentucky came into the Union, after the adoption of the Federal Constitution, she came as a sovereign state, with all her domestic institutions in her own hands. With the western districts of North Carolina the case was somewhat different, and the story of this region throws a curious light upon the affairs of that disorderly time.

In surrendering her western territory, North Carolina showed praiseworthy generosity. But the frontier settlers were too numerous to be handed about from one dominion to another, without saying something about it themselves; and their action complicated the matter, until it was too late for Jefferson's scheme to operate upon them. In June, 1784, North Carolina ceded the region since known as Tennessee, and allowed Congress two years in which to accept the grant. Meanwhile, her own authority was to remain supreme there. But the settlers grumbled and protested. Some of them were sturdy pioneers of the finest type, but along with these there was a lawless population of "white trash," ancestors of the peculiar race of men we find to-day in rural districts of Missouri and Arkansas. They were the refuse of North Carolina, gradually pushed westward by

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

the advance of an orderly civilization. Crime was rife in the settlements, and, in the absence of courts, a rough-and-ready justice was administered by vigilance committees. The Cherokees, moreover, were troublesome neighbours, and people lived in dread of their tomahawks. Petitions had again and again gone up to the legislature, urging the establishment of courts and a militia, but had passed unheeded, and now it seemed that the state had withdrawn her protection entirely. The settlers did not wish to have their country made a national domain. If their own state could not protect them, it was quite clear to them that Congress could not. What was Congress, anyway, but a roomful of men whom nobody heeded? So these backwoodsmen held a convention in a log-cabin at Jonesborough, and seceded from North Carolina. They declared that the counties between the Bald Mountains and the Clinch River constituted an independent state, to which they gave the name of Franklin;¹ and they went on to frame a constitution and elect a legislature with two chambers. For governor they chose John Sevier, one of the heroes of King's Mountain, a man of

John Sevier,
and the state
of Franklin,
1784-88

¹ The name was given in honour of Benjamin Franklin. An attempt was made to modify it to Frankland (i. e. "land of the free"), but this was voted down. It is often referred to, however, as the state of Frankland.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Huguenot ancestry, and such dauntless nature that he has been sometimes called the "lion of the border." Having done all this, the seceders, in spite of their small respect for Congress, sent a delegate to that body, requesting that the new state of Franklin might be admitted into the Union. Before this business had been completed, North Carolina repealed her act of cession, and warned the backwoodsmen to return to their allegiance. This at once split the new state into two factions: one party wished to keep on as they had now started, the other wished for reunion with North Carolina. In 1786 the one party in each county elected members to represent them in the North Carolina legislature, while the other party elected members of the legislature of Franklin. Everywhere two sets of officers claimed authority, civil dudgeon grew very high, and pistols were freely used. The agitation extended into the neighbouring counties of Virginia, where some discontented people wished to secede and join the state of Franklin. For the next two years there was something like civil war, until the North Carolina party grew so strong that Sevier fled, and the State of Franklin ceased to exist. Sevier was arrested on a warrant for high treason, but he effected an escape, and after men's passions had cooled down his great services and strong character brought him again to the front.

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

He sat in the senate of North Carolina, and in 1796, when Tennessee became a state in the Union, Sevier was her first governor.

These troubles show how impracticable was the attempt to create a national domain in any part of the country which contained a considerable population. The instinct of self-government was too strong to allow it. Any such population would have refused to submit to ordinances of Congress. To obey the parent state or to set up for one's self, — these were the only alternatives which ordinary men at that time could understand. Experience had not yet ripened their minds for comprehending a temporary condition of semi-independence, such as exists to-day under our territorial governments. The behaviour of these Tennessee backwoodsmen was just what might have been expected. The land on which they were living was not common land: it had been appropriated; it belonged to them, and it was for them to make laws for it. Such is the lesson of the short-lived state of Franklin. It was because she perceived that similar feelings were at work in Kentucky that Virginia did not venture to loosen her grasp upon that state until it was fully organized and ready for admission into the Union. It was in no such partly settled country that Congress could do such a thing as carve out boundaries and prohibit slavery by an act of national

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

sovereignty. There remained the magnificent territory north of the Ohio, — an empire in itself, as large as the German Empire with the Netherlands thrown in, — in which the collective wisdom of the American people, as represented in Congress, might autocratically shape the future; for it was still a wilderness, watched by frontier garrisons, and save for the Indians and the trappers and a few sleepy old French towns on the eastern bank of the Mississippi, there were no signs of human life in all its vast solitude. Here, where there was nobody to grumble or secede, Congress, in 1787, proceeded to carry out the work which Jefferson had outlined three years before.

It is interesting to trace the immediate origin of the famous Ordinance of 1787. At the close of the war General Rufus Putnam, from the mountain village of Rutland in Massachusetts, sent to Congress an outline of a plan for colonizing the region between Lake Erie and the Ohio with veterans of the army, who were well fitted to protect the border against Indian attacks. The land was to be laid out in townships

Origin of the Ohio company	six miles square, “with large reservations for the ministry and schools;” and by selling it to the soldiers at a merely nominal price, the penniless Congress might obtain an income, and at the same time recognize their services in the only substantial
----------------------------------	--

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

manner that seemed practicable. Washington strongly favoured the scheme, but, in order to carry it out, it was necessary to wait until the cession of the territory by the various claimant states should be completed. After this had been done, a series of treaties were made with the Six Nations, as overlords, and their vassal tribes, the Wyandots, Chippewas, Ottawas, Delawares, and Shawnees, whereby all Indian claims to the lands in question were forever renounced. The matter was then formally taken up by Holden Parsons of Connecticut, and by Rufus Putnam, Manasseh Cutler, Winthrop Sargent, and others, of Massachusetts, and a joint-stock company was formed for the purchase of lands on the Ohio River. A large number of settlers — old soldiers of excellent character, whom the war had impoverished — were ready to go and take possession at once; and in its petition the Ohio company asked for nothing better than that its settlers should be “under the immediate government of Congress in such mode and for such time as Congress shall judge proper.” Such a proposal, affording a means at once of replenishing the treasury and satisfying the soldiers, could not but be accepted; and thus were laid the foundations of a state destined within a century to equal in population and far surpass in wealth the whole Union as it was at that time. It became necessary at once to lay down

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

certain general principles of government applicable to the northwestern territory; and the result was the Ordinance of 1787, which was chiefly the work of Edward Carrington and Richard Henry Lee of Virginia, and Nathan Dane of Massachusetts, in committee, following the outlines of a draft which is supposed to have been made by Manasseh Cutler. Jefferson was no longer on the ground, having gone on his mission to Paris, but some of the principles of his proposed Ordinance of 1784 were adopted.

It was provided that the northwestern territory should ultimately be carved into states, not exceeding five in number, and any one of these might be admitted into the Union as soon as its population should reach 60,000. In the

The Ordi-
nance of
1787

mean time, the whole territory was to be governed by officers appointed by Congress, and required to take an oath of allegiance to the United States. Under this government there was to be unqualified freedom of religious worship, and no religious tests should be required of any public official. Intestate property should descend in equal shares to children of both sexes. Public schools were to be established. Suffrage was not yet made universal, as a freehold in fifty acres was required. No law was ever to be made which should impair the obligation of contracts, and it was thoroughly agreed that this provision

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

especially covered and prohibited the issue of paper money. The future states to be formed from this territory must make their laws conform to these fundamental principles, and under no circumstances could any one of them ever be separated from the Union. In such wise, the theory of peaceful secession was condemned in advance, so far as it was possible for the federal government to do so. Jefferson's principle, that slavery should not be permitted in the national domain, was also adopted so far as the northwest was concerned ; and it is interesting to observe the names of the states which were present in Congress when this clause was added to the ordinance. They were Georgia, the two Carolinas, Virginia, Delaware, New Jersey, New York, and Massachusetts, — and the vote was unanimous. No one was more active in bringing about this result than William Grayson of Virginia, who was earnestly supported by Lee. The action of Virginia and North Carolina at that time need not surprise us. But the movements in favour of emancipation in these two states, and the emancipation actually effected or going on at the north, had already made Georgia and South Carolina extremely sensitive about slavery ; and their action on this occasion can be explained only by supposing that they were willing to yield a point in this remote territory, in order by and by to be

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

able to insist upon an equivalent in the case of the territory lying west of Georgia. Nor would they have yielded at all had not a fugitive slave law been enacted, providing that slaves escaping beyond the Ohio should be arrested and returned to their owners. These arrangements having been made, General St. Clair was appointed governor of the territory; surveys were made; land was put up for sale at sixty cents per acre, payable in certificates of the public debt; and settlers rapidly came in. The westward exodus from New England and Pennsylvania now began, and only fourteen years elapsed before Ohio, the first of the five states, was admitted into the Union.

"I doubt," says Daniel Webster, "whether one single law of any law-giver, ancient or modern, has produced effects of more distinct, marked, and lasting character than the Ordinance of 1787." Nothing could have been more emphatically an exercise of national sovereignty; yet, as Madison said, while warmly commending the act, Congress did it "without the least colour of constitutional authority." The ordinance was never submitted to the states for ratification. The articles of confederation had never contemplated an occasion for such a peculiar assertion of sovereignty. "A great and independent fund of revenue," said Madison, "is passing into the hands of a single body of

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

men, who can raise troops to an indefinite number, and appropriate money to their support for an indefinite period of time. . . . Yet no blame has been whispered, no alarm has been sounded," even by men most zealous for state rights and most suspicious of Congress. Within a few months this argument was to be cited with telling effect against those who hesitated to accept the Federal Constitution because of the great powers which it conferred upon the general government. Unless you give a government specific powers, commensurate with its objects, it is liable on occasions of public necessity to exercise powers which have not been granted. Avoid the dreadful dilemma between dissolution and usurpation, urged Madison, by clothing the government with powers that are ample but clearly defined. In a certain sense, the action of Congress in 1787 was a usurpation of authority to meet an emergency which no one had foreseen, as in the cases of Jefferson's purchase of Louisiana and Lincoln's emancipation of the slaves. Each of these instances marked in one way or another a brilliant epoch in American history, and in each case the public interest was so unmistakable that the people consented and applauded. The theory upon which the Ordinance of 1787 was based was one which nobody could fail to understand, though perhaps no one

Theory of
folkland
upon which
the ordinance
was based

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

would then have known just how to put it into words. It was simply the thirteen states, through their delegates in Congress, dealing with the unoccupied national domain as if it were the common land or folkland of a stupendous township.

The vast importance of the lands between the Alleghanies and the Mississippi was becoming more apparent every year, as the westward movement of population went on. But at this time their value was much more clearly seen by the southern than by the northern states. In the north the westward emigration was only just beginning to pass the Alleghanies ; in the south, as we have seen, it had gone beyond them several years before. The southern states, accordingly, took a much sounder view than the northern states of the importance to the Union of the free navigation of the Mississippi River. The difference was forcibly illustrated in the dispute with Spain, which came to a crisis in the summer of 1786. It will be remembered that by the treaties which closed the Revolutionary War the provinces of East and West Florida were ceded by England to Spain. West Florida was the region lying between the Apalachicola and the Mississippi rivers, including the southernmost portions of the present states of Alabama and Mississippi, with a bit of Louisiana. By the treaty between Great Britain

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

and the United States, the northern boundary of this province was described by the thirty first parallel of latitude ; but Spain denied the right of these powers to place the boundary so low. Her troops were still holding Natchez, and she strongly maintained that the boundary must be placed a hundred miles farther north, starting from the Mississippi at the mouth of the Yazoo River, near the present site of Vicksburg. Now the treaty between Great Britain and the United States contained a secret article, wherein it was provided that if England could contrive to keep West Florida, instead of surrendering it to Spain, then the boundary should start at the Yazoo. This showed that both England and the United States were willing to yield the one to the other a strip of territory which both agreed in withholding from Spain. Presently the Spanish court got hold of the secret article, and there was great indignation. Here was England giving to the Americans a piece of land which she knew, and the Americans knew, was lately a part of West Florida, and therefore belonged to Spain ! Castilian grandees went to bed and dreamed of invincible armadas. Congress was promptly informed that, until this affair should be set right, the Americans need not expect the Spanish government to make any treaty of

Spain, hearing of the secret article in the treaty of 1783, threatens to shut up the Mississippi River

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

commerce with them ; and furthermore, let no American sloop or barge dare to show itself on the Mississippi below the Yazoo, under penalty of confiscation. When these threats were heard in America, there was great excitement everywhere, but it assumed opposite phases in the north and in the south. The merchants of New York and Boston cared little more about the Mississippi River than about Timbuctoo, but they were extremely anxious to see a commercial treaty concluded with Spain. On the other hand, the backwoodsmen of Kentucky and the state of Franklin cared nothing for the trade on the ocean, but they would not sit still while their corn and their pork were confiscated on the way to New Orleans. The people of Virginia sympathized with the backwoodsmen, but her great statesmen realized the importance of both interests and the danger of a conflict between them.

The Spanish envoy, Gardoqui, arrived in the summer of 1784, and had many interviews with Jay, who was then secretary for foreign affairs.

Gardoqui and Jay Gardoqui set forth that his royal master was graciously pleased to deal leniently with the Americans, and would confer one favour upon them, but could not confer two. He was ready to enter into a treaty of commerce with us, but not until we should have renounced all claim to the navigation of the

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

Mississippi River below the Yazoo. Here the Spaniard was inexorable. A year of weary argument passed by, and he had not budged an inch. At last, in despair, Jay advised Congress, for the sake of the commercial treaty, to consent to the closing of the Mississippi, but only for twenty-five years. As the rumour of this went abroad among the settlements south of the Ohio, there was an outburst of wrath, to which an incident that now occurred gave added virulence. A North Carolinian trader, named Amis, sailed down the Mississippi with a cargo of pots and kettles and barrels of flour. At Natchez his boat and his goods were seized by the Spanish officers, and he was left to make his way home afoot through several hundred miles of wilderness. The story of his wrongs flew from one log-cabin to another, until it reached the distant northwestern territory. In the neighbourhood of Vincennes there were Spanish traders, and one of them kept a shop in the town. The shop was sacked by a band of American soldiers, and an attempt was made to incite the Indians to attack the Spaniards. Indignation meetings were held in Kentucky. The people threatened to send a force of militia down the river and capture Natchez and New Orleans; and a more dangerous threat was made. Should the northeastern states desert them and adopt Jay's suggestion, they vowed

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

they would secede, and throw themselves upon Great Britain for protection. On the other

hand, there was great agitation in the seaboard towns of Massachusetts.

They were disgusted with the back-woodsmen for making such a fuss about nothing, and with the people

of the southern states for aiding and abetting them; and during the turbulent summer of 1786, many persons were heard to declare that, in case Jay's suggestion should not be adopted, it would be high time for the New England states to secede from the Union, and form a confederation by themselves. The situation was dangerous in the extreme. Had the question been forced to an issue, the southern states would never have seen their western territories go and offer themselves to Great Britain. Sooner than that, they would have broken away from the northern states. But New Jersey and Pennsylvania now came over to the southern side, and Rhode Island, moving in her eccentric orbit, presently joined them; and thus the treaty was postponed for the present, and the danger averted.

This lamentable dispute was watched by Washington with feelings of gravest concern. From an early age he had indulged in prophetic dreams of the grandeur of the coming civilization in America, and had looked to the country

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

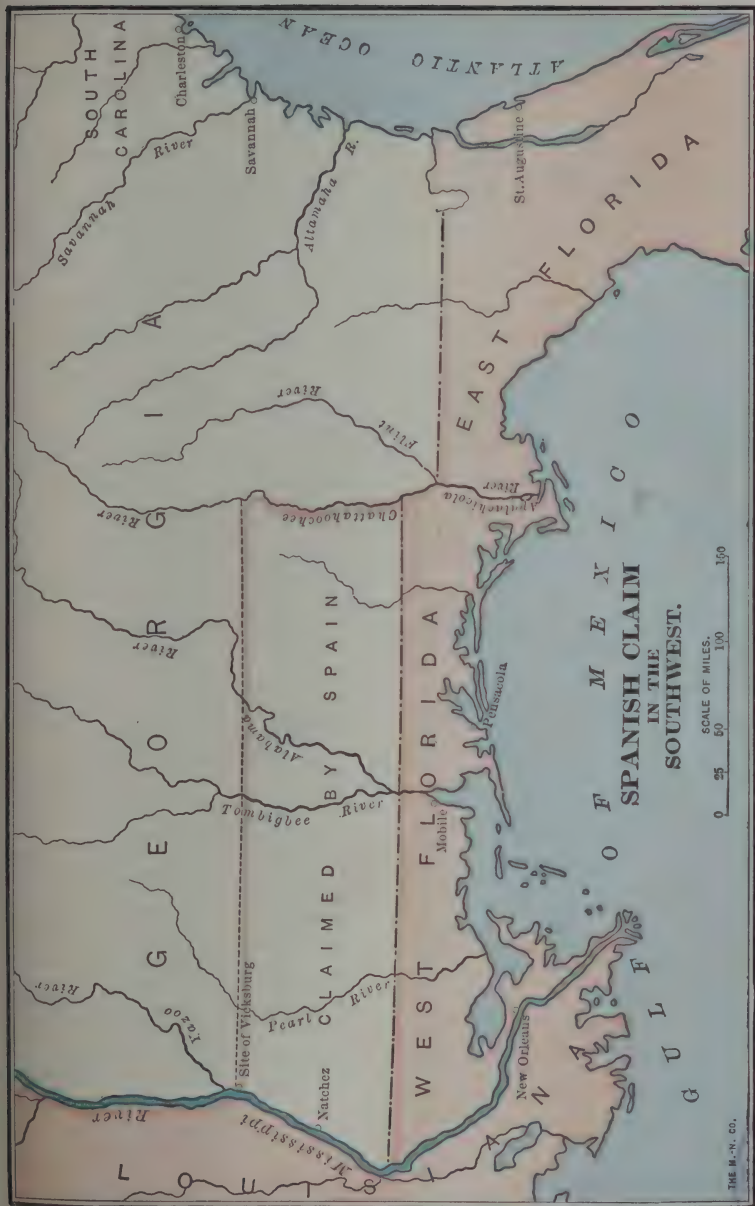
beyond the mountains as the field in which the next generation was to find room for expansion. Few had been more efficient than he in aiding the great scheme of Pitt for overthrowing the French power in America, and he understood better than most men of his time how much that scheme implied. In his early journeys in the wilderness he had given especial attention to the possibilities of water connection between the east and west, and he had bought for himself and surveyed many extensive tracts of land beyond the mountains. The subject was a favourite one with him, and he looked at it from both a commercial and a political point of view. What we most needed, he said in 1770, were easy transit lines between east and west, as "the channel of conveyance of the extensive and valuable trade of a rising empire." Just before resigning his commission in 1783, Washington had explored the route through the Mohawk Valley, afterward taken first by the Erie Canal, and then by the New York Central Railroad, and had prophesied its commercial importance in the present century. Soon after reaching his home at Mount Vernon, he turned his attention to the improvement of intercourse with the west through the valley of the Potomac. The east and west, he said, must be cemented together by interests in common;

Washington's views on the importance of canals between east and west

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

otherwise they will break asunder. Without commercial intercourse they will cease to understand each other, and will thus be ripe for disagreement. It is easy for mental habits, as well as merchandise, to glide down stream, and the connections of the settlers beyond the mountains all centre in New Orleans, which is in the hands of a foreign and hostile power. No one can tell what complications may arise from this, argued Washington; "let us bind these people to us by a chain that can never be broken;" and with characteristic energy he set to work at once to establish that line of communication that has since grown into the Chesapeake and Ohio Canal, and into the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad. During the three years preceding the meeting of the Federal Convention he was largely occupied with this work. In 1785 he became president of a company for extending the navigation of the Potomac and James rivers, and the legislature of Virginia passed an act vesting him with one hundred and fifty shares in the stock of the company, in order to testify their "sense of his unexampled merits." But Washington refused the testimonial, and declined to take any pay for his services, because he wished to arouse the people to the political importance of the undertaking, and felt that his words would have more weight if he were

His far-sighted
genius and
self-devotion



GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

known to have no selfish interest in it. His sole purpose, as he repeatedly said, was to strengthen the spirit of union by cementing the eastern and western regions together. At this time he could ill afford to give his services without pay, for his long absence in war-time had sadly impaired his estate. But such was Washington.

In order to carry out the enterprise of extending the navigation of the Potomac, it became necessary for the two states Virginia and Maryland to act in concert; and early in 1785 a joint commission of the two states met for consultation at Washington's house at Mount Vernon. A compact insuring harmonious coöperation was prepared by the commissioners; and then, as Washington's scheme involved the connection of the head waters of the Potomac with those of the Ohio, it was found necessary to invite Pennsylvania to become a party to the compact. Then Washington took the occasion to suggest that Maryland and Virginia, while they were about it, should agree upon a uniform system of duties and other commercial regulations, and upon a uniform currency; and these suggestions were sent, together with the compact, to the legislatures of the two states. Great things were destined to come from these modest beginnings. Just as in the Yorktown campaign,

Maryland
confers with
Virginia re-
garding the
navigation
of the Poto-
mac, 1785

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

there had come into existence a multifarious assemblage of events, apparently unconnected with one another, and all that was needed was the impulse given by Washington's far-sighted genius to set them all at work, surging, swelling, and hurrying straight forward to a decisive result.

Late in 1785, when the Virginia legislature had wrangled itself into imbecility over the question of clothing Congress with power over trade, Madison hit upon an expedient. He prepared a motion to the effect that commissioners from all the states should hold a meeting, and discuss the best method of securing a uniform treatment of commercial questions ; but as he was most conspicuous among the advocates of a more perfect union, he was careful not to present the motion himself. It was made by another member — John Tyler, father of the president of that name, a sturdy champion of state rights, but on this particular question agreeing with Madison.¹ The plan, however, was "so little acceptable that it was not then persisted in," and the motion was laid on the table. But after some weeks it was announced that Maryland had adopted the compact made at Mount Vernon concerning jurisdiction over the Potomac. Vir-

¹ See L. G. Tyler, *Letters and Times of the Tylers*, Richmond, 1884, i. 125-134.

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

ginia instantly replied by adopting it also. Then it was suggested, in the report from Maryland, that Delaware, as well as Pennsylvania, ought to be consulted, since the scheme should rightly include a canal between the Delaware River and the Chesapeake Bay. And why not also consult with these states about a uniform system of duties? If two states can agree upon these matters, why not four? And still further, said the Maryland message, — dropping the weightiest part of the proposal into a subordinate clause, just as women are said to put the quintessence of their letters into the postscript, — might it not be well enough, if we are going to have such a conference, to invite commissioners from all the thirteen states to attend it? An informal discussion can hurt nobody. The conference of itself can settle nothing; and if four states can take part in it, why not thirteen? Here was the golden opportunity. The Madison-Tyler motion was taken up from the table and carried. Commissioners from all the states were invited to meet on the first Monday of September, 1786, at Annapolis, — a safe place, far removed from the influence of that dread tyrant, the Congress, and from wicked centres of trade, such as New York and Boston. It was the governor of Virginia who sent the invitations. It may not amount to much, wrote Madison to Monroe, but “the expedient is

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

better than nothing; and, as the recommendation of additional powers to Congress is within the purview of the commission, it may possibly lead to better consequences than at first occur."

The seed dropped by Washington had fallen on fruitful soil. At first it was to be just a little meeting of two or three states to talk about the Potomac River and some projected canals, and already it had come to be a meeting of all the states to discuss some uniform system

Convention of legislation on the subject of trade.
at Annapolis, This looked like progress, yet when
Sept. 11, the convention was gathered in the
1786

State House at Annapolis, on the 11th of September, the outlook was most discouraging. Commissioners from Virginia, Delaware, Pennsylvania, New Jersey, and New York were present. Massachusetts and New Hampshire, Rhode Island and North Carolina, had duly appointed commissioners, but they were not there. It is curious to observe that Maryland, which had been so earnest in the matter, had nevertheless now neglected to appoint commissioners; and no action had been taken by Georgia, South Carolina, or Connecticut. With only five states represented, the commissioners did not think it worth while to go on with their work. But before adjourning they adopted an address, written by Alexander Hamilton, and sent it to all the states. All the commissioners

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

present had been empowered to consider how far a uniform commercial system might be essential to the permanent harmony of the states. But New Jersey had taken a step in advance, and instructed her delegates "to consider how far a uniform system in their commercial regulations *and other important matters* might be necessary to the common interest and permanent harmony of the several states." *And other important matters*,—thus again was the weightiest part of the business relegated to a subordinate clause. So gingerly was the great question—so dreaded, yet so inevitable—approached! This reference to "other matters" was pronounced by the commissioners to be a vast improvement on the original plan; and Hamilton's address now urged that commissioners be appointed by all the states, to meet in convention at Philadelphia on the second Monday of the following May, "to devise such further provisions as shall appear to them necessary to render the constitution of the federal government adequate to the exigencies of the Union, and to report to Congress such an act as, when agreed to by them, and confirmed by the legislatures of every state, would effectually provide for the same." The report of the commissioners was brought before Congress in October, in the hope that Congress would earnestly recommend

Hamilton's
address; a
further step
in advance

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

to the several states the course of action therein suggested. But Nathan Dane and Rufus King of Massachusetts, intent upon technicalities, succeeded in preventing this. According to King, a convention was an irregular body, which had no right to propose changes in the organic law of the land, and the state legislatures could not properly confirm the acts of such a body, or take notice of them. Congress was the only source from which such proposals could properly emanate. These arguments were pleasing to the self-love of Congress, and it refused to sanction the plan of the Annapolis commissioners.

In an ordinary season this would perhaps have ended the matter, but the winter of 1786-87 was not an ordinary season. All the troubles above described seemed to culminate just at this moment. The paper money craze in so many of the states, the shameful deeds of Rhode Island, the riots in Vermont and New Hampshire, the Shays rebellion in Massachusetts, the dispute with Spain, and the consequent imminent danger of separation between north and south had all come together; and the feeling of thoughtful men and women throughout the country was one of real consternation. The last ounce was now to be put upon the camel's back in the failure of the impost amendment. In 1783, when the cessions of western lands were

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

creating a national domain, a promising plan had been devised for relieving the country of its load of debt, and furnishing Congress with money for its current expenses. All the money coming from sales of the western folkland was to be applied to reducing and wiping out the principal of the public debt. Then the interest of this debt must be provided for; and to that end Congress had recommended an impost, or system of custom-house duties, upon liquors, sugars, teas, coffees, cocoa, molasses, and pepper. This impost was to be kept up for twenty-five years only, and the collectors were to be appointed by the several states, each for its own ports. Then for the current expenses of the government, supplementary funds were needed; and these were to be assessed upon the several states, each of which might raise its quota as it saw fit. Such was the original plan; but it soon turned out that the only available source of revenue was the national domain, which had thus been nothing less than the principal thread which had held the Union together. As for the impost, it had never been possible to get a sufficient number of states to agree upon it, and of the quotas for current expenses, as we have seen, very little had found its way to the federal treasury. Under these difficulties, it had been proposed that an amendment to the articles of confederation

New York
defeats the
impost
amendment

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

should endow Congress with the power of levying customs-duties and appointing the collectors; and by the summer of 1786, after endless wrangling, twelve states had consented to the amendment. But, in order that an amendment should be adopted, unanimous consent was necessary. The one delinquent state, which thus blocked the wheels of the confederacy, was New York. She had her little system of duties all nicely arranged for what seemed to be her own interests, and she would not surrender this system to Congress. Upon the neighbouring states her tariff system bore hard, and especially upon New Jersey. In 1786 this state flatly refused to pay her quota until New York should stop discriminating against her trade. Nothing which occurred in that troubled year caused more alarm than this, for it could not be denied that such a declaration seemed little less than an act of secession on the part of New Jersey. The arguments of a congressional committee at last prevailed upon the state to rescind her declaration. At the same time there came the final struggle in New York over the impost amendment, against which Governor Clinton had firmly set his face. There was a fierce fight, in which Hamilton's most strenuous efforts succeeded in carrying the amendment in part, but not until it had been clogged with a condition that made it useless. Congress, it was declared,

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

might have the revenue, but New York must appoint the collectors; she was not going to have federal officials rummaging about her docks. The legislature well knew that to grant the amendment in such wise was not to grant it at all, but simply to reopen the whole question. Such was the result. Congress expostulated in vain. On the 15th of February, 1787, the matter was reconsidered in the New York legislature, and the impost amendment was defeated.

Thus, only three months before the Federal Convention was to meet, if indeed it was ever to meet, Congress was decisively informed that it would not be allowed to take any effectual measures for raising a revenue. There now seemed nothing left for Congress to do but adopt the recommendation of the Annapolis commissioners, and give its sanction to the proposed convention. Madison, however, had not waited for this, but had prevailed upon the Virginia legislature to go on and appoint its delegates to the convention. The events of the year had worked a change in the popular sentiment in Virginia; people were more afraid of anarchy, and not quite so much afraid of centralization; and now, under Madison's lead, Virginia played her trump card and chose George Washington as one of her delegates. As soon as this was known, there was an outburst of joy throughout

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the land. All at once the people began everywhere to feel an interest in the proposed convention, and presently Massachusetts changed her attitude. Up to this time Sudden changes in popular sentiment Massachusetts had been as obstinate in her assertion of local independence, and as unwilling to strengthen the hands of Congress, as any of the thirteen states, except New York and Rhode Island. But the Shays rebellion had served as a useful object-lesson. Part of the distress in Massachusetts could be traced to the inability of Congress to pay debts which it owed to her citizens. It was felt that the time had come when the question of a national revenue must be seriously considered. Every week saw fresh converts to the party which called for a stronger government. Then came the news that Virginia had chosen delegates, and that Washington was one of them; then that New Jersey had followed the example; then that Pennsylvania, North Carolina, Delaware had chosen delegates. It was time for Massachusetts to act, and Rufus King now brought the matter up in Congress. His scruples as to the legality of the proceeding had not changed, and accordingly he moved that Congress should of itself propose a convention at Philadelphia, identical with the one which the Annapolis commissioners had already recommended. The motion was carried, and in this way Congress

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

formally approved and adopted what was going on. Massachusetts immediately chose delegates, and was followed by New York. In April, Georgia and South Carolina followed suit. Connecticut and Maryland came on in May, and New Hampshire, somewhat tardily, in June. Of the thirteen states, Rhode Island alone refused to take any part in the proceedings.

The convention held its meetings in that plain brick building in Philadelphia already immortalized as the place from which the Declaration of Independence was published to the world. The work which these men

The Federal
Convention
meets at
Philadelphia,
May 14-25,
1787.

were undertaking was to determine whether that Declaration had been for the blessing or the injury of America and of mankind. That they had succeeded in assembling here at all was somewhat remarkable, when we think of the curious medley of incidents that led to it. At no time in this distressed period would a frank and abrupt proposal for a convention to remodel the government have found favour. Such proposals, indeed, had been made, beginning with that of Pelatiah Webster in 1781, and they had all failed to break through the crust of a truly English conservatism and dread of centralized power. Now, through what some might have called a strange chapter of accidents, before the element of causal sequence in it all

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

had become so manifest as it is to us to-day, this remarkable group of men had been brought together in a single room, while even yet but few of them realized how thoroughly and exhaustively reconstructive their work was to be. To most of them it was not clear whether they were going merely to patch up the articles of confederation, or to strike out into a new and very different path. There were a few who entertained far-reaching purposes; the rest were intelligent critics rather than constructive thinkers: the result was surprising to all. It is worth our while to pause for a moment, and observe the character and composition of one of the most memorable assemblies the world has ever seen. Mr. Gladstone has said that just "as the British Constitution is the most subtle organism which has proceeded from progressive history, so the American Constitution is the most wonderful work ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man." It would be in the highest degree erroneous, however, to suppose that the Constitution of the United States is not, as much as any other, an instance of evolution from precedents. It is in that very fact that its excellence largely consists.

Let us now see who the men were who did this wonderful work, — this Iliad, or Parthenon, or Fifth Symphony, of statesmanship. We shall not find that they were all great geniuses. Such

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

is never the case in such an assembly. There are not enough great geniuses to go around; and if there were, it is questionable if the result would be satisfactory. In such discussions the points which impress the more ordinary and less far-sighted members are sure to have great value; especially when we bear in mind that the object of such an assembly is not merely to elaborate a plan, but to get the great mass of people, including the brick-layers and hod-carriers, to understand it well enough to vote for it. An ideally perfect assembly of law-makers will therefore contain two or three men of original constructive genius, two or three leading spirits eminent for shrewdness and tact, a dozen or so excellent critics representing various conflicting interests, and a rank and file of thoroughly respectable, commonplace men, unfitted for shining in the work of the meeting, but admirably competent to proclaim its results and get their friends and neighbours to adopt them. And in such an assembly, even if it be such as we call ideally perfect, we must allow something for the presence of a few hot-headed and irreconcilable members, — men of inflexible mind, who cannot adapt themselves to circumstances, and will refuse to play when they see the game going against them.

All these points are well illustrated in the assemblage of men that framed our Federal

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Constitution. In its composition, this group of men left nothing to be desired. In its strength and in its weakness, it was an ideally perfect assembly. There were fifty-five men, all of them respectable for family and for personal qualities, — men who had been well educated, and had done something whereby to earn recognition in those troubled times. Twenty-nine were university men, graduates of Harvard, Yale, Columbia, Princeton, William and Mary, Oxford, Glasgow, and Edinburgh. Twenty-six were not university men, and among these were Washington and Franklin. Of the illustrious citizens who, for their public services, would naturally have been here, John Adams and Thomas Jefferson were in Europe; Samuel Adams, Patrick Henry, and Richard Henry Lee disapproved of the convention, and remained at home; and the greatest man of Rhode Island, Nathanael Greene, who — one likes to think — might have succeeded in bringing his state into the convention, had lately died of a sun-stroke, at the early age of forty-four.

Of the two most famous men present little need be said. The names of Washington and Franklin stood for supreme intelligence and consummate tact. Franklin had returned to this country two years before, and was now president of Pennsylvania. He was eighty-one

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

years of age, the oldest man in the convention, as Jonathan Dayton of New Jersey, aged twenty-six, was the youngest. The two most profound and original thinkers in the company were but little older than Dayton. Alexander Hamilton was thirty, James Madison thirty-six. Among political writers, these two men may be ranked in the same order with Aristotle, Montesquieu, and Locke; and the "Federalist," their joint production, is one of the greatest treatises on government ever written. John Jay, who contributed a few pages to this immortal volume, had not been sent to the convention, because New York did not wish to have it succeed. Along with Hamilton, New York sent two commonplace men, Robert Yates and John Lansing, who were extreme and obstinate Antifederalists; and the action of Hamilton, who was thus prevented from carrying the vote of his own state for any measure which he might propose, was in this way sadly embarrassed. For another reason, Hamilton failed to exert as much influence in the convention as one would have expected from his profound thought and his brilliant eloquence. Scarcely any of these men entertained what we should now call extreme democratic views. Scarcely any, perhaps, had that intense faith in the ultimate good sense of the people which was the most powerful characteristic of Jeffer-

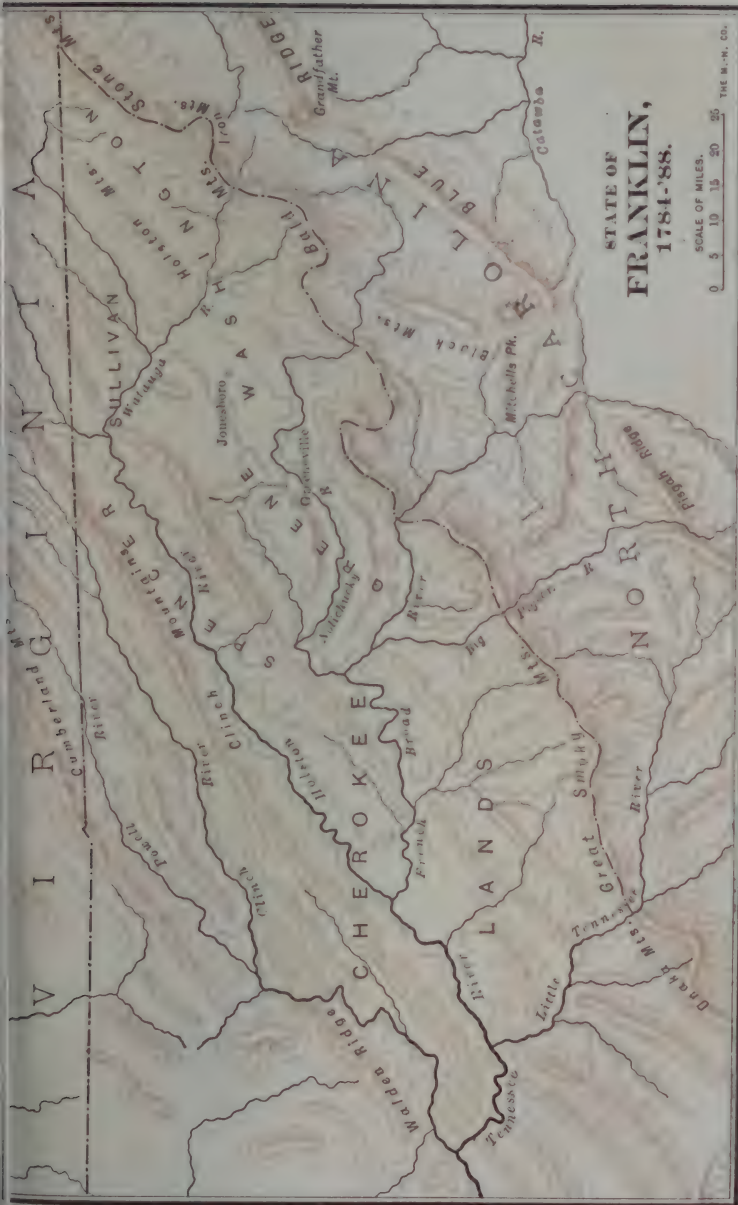
THE CRITICAL PERIOD

son. But Hamilton went to the other extreme, and expressed his distrust of popular government too plainly. His views were too aristocratic and his preference for centralization was too pronounced to carry conviction to his hearers.

The leading part in the convention fell, therefore, to James Madison, a young man somewhat less brilliant than Hamilton, but superior to him in sobriety and balance of powers. Madison used to be called the "Father of the Constitution," and it is true that the government under which we live is more his work than that of any other one man. From early youth his life had been devoted to the study of history and the practice of statesmanship. He was a graduate of Princeton College, an earnest student, familiar with all the best literature of political science from Aristotle down to his own time, and he had given especial attention to the history of federal government in ancient Greece, and in Switzerland and Holland. At the age of twenty-five he had taken part in the Virginia convention which instructed the delegates from that state in Congress to bring forward the Declaration of Independence. During the last part of the war he was an active and influential member of Congress, where no one equalled or approached him for knowledge of English history and con-



James Madison



GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

stitutional law. In 1784 he had returned to the Virginia legislature, and been foremost in securing the passage of the great act which gave complete religious freedom to the people of that state. No man understood better than he the causes of the alarming weakness of the federal government, and of the commercial disturbances and popular discontent of the time ; nor had any one worked more zealously or more adroitly in bringing about the meeting of this convention. As he stood here now, a leader in the debate, there was nothing grand or imposing in his appearance. He was small of stature and slight in frame, like Hamilton, but he had none of Hamilton's personal magnetism. His manner was shy and prim, and blushes came often to his cheeks. At the same time, he had that rare dignity of unconscious simplicity which characterizes the earnest and disinterested scholar. He was exceedingly sweet tempered, generous, and kind, but very hard to move from a path which, after long reflection, he had decided to be the right one. He looked at politics judicially, and was so little of a party man that on several occasions he was accused quite wrongfully of gross inconsistency. The position of leadership, which he won so early and kept so long, he held by sheer force of giant intelligence, sleepless industry, and an integrity which no man ever doubted. But he was above all things a man

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of peace. When in after years, as president of the United States, he was called upon to manage a great war, he was out of place, and his reputation for supreme ability was temporarily lowered. Here in the Federal Convention we are introduced to him at the noblest and most useful moment of his life.

Of the fifty-five men here assembled, Washington, Franklin, Hamilton, and Madison were of the first order of ability. Many others in the room were gentlemen of more than ordinary talent and culture. There was John Dickinson, who had moved from Pennsylvania into Delaware, and now came to defend the equal rights of the smaller states. There was James Wilson of Pennsylvania, born and educated in Scotland, one of the most learned jurists this country has ever seen. Beside him sat the financier, Robert Morris, and his namesake Gouverneur Morris of Morrisania, near the city of New York, the originator of our decimal currency, and one of the far-sighted projectors of the Erie Canal. Then there was John Rutledge of South Carolina, who ever since the Stamp Act Congress had been the mainstay of his state; and with him were the two able and gallant Pinckneys. Caleb Strong, afterward ten times governor of Massachusetts, was a typical Puritan, hard-headed and sensible; his colleague, Rufus

Other
leading
members

GERMS OF NATIONAL SOVEREIGNTY

King, already distinguished, for his opposition to negro slavery, was a man of brilliant attainments. And there were George Wythe, the learned chancellor of Virginia, and Daniel Carroll of Maryland, who had played a prominent part in the events which lead to the creation of a national domain. Oliver Ellsworth of Connecticut, afterward chief justice of the United States, was one of the ablest lawyers of his time; with him were Roger Sherman and William Johnson, the latter a Fellow of the Royal Society, and afterward president of Columbia College. The New Jersey delegation, consisting of William Livingston, David Brearley, William Paterson, and Jonathan Dayton, was a strong one; and as to New Hampshire, it is enough to mention the name of John Langdon. Besides all these there were some twenty of less mark, men who said little, but listened and voted. And then there were the irreconcilables, Yates and Lansing, the two Antifederalists from New York; and four men of much greater ability, who took an important part in the proceedings, but could not be induced to accept the result. These four were Luther Martin of Maryland; George Mason and Edmund Randolph of Virginia; and Elbridge Gerry of Massachusetts.

When these men had assembled in Independence Hall, they chose George Washington

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

president of the convention. The doors were locked, and an injunction of strict secrecy was put upon every one. The results of their work were known in the following September, when the draft of the Federal Constitution was published. But just what was said and done in this secret conclave was not revealed until fifty years had passed, and the aged James Madison, the last survivor of those who sat there, had been gathered to his fathers. He kept a journal of the proceedings, which was published after his death, and upon the interesting story told in that journal we have now to enter.

VI

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

THE Federal Convention did wisely in withholding its debates from the knowledge of the people. It was felt that discussion would be more untrammelled, and that its result ought to go before the country as the collective and unanimous voice of the convention. There was likely to be wrangling enough among themselves; but should their scheme be unfolded, bit by bit, before its parts could be viewed in their mutual relations, popular excitement would become intense, there might be riots, and an end would be put to that attitude of mental repose so necessary for the constructive work that was to be done. It was thought best that the scheme should be put forth as a completed whole, and that for several years even, until the new system of government should have had a fair trial, the traces of the individual theories and preferences concerned in its formation should not be revealed. For it was generally assumed that a system of government new in some important respects would be

Difficult
problem
before the
convention

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

proposed by the convention, and while the people awaited the result the wildest speculations and rumours were current. A few hoped, and many feared, that some scheme of monarchy would be established. Such surmises found their way across the ocean, and hopes were expressed in England that, should a king be chosen, it might be a younger son of George III. It was even hinted, with alarm, that, through gratitude to our recent allies, we might be persuaded to offer the crown to some member of the royal family of France. No such thoughts were entertained, however, by any person present in the convention. Some of the delegates came with the design of simply amending the articles of confederation by taking away from the states the power of regulating commerce, and intrusting this power to Congress. Others felt that if the work were not done thoroughly now another chance might never be offered; and these men thought it necessary to abolish the confederation, and establish a federal republic, in which the general government should act directly upon the people. The difficult problem was how to frame a plan of this sort which people could be made to understand and adopt. At the outset, before the convention had been called to order, some of the delegates began to exhibit symptoms of that peculiar kind of moral cowardice which is wont to afflict

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

free governments, and of which American history furnishes so many instructive examples. In an informal discussion it was suggested that palliatives and half measures would be far more likely to find favour with the people than any thorough-going reform, when Washington suddenly interposed with a brief but immortal speech, which ought to be blazoned in letters of gold, and posted on the wall of every American assembly that shall meet to nominate a candidate, or declare a policy, or pass a law, so long as the weakness of human nature shall endure. In tones unwontedly solemn he exclaimed, "It is too probable that no plan we propose will be adopted. Perhaps another dreadful conflict is to be sustained. If, to please the people, we offer what we ourselves disapprove, how can we afterward defend our work? Let us raise a standard to which the wise and the honest can repair; the event is in the hand of God."

Washington's
solemn
appeal

This noble outburst carried conviction to every one, and henceforth we do not hear that any attempt was avowedly made to avoid the issues as they came up. It was a wholesome tonic. It braced up the convention to high resolves, and impressed upon all the delegates that they were in a situation where faltering or trifling was both wicked and dangerous. From that moment the mood in which they worked

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

caught something from the glorious spirit of Washington. There was need of such high purpose, for two plans were presently laid before the meeting, which, for a moment, brought out one of the chief elements of antagonism existing between the states, and which at first seemed irreconcilable. It was the happy compromise which united and harmonized these two plans that smoothed the further work of the convention, and made it possible for a stable and powerful government to be constructed.

The first of these plans was known as the Virginia plan. It was agreed upon in a committee of the delegates of that state, and was brought forward by Edmund Randolph, governor of Virginia, in the name of the state, but its chief author was Madison. It struck instantly at the root of the difficulties under which the country had been staggering ever since the Declaration of Independence. The federal government had

The root
of all the
difficulties possessed no means of enforcing obedience to its laws. Its edicts were without a sanction ; and this was because they operated upon states, and not upon individuals. When an individual defies the law, you can lock him up in jail, or levy an execution upon his property. The immense force of the community is arrayed against him, and he is as helpless as a straw on the billows of the ocean. He cannot raise a militia to protect

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

himself. But when the law is defied by a state, it is quite otherwise. You cannot put a state into jail, nor seize its goods; you can only make war on it, and if you try that expedient you find that the state is not helpless. Its local pride and prejudices are aroused against you, and its militia will turn out in full force to uphold the infraction of law. Against this obstinate and exasperated military force, what superior force can you bring? Under some rare combination of circumstances you might get the military force of several of the other states; but ordinarily, when what you are trying to do is simply to enforce every-day laws, and when you simply represent a distrusted general government in conflict with a local government, you cannot do this. The other states will sympathize with the delinquent state; they will feel that the very same condition of things which leads you to attack that state to-day will lead you to attack some other state to-morrow. Hence you cannot get any military help, and you are powerless.

Such was the case with the Continental Congress. A novel and distrusted institution, it was called upon to enforce its laws upon long-established communities, full of sturdy independence and obstinate local prejudices. It was able to act, though with clumsy slowness, as long as there was an enemy in the field who was

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

even more dreaded. But as soon as this enemy had been beaten out of sight it could not act at all. This had been because it did not represent the American people, but only the American states. The vital force which moved it was not the resistless force of a whole people, but only a shadowy semblance of force, derived from a theoretical consent of thirteen corporate bodies, which in their corporate capacity could never be compelled to agree about anything under the sun; and unless compelled they would not agree. Four years of disturbance in every part of the country, in the course of which troops had been called out in several states, and civil war had been narrowly averted at least half a dozen times, had proved this beyond all cavil. With almost any other people than the Americans civil war would have come already. With all the vast future interests that were involved in these quarrels looming up before their keen, sagacious minds, it was a wonder that they had been kept from coming to blows. Such self-restraint had been greatly to their credit. It was the blessed fruit of more than a century of government by free discussion, while yet these states were colonies, peopled by the very cream of English freemen who had fought the decisive battle of civil and religious freedom for mankind in that long crisis when the Invincible Armada was overwhelmed and the Long Parliament

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

won its triumphs. Such self-restraint had this people shown in days of trial, under a vicious government adopted in a time of hurry and sore distress. But late events had gone far to show that it could not endure.

The words of Randolph's opening speech are worth quoting in this connection. "The confederation," he said, "was made in the infancy of the science of constitutions, when the inefficiency of requisitions was unknown ; when no commercial discords had arisen among states ; when no rebellion like that in Massachusetts had broken out ; when foreign debts were not urgent ; when the havoc of paper money had not been foreseen ; when treaties had not been violated ; and when nothing better could have been conceded by states jealous of their sovereignty. But it offered no security against foreign invasion, for Congress could neither prevent nor conduct a war, nor punish infractions of treaties or of the law of nations, nor control particular states from provoking war. The federal government has no constitutional power to check a quarrel between separate states ; nor to suppress a rebellion in any one of them ; nor to establish a productive impost ; nor to counteract the commercial regulations of other nations ; nor to defend itself against the encroachments of the states. From the manner in which it has been ratified in many of the states, it cannot be

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

claimed to be paramount to the state constitutions ; so that there is a prospect of anarchy from the inherent laxity of the government. As the remedy, the government to be established must have for its basis the republican principle."

Having thus tersely stated the whole problem, Randolph went on to present the Virginia plan. To make the federal government operate directly upon individuals, one provision

The Vir-
ginia plan ;
a radical
cure

was absolutely necessary. It did not solve the whole problem, but it was an indispensable beginning. This was the proposal that there should be a national legislature, in which the American *people* instead of the American states should be represented. For the purposes of federal legislation, there must be an assembly elected directly by the people, and with its members apportioned according to population. There must be such an assembly as our present House of Representatives, standing in the same immediate relation to the people of the whole country as was sustained by the assembly of each separate state to the people of that state. Without such direct representation of the whole people in the Federal Congress, it would be impossible to achieve one secure step toward the radical reform of the weaknesses and vices of the Confederation. It was the only way in which the vexed ques-

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

tion of one nation or thirteen could be made to yield a satisfactory answer. At the same time it could not be denied that such a proposal was revolutionary in character. It paved the way for a national consolidation which might go further than any one could foresee, and much further than was desirable. The moribund Congress of the Confederation, with its delegates chosen by the state assemblies, and casting its vote simply by states, had utterly failed to serve as a national legislature. There was a good deal of truth in what John Adams once said of it, that it was more a diplomatic than a legislative body. It was, indeed, because of this consciously felt diplomatic character that it was called a Congress and not a Parliament. In its lack of coercive power it resembled the international congresses of Europe rather than the supreme legislature of any country. To substitute abruptly for such a body a truly national legislature, based not upon states but upon population, was quietly to inaugurate a revolution of no less magnitude than that which had lately severed us from Great Britain. So bold a step, while all-essential in order to complete that revolution, and make its victorious issue fortunate instead of disastrous to the American people, was sufficiently revolutionary to awaken the fears of many members of the Federal Convention. To the familiar state governments

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

which had so long possessed their love and allegiance, it was superadding a new and untried government, which it was feared would swallow up the states and everywhere extinguish local independence. Nor can it be said that such fears were unreasonable. Our federal government has indeed shown a strong tendency to encroach upon the province of the state governments, especially since our late Civil War. Too much centralization is our danger to-day, as the weakness of the federal tie was our danger a century ago. The rule of the Federalist party was needed in 1789 as the rule of the Republican party was needed in 1861, to put a curb upon the centrifugal tendencies. But after Federalism had fairly done its great work, at the beginning of the nineteenth century, it was well that the administration of our national affairs should pass into the hands of the party to which Thomas Jefferson and Samuel Adams belonged, and which Madison, in his calm, statesmanlike wisdom, had come to join. And now that, in our own day, the disruptive forces have been even more thoroughly and effectually overcome, it is time for the principles of that party to be reasserted with fresh emphasis. If the day should ever arrive (which God forbid !) when the people of the different parts of our country shall allow their local affairs to be administered by prefects sent from Washington, and when the self-gov-

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

ernment of the states shall have been so far lost as that of the departments of France, or even so closely limited as that of the counties of England, — on that day the political career of the American people will have been robbed of its most interesting and valuable features, and the usefulness of this nation will be lamentably impaired.

I do not think that the historian writing at the present day need fear any such direful calamity, for the past century has shown most instructively how, in such a society as ours, the sense of political dangers slowly makes its way through the whole mass of the people, until movements at length are made to avert them, and the pendulum swings in the opposite direction. The history of political parties in the United States is especially rich in lessons of this sort. Compared with the statesmen of the Federal Convention, we are at a great advantage in studying this question of national consolidation; and we have no excuse for failing to comprehend the attitude of the men who dreaded the creation of a national legislature as the entering wedge which would by and by rend asunder the structure of our liberties. The great mind of Madison was one of the first to entertain distinctly the noble conception of two kinds of government operating at one and the same time upon the same individuals, harmonious

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

with each other, but each supreme in its own sphere. Such is the fundamental conception of our partly federal, partly national, government, which appears throughout the Virginia plan as well as in the Constitution which grew out of it. It was a political conception of a higher order than had ever before been entertained; it took a great deal of discussion to make it clear to the minds of the delegates generally; and the struggle over this initial measure of a national legislature was so bitter as to come near breaking up the convention.

In its original shape the Virginia plan went much further toward national consolidation than the Constitution as adopted. The reaction against the evils of the loose-jointed confederation, which Randolph so ably summed up, was extreme. According to the Virginia plan, the national legislature was to be composed of two houses, like the legislatures of the several states. The members of the lower house should be chosen directly by the people — members of the upper house, or Senate, should be elected by the lower house out of persons nominated by the state legislatures. In both the lower and the upper branches of this national legislature the votes were to be the votes of individuals, and no longer the votes of states, as in the Continental Congress. Under the articles of confederation each state had an equal vote, and

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

two thirds were required for many of the most important measures. Under the proposed Constitution each state was to have a number of representatives proportionate either to its wealth or to the number of its free inhabitants, and a bare majority of votes was to suffice to pass all measures in the ordinary course of business ; and these rules were to apply both to the lower house and to the Senate. To adopt such a plan would overthrow the equality of the states altogether. It would give Virginia, the greatest state, sixteen representatives, where Georgia, the smallest state, had but one ; and besides, as the votes were no longer to be taken by states, individual members could combine in any way they pleased, quite irrespective of state lines. It was not strange that to many delegates in the convention such a beginning should have seemed revolutionary. This impression was deepened when it was further proposed not only to clothe this national legislature with original powers of legislation in all cases to which the several states are incompetent, but also to allow it to set aside at discretion such state laws as it might deem unconstitutional. It is interesting to find Madison, whose Federalism afterward came to be so moderate, now appearing as the earnest defender of this extreme provision, so incompatible with state rights. But in Madison's mind at this moment, in the actual

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

presence of the anarchy of the confederation, the only alternative which seemed to present itself was that of armed coercion. "A negative on state laws," he said, "is the mildest expedient that can be devised for enforcing a national decree. Should no such precaution be engrafted, the only remedy would be coercion. The negative would render the use of force unnecessary. This prerogative of the general government is the great pervading principle that must control the centrifugal tendency of the states, which, without it, will continually fly out of their proper orbits, and destroy the order and harmony of the political system." But these views were not destined to find favour with the convention, which finally left the matter to be much more satisfactorily adjusted through the medium of the federal judiciary.

Such were the fundamental provisions of the Virginia plan with regard to the national legislature. To carry out the laws, it was proposed that there should be a national executive, to be chosen by the national legislature for a short term, and ineligible a second time. Whether the executive power should be invested in a single person or in several was not specified. As will be seen hereafter, this was regarded as an extremely delicate point, with which it was thought best not to embarrass the Virginia plan at the outset. Passing lightly over this, it was

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

urged that, in order to complete the action of the government upon individuals, there must be a national judiciary to determine cases arising under the Constitution, cases in admiralty, and cases in which different states or their citizens appear as parties. The judges were to be chosen by the national legislature, to hold office during good behaviour.

Such, in its main outlines, was the plan which Randolph laid before the convention, in the name of the Virginia delegation. An audacious scheme! exclaimed some of the delegates; it was enough to take your breath away. If they were going to begin like this, they might as well go home, for all discussion would be time wasted. They were not sent there to set on foot a revolution, but to amend and strengthen the articles of confederation. But this audacious plan simply abolished the Confederation in order to substitute for it a consolidated national government. Foremost in urging this objection were Yates and Lansing of New York, with Luther Martin of Maryland. Dickinson said it was pushing things altogether too far, and his colleague, George Read, hinted that the delegation from Delaware might feel obliged to withdraw from the convention if the election of representatives according to population should be adopted. By the tact of Madison and Gouverneur Morris

First reception of the Virginia plan

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

this question was postponed for a few days. After some animated discussion, the issues became so narrowed and defined that they could be taken up one by one. It was first decided that the national legislature should consist of two branches. Then came a warm discussion as to whether the members of the lower house should be elected directly by the people. Curiously enough, in a country where the principle of popular election had long since taken such deep root, where the assemblies of the several states had been chosen by the people from the very beginning, there was some doubt as to whether the same principle could safely be applied to the national House of Representatives. Gerry, with his head full of the Shays rebellion and the "Know Ye" measures of the neighbouring state, thought the people could not be trusted. "The people do not want virtue," said he, "but are the dupes of pretended patriots." Roger Sherman took a similar view, and was supported by Martin, Rutledge, and both the Pinckneys, but the sounder opinion prevailed. On this point Hamilton was at one with Mason, Wilson, and Dickinson. The proposed assembly, said Mason, was to be, so to speak, our House of Commons, and ought to know and sympathize with every part of the community. It ought to have at heart the rights and interests of every class of the people, and

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

in no other way could this end be so completely attained as by popular election. "Yes," added Wilson, "without the confidence of the people no government, least of all a republican government, can long subsist. . . . The election of the first branch by the people is not the corner-stone only, but the foundation of the fabric." "It is essential to the democratic rights of the community," said Hamilton, "that the first branch be directly elected by the people." Madison argued powerfully on the same side, and the question was finally decided in favour of popular election.

It was now the 4th of June, when the great question came up which nearly wrecked the convention before it was settled, after a whole month of stormy debate. This was the question as to how the states should be represented in the new Congress. On the Virginia plan, the smaller states would be virtually swamped. Unless they could have equal votes, without regard to wealth or population, they would be at the mercy of the great states. In the division which ensued, the four most populous states — Virginia, Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, and North Carolina — favoured the Virginia plan; and they succeeded in carrying South Carolina with them. Georgia, too, which, though weak at that moment, possessed considerable room for expansion, voted

Antagonism
between large
states and
small states

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

upon the same side. On the other hand, the states of Connecticut, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland — which were not only small in area, but were cut off from further expansion by their geographical situation — were not inclined to give up their equal vote in either branch of the national legislature. At this stage of the proceedings the delegation from New Hampshire had not yet arrived upon the scene. On several occasions the majority of the Maryland delegation went with the larger states, but Luther Martin, always opposed to the Virginia plan, usually succeeded in dividing the vote of the delegation. Of the New York members, Yates and Lansing, here as always, thwarted Hamilton by voting with the smaller states. Their policy throughout was one of obstruction. The members from Connecticut were disposed to be conciliatory ; but New Jersey was obstinate and implacable. She knew what it was to be tyrannized over by powerful neighbours. The wrongs she had suffered from New York and Pennsylvania rankled in the minds of her delegates.

Accordingly, in the name of the smaller states, William Paterson laid before the convention the so-called “New Jersey plan” for the amendment of the articles of confederation. This scheme admitted a federal legislature, consisting of

The New
Jersey plan;
a feeble
palliative

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

a single house, an executive in the form of a council to be chosen by Congress, and likewise a federal judiciary, with powers less extensive than those contemplated by the Virginia plan. It gave to Congress the power to regulate foreign and domestic commerce, to levy duties on imports, and even to raise internal revenue by means of a Stamp Act. But with all this apparent liberality on the surface, the New Jersey plan was vicious at bottom. It did not really give Congress the power to act immediately upon individuals. The federal legislature which it proposed was to represent states, and not individuals, and the states were to vote equally, without regard to wealth or population. If things were to be left in this shape, there was no security that the powers granted to Congress could ever be really exercised. Nay, it was almost certain that they could not be put into operation. It was easy enough on paper to give Congress the permission to levy duties and regulate commerce, but such a permission would amount to nothing unless Congress were armed with the power of enforcing its decrees upon individuals. And it could in no wise acquire such power unless as the creature of the people, and not of the states. The New Jersey plan, therefore, furnished no real remedy for the evils which afflicted the country. It was vigorously opposed by Hamilton, Madi-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

son, Wilson, and King. Hamilton, indeed, took this occasion to offer a plan of his own, which, in addition to Madison's scheme of a purely national legislature, contained the features of a tenure for life or good behaviour, for the executive and the members of the upper house. But to most of the delegates this scheme seemed too little removed from a monarchy, and Hamilton's brilliant speech in its favour, while applauded by many, was supported by none. The weighty arguments of Wilson, King, and Madison prevailed, and the New Jersey plan lost its original shape when it was decided that Congress should consist of two houses. The principle of equal state representation, however, remained as a stumbling-block. Paterson, supported by his able colleague Brearley, as well as by Martin and the two irreconcilables from New York, stoutly maintained that to depart from this principle would be to exceed the powers of the convention, which assuredly was not intended to remodel the government from beginning to end. But Randolph answered, "When the salvation of the republic is at stake, it would be treason to our trust not to propose what we find necessary;" and Hamilton pithily reminded the delegates that as they were there only for the purpose of recommending a scheme which would have to be submitted to the states for acceptance, they need not be deterred by any

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

false scruples from using their wits to the best possible advantage.

The debate on the merits of the question was an angry one. According to the Virginia plan, said Brearley, the three states of Virginia, Massachusetts, and Pennsylvania will carry everything before them. "It was known to him, from the facts within New Jersey, that where large and small counties were united into a district for electing representatives for the district, the large counties always carried their point, and consequently the large states would do so. . . . Was it fair, on the other hand, that Georgia should have an equal vote with Virginia? He would not say it was. What remedy, then? One only: that a map of the United States be spread out, that all the existing boundaries be erased, and that a new partition of the whole be made into thirteen equal parts." "Yes," said Paterson, "a confederacy supposes sovereignty in the members composing it, and sovereignty supposes equality. If we are to be considered as a nation, all state distinctions must be abolished, the whole must be thrown into hotchpot, and when an equal division is made, then there may be fairly an equality of representation." This argument was repeated with a triumphant air, as seeming to reduce the Virginia plan to absurdity. Paterson went on to say that "there was no more reason that a great

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

individual state, contributing much, should have more votes than a small one, contributing little, than that a rich individual citizen should have more votes than an indigent one. If the ratable property of A was to that of B as forty to one, ought A, for that reason, to have forty times as many votes as B? . . . Give the large states an influence in proportion to their magnitude, and what will be the consequence? Their ambition will be proportionally increased, and the small states will have everything to fear. It was once proposed by Galloway [in the first Continental Congress] that America should be represented in the British Parliament, and then be bound by its laws. America could not have been entitled to more than one third of the representatives which would fall to the share of Great Britain: would American rights and interests have been safe under an authority thus constituted?" Then, warming with the subject, he exclaimed, "If the great states wish to unite on such a plan, let them unite if they please, but let them remember that they have no authority to compel the others to unite. . . . Shall I submit the welfare of New Jersey with five votes in a council where Virginia has sixteen? . . . I will never consent to the proposed plan. I will not only oppose it here, but on my return home will do everything in my power to defeat it

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

there. Neither my state nor myself will ever submit to tyranny."

Paterson was ably answered by James Wilson of Pennsylvania, who pointed out the absurdity of giving 180,000 men in one part of the country as much weight in the national legislature as 750,000 in another part. It is unjust, he said. "The gentleman from New Jersey is candid. He declares his opinions boldly. I commend him for it. I will be equally candid. . . . I never will confederate on his principles." The convention grew nervous and excited over this seemingly irreconcilable antagonism. The discussion was kept up with much learning and acuteness by Madison, Ellsworth, and Martin, and history was ransacked for testimony from the Amphiktyonic Council to Old Sarum, and back again to the Lykian League. Madison, rightly reading the future, declared that if once the proposed union should be formed, the real danger would come not from the rivalry between large and small states, but from the antagonistic interests of the slaveholding and non-slaveholding states. Hamilton pointed out that in the State of New York five counties had a majority of the representatives, and yet the citizens of the other counties were in no danger of tyranny, as the laws have an equal operation upon all. Rufus King called attention to the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

fact that the rights of Scotland were secure from encroachments, although her representation in Parliament was necessarily smaller than that of England. But New Jersey and Delaware, mindful of recent grievances, were not to be argued down or soothed. Gunning Bedford of Delaware was especially violent. "Pretences to support ambition," said he, "are never wanting. The cry is, Where is the danger? and it is insisted that although the powers of the general government will be increased, yet it will be for the good of the whole; and although the three great states form nearly a majority of the people of America, they never will injure the lesser states. *Gentlemen, I do not trust you.* If you possess the power, the abuse of it could not be checked; and what then would prevent you from exercising it to our destruction? . . . Sooner than be ruined, *there are foreign powers who will take us by the hand.* I say this not to threaten or intimidate, but that we should reflect seriously before we act." This language called forth a rebuke from Rufus King. "I am concerned," said he, "for what fell from the gentleman from Delaware; *take a foreign power by the hand!* I am sorry he mentioned it, and I hope he is able to excuse it to himself on the score of passion."

The situation had become dangerous. "The convention," said Martin, "was on the verge of dissolution, scarce held together by the strength

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

of a hair." When things were looking darkest, Oliver Ellsworth and Roger Sherman suggested a compromise. "Yes," said Franklin, "when a joiner wishes to fit two boards, he sometimes pares off a bit from both." The famous Connecticut compromise led the way to the arrangement which was ultimately adopted, according to which the national principle was to prevail in the House of Representatives, and the federal principle in the Senate. But at first the compromise met with little favour. Neither party was willing to give way. "No compromise for us," said Luther Martin. "You must give each state an equal suffrage, or our business is at an end." "Then we are come to a full stop," said Roger Sherman. "I suppose it was never meant that we should break up without doing something." When the question as to allowing equality of suffrage to the states in the Federal Senate was put to vote, the result was a tie. Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Delaware, and Maryland — five states — voted in the affirmative; Massachusetts, Pennsylvania, Virginia, North Carolina, and South Carolina — five states — voted in the negative; the vote of Georgia was divided and lost. It was Abraham Baldwin, a native of Connecticut and lately a tutor in Yale College, a recent emigrant to Georgia, who thus divided the vote of that state, and prevented a

The Con-
necticut
compromise

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

decision which would in all probability have broken up the convention. His state was the last to vote, and the house was hushed in anxious expectation, when this brave and wise young man yielded his private conviction to what he saw to be the paramount necessity of keeping the convention together. All honour to his memory !

The moral effect of the tie vote was in favour of the Connecticut compromise ; for no one could doubt that the little states, New Hampshire and Rhode Island, had they been represented in the division, would have voted upon that side. The matter was referred to a committee as impartially constituted as possible, with Elbridge Gerry as chairman ; and on the 5th of July, after a recess of three days, the committee reported in favour of the compromise. Fresh objections on the part of the large states were now offered by Wilson and Gouverneur Morris, and gloom again overhung the convention. Gerry said that, while he did not fully approve of the compromise, he had nevertheless supported it, because he felt sure that if nothing were done war and confusion must ensue, the old confederation being already virtually at an end. George Mason observed that "it could not be more inconvenient for any gentleman to remain absent from his private affairs than it was for him ; but he would bury his bones in

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

that city rather than expose his country to the consequences of a dissolution of the convention." Mason's subsequent course was not quite in keeping with the promise of this brave speech, and in Gerry we shall observe a similar divergence. At present a timely speech from Madison soothed the troubled waters; but it was only after eleven days of somewhat more tranquil debate that the compromise was adopted on the 16th of July. Even then it was but narrowly secured. The ayes were Connecticut, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland, and North Carolina, — five states; the noes were Pennsylvania, Virginia, South Carolina, and Georgia, — four states; Gerry and Strong against King and Gorham divided the vote of Massachusetts, which was thus lost. New York, for reasons presently to be stated, was absent. It is accordingly to Elbridge Gerry and Caleb Strong that posterity are indebted for here preventing a tie, and thus bringing the vexed question to a happy issue.

According to the compromise secured with so much difficulty, it was arranged that in the lower house population was to be represented, and in the upper house the states, each of which, without regard to size, was forever to be entitled to two senators. In the lower house there was to be one representative for every 40,000 inhabitants, but at Washington's suggestion the num-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ber was changed to 30,000, so as to increase the house, which then seemed likely to be too small in numbers. Some one suggested that with the growth of population that rate would make an unwieldy house within a hundred and fifty years from that time, whereat Gorham of Massachusetts laughed to scorn the idea that any system of government they could devise in that room could possibly last a hundred and fifty years. The difficulty has been surmounted by enlarging from time to time the basis of representation. It now seemed inadvisable that the senators should be chosen by the lower house out of persons nominated by the state legislatures; and it was accordingly decided that they should be not merely nominated, but elected, by the state legislatures. Thus the Senate was made quite independent of the lower house. At the same time, the senators were to vote as individuals, and thus the old practice of voting by states, except in certain peculiar emergencies, was finally done away with.

It is seldom, if ever, that a political compromise leaves things evenly balanced. Almost every such arrangement, when once set working, weighs down the scales decidedly to the one side or the other. The Connecticut compromise was really a decisive victory for Madison and his party, although it modified the Virginia plan so considerably. They could well

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

afford to defer to the fears and prejudices of the smaller states in the structure of the Senate, for by securing a lower house, which represented the American people, and not the American states, they won the whole battle in so far as the question of radically reforming the government was concerned. As soon as the foundation was thus laid for a government which should act directly upon individuals, it obviously became necessary to abandon the articles of confederation, and work out a new constitution in all its details. The plan, as now reported, omitted the obnoxious adjective "national," and spoke of the *federal* legislature and *federal* courts. But to the men who were still blindly wedded to the old confederation this soothing change of phraseology did not conceal their defeat. On the very day that the compromise was favourably reported by the committee, Yates and Lansing quit the convention in disgust, and went home to New York. After the departure of these uncongenial colleagues, Hamilton might have acted with power, had he not known too well that the sentiment of his state did not support him. As a mere individual he could do but little, and accordingly he went home for a while to attend to pressing business, returning just in time to take part in the closing scenes. His share in the work of framing the Federal Con-

It was a decisive victory for Madison's scheme

Irreconcilables go home

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

stitution was very small. About the time that Hamilton returned, Luther Martin, whose wrath had waxed hotter every day, as he saw power after power extended to the federal government, at length gave way and went back to Maryland, vowing that he would have nothing more to do with such high-handed proceedings.

While the Connecticut compromise thus scattered a few scintillations of discontent, and relieved the convention of some of its most discordant elements, its general effect was wonderfully harmonizing. The men who had opposed the Virginia plan only through their dread of the larger states were now more than conciliated. The concession of equal representation in the Senate turned out to have been a master stroke of diplomacy. As soon as the little states were assured of an equal share in the control of one of the two central legislative bodies, they suddenly forgot their scruples about thoroughly overhauling the government, and none were readier than they to intrust extensive powers to the new Congress. Paterson of New Jersey, the fiercest opponent of the Virginia plan, became from that time forth to the end of his life the most devoted of Federalists.

That first step which proverbially gives the most trouble had now been fairly taken. But other compromises were needed before the work of construction could properly be carried out.

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

As the antagonism between great and small states disappeared from the scene, other antagonisms appeared. It is worth noting that just for a moment there was revealed a glimmering of jealousy and dread on the part of the eastern states

Other antagonisms ;
vague dread
of the future
west

toward those of which the foundations were laid in the northwestern territory. Many people in New England feared that their children would be drawn westward in such numbers as to create immense states beyond the Ohio ; and thus it was foreseen that the relative political weight of New England in the future would be diminished. To a certain extent this prediction has been justified by events, but Roger Sherman rightly maintained that it afforded no just grounds for dread. King and Gerry introduced a most illiberal and mischievous motion, that the total number of representatives from new states must never be allowed to exceed the total number from the original thirteen. Such an arrangement, which would surely have been enough to create that antagonism between east and west which it sought to forestall and avoid, was supported by Massachusetts and Connecticut, with Delaware and Maryland ; but it was defeated by the combination of New Jersey with the four states south of Maryland. The ground was thus cleared for a very different kind of sectional antagonism, — that which, as Madison

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

truly said, would prove the most deep-seated and enduring of all, — the antagonism between north and south. The first great struggle between the pro-slavery and anti-slavery parties began in the Federal Convention, and it resulted in the first two of the long series of compromises by which the irrepressible conflict was postponed until the north had waxed strong enough to confront the dreaded spectre of secession, and, summoning all its energies in one stupendous effort, exorcise it forever. From this moment down to 1865 we shall continually be made to realize how the American people had entered into the shadow of the coming Civil War before they had fairly emerged from that of the Revolution; and as we pass from scene to scene of the solemn story, we shall learn how to be forever grateful for the sudden and final clearing of the air wrought by that frightful storm which men not yet old can still so well remember.

The first compromise related to the distribution of representatives between north and south. Was representation in the lower house of Congress to be proportioned to wealth, or to population; and if the latter, were all the inhabitants, or only all the free inhabitants, to be counted? It was soon agreed that wealth was difficult to reckon and population easy to count; and to an extent sufficient for all ordinary purposes,

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

population might serve as an index of wealth. A state with 500,000 inhabitants would be in most cases richer than one with 400,000. In those days, when cities were few and small, this was approximately true. In our day it is not at all true. A state with large commercial and manufacturing cities is sure to be much richer than a state in which the population is chiefly rural. The population of Massachusetts is somewhat smaller than that of Indiana ; but her aggregate wealth is more than double that of Indiana. Disparities like this, which do not trouble us to-day, would have troubled the Federal Convention. We no longer think it desirable to give political representation to wealth, or to anything but persons. We have become thoroughly democratic, but our great-grandfathers had not. To them it seemed quite essential that wealth should be represented as well as persons ; but they got over the main difficulty easily, because under the economic conditions of that time population could serve roughly as an index to wealth, and it was much easier to count noses than to assess the value of farms and stock.

But now there was in all the southern states, and in most of the northern, a peculiar species of collective existence, which might be described either as wealth or as population. As human beings the slaves might be described as pop-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ulation, but in the eye of the law they were chattels. In the northern states slavery was rapidly disappearing, and the property in negroes was so small as to be hardly worth considering; while south of Mason and Dixon's line this peculiar kind of property was the chief wealth of the states. But clearly, in apportioning representation, in sharing political power in the federal assembly, the same rule should have been applied impartially to all the states. At this point, Pierce Butler and Cotesworth Pinckney of South Carolina insisted that slaves were part of the population, and as such must be counted in ascertaining the basis of representation. A fierce and complicated dispute ensued. The South Carolina proposal suggested a uniform rule, but it was one that would scarcely alter the political weight of the north, while it would vastly increase the weight of the south; and it would increase it most in just the quarter where slavery was most deeply rooted. The power of South Carolina, as a member of the Union, would be doubled by such a measure. Hence the northern delegates maintained that slaves, as chattels, ought no more to be reckoned as part of the population than houses or ships. "Has a man in Virginia," exclaimed Paterson, "a number of votes in proportion to the number of his slaves? And if negroes are not re-

Were slaves
to be reck-
oned as per-
sons or as
chattels?

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

presented in the states to which they belong, why should they be represented in the general government? . . . If a meeting of the people were to take place in a slave state, would the slaves vote? They would not. Why then should they be represented in a federal government?" "I can never agree," said Gouverneur Morris, "to give such encouragement to the slave-trade as would be given by allowing the southern states a representation for their negroes. . . . I would sooner submit myself to a tax for paying for all the negroes in the United States than saddle posterity with such a constitution."

The attitude taken by Virginia was that of peacemaker. On the one hand, such men as Washington, Madison, and Mason, who were earnestly hoping to see their own state soon freed from the curse of slavery, could not fail to perceive that if Virginia were to gain an increase of political weight from the existence of that institution, the difficulty of getting the state legislature to abolish it would be enhanced. But, on the other hand, they saw that South Carolina was inexorable, and that her refusal to adopt the Constitution for this reason would certainly carry Georgia with her, and probably North Carolina also. Even had South Carolina alone been involved, it was not simply a question of forming a Union which should

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

either include her or leave her out in the cold. The case was much more complicated than that. It was really doubtful if, without the cordial assistance of South Carolina, a Union could be formed at all. A Federal Constitution had not only to be framed, but it had to be presented to the thirteen states for adoption. It was by no means clear that enough states would ratify it to enable the experiment of the new government to go into operation. New York and Rhode Island were known to be bitterly opposed to it; Massachusetts could not be counted on as sure; to add South Carolina to this list would be to endanger everything. The event justified this caution. We shall hereafter see that it was absolutely necessary to satisfy South Carolina, and that but for her ratification, coming just at the moment when it did, the work of the Federal Convention would probably have been done in vain. It was a clear perception of the wonderful complication of interests involved in the final appeal to the people that induced the Virginia statesmen to take the lead in a compromise. Four years before, in 1783, when Congress was endeavouring to apportion the quotas of revenue to be required of the several states, a similar dispute had arisen. If taxation were to be distributed according to population, it made a great difference whether slaves were to be counted as population or not. If slaves

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

were to be counted, the southern states would have to pay more than their equitable share into the federal treasury ; if slaves were not to be counted, it was argued at the north that they would be paying less than their equitable share. Consequently at that time the north had been inclined to maintain that the slaves were population, while the south had preferred to regard them as chattels. Thus we see that in politics, as well as in algebra, it makes all the difference in the world whether you start with *plus* or with *minus*. On that occasion Madison had offered a successful compromise, in which a slave figured as three fifths of a freeman ; and Rutledge of South Carolina, who was now present in the convention, had supported the measure. Madison now proposed the same method of getting over the difficulty about representation, and his compromise was adopted. It was agreed that in counting population, whether for direct taxation or for representation in the lower house of Congress, five slaves should be reckoned as three individuals.

The three
fifths com-
promise ;
a genuine
English
solution, if
ever there
was one

All this was thoroughly illogical, of course ; it left the question whether slaves are population or chattels for theorizers to wrangle over, and for future events to decide. It was easy for James Wilson to show that there was neither

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

rhyme nor reason in it: but he subscribed to it, nevertheless, just as the northern abolitionists, Rufus King and Gouverneur Morris, joined with Washington and Madison, and with the pro-slavery Pinckneys, in subscribing to it, because they all believed that without such a compromise the Constitution would not be adopted; and in this there can be little doubt that they were right. The evil consequences were unquestionably very serious indeed. Henceforth, so long as slavery lasted, the vote of a southerner counted for more than the vote of a northerner; and just where negroes were most numerous the power of their masters became greatest. In South Carolina there soon came to be more blacks than whites, and the application of the rule therefore went far toward doubling the vote of South Carolina in the House of Representatives and in the electoral college. Every five slaveholders down there were equal in political weight to not less than eight farmers or merchants in the north; and thus this troublesome state acquired a power of working mischief out of all proportion to her real size. At a later date the operation of the rule in Mississippi was similar; and in general it was just the most backward and barbarous parts of the Union that were thus favoured at the expense of the most civilized parts. Admitting all this, however, it remains undeniable that the Constitu-

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

tion saved us from anarchy ; and there can be little doubt that slavery and every other remnant of barbarism in American society would have thriven far more lustily under a state of chronic anarchy than was possible under the Constitution.

In other words, it was the best solution attainable under the circumstances

Four years of concentrated warfare, animated by an intense and lofty moral purpose, could not hurt the character or mar the fortunes of the people, like a century of aimless and miscellaneous squabbling over a host of petty local interests. The War of Secession was a terrible ordeal to pass through ; but when one tries to picture what might have happened in this fair land without the work of the Federal Convention, the imagination stands aghast.

The second great compromise between northern and southern interests related to the abolition of the foreign slave-trade and the power of the federal government over commerce. All the states except South Carolina and Georgia wished to stop the importation of slaves ; but the

Compromise between New England and South Carolina as to the foreign slave-trade

physical conditions of rice and indigo culture exhausted the negroes so fast that these two states felt that their industries would be dried up at the very source if the importation of fresh negroes were to be stopped. Cotesworth Pinckney accordingly declared that South Carolina would consider a vote to abolish the slave-trade

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

as simply a polite way of telling her that she was not wanted in the Union. On the other hand, the three New England states present in the convention had made up their minds that it would not do to allow the several states any longer to regulate commerce each according to its own whim. It was of vital importance that this power should be taken from the states and lodged in Congress; otherwise, the Union would soon be rent in pieces by commercial disputes. The policy of New York had thoroughly impressed this lesson upon all the neighbouring states. But none of the southern states were in favour of granting this power unreservedly to Congress. If a navigation act could be passed by a simple majority in Congress, it was feared that the New Englanders would get all the carrying trade into their own hands, and then charge ruinous freights for carrying rice, indigo, and tobacco to the north and to Europe. On this point, accordingly, the southern delegates acted as a unit in insisting that Congress should not be empowered to regulate commerce, except by a two thirds vote of both houses. The New Englanders insisted that such a restriction would tie the hands of the federal government most unfortunately. But if a tariff act could be passed by a simple majority, it was feared that we should come to see — well, just what we have come to see: the shameful system of wholesale robbery

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

upon which Congress had entered by 1828, and which during the last thirty years has been growing ever more cynical, ruthless, and base. Here were the materials ready for a compromise, or, as the stout abolitionist, Gouverneur Morris, truly called it, a "bargain" between New England and the far south. New Hampshire, Massachusetts, and Connecticut consented to the prolonging of the foreign slave-trade for twenty years, or until 1808; and in return South Carolina and Georgia consented to the clause empowering Congress to pass navigation acts and otherwise regulate commerce by a simple majority of votes. At the same time, as a concession to rice and indigo, the New Englanders agreed that Congress should be forever prohibited from taxing exports; and thus one remnant of mediæval political economy was neatly swept away.

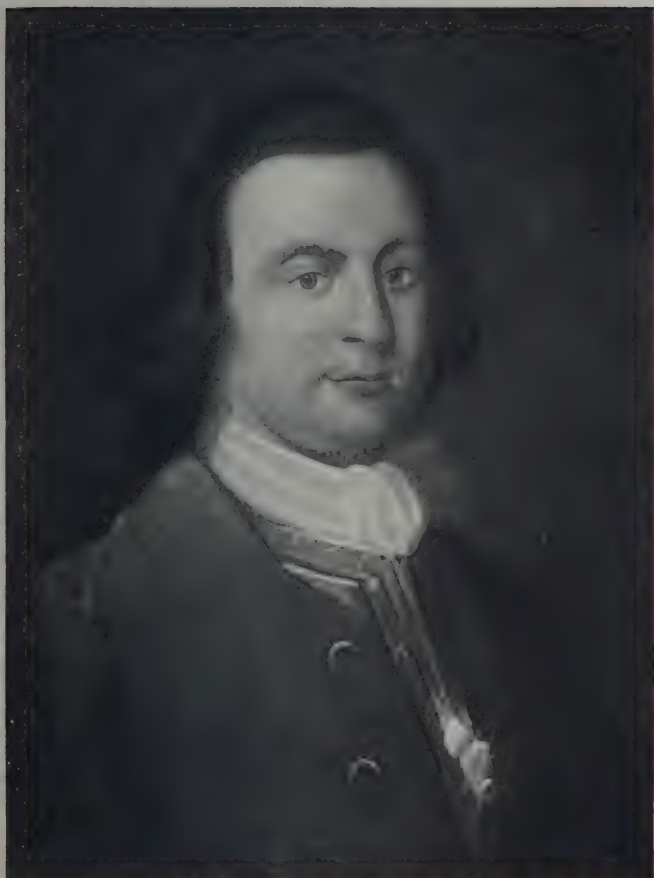
This compromise was carried against the sturdy opposition of Virginia. The language of George Mason of Virginia is worth quoting, for it was such as Theodore Parker might have used. He called the slave-trade "this infernal traffic." "Slavery," said he, "discourages arts and manufactures. The poor despise labour when performed by slaves. They prevent the immigration of whites, who really strengthen and enrich a country. They produce

This last compromise seems to make the adhesion of Virginia doubtful

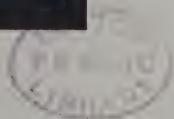
THE CRITICAL PERIOD

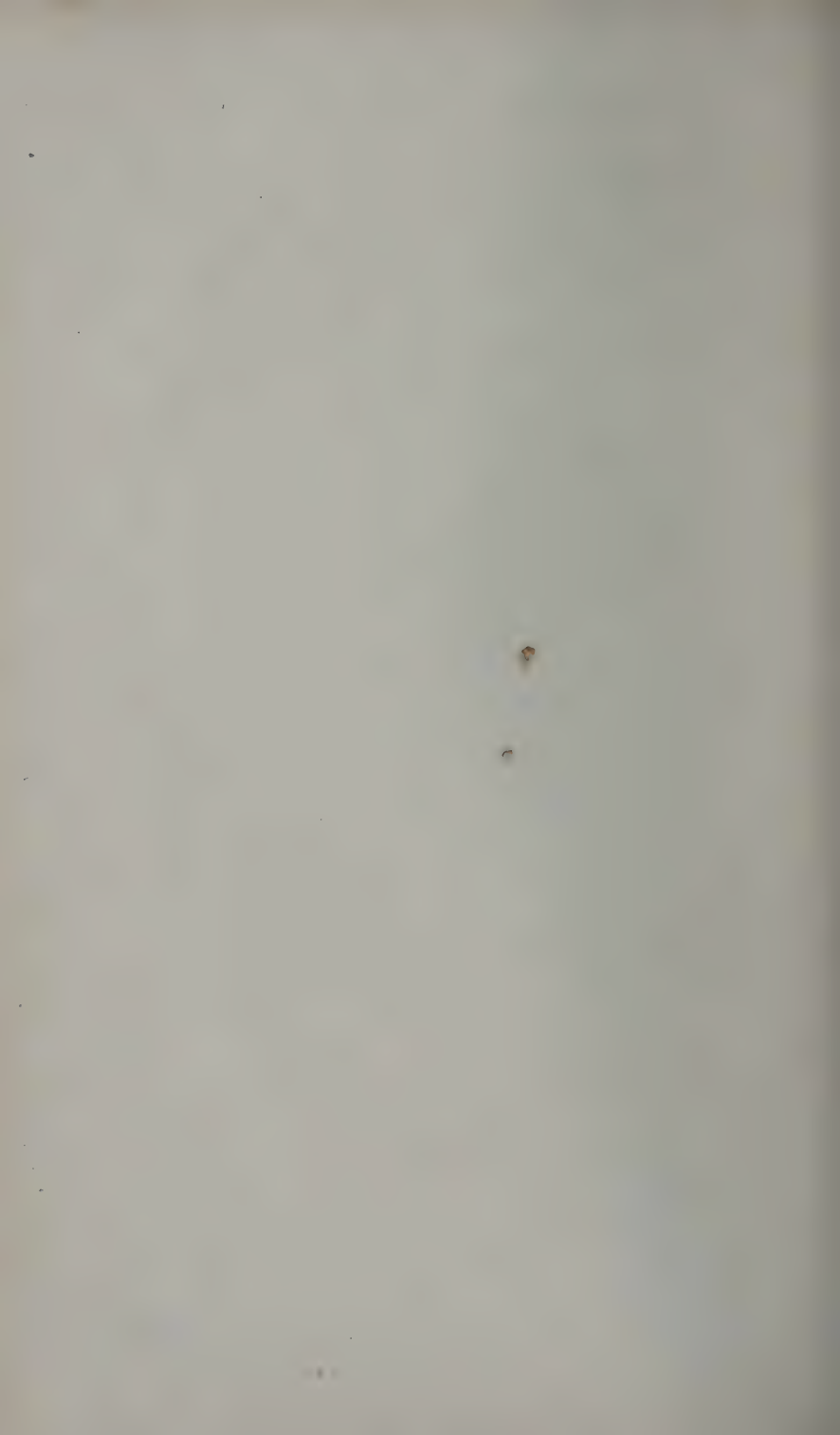
the most pernicious effect on manners. Every master of slaves is born a petty tyrant. They bring the judgment of Heaven on a country. As nations cannot be rewarded or punished in the next world, they must be in this. By an inevitable chain of causes and effects, Providence punishes national sins by national calamities." But these prophetic words were powerless against the combination of New England with the far south. One thing was now made certain, — that the vast influence of Rutledge and the Pinckneys would be thrown unreservedly in behalf of the new Constitution. "I will confess," said Cotesworth Pinckney, "that I had prejudices against the eastern states before I came here, but I have found them as liberal and candid as any men whatever." But this compromise, which finally secured South Carolina and Georgia, made Virginia for the moment doubtful ; for Mason and Randolph were so disgusted at the absolute power over commerce conceded to Congress that, when the Constitution was finished and engrossed on paper, they refused to sign it.

It is difficult to read this or any other episode in our history whereby negro slavery was extended and fostered without burning indignation. But this is not the proper mood for the historian, whose aim is to interpret men's actions by the circumstances of their time, in order to judge their motives correctly. In 1787 slavery



George Mason





THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

was the cloud like unto a man's hand which portended a deluge, but those who could truly read the signs were few. From north to south, slavery had been slowly dying out for nearly fifty years. It had become extinct in Massachusetts, it was nearly so in all the other northern states, and it had just been forever prohibited in the national domain. In Maryland and Virginia there was a strong and growing party in favour of abolition. The movement had even gathered strength in North Carolina. Only the rice-swamps of the far south remained wedded to their idols. It was quite generally believed that slavery was destined speedily to expire, to give place to a better system of labour, without any great danger or disturbance; and this opinion was distinctly set forth by many delegates in the convention.¹ Even Charles Pinckney went so far as to express his hope that

¹ The slave-population of the United States, according to the census of 1790, was thus distributed among the states:—

<i>North</i>		<i>South</i>	
New Hampshire	158	Delaware	8,887
Vermont	17	Maryland	103,036
Massachusetts	—	Virginia	293,427
Rhode Island	952	North Carolina . . .	100,572
Connecticut	2,759	South Carolina . . .	107,094
New York	21,324	Georgia	29,264
New Jersey	11,423	Kentucky	11,830
Pennsylvania	3,737	Tennessee	3,417
	<u>40,370</u>		<u>657,527</u>
Total			697,897

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

South Carolina, if not too much meddled with, would by and by voluntarily rank herself among the emancipating states; but his older cousin declared himself bound in candour to acknowledge that there was very little likelihood indeed of so desirable an event. Not even these South Carolinians ventured to defend slavery on principle. This belief in the moribund condition of slavery prevented the convention from realizing the actual effect of the concessions which were made. Very little cotton was grown at that time, and none was sent to England. The industrial revolution about to be wrought by the inventions of Arkwright and Hargreaves, Cartwright and Watt and Whitney, could not be foreseen. Nor could it be foreseen that presently, when there should thus arise a great demand for slaves from Virginia as a breeding-ground, the abolitionist party in that state would disappear, leaving her to join in the odious struggle for introducing slavery into the national domain. Though these things were so soon to happen, the wisest man in 1787 could not foresee them. The convention hoped that twenty years would see not only the end of the foreign slave-trade, but the restriction and diminution of slavery itself. It was in such a mood that they completed the compromise by recommending a tariff of ten dollars a head upon all negroes imported, while at the same time a clause was added for

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

insuring the recovery of fugitive slaves, quite similar to the clause in the ordinance for the government of the northwestern territory.

It was the three great compromises here described that laid the foundations of our Federal Constitution. The first compromise, by conceding equal representation to the states in the Senate, enlisted the small states in favour of the new scheme, and by establishing a national system of representation in the lower house, prepared the way for a government that

The foundations of the Constitution were thus laid in compromise

could endure. This was Madison's great victory, secured by the aid of Sherman and Ellsworth, without which nothing could have been effected. The second compromise, at the cost of giving disproportionate weight to the slave states, gained their support for the more perfect union that was about to be formed. The third compromise, at the cost of postponing for twenty years the abolition of the foreign slave-trade, secured absolute free-trade between the states, with the surrender of all control over commerce into the hands of the federal government. After these steps had been taken, the most difficult and dangerous part of the road had been travelled ; the remainder, though extremely important, was accomplished far more easily. It was mainly the task of building on the foundations already laid.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

In the grants to the federal government of powers hitherto reserved to the several states, the diversity of opinion among the members of the convention was but slight compared to the profound antagonism which had been allayed by the three initial compromises. It was admitted, as a matter of course, that the federal government alone could coin money, fix the standard of weights and measures, establish post-offices and post-roads, and grant patents and copyrights. To it alone was naturally intrusted the whole business of war and of international relations. It could define and punish felonies committed on the high seas; it could maintain a navy and issue letters of marque and reprisal; it could support an army and provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, to suppress insurrections, and to repel invasions. But in relation to this question of the army and the militia there was some characteristic discussion. It was at first proposed that Congress should have the power "to subdue a rebellion in any state on the application of its legislature." The Shays rebellion was then fresh in the memory of all the delegates, and their arguments simply reflected the impression which that unpleasant affair had left upon them. Charles Pinckney, Gouverneur Morris, and John Langdon wished to have the power given

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

to Congress unconditionally, without waiting for an application from the legislature. But Gerry, who had been on the ground, spoke sturdily against such a needless infraction of state rights. He was utterly opposed, he said, to "letting loose the myrmidons of the United States on a state without its own consent. The states will be the best judges in such cases. More blood would have been spilt in Massachusetts in the late insurrection if the general authority had intermeddled." Ellsworth suggested that Congress should use its discretion only in cases where the legislature of the state could not meet; but Randolph forcibly replied that if Congress is to judge whether a state legislature can or cannot meet, the difficulty is in no wise surmounted. Gerry's view at last prevailed, and in accordance therewith it was decided that the federal power should guarantee to every state a republican form of government, and should protect each of them against any invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (if the legislature could not be convened), it should protect them against domestic violence. This arrangement did not fully provide against such an emergency as that of rival and hostile executives in the same state, as under the so-called "carpet-bag" governments which followed after the War of Secession, but it was doubtless as sound

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

a provision as any general constitution could make.

The federal government was further empowered to borrow money on the credit of the United States ; and it was declared that all debts contracted and engagements entered into before the adoption of this constitution should be as valid against the United States under this constitution as under the confederation. There was to be no repudiation or readjustment of debts on the ground of inability to pay. Congress was further empowered to establish a uniform rule of naturalization and a uniform law of bankruptcy. But it was prohibited from passing bills of attainder or *ex post facto* laws, or suspending the writ of *habeas corpus*, except under the stress of rebellion or invasion. It was provided that all duties, imposts, or excises should be uniform throughout the United States. The federal government could not give preference to one state over another in its commercial regulations. It could not tax exports. It could not draw money from the treasury save by due process of appropriation, and all bills relating to the raising of revenue must originate in the lower house, which directly represented the people. Congress was empowered to admit new states into the Union, but it was not allowed to interfere with the territorial areas of states already existing without the express

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

consent of the local legislatures. To insure the independence of the federal government, it was provided that senators and representatives should be paid out of the federal treasury, and not by their respective states, as had been the case under the Confederation. Except for such offences as treason, felony, or breach of the peace, they should be "privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to or returning from the same ; and for any speech or debate in either house " they were not to be " questioned in any other place." It was further provided that a territory not exceeding ten miles square should be ceded to the United States, and set apart as the site of a federal city, in which the general government should ever after hold its meetings, erect its buildings, and exercise exclusive jurisdiction. During the past four years the Continental Congress had skipped about from Philadelphia to Princeton, to Annapolis, to Trenton, to New York, until it had become a laughing-stock, and the newspapers were full of squibs about it. Verily, said one facetious editor, the Lord shall make this government like unto a wheel, and keep it rolling back and forth betwixt Dan and Beersheba, and grant it no rest this side of Jordan. This inconvenience was now to be remedied. Congress was hereafter to have a federal police force at its dis-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

posal, and was never more to be reduced to the humiliation of a fruitless appeal to the protecting arm of a state government, as at Philadelphia in the summer of 1783. Furthermore, the Continental Congress had of late years commanded so little respect, and had offered so few temptations to able men in quest of political distinction, that its meetings were often attended by no more than eight or ten members. It was actually on the point of dying a natural death through sheer lack of public interest in it. To prevent any possible continuance of such a disgraceful state of things, it was agreed that the Federal Congress should be "authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide." Had the political life of the country continued to go on as under the Confederation, it is very doubtful whether such a provision as this would have remedied the evil. But the new Federal Congress, drawing its life directly from the people, was destined to afford far greater opportunities for a political career than were afforded by the feeble body of delegates which preceded it; and a penal clause, compelling members to attend its meetings, was hardly needed under the new circumstances which arose.

While the powers of the federal government were thus carefully defined, at the same time

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

several powers were expressly denied to the states. No state was allowed, without explicit authority from Congress, to lay any tonnage or custom-house duties, "keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact

Powers
denied to
the states

with another state or with a foreign power, or engage in war unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delays." The following clause provided against a recurrence of some of the worst evils which had been felt under the "league of friendship:"

"No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility."

Henceforth there was to be no repetition of such disgraceful scenes as had lately been witnessed in Rhode Island. So far as the state legislatures were concerned, paper money was to be ruled out forever. But how was it with the federal government? By the articles of confederation the United States were allowed to issue bills of credit, and make them a tender in payment of debts. In the Federal Convention the committee of detail suggested that this permission might remain under the new consti-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tution ; but the suggestion was almost unanimously condemned. All the ablest men in the convention spoke very emphatically against it. Gouverneur Morris urged that the federal government, no less than the state governments, should be expressly prohibited from issuing bills of credit, or in any wise making its promissory notes a legal tender. He went over the history of the past ten years ; he called attention to the obstinacy with which the wretched device had been resorted to again and again, after its evils had been thrust before everybody's eyes ; and he proved himself a true prophet when he said that if the United States should ever again have a great war to conduct, people would have forgotten all about these things, and would call for fresh issues of inconvertible paper, with similar disastrous results. Now was the time to stop it once for all. "Yes," echoed Roger Sherman, "this is the favourable crisis for crushing paper money." "This is the time," said his colleague, Ellsworth, "to shut and bar the door against paper money, which can in no case be necessary. Give the government credit, and other resources will offer. The power may do harm, never good." There was no way, he added, in which powerful friends could so soon be gained for the new constitution as by withholding this power from the government. James

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

Wilson took the same view. "It will have the most salutary influence on the credit of the United States," said he, "to remove the possibility of paper money." "Rather than grant the power to Congress," said John Langdon, "I would reject the whole plan." "The words which grant this power," said George Read of Delaware, "if not struck out, will be as alarming as the mark of the Beast in the Apocalypse." On none of the subjects that came up for discussion during that summer was the convention more nearly unanimous than in its condemnation of paper money. The only delegate who ventured to speak in its favour was Mercer of Maryland. What Hamilton would have said, if he had been present that day, we may judge from his vigorous words published some time before. The power to emit an inconvertible paper as a sign of value ought never hereafter to be used ; for in its very nature, said he, it is "pregnant with abuses, and liable to be made the engine of imposition and fraud, holding out temptations equally pernicious to the integrity of government and to the morals of the people." Paterson called it "sanctifying iniquity by law." The same views were entertained by Washington and Madison. There were a few delegates, however, who thought it unsafe to fetter Congress absolutely. To use Luther Martin's expression, they did not set them-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

selves up to be "wise beyond every event." George Mason said he "had a mortal hatred to paper money, yet, as he could not foresee all emergencies, he was unwilling to tie the hands of the legislature. The late war," he thought, "could not have been carried on had such a prohibition existed." Randolph spoke to the same effect. Such opinions were common then, and are common now; though to any one who has carefully studied our financial history it is quite clear that both in the War of Independence and in the War of Secession legal-tender notes were not a help but a most baneful encumbrance.

It was finally decided, by the vote of nine states against New Jersey and Maryland, that the power to issue inconvertible paper should not be granted to the federal government. An express prohibition, such as had been adopted for the separate states, was thought unnecessary. It was supposed that it was enough to withhold the power, since the federal government would not venture to exercise it unless expressly permitted in the Constitution. "Thus," says Madison, in his narrative of the proceedings, "the pretext for a paper currency, and particularly for making the bills a tender, either for public or private debts, was cut off." Nothing could be more clearly expressed than this. As Mr. Justice Field observes, in his able dissent-

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

ing opinion in the recent case of *Juilliard vs. Greenman*, "if there be anything in the history of the Constitution which can be established with moral certainty, it is that the framers of that instrument intended to prohibit the issue of legal-tender notes both by the general government and by the states, and thus prevent interference with the contracts of private parties." Such has been the opinion of our ablest constitutional jurists, Marshall, Webster, Story, Curtis, and Nelson. There can be little doubt that, according to all sound principles of interpretation, the Legal Tender Act of 1862 was passed in flagrant violation of the Constitution. Could Ellsworth and Morris, Langdon and Madison, have foreseen the possibility of such extraordinary judgments as have lately emanated from the Supreme Court of the United States, they would doubtless have insisted upon the express prohibition, instead of leaving it to posterity to root out the plague, as it will apparently some time have to do, by the cumbersome process of an amendment to the Constitution.

The work of the convention, as thus far considered, related to the legislative department of the new government. While these discussions were going on, much attention had been paid, from time to time, to the characteristics of the proposed federal executive. The debates on this

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

question, though long kept up, were far less acrimonious than the debates on representation and the power of Congress over trade, because here there was no obvious clashing of local interests. But for this very reason the convention had no longer so clear a chart to steer by. On the question of the slave-trade, the Pinckneys knew accurately just what South Carolina wanted, how much it would do to claim, and how far it would be necessary to yield. As to the regulation of commerce by a bare majority of votes in Congress, King and Sherman on the one hand, Mason and Randolph on the other, were able to pursue a thoroughly definite course of action in behalf of what were supposed to be the special interests of New England or of Virginia. Consequently, the debates kept close to the point; the controversy was always keen, and sometimes, as we have seen, angry.

It was very different with the question as to the federal executive. Upon this point the discussions were guided rather by general speculations as to what would be most likely to work well, and accordingly they wandered far and wide. Some of the delegates seemed to think we should sooner or later come to adopt a hereditary monarchy, and that the chief thing to be done was to postpone the event as long as possible. Many wild ideas

Debates as to
the federal
executive

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

were broached : such, for example, as a triple-headed executive, to represent the eastern, middle, and southern states, somewhat as associated Roman emperors at times administered affairs in the different portions of an undivided empire. The Virginia plan had not stated whether its proposed executive was to be single or plural, because the Virginia delegates could not agree. Madison wished it to be single, to insure greater efficiency, but to Randolph and Mason a tyranny seemed to lurk in such an arrangement. When James Wilson and Charles Pinckney suggested that the executive power should be intrusted into the hands of one man, a profound silence fell upon the convention. No one spoke for several minutes, until Washington, from the chair, asked if he should put the question. Franklin then got up, and said it was an interesting subject, and he should like to hear what the members had to say ; and so the ball was set rolling. Rutledge said there was no need of their being so shy. A man might frankly express his opinions, and afterwards change them if he saw good reason for so doing. For his part, he was in favour of vesting the executive power in a single person, to secure efficiency of administration and concentration of responsibility ; but he would not give him the power to declare war and make peace. Sherman then made the far-reaching suggestion, that the ex-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ecutive magistracy was really "nothing more than an institution for carrying the will of the legislature into effect; that the person or persons ought to be appointed by and accountable to the legislature only, which was the depository of the supreme will of the society. As they were the best judges of the business which ought to be done by the executive department, . . . he wished the number might not be fixed, but that the legislature should be at liberty to appoint one or more, as experience might dictate." It would greatly have astonished the convention had they been told that this suggestion of Sherman's was a move in the very same line of development which the British government had been following for more than half a century; yet such, as we shall presently see, was the case. Had this point been understood then as we understand it now, the proceedings of the convention could not have failed to be profoundly affected by it. As it was, the suggestion did not receive due attention, and the stream of discussion was turned into a very different channel. Wilson argued powerfully in favour of a single chief magistrate, and this view finally prevailed.

After it had been decided that there should be one man set in so high a position, there was endless discussion as to whether he should be elected by the people or by Congress, and



Roger Sherman

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

whether he should serve for one, or two, or three, or four, or ten, or fifteen years. "Better call it twenty," said Rufus King, sarcastically; "it is the average reign of princes." Hamilton and Gouverneur Morris would have had him chosen for life, subject to removal for misbehaviour; but the preference for a short term of service was soon manifest. As to the method of election, opinions oscillated back and forth for several weeks. Wilson said "he was almost unwilling to declare the mode which he wished to take place, being apprehensive that it might appear chimerical. He would say, however, at least, that in theory he was for an election by the people. Experience, particularly in New York and Massachusetts, showed that an election of the first magistrate by the people at large was both a convenient and a successful mode. The objects of choice in such cases must be persons whose merits have general notoriety." Mason, Rutledge, and Strong agreed with Sherman that the executive should be chosen by the legislature; but Washington, Madison, Gerry, and Gouverneur Morris strongly disapproved of this. Morris argued that an election by the national legislature would be the work of intrigue and corruption, like the election of the king of Poland by a diet of nobles; but Mason declared, on the other hand, that "to refer the

There should
be a presi-
dent, but
how should
he be elected

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

choice of a proper character for a chief magistrate to the people would be as unnatural as to refer a trial of colours to a blind man." A decision was first reached against an election by Congress, because it was thought that if the chief magistrate should prove himself thoroughly competent he ought to be reëligible; but if reëligible he would be exposed to the temptation of truckling to the most powerful party or cabal in Congress, in order to secure his reëlection. It did not occur to any one to suggest that under ordinary circumstances the executive ought to follow the policy of the most powerful party in Congress, and that he might at the same time preserve all needful independence by being clothed with the power of dissolving Congress and making an appeal to the people in a new election. It is interesting to consider what might have come of such a suggestion, following upon the heels of that made by Roger Sherman. As we shall presently see, it might have gone far toward assimilating the machinery of our government to that of Great Britain by making the executive the arm of the legislature, instead of a separate and coördinate power. Upon this point the minds of nearly all the members were so far under the sway of an incorrect theory of the British constitution that such an idea occurred to none of them. It was decided that the chief magistrate ought to

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

be reëligible, and therefore should not be elected by Congress.

An immediate choice by the people, however, did not meet with general favour. To obviate the difficulty, Ellsworth and King suggested the device of an electoral college, in which

the electors should be chosen by the state legislatures, and should hold a meeting at the federal city for the sole purpose of deciding upon a chief magistrate. It was then objected that it would be difficult to find competent men who would be willing to undertake a long journey simply for such a purpose. The objection was felt to be a very grave one, and so the convention returned to the plan of an election by Congress, and again confronted the difficulty of the chief magistrate's intriguing to secure his reëlection. Wilson thought to do away with this difficulty by introducing the element of blind chance, as in some of the states of ancient Greece, and choosing the executive by a board of electors taken from Congress by lot; but the suggestion found little support. Dickinson thought it would be well if the people of each state were to choose its best citizen, — in modern parlance, its "favourite son;" then out of these thirteen names a chief magistrate might be chosen, either by Congress or by a special board of electors. At length, on the 26th of July, at the motion of Mason, the conven-

Suggestion
of an elec-
toral college

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tion resolved that there should be a national executive, to consist of a single person, to be chosen by the national legislature for the term of seven years, and to be ineligible for a second term. He was to be styled President of the United States of America.

This decision remained until the very end of August, when the whole question was reopened by a motion of Rutledge that the two houses of Congress, in electing the president, should proceed by "joint ballot." The object of this motion was to prevent either house from exerting a negative on the choice of the other. It was carried in spite of the opposition of some of the smaller states, which might hope to exercise a greater relative influence upon the choice of presidents, if the Senate were to vote separately. At this point the fears of Gouverneur Morris, that an election by Congress would result in boundless intrigue, were revived ; and in a powerful speech he persuaded the convention to return to the device of the electoral college, which might be made equal in number and similar in composition to the two houses of Congress sitting together. It need not be required of the electors, after all, that they should make a long journey to the seat of the federal government. They might meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, one of whom must be an inhabitant of a different state. By this

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

provision it was hoped to diminish the chances for extreme sectional partiality. A list of these votes might be sent under seal to the presiding officer of the Senate, to be counted. Should no candidate turn out to have a majority of the votes, the Senate might choose a president from the five highest candidates on the list. The candidate having the next highest number of votes might be declared vice-president, and preserve the visible continuity of the government in case of the death of the president during his term of office. By these changes the method of electing the president, as finally decided upon, was nearly completed. But Mason, Randolph, Gerry, King, and Wilson, were not satisfied with the provision that the Senate might choose the president in case of a failure of choice on the part of the electoral college: they preferred to give this power to the House of Representatives. It was thought that the Senate would be likely to prove an aristocratic body, somewhat removed from the people in its sympathies, and there was a dread of intrusting to it too many important functions. Mason thought that the sway of an aristocracy would be worse than an absolute monarchy; and if the Senate might every now and then elect the president, there would be a risk that the dignity of his office might degenerate, until he should become a mere creature of the Senate. On the other

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

hand, the small states, in order to have an equal voice with the large ones, in such an emergency as the failure of choice by the electoral college, wished to keep the eventual choice in the hands of the Senate. Among the delegates from the small states, only Langdon and Dickinson at first supported the change, and only New Hampshire voted for it. At length Sherman proposed a compromise, which was carried. It was agreed that the eventual choice should be given to the House of Representatives, and not to the Senate, but that in exercising this function the vote in the House of Representatives should be taken by states. Thus the humours of the delegates from the small states, and of those who dreaded the accumulation of powers into the hands of an oligarchy, were alike gratified. This arrangement was finally adopted by the votes of ten states against Delaware.

But in spite of all the minute and anxious care that was taken in guarding this point, the contingency of an election being thus thrown into the hands of the national legislature was not regarded as likely often to occur. In point of fact, it has hitherto happened only twice in the century, in the elections of 1800 and of 1824. It was recognized that the work would ordinarily be done through the machinery of the electoral college, and that thus the fear of intrigue between the president and Congress,

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

as it had originally been felt by the convention, might be set aside. To make assurance doubly sure, it was provided that "no person shall be appointed an elector who is a member of the legislature of the United States, or who holds any office of profit or trust under the United States." It then appeared that the arguments which had been alleged against the eligibility of the president for a second term had lost their force; and he was accordingly made reëligible, while his term of service was reduced from seven years to four.

The scheme had thus arrived substantially at its present shape, except that the counting of the electoral vote still remained in the hands of the Senate. On the 6th of September this provision was altered, and it was decided that "the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and the House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted." The object of this provision was to take the office of counting away from the Senate alone, and give it to Congress as a whole; and while doing so, to guard against the failure of an election through the disagreement of the two houses. The method of counting was not prescribed, for it was thought that it might safely be left to joint rules established by the two houses of Congress themselves, after analogies supplied by the expe-

How to
count the
votes

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

rience of the several state legislatures. The case of double returns, sent in by rival governments in the same state, was not contemplated by the convention; and thus the door was left open for a danger considerably greater than many of those over which the delegates were agitated. It may safely be said, however, that not even the wildest license of interpretation can find any support for the ridiculous doctrine suggested by some persons blinded by political passion in 1877, that the business of counting the votes and deciding upon the validity of returns belongs to the president of the Senate. No such idea was for a moment entertained by the convention. Any such idea is completely negatived by their action of the 6th of September. The express purpose of the final arrangement made on that day was to admit the House of Representatives to active participation in the office of determining who should have been elected president. It was expressly declared that this work was too important to be left to the Senate alone. What, then, would the convention have said to the preposterous notion that this work might safely be left to the presiding officer of the Senate? The convention were keenly alive to any imaginable grant of authority that might enable the Senate to grow into an oligarchy. What would they have said to the proposal to create a monocrat *ad hoc*, an official permanently

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

endowed by virtue of his office with the function of king-maker ?

In this connection it is worth our while to observe that in no respect has the actual working of the Constitution departed so far from the intentions of its framers as in the case of their provisions concerning the executive. Against a host of possible dangers they guarded most elaborately, but the dangers and inconveniences against which we have actually had to contend they did not foresee. It will be observed that Wilson's proposal for a direct election of the president by the people found little favour in the convention. The schemes that were seriously considered oscillated back and forth between an election by the national legislature and an election by a special college of electors. The electors might be chosen by a popular vote, or by the state legislatures, or in any such wise as each state might see fit to determine for itself. In point of fact, electors were chosen by the legislature in New Jersey till 1816 ; in Connecticut till 1820 ; in New York, Delaware, and Vermont, and with one exception in Georgia, till 1824 ; in South Carolina till 1868. Massachusetts adopted various plans, and did not finally settle down to an election by the people until 1828. Now there were several reasons why the Federal Conven-

The convention foresaw imaginary dangers, but not the real ones

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tion was afraid to trust the choice of the president directly to the people. One was that very old objection, the fear of the machinations of demagogues, since people were supposed to be so easily fooled. As already observed, the democratic sentiment in the convention was such as we should now call weak. Another reason shows vividly how wide the world seemed in those days of slow coaches and mail-bags carried on horseback. It was feared that people would not have sufficient data wherewith to judge of the merits of public men in states remote from their own. The electors, as eminent men exceptionally well informed, might hold little conventions and select the best possible candidates, using in every case their own unfettered judgment.

In this connection the words of Hamilton are worth quoting. In the sixty-eighth number of the "Federalist" he says: "The mode of appointment of the chief magistrate of the United States is almost the only part of the system which has escaped without severe censure, or which has received the slightest mark of approbation from its opponents. The most plausible of these who has appeared in print has even deigned to admit that the election of the president is well guarded. . . . It was desirable that the sense of the people should operate in the choice of the person to whom so

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

important a trust was to be confided. . . . It was equally desirable that the immediate election should be made by men capable of analyzing the qualities adapted to the station, and acting under circumstances favourable to deliberation and to a judicious combination of all the reasons and inducements that were proper to govern their choice. A small number of persons, selected by their fellow citizens from the general mass, will be most likely to possess the information and discernment requisite to so complicated an investigation. . . . It was also peculiarly desirable to afford as little opportunity as possible to tumult and disorder. This evil was not least to be dreaded in the election of a magistrate who was to have so important an agency in the administration of the government."

Such was the theory as set forth by a thinker endowed with rare ability to follow out in imagination the results of any course of political action. It is needless to say that the actual working of the scheme has been very different from what was expected. In our very first great struggle of parties, in 1800, the electors divided upon party lines, with little heed to the "complicated investigation" for which they were supposed to be chosen. Quite naturally, for the work of electing a candidate presupposes a state

Actual
working
of the
electoral
scheme

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of mind very different from that of serene deliberation. In 1800 the electors acted simply as automata recording the victory of their party, and so it has been ever since. In our own time presidents and vice-presidents are nominated, not without elaborate intrigue, by special conventions quite unknown to the Constitution ; the people cast their votes for the two or three pairs of candidates thus presented, and the electoral college simply registers the results. The system is thus fully exposed to all the dangers which our forefathers dreaded from the frequent election of a chief magistrate by the people. Owing to the great good-sense and good-nature of the American people, the system does not work so badly as might be expected. It has, indeed, worked immeasurably better than any one would have ventured to predict. It is nevertheless open to grave objections. It compels a change of administration at stated astronomical periods, whether any change of policy is called for or not ; it stirs up the whole country every fourth year with a furious excitement that is often largely factitious ; and twice within the century, in 1801 and again in 1877, it has brought us to the verge of the most foolish and hopeless species of civil war, in view of that thoroughly monarchical kind of accident, a disputed succession.¹

¹ Since this was written, this last and most serious danger

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

The most curious and instructive point concerning the peculiar executive devised for the United States by the Federal Convention is the fact that the delegates proceeded upon a thoroughly false theory of what they were doing. As already observed, in this part of its discussions the convention had not the clearly outlined chart of local interests to steer by. It indulged in general speculations and looked about for precedents; and there was one precedent which American statesmen then always had before their eyes, whether they were distinctly aware of it or not. In creating an executive department, the members of the convention were really trying to copy the only constitution of which they had any direct experience, and which most of them agreed in thinking the most efficient working constitution in existence, — as indeed it was. They were trying to copy the British Constitution, modifying it to suit their republican ideas; but curiously enough, what they copied in creating the office of president was not the real English executive or prime minister, but the fictitious English executive, the sovereign. And this was associated in their minds with another profound

The convention supposed itself to be copying from the British Constitution

would seem to have been removed by the acts of 1886 and 1887 regulating the presidential succession and the counting of electoral votes.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

misconception, which influenced all this part of their work. They thought that to keep the legislative and executive offices distinct and separate was the very palladium of liberty ; and they all took it for granted, without a moment's question, that the British Constitution did this thing. England, they thought, is governed by King, Lords, and Commons, and the supreme power is nicely divided between the three, so that neither one can get the whole of it, and that is the safeguard of English liberty. So they arranged President, Senate, and Representatives to correspond, and sedulously sought to divide supreme power between the three, so that they might operate as checks upon one another. If either one should ever succeed in acquiring the whole sovereignty, then they thought there would be an end of American liberty.

Now in the earlier part of the work of the Federal Convention, in dealing with the legislative department, the delegates were on firm ground, because they were dealing with things of which they knew something by experience ; but in all this careful separation of the executive power from the legislative they went wide of the mark, because they were following a theory which did not truly describe things as they really existed. And that was because the English Constitution was, and still is, covered up with a thick husk of legal fictions which long ago ceased

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

to have any vitality. Blackstone, the great authority of the eighteenth century, set forth this theory of the division of power between King, Lords, and Commons with clearness and force, and nobody then understood English history minutely or thoroughly enough to see its fallaciousness. Montesquieu also, the ablest and most elegant political writer of the age, with whose works most of the statesmen in the Federal Convention were familiar, gave a similar description of the English Constitution, and generalized from it as the ideal constitution for a free people. But Montesquieu and Blackstone, in their treatment of this point, had their eyes upon the legal fictions, and were blind to the real machinery which was working under them. They gave elegant expression to what the late Mr. Bagehot called the "literary theory" of the English Constitution. But the real thing differed essentially from the "literary theory" even in their day. In our own time the divergence has become so conspicuous that it would not now be possible for well-informed writers to make the mistake of Montesquieu and Blackstone. In our time it has come to be perfectly obvious that so far from the English Constitution separating the executive power from the legislative, this is precisely what it does not do. In Great Britain the supreme power is all lodged in a single body,

Influence of
Montesquieu
and Black-
stone

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the House of Commons. The sovereign has come to be purely a legal fiction, and the House of Lords maintains itself only by submitting to the Commons. The House of Commons is absolutely supreme, and, as we shall presently see, it really both appoints and dismisses the executive. The English executive, or chief magistrate, is ordinarily the first lord of the treasury, and is commonly styled the prime minister. He is chairman of the most important committee of the House of Commons, and his cabinet consists of the chairmen of other committees.

To make this perfectly clear, let us see what our machinery of government would be if it were really like the English. The presence or absence of the crowned head makes no essential difference; it is only a kind of ornamental cupola. Suppose for a moment the presidency abolished, or reduced to the political nullity of the crown in England; and postpone for a moment the consideration of the Senate. Suppose that in our House of Representatives the committee of ways and means had two chairmen,—an upper chairman who looks after all sorts of business, and a lower chairman who attends especially to the finances. This upper chairman, we will say, corresponds to the first lord of the treasury, while the lower one corre-

What our
government
would be if it
were really
like that of
Great Britain

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

sponds to the chancellor of the exchequer. Sometimes, when the upper chairman is a great financier, and capable of enormous labour, he will fill both places at once, as Mr. Gladstone was lately first lord of the treasury and chancellor of the exchequer. The chairman of the other committees on foreign, military, and naval affairs will answer to the English secretaries of state for foreign affairs and for war, the first lord of the admiralty, and so on. This group of chairmen, headed by the upper chairman of the ways and means, will then answer to the English cabinet, with its prime minister. To complete the parallel, let us suppose that, after a new House of Representatives is elected, it chooses this prime minister, and he appoints the other chairmen who are to make up his cabinet. Suppose, too, that he initiates all legislation, and executes all laws, and stays in office three weeks or thirty years, or as long as he can get a majority of the house to vote for his measures. If he loses his majority, he can either resign, or dissolve the house and order a new election, thus appealing directly to the people. If the new house gives him a majority, he stays in office; if it shows a majority against him, he steps down into the house, and becomes, perhaps, the leader of the opposition.

Now if this were the form of our government, it would correspond in all essential fea-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tures to that of England. The likeness is liable to be obscured by the fact that in England it is the queen who is supposed to appoint the prime minister; but that is simply a part of the antiquated "literary theory" of the English Constitution. In reality the queen only acts as mistress of the ceremonies. Whatever she may wish, the prime minister must be the man who can command the best working majority in the house. This is not only tested by the first vote that is taken, but it is almost invariably known beforehand so well that if the queen offers the place to the wrong man he refuses to take it. Should he be so foolish as to take it, he is sure to be overthrown at the first test vote, and then the right man comes in. Thus in 1880 the queen's manifest preference for Lord Granville or Lord Hartington made no sort of difference. Mr. Gladstone was as much chosen by the House of Commons as if the members had sat in their seats and balloted for him. If the crown were to be abolished tomorrow, and the house were henceforth, on the resignation of a prime minister, to elect a new one to serve as long as he could command a majority, it would not be doing essentially otherwise than it does now. The house then dismisses its minister when it rejects one of his important measures. But while thus appointed and dismissed by the house, he is in no wise

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

its slave; for by the power of dissolution he has the right to appeal to the country, and let the general election decide the issue. The obvious advantages of this system are that it makes anything like a deadlock between the legislature and the executive impossible; and it insures a concentration of responsibility. The prime minister's bills cannot be disregarded, like the president's messages; and thus, too, the house is kept in hand, and cannot degenerate into a debating club.¹

A system so delicate and subtle, yet so strong and efficient, as this could no more have been invented by the wisest of statesmen than a chemist could make albumen by taking its elements and mixing them together. In its practical working it is a much simpler system than ours, and still its principal features are not such as would be likely to occur to men who had not had some actual experience of them.

It is the peculiar outgrowth of English history. As we can now see, its chief characteristic is its not separating the executive power from the legislative. As a member of Parliament, the prime

In the British government, the executive department is not separated from the legislative

¹ The history of President Cleveland's tariff message of 1887, however, shows that, where a wise and courageous president calls attention to a living issue, his party, alike in Congress and in the country, is in a measure compelled to follow his lead.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

minister introduces the legislation which he is himself expected to carry into effect. Nor does the English system even keep the judiciary entirely separate, for the lord chancellor not only presides over the House of Lords, but sits in the cabinet as the prime minister's legal adviser. It is somewhat as if the chief justice of the United States were *ex officio* president of the Senate and attorney-general; though here the resemblance is somewhat superficial. Our Senate, although it does not represent landed aristocracy or the church, but the federal character of our government, has still a superficial resemblance to the House of Lords. It passes on all bills that come up from the lower house, and can originate bills on most matters, but not for raising revenue. Its function as a high court of impeachment, with the chief justice for its presiding officer, was directly copied from the House of Lords. But here the resemblance ends. The House of Lords has no such veto upon the House of Commons as our Senate has upon the House of Representatives. Between our upper and lower houses a serious deadlock is possible; but the House of Lords can only reject a bill until it sees that the House of Commons is determined to have it carried. It can only enter a protest. If it is obstinate and tries to do more, the House of Commons, through its prime minister, can create enough

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

new peers to change the vote, — a power so formidable in its effects upon the social position of the peerage that it does not need to be used. The knowledge that it exists is usually enough to bring the House of Lords to terms.¹

These features of the English Constitution are so prominent since the reform of Parliament in 1832 as to be generally recognized. They have been gradually becoming its essential features ever since the Revolution of 1688. Before that time the crown had really been the executive, and there had really been a separation between the executive and legislative branches of the government, which on several occasions, and notably in the middle of the seventeenth century, had led to armed strife. What the Revolution of 1688 really decided was that henceforth in England the executive was to be the mighty arm of the legislature, and not a separate and rival power. It ended whatever of reality there was in the old system of King, Lords, and Commons, and by the time of Sir Robert Walpole the system of cabinet government had become fairly established; but

Circum-
stances
which ob-
scured the
true aspect
of the case a
century ago

¹ Where, however, the majority in the House of Lords is so great as to approach unanimity, as in opposition to Home Rule for Ireland, it does operate as a check upon the House of Commons, because the cure mentioned in the text would be too violent.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

men still continued to use the phrases and formulas bequeathed from former ages, so that the meaning of the changes going on under their very eyes was obscured. There was also a great historical incident, after Walpole's time, which served further to obscure the meaning of these changes, especially to Americans. From 1760 to 1784, by means of the rotten borough system of elections and the peculiar attitude of political parties, the king contrived to make his will felt in the House of Commons to such an extent that it became possible to speak of the personal government of George III. The work of the Revolution of 1688 was not really completed till the election of 1784, which made Pitt the ruler of England, and its fruits cannot be said to have been fully secured till 1832. Now as our Revolutionary War was brought on by the attempts of George III. to establish his personal government, and as it was actually he rather than Lord North who ruled England during that war, it was not strange that Americans, even of the highest education, should have failed to discover the transformation which the past century had wrought in the framework of the English government. Nay, more, during this century the king had seemed even more of a real institution to the Americans than to the British. He had seemed to them the only link which bound the different parts of the empire

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

together. Throughout the struggles which culminated in the War of Independence, it had been the favourite American theory that while the colonial assemblies and the British Parliament were sovereign each in its own sphere, all alike owed allegiance to the king as visible head of the empire. To people who had been in the habit of setting forth and defending such a theory, it was impossible that the crown should seem so much a legal fiction as it had really come to be in England. It is very instructive to note that while the members of the Federal Convention thoroughly understood the antiquated theory of the English Constitution as set forth by Blackstone, they drew very few illustrations from the modern working of Parliament, with which they had not had sufficient opportunities of becoming familiar. In particular they seemed quite unconscious of the vast significance of a dissolution of Parliament, although a dissolution had occurred only three years before under such circumstances as to work a revolution in British politics without a breath of disturbance. The only sort of dissolution with which they were familiar was that in which Dunmore or Bernard used to send the colonial assemblies home about their business whenever they grew too refractory. Had the significance of a dissolution, in the British sense, been understood by the convention, the pregnant sugges-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

tion of Roger Sherman, above mentioned, could not have failed to give a different turn to the whole series of debates on the executive branch of the government. Had our Constitution been framed a few years later, this point would have had a better chance of being understood. As it was, in trying to modify the English system so as to adapt it to our own uses, it was the archaic monarchical feature, and not the modern ministerial feature, upon which we seized. The president, in our system, irremovable by the national legislature, does not answer to the modern prime minister, but to the old-fashioned king, with powers for mischief curtailed by election for short terms.

Among the ancient royal powers wielded by the American president, perhaps the most important is his limited power of veto. An act passed by the two houses of Congress is not in force until he has signed it, or else has allowed ten days to elapse without expressing his disapproval of it. If he refuse to sign a bill, it requires a two thirds majority in both houses to pass it over his refusal. This gives the president a very considerable check upon the national legislature. The English sovereign once possessed a veto power without such specific limitations, but has long since practically lost it altogether. The last use of it was in 1707, when Queen Anne vetoed a Scotch militia bill.

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

George III. regarded the veto power as one of his prerogatives, but he never ventured so far as to exercise it. In our time Mr. Bagehot writes that the queen must sign her own death-warrant if the two houses agree in sending it up to her.¹ The American constitution is in this respect essentially less democratic and more monarchical than the British.

The independence of the executive magistrate, and his prerogative of veto, are a fundamental part of the American system of government. The position of the state governors is in these respects analogous to that of the president. Probably this system is better adapted to the needs of our country than the more democratic British system. One of the most serious of the dangers which beset democratic government, especially where it is conducted on a great scale, is the danger that the majority for the time being will use its power tyrannically and unscrupulously, as it is always tempted to do. Against such unbridled democracy we have striven to guard ourselves by various constitutional checks and balances. Our written constitutions and our supreme courts are important safeguards, and another great safeguard is the independence of our executives. But if our executive departments were mere committees of

¹ Bagehot, *The English Constitution*, p. 122 ; Taswell-Langmead, *English Constitutional History*, p. 706.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the legislature, like the English Cabinet, this independence could not be maintained; and the loss of it would probably entail upon us greater evils than those which now flow from want of leadership in our legislatures.¹

In contrasting presidential with cabinet government, Mr. Bagehot has instructively pointed to the evils attending the long antagonism between President Johnson and Congress. If Johnson's position had been like that of an English prime minister, he would have had to resign at the beginning of the struggle. As it was, his irremovableness goaded Congress to such desperation that it tried to make a very questionable use of the process of impeachment. This example seems to show the superiority of the English system.

A contrary inference, however, is suggested by the autumn elections of 1862. There was a notable diminution of the Republican vote, though not enough to give the Democrats a majority in Congress. Supposing the Democrats to have gained a majority, if Mr. Lincoln had been Prime Minister instead of President, it would have been necessary for him to re-

¹ In two admirable essays on "Cabinet Responsibility and the Constitution," and "Democracy and the Constitution," Mr. Lawrence Lowell has shown the merits of the American system. Lowell, *Essays on Government*, Boston, 1890, pp. 20-117.

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

sign. In that critical moment of a great war, the bare possibility of a sudden change of leaders and policy would have been an evil, and the irremovableness of the executive was an element of strength on the side of the government.

The phenomena with which history deals are so complicated that one can seldom arrive at positive conclusions by citing real or hypothetical examples. But there is one respect in which daily experience is teaching Americans to set a high value upon the independence of the executive. That independence, I repeat, is needed as a check upon the irresponsible tyranny of the legislature. Two centuries ago the legislature was needed as a check upon the monarch. To-day the tyranny which we have chiefly to dread, and under which we chiefly suffer, is the tyranny of Demos, "the many-headed king," — and when we are choosing a president or a governor one of the most important questions we can ask is whether the candidate is clear-headed enough and bold enough to protect us from the knavery and folly of our representatives. Such are the vicissitudes of peril through which society must pass on its way toward that liberty of which eternal vigilance is the price!

The close parallelism between the office of president and that of king in the minds of the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

framers of the Constitution was instructively shown in the debates on the advisableness of restraining the president's action by a privy council. Gerry and Sherman urged that there was need of such a council, in order to keep

The American cabinet is analogous not to the British cabinet, but to the privy council

watch over the president. It was suggested that the privy council should consist of "the president of the Senate, the speaker of the House of Representatives, the chief justice of the supreme court, and the principal officer in each of five departments as they shall from time to time be established; their duty shall be to advise him in matters which he shall lay before them, but their advice shall not conclude him, or affect his responsibility." The plan for such a council found favour with Franklin, Madison, Wilson, Dickinson, and Mason, but did not satisfy the convention. When it was voted down Mason used strong language. "In rejecting a council to the president," said he, "we are about to try an experiment on which the most despotic government has never ventured; the Grand Seignior himself has his Divan." It was this failure to provide a council which led the convention to give to the Senate a share in some of the executive functions of the president, such as the making of treaties, the appointment of ambassadors, consuls, judges of the supreme court, and other officers of the

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

United States whose appointment was not otherwise provided for. As it was objected to the office of vice-president that he seemed to have nothing provided for him to do, he was disposed of by making him president of the Senate. No cabinet was created by the Constitution, but since then the heads of various executive departments, appointed by the president, have come to constitute what is called his cabinet. Since, however, the members of it do not belong to Congress, and can neither initiate nor guide legislation, they really constitute a privy council rather than a cabinet in the modern sense, thus furnishing another illustration of the analogy between the president and the archaic sovereign.

Concerning the structure of the federal judiciary little need be said here. It was framed with very little disagreement among the delegates. The work was chiefly done ^{The federal judiciary} in committee by Ellsworth, Wilson, Randolph, and Rutledge, and the result did not differ essentially from the scheme laid down in the Virginia plan. It was indeed the indispensable completion of the work which was begun by the creation of a national House of Representatives. To make a federal government immediately operative upon individual citizens, it must of course be armed with federal courts to try and federal officers to execute judgment in all cases

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

in which individual citizens were amenable to the national law. But for this system of United States courts extended throughout the states and supreme within its own sphere, the federal constitution could never have been put into practical working order. In another respect the federal judiciary was the most remarkable and original of all the creations of that wonderful convention. It was charged with the duty of interpreting, in accordance with the general principles of common law, the Federal Constitution itself. This is the most noble as it is the most distinctive feature in the government of the United States. It constitutes a difference between the American and British systems more fundamental than the separation of the executive from the legislative department. In Great Britain the unwritten constitution is administered by the omnipotent House of Commons; whatever statute is enacted by Parliament must stand until some future Parliament may see fit to repeal it. But an act passed by both houses of Congress, and signed by the president, may still be set aside as unconstitutional by the supreme court of the United States in its judgments upon individual cases brought before it. It was thus that the practical working of our Federal Constitution during the first thirty years of the nineteenth century was swayed to so great an extent by the profound

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

and luminous decisions of Chief Justice Marshall, that he must be assigned a foremost place among the founders of our Federal Union. This intrusting to the judiciary the whole interpretation of the fundamental instrument of government is the most peculiarly American feature of the work done by the convention, and to the stability of such a federation as ours, covering as it does the greater part of a huge continent, it was absolutely indispensable.

Thus, at length, was realized the sublime conception of a nation in which every citizen lives under two complete and well-rounded systems of laws, — the state law and the federal law, — each with its legislature, its executive, and its judiciary moving one within the other, noiselessly and without friction. It was one of the longest reaches of constructive statesmanship ever known in the world. There never was anything quite like it before, and in Europe it needs much explanation to-day even for educated statesmen who have never actually beheld its workings. Yet to Americans it has become so much a matter of course that they, too, sometimes need to be told how much it signifies. In 1787 it was the substitution of law for violence between states that were partly sovereign. In some future still grander convention we trust the same thing will be done between states that have been wholly sovereign,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

whereby peace may gain and violence be diminished over other lands than this which has set the example.

Great as was the work which the Federal Convention had now accomplished, none of the members supposed it to be complete. After some discussion, it was decided that Congress might at any time, by a two thirds vote in both houses, propose amendments to the Constitution, or on the application of the legislature of two thirds of the states might call a convention for proposing amendments; and such amendments should become part of the constitution as soon as ratified by three fourths of the states, either through their legislatures or through special conventions summoned for the purpose. The design of this elaborate arrangement was to guard against hasty or ill-considered changes in the fundamental instrument of government — and its effectiveness has been such that an amendment has come to be impossible save as the result of intense conviction on the part of a vast majority of the whole American people.

Finally it was decided that the Federal Constitution, as now completed, should be presented to the Continental Congress, and then referred to special conventions in all the states for ratification; and that when nine states, or two thirds of the whole number, should have rati-

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

fied, it should at once go into operation as between such ratifying states.

When the great document was at last drafted by Gouverneur Morris, and was all ready for the signatures, the aged Franklin produced a paper, which was read for him, as his voice was weak. Some parts of this Constitution, he said, he did not approve, but he was astonished to find it so nearly perfect. Whatever opinion he had of its errors he would sacrifice to the public good, and he hoped that every member of the convention who still had objections would on this occasion doubt a little of his own infallibility, and for the sake of unanimity put his name to this instrument. Hamilton added his plea. A few members, he said, by refusing to sign, might do infinite mischief. No man's ideas could be more remote from the plan than his were known to be; but was it possible for a true patriot to deliberate between anarchy and convulsion on the one side, and the chance of good to be expected from this plan on the other? From these appeals, as well as from Washington's solemn warning at the outset, we see how distinctly it was realized that the country was on the verge of civil war. Most of the members felt so, but to some the new government seemed far too strong, and there were three who dreaded despotism even more than anarchy. Mason, Randolph, and

Signing the
Constitution

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Gerry refused to sign, though Randolph sought to qualify his refusal by explaining that he could not yet make up his mind whether to oppose or defend the Constitution, when it should be laid before the people of Virginia. He wished to reserve to himself full liberty of action in the matter. That Mason and Gerry, valuable as their services had been in the making of the Constitution, would now go home and vigorously oppose it, there was no doubt. Of the delegates who were present on the last day of the convention, all but these three signed the Constitution. In the signatures the twelve states which had taken part in the work were all represented, Hamilton signing alone for New York.

Thus after four months of anxious toil, through the whole of a scorching Philadelphia summer, after earnest but sometimes bitter discussion, in which more than once the meeting had seemed on the point of breaking up, a colossal work had at last been accomplished, the results of which were powerfully to affect the whole future career of the human race. In spite of the high-wrought intensity of feeling which had been now and then displayed, grave decorum had ruled the proceedings; and now, though few were really satisfied, the approach to acquiescent unanimity was remarkable. When

Article

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shew

so ratifying the Same.

The Word "the," being interlined between the seventh and eighth Lines of the first Page, the Word "Thirty" being partly written in an Erasure in the fifteenth Line of the first Page, The word "is" being interlined between the thirty second and thirty third Lines of the first Page and the Word "the" being interlined between the forty third and forty fourth Lines of the second Page.

Done in Co
City of September
of the Independence
We have hereunto

Attest William Jackson Secretary

Delaware

Maryland

Virginia

North Carolina

South Carolina

Georgia

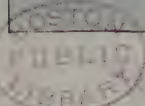
John Adams

John Jay

John Hancock

Charles C. Pinckney

William M. Smith



Article VII.

The Ratification of the Conventions of nine States, shall be sufficient for the Establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the Same.

The Word "the" being interlined below in the seventh and eighth Lines of the first Page, the Word "Party" being partly written in an Oblique in the fifteenth Line of the first Page, the words "is" and "being" interlined between the thirty second and thirty third Lines of the first Page and the Word "the" being interlined between the forty third and forty fourth Lines of the second Page.

Attest William Jackson Secretary

Done in Convention by the Unanimous Consent of the States present the seventeenth Day of September in the Year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty seven and of the Independence of the United States of America the Twelfth In witness whereof We have hereunto subscribed our Names.

Delaware	<p>Geo. Read James M. Dickinson Richard B. Pett John Broome James M. Wilson</p>	New Hampshire	<p>John Langdon Nicholas Gilman</p>
Maryland	<p>John F. Mercer John Carroll John Blair James M. Wilson</p>	Massachusetts	<p>Nathaniel Gorham Rufus King Wm. Saml. Johnson</p>
Virginia	<p>John F. Mercer John Carroll John Blair James M. Wilson</p>	Connecticut	<p>Roger Sherman Alexander Hamilton</p>
North Carolina	<p>Wm. Blount Richd. B. Spaight Wm. Williamson J. R. Hodge</p>	New York	<p>Wm. Livingston David Brearley Wm. Paterson Jona. Dayton</p>
South Carolina	<p>Charles Pinckney Charles Pinckney Pinckney B. St. John</p>	New Jersey	<p>David Brearley Wm. Paterson Jona. Dayton</p>
Georgia	<p>William Few Abraham Baldwin</p>	Pennsylvania	<p>John F. Mercer John Carroll John Blair James M. Wilson</p>

THE FEDERAL CONVENTION

all was over, it is said that many of the members seemed awestruck. Washington sat with head bowed in solemn meditation. The scene was ended by a characteristic bit of homely pleasantry from Franklin. Thirty-three years ago, in the days of George II., before the first mutterings of the Revolution had been heard, and when the French dominion in America was still untouched, before the banishment of the Acadians or the rout of Braddock, while Washington was still surveying lands in the wilderness, while Madison was playing in the nursery and Hamilton was not yet born, Franklin had endeavoured to bring together the thirteen colonies in a federal union. Of the famous Albany plan of 1754, the first complete outline of a federal constitution for America that ever was made, he was the principal if not the sole author. When he signed his name to the Declaration of Independence in this very room, his years had rounded the full period of threescore and ten. Eleven years more had passed, and he had been spared to see the noble aim of his life accomplished. There was still, no doubt, a chance of failure, but hope now reigned in the old man's breast. On the back of the president's quaint black armchair there was emblazoned a half-sun, brilliant with its gilded rays. As the meeting was breaking up and Washington

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

arose, Franklin pointed to the chair, and made it the text for prophecy. "As I have been sitting here all these weeks," said he, "I have often wondered whether yonder sun is rising or setting. But now I know that it is a rising sun !"

VII

CROWNING THE WORK

IT was on the 17th of September, 1787, that the Federal Convention broke up. For most of the delegates there was a long and tedious journey home before they could meet their fellow citizens and explain what had been done at Philadelphia during this anxious summer. Not so, however, with Benjamin Franklin and the Pennsylvania delegation. At eleven o'clock on the next morning, radiant with delight at seeing one of the most cherished purposes of his life so nearly accomplished, the venerable philosopher, attended by his seven colleagues, presented to the legislature of Pennsylvania a copy of the Federal Constitution, and in a brief but pithy speech, characterized by his usual homely wisdom, begged for it their favourable consideration. His words fell upon willing ears, for nowhere was the disgust at the prevailing anarchy greater than in Philadelphia. But still it was not quite in order for the assembly to act upon the matter until word should come from the Continental Congress. Since its ignominious flight to Princeton, four years ago,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

that migratory body had not honoured Philadelphia with its presence. It had once flitted as far south as Annapolis, but at length had chosen for its abiding-place the city of New

The new
Constitution
is laid before
Congress and
submitted
forthwith to
the several
states for
ratification

York, where it was now in session. To Congress the new Constitution must be submitted before it was in order for the several states to take action upon it. On the 20th of September the draft of the Constitution was laid before Congress, accompanied by a letter from Washington. The forces of the opposition were promptly mustered. At their head was Richard Henry Lee, who eleven years ago had moved in Congress the Declaration of Independence. He was ably supported by Nathan Dane of Massachusetts, and the delegation from New York were unanimous in their determination to obstruct any movement toward a closer union of the states. Their tactics were vigorous, but the majority in Congress were against them, especially after the return of Madison from Philadelphia. Madison, aided by Edward Carrington and young Henry Lee, the famous leader of light horse, succeeded in every division in carrying the vote of Virginia in favour of the Constitution and against the obstructive measures of the elder Lee. The objection was first raised that the new Constitution would put an end to the Continental Congress,

CROWNING THE WORK

and that in recommending it to the states for consideration Congress would be virtually asking them to terminate its own existence. Was it right or proper for Congress thus to have a hand in signing its own death-warrant? But this flimsy argument was quickly overturned. Seven months before Congress had recognized the necessity for calling the convention together; whatever need for its work existed then, there was the same need now; and by refusing to take due cognizance of it Congress would simply stultify itself. The opposition then tried to clog the measure by proposing amendments, but they were outgeneralled, and after eight days' discussion it was voted that the new Constitution, together with Washington's letter, "be transmitted to the several legislatures, in order to be submitted to a convention of delegates in each state by the people thereof, in conformity to the resolves of the convention."

The submission of the Constitution to the people of the states was the signal for the first formation of political parties on a truly national issue. During the war there had indeed been Whigs and Tories, but their strife had not been like the ordinary strife of political parties; it was actual warfare. Irredeemably discredited from the outset, the Tories had been overriden and outlawed from one end of the Union to the other. They had never been able to hold

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

up their heads as a party in opposition. Since the close of the war there had been local parties in the various states, divided on issues of hard and soft money, or the impost, or state rights, and these issues had coincided in many of the states. During the autumn of 1787 all these elements were segregated into two great political parties, whose character and views are sufficiently described by their names. Those who supported the new Constitution were henceforth known as Federalists ; those who were opposed to strengthening the bond between the states were called Antifederalists. It was fit that their name should have this merely negative significance, for their policy at this time was purely a policy of negation and obstruction. Care must be taken not to confound them with the Democratic-Republicans, or strict constructionists, who appear in opposition to the Federalists soon after the adoption of the Constitution. The earlier short-lived party furnished a great part of its material to the later one, but the attitude of the strict constructionists under the Constitution was very different from that of the Antifederalists. Madison, the second Republican president, was now the most energetic of Federalists ; and Jefferson, soon to become the founder of the Democratic-Republican party, wrote from Paris, saying, " The Constitution is

First American parties,
Federalists
and Anti-federalists

CROWNING THE WORK

a good canvas, on which some strokes only want retouching." He found the same fault with it that was found by many of the ablest and most patriotic men in the country, — that it failed to include a bill of rights ; but at the same time he declared that while he was not of the party of Federalists, he was much further from that of the Antifederalists. The Federal Convention he characterized as "an assembly of demi-gods."

The first contest over the new Constitution came in Pennsylvania. The Federalists in that state were numerous, but their opponents had one point in their favour which they did not fail to make the most of. The constitution of Pennsylvania was peculiar. Its legislature consisted of a single house, and its president was chosen by that house. Therefore, said the Antifederalists, if we approve of a federal constitution which provides for a legislature of two houses and chooses a president by the device of an electoral college, we virtually condemn the state constitution under which we live. This cry was raised with no little effect. But some of the strongest immediate causes of opposition to the new Constitution were wanting in Pennsylvania. The friends of paper money were few there, and the objections to the control of the central government over commerce were weaker than in many of

The contest
in Pennsylv-
vania

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the other states. The Antifederalists were strongest in the mountain district west of the Susquehanna, where the somewhat lawless population looked askance at any plan that savoured of a stronger government and a more regular collection of revenue. In the eastern counties, and especially in Philadelphia, the Federalists could count upon a heavy majority.

The contest began in the legislature on the 28th of September, the very day on which Congress decided to submit the Constitution to the states, and before the news of the action had reached Philadelphia. The zeal of the Federalists was so intense that they could wait no longer, and they hurried the event with a high-handed vigour that was not altogether seemly. The assembly was on the eve of breaking up, and a new election was to be held on the first Tuesday of November. The Antifederalists hoped to make a stirring campaign, and secure such a majority in the new legislature as to prevent the Constitution from being laid before the people. But their game was frustrated by George Clymer, who had sat in the Federal Convention, and now most unexpectedly moved that a state convention be called to consider the proposed form of government. Great was the wrath of the Antifederalists. Mr. Clymer was quite out of order, they said. Congress had not yet sent them the Constitution; and besides,

CROWNING THE WORK

no such motion could be made without notice given beforehand, nor could it be voted on till it had passed three readings. Parliamentary usage was doubtless on the side of the Anti-federalists, but the majority were clamorous, and overwhelmed them with cries of "Question, question!" The question was then put, and carried by forty-three votes against nineteen, and the house adjourned till four o'clock. Before going to their dinners the nineteen held an indignation meeting, at which it was decided that they would foil these outrageous proceedings by staying away. It took forty-seven to make a quorum, and without these malcontents the assembly numbered but forty-five. When the house was called to order after dinner, it was found there were but forty-five members present. The sergeant-at-arms was sent to summon the delinquents, but they defied him, and so it became necessary to adjourn till next morning. It was now the turn of the Federalists to uncork the vials of wrath. The affair was discussed in the taverns till after midnight, the nineteen were abused without stint, and soon after breakfast, next morning, two of them were visited by a crowd of men, who broke into their lodgings and dragged them off to the state house, where they were forcibly held down in their seats, growling and muttering curses. This made a quorum,

How to
make a
quorum

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

and a state convention was immediately appointed for the 20th of November. Before these proceedings were concluded, an express rider brought the news from New York that Congress had submitted the Constitution to the judgment of the states.

And now there ensued such a war of pamphlets, broadsides, caricatures, squibs, and stump speeches as had never been seen in America. Cato and Aristides, Cincinnatus and Plain Truth, were out in full force. What was the matter with the old Confederation? asked the Anti-federalists. Had it not conducted a glorious and triumphant war? Had it not set us free from the oppression of England? That there was some trouble now in the country could not be denied, but all would be right if people would only curb their extravagance, wear homespun clothes, and obey the laws. There was government enough in the country already. This Philadelphia convention ought to be distrusted. Some of its members, such as John Dickinson and Robert Morris, had opposed the Declaration of Independence. Pretty men these, to be offering us a new government! You might be sure there was a British cloven foot in it somewhere. Their convention had sat four months with closed doors, as if they were afraid to let people know what they were about. Nobody could tell what secret conspiracies against Ameri-

CROWNING THE WORK

can liberty might not have been hatched in all that time. One thing was sure : the convention had squabbled. Some members had gone home in a huff; others had refused to sign a document fraught with untold evils to the country. And now came James Wilson, making speeches in behalf of this precious Constitution, and trying to pull the wool over people's eyes and persuade them to adopt it. Who was James Wilson, anyway? A Scotchman, a countryman of Lord Bute, a born aristocrat, a snob, a patrician, Jimmy, James de Caledonia. Beware of any form of government defended by such a man. And as to the other members of the convention, there was Roger Sherman, who had signed the articles of confederation, and was now trying to undo his own work. What confidence could be placed in a man who did not know his own mind any better than that? Then there were Hamilton and Madison, mere boys; and Franklin, an old dotard, a man in his second childhood. And as to Washington, he was doubtless a good soldier, but what did he know about politics? So said the more moderate of the malcontents, hesitating for the moment to speak disrespectfully of such a man; but presently their zeal got the better of them, and in a paper signed "Centinel" it was boldly declared that Washington was a born fool!

From the style and temper of these argu-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ments one clearly sees that the Antifederalists in Pennsylvania felt from the beginning that the day was going against them. Sixteen of the men who had seceded from the assembly, headed by Robert Whitehill of Carlisle, issued a manifesto setting forth the ill-treatment they had received, and sounding an alarm against the dangers of tyranny to which the new Constitution was already exposing them. They were assisted by Richard Henry Lee, who published a series of papers entitled "Letters from the Federal Farmer," and scattered thousands of copies through the state of Pennsylvania. He did not deny that the government needed reforming, but in the proposed plan he saw the seeds of aristocracy and of centralization. The chief objections to the Constitution were that it created a national legislature in which the vote was to be by individuals, and not by states; that it granted to this body an unlimited power of taxation; that it gave too much power to the federal judiciary; that it provided for paying the salaries of members of Congress out of the federal treasury, and would thus make them independent of their own states; that it required an oath of allegiance to the federal government; and finally, that it did not include a bill of rights. These objections were very elaborately set forth by the leading Antifederalists in the state convention; but the logic and eloquence of James

CROWNING THE WORK

Wilson bore down all opposition. The Anti-federalists resorted to filibustering. Five days, it is said, were used up in settling the meanings of the two words "annihilation" and "consolidation." In this way the convention was kept sitting for nearly three weeks, when news came from "the Delaware state," as it used then to be called in Pennsylvania. The concession of an equal representation in the federal Senate had removed the only ground of opposition in Delaware, and the Federalists had everything their own way there.

In a convention assembled at Dover, on the 6th of December, the Constitution was ratified without a single dissenting voice. Thus did this little state lead the way in the good work. The news was received with exultation by the Federalists at Philadelphia, and on the 12th Pennsylvania ratified the Constitution by a two thirds vote of 46 to 23. The next day all business was quite at a standstill, while the town gave itself up to processions and merrymaking. The convention of New Jersey had assembled at Trenton on the 11th, and one week later, on the 18th, it ratified the Constitution unanimously.

A most auspicious beginning had thus been made. Three states, one third of the whole number required, had ratified almost at the same moment. Two of these, moreover, were small

Delaware
ratifies the
Constitution,
Dec. 6,
1787;
Pennsylvania,
Dec. 12;
New Jersey,
Dec. 18

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

states, which at the beginning of the Federal Convention had been obstinately opposed to any fundamental change in the government. It was just here that the Federalists were now strongest. The Connecticut compromise had wrought with telling effect, not only in the convention, but upon the people of the states. When the news from Trenton was received in Pennsylvania, there was great rejoicing in the eastern counties, while beyond the Susquehanna there were threats of armed rebellion. On the day after Christmas, as the Federalists of Carlisle were about to light a bonfire on the common and fire a salute, they were driven off the field by a mob armed with bludgeons, their rickety old cannon was spiked, and an almanac for the new year, containing a copy of the Constitution, was duly cursed, and then burned. Next day the Federalists, armed with muskets, came back, and went through their ceremonies. Their opponents did not venture to molest them; but after they had dispersed, an Antifederalist demonstration was made, and effigies of James Wilson and Thomas McKean, another prominent Federalist, were dragged to the common, and there burned at the stake.

The action of Delaware and New Jersey had shown that the Antifederalists could not build any hopes upon the antagonism between large and small states. It was thought, however, that

CROWNING THE WORK

the southern states would unite in opposing the Constitution from their dread of becoming commercially subjected to New England. But the compromise on the slave-trade had broken through this opposition. On the 2d of January, 1788, the Constitution was ratified in Georgia without a word of dissent. One week later Connecticut ratified by a vote of 128 to 40, after a session of only five days.

Georgia ratifies, Jan. 2, 1788; Connecticut, Jan. 9

The hopes of the Antifederalists now rested upon Massachusetts, where the state convention assembled on the 9th of January, the same day on which that of Connecticut broke up. Should Massachusetts refuse to ratify, there would be no hope for the Constitution. Even should nine states adopt it without her, no one supposed a Federal Union feasible from which so great a state should be excluded. Her action, too, would have a marked effect upon other states. It could not be denied that the outlook in Massachusetts was far from encouraging. The embers of the Shays rebellion still smouldered there, and in the mountain counties of Worcester and Berkshire were heard loud murmurs of discontent. Laws impairing the obligation of contracts were just what these hard-pressed farmers desired, and by the proposed Constitution all such laws were forever prohibited. The people of

The outlook in Massachusetts

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

the district of Maine, which had formed part of Massachusetts for nearly a century, were anxious to set up an independent government for themselves; and they feared that if they were to enter into the new and closer Federal Union as part of that state, they might hereafter find it impossible to detach themselves. For this reason half of the Maine delegates were opposed to the Constitution. In none of the thirteen states, moreover, was there a more intense devotion to state rights than in Massachusetts. Nowhere had local self-government reached a higher degree of efficiency; nowhere had the town meeting flourished with such vigour. It was especially characteristic of men trained in the town meeting to look with suspicion upon all delegated power, upon all authority that was to be exercised from a distance. They believed it to be all important that people should manage their own affairs, instead of having them managed by other people; and so far had this principle been carried that the towns of Massachusetts were like little semi-independent republics, and the state was like a league of such republics, whose representatives, sitting in the state legislature, were like delegates strictly bound by instructions rather than untrammelled members of a deliberative body. To men trained in such a school, it would naturally seem that the new Constitution delegated altogether too

CROWNING THE WORK

much power to a governing body which must necessarily be remote from most of its constituents. It was feared that some sort of tyranny might grow out of this, and such fears were entertained by men who were not in the slightest degree infected with Shaysism, as the political disease of the inland counties was then called. Such fears were entertained by one of the greatest citizens that Massachusetts has ever produced, the man who has been well described as preëminently "the man of the town meeting," — Samuel Adams. The limitations of this great man, as well as his powers, were those which belonged to him as chief among the men of English race who have swayed society through the medium of the ancient folk mote. At this time he was believed by many to be hostile to the new Constitution, and his influence in Massachusetts was still greater than that of any other man. Besides this, it was thought that the governor, John Hancock, was half-hearted in his support of the Constitution, and it was in everybody's mouth that Elbridge Gerry had refused to set his name to that document because he felt sure it would create a tyranny.

Such symptoms encouraged the Antifederalists in the hope that Massachusetts would reject the Constitution and ruin the plans of the "visionary young men" — as Richard Henry Lee called them — who had swayed the Federal

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Convention. But there were strong forces at work in the opposite direction. In Boston and all the large coast towns, even those of the Maine district, the dominant feeling was Federalist. All well-to-do people had been alarmed by the Shays insurrection, and merchants, shipwrights, and artisans of every sort were convinced that there was no prosperity in store for them until the federal government should have control over commerce, and be enabled to make its strength felt on the seas and in Europe. In these views Samuel Adams shared so thoroughly that his attitude toward the Constitution at this moment was really that of a waverer rather than an opponent. Amid balancing considerations he found it for some time hard to make up his mind.

In the convention which met on the 9th of January there sat Gorham, Strong, and King, who had taken part in the Federal Convention. There were also Samuel Adams and James Bowdoin; the revolutionary generals, Heath and Lincoln; and the rising statesmen, Sedgwick, Parsons, and Fisher Ames, whose eloquence was soon to become so famous. There were twenty-four clergymen, of various denominations, — men of sound scholarship, and several of them eminent for worldly wisdom and liberality of temper. Governor Hancock presided, gorgeous in crimson velvet and finest

CROWNING THE WORK

laces, while about the room sat many browned and weatherbeaten farmers, among whom were at least eighteen who hardly a year ago had marched over the pine-clad mountain ridges of Petersham, under the banner of the rebel Shays. It was a wholesome no less than a generous policy that let these men come in and freely speak their minds. The air was thus the sooner cleared of discontent; the disease was thus the more likely to heal itself. In all there were three hundred and fifty-five delegates present, — a much larger number than took part in any of the other state conventions. The people of all parts of Massachusetts were thoroughly represented, as befitted the state which was pre-eminent in the active political life of its town meetings, and the work done here was in some respects decisive in its effect upon the adoption of the Constitution.

The convention began by overhauling that document from beginning to end, discussing it clause by clause with somewhat wearisome minuteness. Some of the objections seem odd to us at this time, with our larger experience. It was several days before the minds of the country members could be reconciled to the election of representatives for so long a period as two years. They had not been wont to delegate power to anybody for so long a time, not even to their selectmen,

Debates in
the Massa-
chusetts
convention

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

whom they had always under their eyes. How much more dangerous was it likely to prove if delegated authority were to be exercised for so long a period at some distant federal city, such as the Constitution contemplated! There was a vague dread that in some indescribable way the new Congress might contrive to make its sittings perpetual, and thus become a tyrannical oligarchy, which might tax the people without their consent. And then as to this federal city, there were some who did not like the idea. A district ten miles square! Was not that a great space to give up to the uncontrolled discretion of the federal government, wherein it could wreak its tyrannical will without let or hindrance? One of the delegates thought he could be reconciled to the new Constitution if this district could only be narrowed down to one mile square. And then there was the power granted to Congress to maintain a standing army, of which the president was to be *ex officio* commander-in-chief. Did this not open the door for a Cromwell? It was to be a standing army for at least two years, since this was the shortest period between elections. Why, even the British Parliament, since 1688, did not keep up a standing army for more than one year at a time, but renewed its existence annually under what was termed the Mutiny Act. But what need of a standing army at all? Would it not

CROWNING THE WORK

be sure to provoke needless disorders? Had they already forgotten the Boston Massacre, in spite of all the orations that had been delivered in the Old South Meeting House? A militia, organized under the town meeting system, was surely all-sufficient. Such a militia had won glorious triumphs at Lexington and Bennington, and at King's Mountain, had not an army of militia surrounded and captured an army of regulars led by one of England's most skilful officers? What more could you ask? Clearly this plan for a standing army foreboded tyranny. Upon this point Mr. Nason, from the Maine district, had his say, in tones of inimitable bombast. "Had I the voice of Jove," said he, "I would proclaim it throughout the world; and had I an arm like Jove, I would hurl from the globe those villains that would dare attempt to establish in our country a standing army!"

Next came the complaint that the Constitution did not recognize the existence of God, and provided no religious tests for candidates for federal offices. But, strange to say, this objection did not come from the clergy. It was urged by some of the country members, but the ministers in the convention were nearly unanimous in opposing it. There had been a remarkable change of sentiment among the clergy of this state,

Liberal attitude of
the clergy

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

which had begun its existence as a theocracy, in which none but church members could vote or hold office. The seeds of modern liberalism had been planted in their minds. When Amos Singletary of Sutton declared it to be scandalous that a Papist or an infidel should be as eligible to office as a Christian, — a remark which naively assumed that Roman Catholics were not Christians, — the Rev. Daniel Shute of Hingham replied that no conceivable advantage could result from a religious test. Yes, said the Rev. Philip Payson of Chelsea, “human tribunals for the consciences of men are impious encroachments upon the prerogatives of God. A religious test, as a qualification for office, would have been a great blemish.” “In reason and in the Holy Scripture,” said the Rev. Isaac Backus of Middleborough, “religion is ever a matter between God and the individual; the imposing of religious tests hath been the greatest engine of tyranny in the world.” With this liberal stand firmly taken by the ministers, the religious objection was speedily overruled.

Then the clause which allows Congress to regulate the times, places, and manner of holding federal elections was severely criticised. It was feared that Congress would take advantage of this provision to destroy the freedom of elections. It was further objected that members of Congress, being paid their salaries from

CROWNING THE WORK

the federal treasury, would become too independent of their constituents. Federal collectors of revenue, moreover, would not be so likely to act with moderation and justice as collectors appointed by the state. Then it was very doubtful whether the people could support the expense of an elaborate federal government. They were already scarcely able to pay their town, county, and state taxes; was it to be supposed they could bear the additional burden with which federal taxation would load them? Then the compromise on the slave-trade was fiercely attacked. They did not wish to have a hand in licensing this nefarious traffic for twenty years. But it was urged, on the other hand, that by prohibiting the foreign slave-trade after 1808 the Constitution was really dealing a death-blow to slavery; and this opinion prevailed.

During the whole course of the discussion, observed the Rev. Samuel West of New Bedford, it seemed to be taken for granted that the federal government was going to be put into the hands of crafty knaves. "I wish," said he, "that the gentlemen who have started so many *possible* objections would try to show us that what they so much deprecate is *probable*. . . . Because power *may* be abused, shall we be reduced to anarchy? What hinders our state legislatures from abusing their powers? . . .

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

May we not rationally suppose that the persons we shall choose to administer the government will be, in general, good men?" General Thompson said he was surprised to hear such an argument from a clergyman, who was professionally bound to maintain that all men were totally depraved. For his part, he believed they were so, and he could prove it from the Old Testament. "I would not trust them," echoed Abraham White of Bristol, "though every one of them should be a Moses."

The feeling of distrust was strongest among the farmers from the mountain districts. As Rufus King said, they objected, not so much to the Constitution as to the men who made it and the men who sang its praises. They hated lawyers, and were jealous of wealthy merchants. "These lawyers," said Amos Singletary, "and men of learning, and moneyed men that talk so finely and gloss over matters so smoothly, to make us poor illiterate people swallow the pill, expect to get into Congress themselves. They mean to be managers of the Constitution. They mean to get all the money into their hands, and then they will swallow up us little folk, like the great Leviathan, Mr. President; yes, just as the whale swallowed up Jonah." Here a more liberal-minded farmer, Jonathan Smith of Lanesborough, rose to reply with references to the Shays rebellion, which

CROWNING THE WORK

presently called forth cries of "Order!" from some of the members. Samuel Adams said the gentleman was quite in order, — let him go on in his own way. "I am a plain man," said Mr. Smith, "and am not used

Speech of
a Berkshire
farmer

to speak in public, but I am going to show the effects of anarchy, that you may see why I wish for good government. Last winter people took up arms, and then, if you went to speak to them, you had the musket of death presented to your breast. They would rob you of your property, threaten to burn your houses, oblige you to be on your guard night and day. Alarms spread from town to town, families were broken up; the tender mother would cry, 'Oh, my son is among them! What shall I do for my child?' Some were taken captive; children taken out of their schools and carried away. . . . How dreadful was this! Our distress was so great that we should have been glad to snatch at anything that looked like a government. . . . Now, Mr. President, when I saw this Constitution, I found that it was a cure for these disorders. I got a copy of it, and read it over and over. . . . I did not go to any lawyer, to ask his opinion; we have no lawyer in our town, and we do well enough without. My honourable old daddy there [pointing to Mr. Singletary] won't think that I expect to be a Congressman, and swallow up the liber-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ties of the people. I never had any post, nor do I want one. But I don't think the worse of the Constitution because lawyers, and men of learning, and moneyed men are fond of it. I am not of such a jealous make. They that are honest men themselves are not apt to suspect other people. . . . Brother farmers, let us suppose a case, now. Suppose you had a farm of 50 acres, and your title was disputed, and there was a farm of 5000 acres joined to you that belonged to a man of learning, and his title was involved in the same difficulty: would you not be glad to have him for your friend, rather than to stand alone in the dispute? Well, the case is the same. These lawyers, these moneyed men, these men of learning, are all embarked in the same cause with us, and we must all sink or swim together. Shall we throw the Constitution overboard because it does not please us all alike? Suppose two or three of you had been at the pains to break up a piece of rough land and sow it with wheat: would you let it lie waste because you could not agree what sort of a fence to make? Would it not be better to put up a fence that did not please every one's fancy, rather than keep disputing about it until the wild beasts came in and devoured the crop? Some gentlemen say, Don't be in a hurry; take time to consider. I say, There is a time to sow and a time to reap. We sowed our seed when

CROWNING THE WORK

we sent men to the Federal Convention, now is the time to reap the fruit of our labour; and if we do not do it now, I am afraid we shall never have another opportunity."

It may be doubted whether all the eloquence of Fisher Ames could have stated the case more forcibly than it was put by this plain farmer from the Berkshire hills. Upon Ames, with King, Parsons, Bowdoin, and Strong, fell the principal work in defending the Constitution. For the first two weeks, Samuel Adams scarcely opened his

Attitude of
Samuel
Adams

mouth, but listened with anxious care to everything that was said on either side. The convention was so evenly divided that there could be no doubt that his single voice would decide the result. Every one eagerly awaited his opinion. In the debate on the two years' term of members of Congress, he had asked Caleb Strong the reason why the Federal Convention had decided upon so long a term; and when it was explained as a necessary compromise between the views of so many delegates, he replied, "I am satisfied." "Will Mr. Adams kindly say that again?" asked one of the members. "I am satisfied," he repeated; and not another word was said on the subject in all those weeks. So profound was the faith of this intelligent and skeptical and independent people in the sound judgment and unswerving integrity of the Father

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

of the Revolution ! As the weeks went by, and the issue seemed still dubious, the workingmen of Boston, shipwrights and brass-founders and other mechanics, decided to express their opinion in a way that they knew Samuel Adams would heed. They held a meeting at the Green Dragon tavern, passed resolutions in favour of the Constitution, and appointed a committee, with Paul Revere at its head, to make known these resolutions to the great popular leader. When Adams had read the paper, he asked of Paul Revere, "How many mechanics were at the Green Dragon when these resolutions passed?" "More, sir, than the Green Dragon could hold." "And where were the rest, Mr. Revere?" "In the streets, sir." "And how many were in the streets?" "More, sir, than there are stars in the sky."

Between Samuel Adams and Thomas Jefferson there were several points of resemblance, the chief of which was an intense faith in the sound common sense of the mass of the people. This faith was one of the strongest attributes of both these great men. It has usually been supposed that it was this incident of the meeting at the Green Dragon that determined Adams's final attitude in the state convention. Unquestionably, such a demonstration must have had great weight with him. But at the same time the affair was taking such a turn as

CROWNING THE WORK

would have decided him, even without the aid of this famous mass-meeting. The long delay in the decision of the Massachusetts convention had carried the excitement to fever heat throughout the country. Not only were people from New Hampshire and New York and naughty Rhode Island waiting anxiously about Boston to catch every crumb of news they could get, but intrigues were going on, as far south as Virginia, to influence the result. On the 21st of January the "Boston Gazette" came out with a warning, headed by enormous capitals with three exclamation-points: "*Bribery and Corruption!!!* The most diabolical plan is on foot to corrupt the members of the convention who oppose the adoption of the new Constitution. Large sums of money have been brought from a neighbouring state for that purpose, contributed by the wealthy. If so, is it not probable there may be collections for the same accursed purpose nearer home?" No adequate investigation ever determined whether this charge was true or not. We may hope that it was ill-founded; but our general knowledge of human nature must compel us to admit that there may have been a grain of truth in it. But what was undeniable was that Richard Henry Lee wrote a letter to Gerry, urging that Massachusetts should not adopt the Constitution without insisting upon sundry amend-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ments; and in order to consider these amendments, it was suggested that there should be another Federal Convention. At this anxious crisis, Washington suddenly threw himself into the breach with that infallible judgment of his which always saw the way to victory. "If another Federal Convention is attempted," said Washington, "its members will be more discordant, and will agree upon no general plan. The Constitution is the best that can be obtained at this time. . . . The Constitution or disunion are before us to choose from. If the Constitution is our choice, a constitutional door is open for amendments, and they may be adopted in a peaceable manner, without tumult or disorder."

Washington's fruitful suggestion

When this advice of Washington's reached Boston, it set in motion a train of events which soon solved the difficulty, both for Massachusetts and for the other states which had not yet made up their mind. Chief among the objections to the Constitution had been the fact that it did not contain a bill of rights. It did not guarantee religious liberty, freedom of speech and of the press, or the right of the people peaceably to assemble and petition the government for a redress of grievances. It did not provide against the quartering of soldiers upon the people in time of peace. It did not provide against general search-warrants, nor did it

CROWNING THE WORK

securely prescribe the methods by which individuals should be held to answer for criminal offences. It did not even provide that nobody should be burned at the stake or stretched on the rack, for holding peculiar opinions about the nature of God or the origin of evil. That such objections to the Constitution seem strange to us to-day is partly due to the determined attitude of the men who, amid all the troubles of the time, would not consent to any arrangement from which such safeguards to free thinking and free living should be omitted. The friends of the Constitution in Boston now proposed that the convention, while adopting it, should suggest sundry amendments containing the essential provisions of a bill of rights. It was not intended that the ratification should be conditional. Under the circumstances, a conditional ratification might prove as disastrous as rejection. It might lead to a second Federal Convention, in which the good work already accomplished might be undone. The ratification was to be absolute, and the amendments were offered in the hope that action would be taken upon them as soon as the new government should go into operation. There could be little doubt that the suggestion would be heeded, not only from the importance of Massachusetts in the Union, but also from the fact that Virginia and other states would be sure to follow her example in suggest-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

ing such amendments. This forecast proved quite correct, and it was in this way that the first ten amendments originated, which were acted on by Congress in 1790, and became part of the Constitution in 1791.

As soon as this plan had been matured, Hancock proposed it to the convention; the hearty support of Adams was immediately insured, and within a week from that time, on the 6th of February, the Constitution was ratified by the

Massachu- narrow majority of 187 votes against
setts ratifies, 168. On that same day Jefferson, in
proposing Paris, wrote to Madison: "I wish with
amendments, all my soul that the nine first conven-
Feb. 6, 1788 tions may accept the new Constitution, to secure
to us the good it contains; but I equally wish
that the four latest, whichever they may be, may
refuse to accede to it till a declaration of rights
be annexed; but no objection to the new form
must produce a schism in our Union." But as
soon as he heard of the action of Massachusetts,
he approved it as preferable to his own idea,
and he wrote home urging Virginia to follow
the example.

Massachusetts was thus the sixth state to ratify the Constitution. On that day the name of the Long Lane by the meeting-house where the convention had sat was changed to Federal Street. The Boston people, said Henry Knox, had quite lost their senses with joy. The two

CROWNING THE WORK

counties of Worcester and Berkshire had given but fourteen yeas against fifty-nine nays, but the farmers went home declaring that they should cheerfully abide by the decision of the majority. Not a murmur was heard from any one.

About the time that the Massachusetts convention broke up, that of New Hampshire assembled at Exeter ; but after a brief discussion it was decided to adjourn until June, in order to see how the other states would act. On the 21st of April the Maryland convention assembled at Annapolis ; and Washington expressed a hope that it would not adjourn without coming to a decision, for the Antifederalists were gloating over the postponement in New Hampshire. Their glee was short-lived, however. Some of Maryland's strongest men, such as Luther Martin and Samuel Chase, were Antifederalists ; but their efforts were of no avail. After a session of five days the Constitution was ratified by a vote of sixty-three to eleven. Whatever damage New Hampshire might have done was thus more than made good.

Maryland
ratifies,
April 28

The eyes of the whole country were now turned upon the eighth state, South Carolina. Her convention was to meet at Charleston on the 12th of May, the anniversary of the day on which General Lincoln had surrendered that city to Sir Henry Clinton ; but there had been

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

a decisive preliminary struggle in the legislature in January. The most active of the Antifederalists was Rawlins Lowndes, who had opposed the Declaration of Independence. Lowndes was betrayed into silliness. "We are now," said he, "under a most excellent constitution,—a blessing from Heaven, that has stood the test of time [! !], and given us liberty and independence; yet we are impatient to pull down that fabric which we raised at the expense of our blood." This was not very convincing to the assembly, most of the members knowing full well that the fabric had not stood the test of time, but had already tumbled in by reason of its vicious construction. A more effective plea was that which referred to the slave-trade. "What cause is there," said Lowndes, "for jealousy of our importing negroes? Why confine us to twenty years? Why limit us at all? This trade can be justified on the principles of religion and humanity. They do not like our having slaves because they have none themselves, and therefore want to exclude us from this great advantage." Cotesworth Pinckney replied: "By this settlement we have secured an unlimited importation of negroes for twenty years. The general government can never emancipate them, for no such authority is granted, and it is admitted on all hands that the general government has no

Debates in
the South
Carolina
legislature

CROWNING THE WORK

powers but what are expressly granted by the Constitution. We have obtained a right to recover our slaves in whatever part of the country they may take refuge, which is a right we had not before. In short, considering all circumstances, we have made the best terms in our power for the security of this species of property. We would have made better if we could ; but, on the whole, I do not think them bad."

Perhaps Pinckney would not have assumed exactly this tone at Philadelphia, but at Charleston the argument was convincing. Lowndes then sounded the alarm that the New England states would monopolize the carrying-trade and charge ruinous freights, and he drew a harrowing picture of warehouses packed to bursting with rice and indigo spoiling because the owners could not afford to pay the Yankee skippers' prices for carrying their goods to market. But Pinckney rejoined that a Yankee shipmaster in quest of cargoes would not be likely to ruin his own chances for getting them, and he called attention to the great usefulness of the eastern merchant marine as affording material for a navy, and thus contributing to the defence of the country. Finally Lowndes put in a plea for paper money, but with little success. The result of the debate set the matter so clearly before the people that a great majority of Fed-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

eralists were elected to the convention. Among them were Gadsden, the Rutledges and the Pinckneys, Moultrie, and William Washington, who had become a citizen of the state from which he had helped to expel the British invader. The Antifederalists were largely represented by men from the upland counties, belonging to a population in which there was considerable likeness all along the Appalachian chain of mountains, from Pennsylvania to the southern extremity of the range. There were among them many "moonshiners," as they were called, — distillers of illicit whiskey, — and they did not relish the idea of a federal excise. At their head was Thomas Sumter, a convert to the scheme for a southern confederacy.

South Caro-
lina ratifies,
May 23

Their policy was one of delay and obstruction, but it availed them little, for on the 23d of May, after a session of eleven days, South Carolina ratified the Constitution by a vote of 149 against 73.

The astute policy of the Federal Convention in adopting the odious compromise over the slave-trade was now about to bear fruit. In Virginia there was a nascent sentiment in favour of establishing a separate southern confederacy. By the action of South Carolina all such possible schemes were now nipped in the bud. Of the states south of Mason and Dixon's line, three had now ratified the Constitution, so that

CROWNING THE WORK

any separate confederacy could now consist only of Virginia and North Carolina. The reason for this short-lived separatist feeling in Virginia was to be found in the complications which had grown out of the attempt of Spain to close the Mississippi River. It will be remembered that only two years before, Jay had actually recommended to Congress that the right to navigate the lower Mississippi be surrendered for twenty-five years, in exchange for a favourable commercial treaty with Spain. The New England states, caring nothing for the distant Mississippi, supported this measure in Congress ; and this narrow and selfish policy naturally created alarm in Virginia, which, in her district of Kentucky, touched upon the great river. Thus to the vague dread felt by the southern states in general, in the event of New England's controlling the commercial policy of the government, there was added, in Virginia's case, a specific fear. If the New England people were thus ready to barter away the vital interests of a remote part of the country, what might they not do? Would they ever stop at anything so long as they could go on building up their commerce? This feeling strongly influenced Patrick Henry in his opposition to the Constitution ;¹ and we

Important
effect upon
Virginia

¹ There were some who suspected Henry of working in favour of the scheme for a separate southern confederacy.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

have seen how Randolph and Mason, in the Federal Convention, were so disturbed at the power given to Congress to regulate commerce by a simple majority of votes that they refused to set their names to the Constitution. They alleged further reasons for their refusal, but this was the chief one. They wanted a two thirds vote to be required, in order that the South might retain the means of protecting itself. Under these circumstances the opposition to the Constitution was very strong, and but for the action of South Carolina the party in favour of a separate confederacy might have been capable of doing much mischief. As it was, since that party had actively intrigued in South Carolina and Maryland, the ratification of the Constitution by both these states was a direct rebuff. It quite demoralized the advocates of secession. The paper-money men, moreover, were handicapped by the fact that two of the most powerful Antifederalists, Mason and Lee, were determined opponents of a paper currency, so that this subject had to be dropped or very gingerly dealt with. The strength of the Antifederalists, though impaired by these causes, was still very great. The contest was waged

See Madison's *Works*, i. 388 ; Bancroft's *History of the Constitution*, ii. 465. But clearly he did not go so far as this. See Elliott's *Debates*, iii. 57, 63, 161 ; Henry's *Patrick Henry*, ii. 332 ; Tyler's *Patrick Henry*, 288.

CROWNING THE WORK

with all the more intensity of feeling because, since eight states had now adopted the Constitution, the verdict of Virginia would be decisive.

The convention met at Richmond on the 2d of June, and Edmund Pendleton was chosen president. Foremost among the Antifederalists was Patrick Henry, whose eloquence was now as zealously employed against the new government as it had been in

Debates in
the Virginia
Convention

bygone days against the usurpations of Great Britain. He was supported by George Mason, as well as by Benjamin Harrison and John Tyler, the fathers of two future presidents, and James Monroe, who was to be president himself; and he could count on the votes of most of the delegates from the midland counties, from the south bank of the James River, and from Kentucky. But the united talents of the opposition had no chance of success in a conflict with the genius and tact of Madison, who at one moment crushed, at another conciliated, his opponent, but always won the day. To Madison, more than any other man, the Federalist victory was due. But he was ably seconded by Governor Randolph, whom he began by winning over from the opposite party, and by the favourite general and eloquent speaker, "Light-Horse Harry." Conspicuous in the ranks of Federalists, and unsurpassed in debate,

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

was a tall and gaunt young man, with beaming countenance, eyes of piercing brilliancy, and an indescribable kingliness of bearing, who was by and by to become chief justice of the United States, and by his masterly and far-reaching decisions to win a place side by side with Madison and Hamilton among the founders of our national government. John Marshall, second to none among all the illustrious jurists of the English race, was then, at the age of thirty-three, the foremost lawyer in Virginia. He had already served for several terms in the state legislature, but his national career began in this

Madison and
Marshall pre-
vail and Vir-
ginia ratifies
June 25

convention, where his arguments with those of Madison, reinforcing each other, bore down all opposition. The details of the controversy were very much the same as in the states already passed in review, save in so far as coloured by the peculiar circumstances of Virginia. After more than three weeks of debate, on the 25th of June the question was put to vote, and the Constitution was ratified by the narrow majority of 89 against 79. Amendments were offered, after the example of Massachusetts, which had already been followed by South Carolina and the minority in Maryland; and, as in Massachusetts, the defeated Antifederalists announced their intention to abide loyally by the result.¹

¹ There was much that was sound and wise in the Anti-



John Marshall

CROWNING THE WORK

The discussion had lasted so long that Virginia lost the distinction of being the ninth state to ratify the Constitution. That honour had been reserved for New Hampshire, whose convention had met on the anniversary of Bunker Hill, and after a four days' session, on the 21st of June, had given its consent to the new government by a vote of 57 against 46. The couriers from Virginia and those from New Hampshire, as they spurred their horses over long miles of dusty road, could shout to each other the joyous news in passing. Though the ratification of New Hampshire had secured the necessary ninth state, yet the action of Virginia was not the less significant and decisive. Virginia was at that time, and for a quarter of a century afterward, the most populous state in the Union, and one of the greatest in influence. Even with the needed nine states all in hand, it is clear that the new government could not have gone into successful operation with the leading state, the home of Washington himself,

New Hampshire had already ratified, June 21

federalism of such men as Mason, Henry, and Tyler. Their dread of creating a tyranny was almost prophetic of the base uses to which the doctrine of "implied powers" was to be put, when under the specious phrases of "internal improvements" and "protection to native industry" it inaugurated the gigantic system of corruption and spoliation which we have so long meekly endured.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

left out in the cold. The New Roof, as men were then fond of calling the Federal Constitution, must speedily have fallen in without this indispensable prop. When it was known that Virginia had ratified, it was felt that the victory was won, and the success of the new scheme assured. The 4th of July, 1788, witnessed such loud rejoicings as have perhaps never been seen before or since on American soil. In Philadelphia there was a procession miles in length, in which every trade was represented, and wagons laden with implements of industry or emblematic devices alternated with bands of music and gorgeous banners. There figured the New Roof, supported by thirteen columns, and there was to be seen the Ship of State, the good ship Constitution, made out of the barge which Paul Jones had taken from the shattered and blood-stained Serapis, after his terrible fight. As for the old scow Confederacy, Imbecility master, it was proclaimed she had foundered at sea, and "the sloop Anarchy, when last heard from, was ashore on Union Rocks." All over the country there were processions and bonfires, and in some towns there were riots. In Providence the Federalists prepared a barbecue of oxen roasted whole, but a mob of farmers, led by three members of the state legislature, attempted to disperse them, and were with some difficulty pacified. In Albany the Antifederalists publicly

CROWNING THE WORK

burned the Constitution, whereupon a party of Federalists brought out another copy of it, and nailed it to the top of a pole, which they planted defiantly amid the ashes of the fire their opponents had made. Out of these proceedings there grew a riot, in which knives were drawn, stones were thrown, and blood was shed.

Such incidents might have served to remind one that the end had not yet come. The difficulties were not yet surmounted, and the rejoicing was in some respects premature. It was now settled that the new government was to go into operation, but how it was going to be able to get along without the adhesion of New York it was not easy to see. It is true that New York then ranked only as fifth among the states in population, but commercially and militarily she was the centre of the Union. She not only touched at once on the ocean and the lakes, but she separated New England from the rest of the country. It was rightly felt that the Union could never be cemented without this central state. So strongly were people impressed with this feeling that some went so far as to threaten violence. It was said that if New York did not come into the Union peacefully and of her own accord, she should be conquered and dragged in. That she would come in peacefully seemed at first very improbable. When the state convention

The struggle
in New York

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

assembled at Poughkeepsie, on the 17th of June, more than two thirds of its members were avowed Antifederalists. At their head was the governor, George Clinton, hard-headed and resolute, the bitterest hater of the Constitution that could be found anywhere in the thirteen states. Foremost among his supporters were Yates and Lansing, with Melancton Smith, a man familiar with political history, and one of the ablest debaters in the country. On the Federalist side were such eminent men as Livingston and Jay; but the herculean task of vanquishing this great hostile majority, and converting it by sheer dint of argument into a majority on the right side, fell chiefly upon the shoulders of one man.

But for Alexander Hamilton the decision of New York would unquestionably have been adverse to the Constitution. Nay, more, it is very improbable that, but for him, the good work would have made such progress as it had in the other states. To get the people to adopt the Constitution, it was above all things needful that its practical working should be expounded, in language such as every one could understand, by some writer endowed in a high degree with political intelligence and foresight. Upon their return from the Federal Convention, Yates and Lansing had done all in their power to bring its proceedings into ill-repute.

CROWNING THE WORK

Pamphlets and broadsides were scattered right and left. The Constitution was termed the "triple-headed monster," and declared to be "as deep and wicked a conspiracy as ever was invented in the darkest ages against the liberties of a free people." It soon occurred to Hamilton that it would be well worth while to explain the meaning of all parts of the Constitution in a series of short, incisive essays. He communicated his plan to Madison and Jay, who joined him in the work, and the result was the "Federalist," perhaps the most famous of American books, and surely one of the most profound and suggestive treatises on government that have ever been written. Of the eighty-five numbers originally published in the "Independent Gazetteer," under the common signature of "Publius," Jay wrote five, Madison twenty-nine, and Hamilton fifty-one.¹ Jay's papers related chiefly to diplomatic points, with which his experience abroad had fitted him to deal. The first number was written by Hamilton in the cabin of a sloop on the Hudson, in

The "Federalist"

¹ Attempts have been repeatedly made to claim for Hamilton a dozen or more of the numbers written by Madison; but there is no good ground for such a claim. The arguments of Mr. E. G. Bourne, in *American Historical Review*, i. 443-460, 682-685, seem finally decisive. See, also, the excellent note in Bancroft's *History of the United States*, New York, 1886, vi. 452.

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

October, 1787; and they continued to appear, sometimes as often as three or four in a week, through the winter and spring. Madison would have contributed a larger share than he did had he not been called early in March to Virginia to fight the battle of the Constitution in that state. The essays were widely and eagerly read, and probably accomplished more toward insuring the adoption of the Constitution than anything else that was said or done in that eventful year. They were hastily written, — struck out at white heat by men full of their subject. Doubtless the authors did not realize the grandeur of the literary work they were doing, and among the men of the time there were few who foresaw the immortal fame which these essays were to earn. It is said of one of the senators in the first Congress that he made the memorandum, "Get the 'Federalist,' if I can, without buying it. It is n't worth it." But for all posterity the "Federalist" must remain the most authoritative commentary upon the Constitution that can be found; for it is the joint work of the principal author of that Constitution and of its most brilliant advocate.

In nothing could the flexibleness of Hamilton's intellect, or the genuineness of his patriotism, have been more finely shown than in the hearty zeal and transcendent ability with which he now wrote in defence of a plan of govern-

CROWNING THE WORK

ment so different from what he would himself have proposed. He made Madison's thoughts his own, until he set them forth with force not inferior to Madison's. Yet no arguments could possibly be less chargeable with partisanship than the arguments of the "Federalist." The judgment is as dispassionate as could be shown in a philosophical treatise. The tone is one of grave and lofty eloquence, apt to move even to tears the reader who is fully alive to the stupendous issues that were involved in the discussion. Hamilton was supremely endowed with the faculty of imagining, with all the circumstantial minuteness of concrete reality, political situations different from those directly before him; and he put this rare power to noble use in tracing out the natural and legitimate working of such a Constitution as that which the Federal Convention had framed.

When it came to defending the Constitution before the hostile convention at Poughkeepsie, he had before him as arduous a task as ever fell to the lot of a parliamentary debater. It was a case where political management was out of the question. The opposition were too numerous to be silenced, or cajoled, or bargained with. They must be converted. With an eloquence scarcely equalled before or since in America until Webster's voice was heard, Hamilton argued week after week, till at last Me-

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

lancton Smith, the foremost debater of Clinton's party, broke away, and came over to the Federalist side. It was like crushing the centre of a hostile army. After this the Antifederalist forces were confused and easily routed. The decisive struggle was over the question whether New York could ratify the Constitution conditionally, reserving to herself the right to withdraw from the Union in case the amendments upon which she had set her heart should not be adopted. Upon this point Hamilton reinforced himself with the advice of Madison, who had just returned to New York. Could a state once adopt the Constitution, and then withdraw from the Union if not satisfied? Madison's reply was prompt and decisive. No, such a thing could never be done. A state which had once

Hamilton
wins the
victory,
and New
York rati-
fies, July 26

ratified was in the federal bond forever. The Constitution could not provide for nor contemplate its own overthrow. There could be no such thing as a constitutional right of secession. When Melancton Smith deserted the Antifederalists on this point, the victory was won, and on the 26th of July New York ratified the Constitution by the bare majority of thirty votes against twenty-seven. Rejoicings were now renewed throughout the country. In the city of New York there was an immense parade, and as the emblematic federal ship—

CROWNING THE WORK

the Ship of State — was drawn through the streets, with Hamilton's name emblazoned on the vehicle that supported her, it was doubtless the proudest moment of the young statesman's life.

New York, however, clogged her acceptance by proposing, a few days afterward, that a second Federal Convention be called for considering the amendments suggested by the various states. The proposal was supported by the Virginia legislature, but Massachusetts and Pennsylvania opposed it, as having a dangerous tendency to reopen the whole discussion and unsettle everything. The proposal fell to the ground. People were weary of the long dispute, and turned their attention to electing representatives to the first Congress. With the adhesion of New York all serious anxiety came to an end. The new government could be put in operation without waiting for North Carolina and Rhode Island to make up their minds. The North Carolina convention met on the 21st of July, and adjourned on the 1st of August without coming to any decision. The same objections were raised as in Virginia; and besides, the paper-money party was here much stronger than in the neighbouring state. In Rhode Island paper money was the chief difficulty; that state did not even take the trouble to call

The laggard
states, North
Carolina and
Rhode Island

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

a convention. It was not until the 21st of November, 1789, after Washington's government had been several months in operation, that North Carolina joined the Federal Union. Rhode Island did not join till the 29th of May, 1790. If she had waited but a few months longer, Vermont, the first state not of the original thirteen, would have come in before her.

The autumn of 1788 was a season of busy but peaceful electioneering. That remarkable body, the Continental Congress, in putting an end to its troubled existence, decreed that presidential electors should be chosen on the first Wednesday of January, 1789, that the electors should meet and cast their votes for president on the first Wednesday in February, and that the Senate and House of Representatives should assemble on the first Wednesday in March. This latter day fell, in 1789, on the 4th of the month, and accordingly, three years afterward, Congress took it for a precedent, and decreed that thereafter each new administration should begin on the 4th of March. It was further decided, after some warm debate, that until the site for the proposed federal city could be selected and built upon, the seat of the new government should be the city of New York.

In accordance with these decrees, presidential elections were held on the first Wednesday in January. The Antifederalists were still potent

CROWNING THE WORK

for mischief in New York, with the result that, just as that state had not joined in the Declaration of Independence until after it had been proclaimed to the world, and just as she refused to adopt the Federal

First presidential election, Jan. 7, 1789

Constitution until after more than the requisite number of states had ratified it, so now she failed to choose electors, and had nothing to do with the vote that made Washington our first president. The other ten states that had ratified the Constitution all chose electors. But things moved slowly and cumbrously at this first assembling of the new government. The House of Representatives did not succeed in getting a quorum together until the 1st of April. On the 6th, the Senate chose John Langdon for its president, and the two houses in concert counted the electoral votes. There were sixty-nine in all, and every one of the sixty-nine was found to be for George Washington of Virginia. For the second name on the list there was nothing like such unanimity. It was to be expected that the other name would be that of a citizen of Massachusetts, as the other leading state in the Union. The two foremost citizens of Massachusetts bore the same name, and were cousins. There would have been most striking poetic justice in coupling with the name of Washington that of Samuel Adams, since these two men had been indisputably foremost in the work of

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

achieving the independence of the United States. But for the hesitancy of Samuel Adams in indorsing the Federal Constitution, he would very likely have been our first vice-president and our second president. But the wave of federalism had now begun to sweep strongly over Massachusetts, carrying everything before it, and none but the most ardent Federalists had a chance to meet in the electoral college. Voices were raised in behalf of Samuel Adams. While we honour the American Fabius, it was said, let us not forget the American Cato. It was urged by some, with much truth, that but for his wise and cautious action in the Massachusetts convention, the good ship Constitution would have been fatally wrecked upon the reefs of Shaysism. His course had not been that of an obstructionist, like that of his old friends Henry and Lee and Gerry ; but at the critical moment — one of the most critical in all that wonderful crisis — he had thrown his vast influence, with decisive effect, upon the right side. All this is plain enough to the historian of to-day. But in the political fervour of the election of 1789, the fact most clearly visible to men was that Samuel Adams had hesitated, and perhaps made things wait. These points came out most distinctly on the issue of his election to the Federal Congress, in which he was defeated by the youthful Fisher Ames, whose eloquence in

CROWNING THE WORK

the state convention had been so conspicuous and useful; but they serve to explain thoroughly why he was not put upon the presidential list along with Washington. His cousin, John Adams, had just returned from his mission to England, weary and disgusted with the scanty respect which he had been able to secure for a feeble league of states that could not make good its own promises. His services during the Revolution had been of the most splendid sort; and after Washington, he was the second choice of the electoral college, receiving thirty-four votes, while John Jay of New York, his nearest competitor, received only nine. John Adams was accordingly declared vice-president.

On the 14th of April Washington was informed of his election, and on the next day but one he bid adieu again to his beloved home at Mount Vernon, where he had hoped to pass the remainder of his days in that rural peace and quiet for which no one yearns like the man who is burdened with greatness and fame unsought for. The position to which he was summoned was one of unparalleled splendour, — how splendid we can now realize much better than he, and our grandchildren will realize it better than we, — the position of first ruler of what was soon to become at once the strongest and the most peace-loving people upon the

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

face of the earth. As he journeyed toward New York, his thoughts must have been busy with the arduous problems of the time. Already, doubtless, he had marked out the two great men, Jefferson and Hamilton, for his chief advisers: the one to place us in a proper attitude before the mocking nations of Europe; the other to restore our shattered credit, and enlist the moneyed interests of all the states in the success of the Federal Union. Washington's temperament was a hopeful one, as befitted a man of his strength and dash. But in his most hopeful mood he could hardly have dared to count upon such a sudden demonstration of national strength as was about to ensue upon the heroic financial measures of Hamilton. His meditations on this journey we may well believe to have been solemn and anxious enough. But if he could gather added courage from the often declared trust of his fellow countrymen, there was no lack of such comfort for him. At every town through which he passed, fresh evidences of it were gathered, but at one point on the route his strong nature was especially wrought upon. At Trenton, as he crossed the bridge over the Assunpink Creek, where twelve years ago, at the darkest moment of the Revolution, he had outwitted Cornwallis in the most skilful of stratagems, and turned threatening defeat into glorious victory, — at this spot

CROWNING THE WORK

so fraught with thrilling associations, he was met by a party of maidens dressed in white, who strewed his path with sweet spring flowers, while triumphal arches in softest green bore inscriptions declaring that he who had watched over the safety of the mothers could well be trusted to protect the daughters. On the 23d he arrived in New York, and was entertained at dinner by Governor Clinton. One week later, on the 30th, came the inauguration. It was one of those magnificent days of clearest sunshine that sometimes make one feel in April as if summer had come. At noon of that day Washington went from his lodgings, attended by a military escort, to Federal Hall, at the corner of Wall and Nassau streets, where his statue has lately been erected. The city was ablaze with excitement. A sea of upturned eager faces surrounded the spot, and as the hero appeared thousands of cocked hats were waved, while ladies fluttered their white handkerchiefs. Washington came forth clad in a suit of dark brown cloth of American make, with white silk hose and shoes decorated with silver buckles, while at his side hung a dress-sword. For a moment all were hushed in deepest silence, while the secretary of the Senate held forth the Bible upon a velvet cushion, and Chancellor Livingston administered the oath of office. Then, before

Inauguration of Washington, April 30, 1789

THE CRITICAL PERIOD

Washington had as yet raised his head, Livingston shouted, — and from all the vast company came answering shouts, — “ Long live George Washington, President of the United States ! ”

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

THE bibliography of the period covered in this book is very copiously and thoroughly treated in the seventh volume of Winsor's *Narrative and Critical History of North America*, Boston, 1888. For the benefit of the reader who may not have ready access to that vast storehouse of information, the following brief notes may be of service.

The best account of the peace negotiations is to be found in chapter ii. of Winsor's volume just cited, written by Hon. John Jay, who had already discussed the subject quite thoroughly in his *Address before the New York Historical Society on its Seventy-Ninth Anniversary*, Nov. 27, 1883. Of the highest value are Lord Edmond Fitzmaurice's *Life of Lord Shelburne*, 3 vols., London, 1875-76, and Adolphe de Circourt, *Histoire de l'action commune de la France et de l'Amérique, etc.*, tome iii., *Documents originaux inédits*, Paris, 1876. See also Sparks, *Diplomatic Correspondence of the American Revolution*, 12 vols., Boston, 1829-30; Trescot's *Diplomacy of the American Revolution*, N. Y., 1852; Lyman's *Diplomacy of the United States*, Boston, 1826; Elliot's *American Diplomatic Code*, 2 vols., Washington, 1834; Chalmers' *Collection of Treaties*, 2 vols., London, 1790; Lord Stanhope's *History of England*, vol. vii., London, 1853; Lecky's *History of England*, vol. iv., London, 1882; Lord John Russell's *Memorials of Fox*, 4 vols., London, 1853-57;

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

Albemarle's *Rockingham and his Contemporaries*, 2 vols., London, 1852; Walpole's *Last Journals*, 2 vols., London, 1859; Force's *American Archives*, 4th series, 6 vols., Washington, 1839-46; John Adams's *Works*, 10 vols., Boston, 1850-56; Rives's *Life of Madison*, 3 vols., Boston, 1859-68; Madison's *Letters and Other Writings*, 4 vols., Phila., 1865; the lives of Franklin, by Bigelow and Parton; the lives of Jay, by Jay, Flanders, and Whitelocke; Morse's *John Adams*, Boston, 1885; *Correspondence of George III. with Lord North*, 2 vols., London, 1867; Wharton's *Digest of International Law*, Washington, 1887, *Appendix* to vol. iii.; Hale's *Franklin in France*, 2 vols., Boston, 1888. The view of the treaty set forth in 1830 by Sparks, according to which Jay and Adams were quite mistaken in their suspicions of the French court, we may now regard as disposed of by the evidence presented by Circourt and Fitzmaurice. It has led many writers astray, and even with all the lights which Mr. Bancroft has had, the account in the last revision of his *History of the United States*, vol. v., N. Y., 1886, though in some respects one of the best to be found in the general histories, still leaves much to be desired.

The general condition of the United States under the articles of confederation is well sketched in the sixth volume of Bancroft's final revision, and in Curtis's *History of the Constitution*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1861. An excellent summary is given in the first volume of Schouler's *History of the United States under the Constitution*, of which vols. i.-v. (revised ed., N. Y., 1894) have appeared. Mr. Schouler's book is suggestive and stimulating. The work most rich in de-

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

tails is Professor McMaster's *History of the People of the United States*, of which the first volume rather more than covers the period 1783-89. The author is especially deserving of praise for the diligence with which he has searched the newspapers and obscure pamphlets of the period. He has thus given much fresh life to the narrative, besides throwing valuable light upon the thoughts and feelings of the men who lived under the "league of friendship." I take pleasure in acknowledging my indebtedness to Professor McMaster for several interesting illustrative details. Further general information as to the period of the Confederation may be found in Morse's admirable *Life of Alexander Hamilton*, 3d ed., 2 vols., Boston, 1882; Sumner's *Alexander Hamilton*, N. Y., 1890; J. C. Hamilton's *Republic of the United States*, 7 vols., Boston, 1879; Frothingham's *Rise of the Republic*, Boston, 1872, chapter xii.; Von Holst's *Constitutional History*, 8 vols., Chicago, 1877-92, chapter i.; Pitkin's *History of the United States*, 2 vols., New Haven, 1828, vol. ii.; Marshall's *Life of Washington*, 5 vols., Phila., 1805-07; *Journals of Congress*, 13 vols., Phila., 1800; *Secret Journals of Congress*, 4 vols., Boston, 1820-21.

On the loyalists and their treatment, the able essay by Rev. G. E. Ellis, in Winsor's seventh volume, is especially rich in bibliographical references. See also Sabine's *Loyalists of the American Revolution*, 2 vols., Boston, 1864; Ryerson's *Loyalists of America*, 2 vols., Toronto, 1880; Jones's *New York during the Revolution*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1879. Although chiefly concerned with events earlier than 1780, the *Journal and Letters of Samuel Curwen*, 4th ed., Boston, 1864, and

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

especially the *Diary and Letters of Thomas Hutchinson*, 2 vols., Boston, 1884-86, are valuable in this connection.

For the financial troubles the most convenient general survey is to be found in A. S. Bolles's *Financial History of the United States*, 1774-1789, N. Y., 1879; Sumner's *The Financier and the Finances of the American Revolution*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1891; Sparks's *Life of Gouverneur Morris*, 3 vols., Boston, 1832; Pelatiah Webster's *Political Essays*, Phila., 1791; Phillips's *Colonial and Continental Paper Currency*, 2 vols., Roxbury, 1865-66; Varnum's *Case of Trevett v. Weeden*, Providence, 1787; Arnold's *History of Rhode Island*, 2 vols., 4th ed., Providence, 1894. The best account of the Shays rebellion is G. R. Minot's *History of the Insurrections in Massachusetts*, Worcester, 1788; see also Barry's *History of Massachusetts*, 3 vols., Boston, 1855-57; Austin's *Life of Gerry*, 2 vols., Boston, 1828-29. A new and interesting account of the northwestern cessions and the Ordinance of 1787 is B. A. Hinsdale's *Old Northwest*, N. Y., 1888; see also Dunn's *Indiana*, Boston, 1888; Cutler's *Life, Journal, and Correspondence of Manasseh Cutler*, 2 vols., Cincinnati, 1887; Poole's *The Ordinance of 1787*, Cambridge, 1876.

In the *Johns Hopkins University Studies in Historical and Political Science*, the following articles bear especially upon subjects here treated and are worthy of careful study: II., v., vi., H. C. Adams, *Taxation in the United States*, 1789-1816; III., i., H. B. Adams, *Maryland's Influence upon Land Cessions to the United States*; III., ix., x., Davis, *American Constitutions*; IV., v., Jameson's *Introduction to the Constitu-*

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

tional and Political History of the Individual States; IV., vii.-ix., Shoshuke Sato's *History of the Land Question in the United States*; VIII., i., ii., A. W. Small, *The Beginnings of American Nationality*; IX., i. ii., Willoughby's *Government and Administration of the United States*.

For the proceedings of the Federal Convention in framing the Constitution, and of the several state conventions in ratifying it, the great treasure-house of authoritative information is Elliot's *Debates in the Conventions*, 5 vols., originally published under the sanction of Congress in 1830-45; new reprint, Phila., 1888. The contents of the volumes are as follows:—

- I. Sundry preliminary papers, relating to the ante-revolutionary period, and the period of the Confederation; journal of the Federal Convention; Yates's minutes of the proceedings; the official letters of Martin, Yates, Lansing, Randolph, Mason, and Gerry, in explanation of their several courses; Jay's address to the people of New York; and other illustrative papers.
- II., III., IV. Proceedings of the several state conventions; with other documents, including the Virginia and Kentucky resolutions of 1798, and data relating thereto.
- V. Madison's journal of debates in the Congress of the Confederation, Nov. 4, 1782-June 21, 1783, and Feb. 19-April 25, 1787; Madison's journal of the Federal Convention; letters from Madison to Washington, Jefferson,

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

and Randolph, Sept. 1787–Nov. 1788; and other papers.

The best edition of the "Federalist" is by H. C. Lodge, N. Y., 1888. See also Story's *Commentaries on the Constitution*, 4th ed., 3 vols., Boston, 1873; the works of Daniel Webster, 6 vols., Boston, 1851; Hurd's *Theory of our National Existence*, Boston, 1881. The above works expound the Constitution as not a league between sovereign states but a fundamental law ordained by the people of the United States. The opposite view is presented in *The Republic of Republics*, by P. C. Centz [Plain Common Sense, pseudonym of B. J. Sage of New Orleans], Boston, 1881; the works of Calhoun, 6 vols., N. Y., 1853–55; A. H. Stephens's *War between the States*, 2 vols., Phila., 1868; Jefferson Davis's *Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1881. Bledsoe, *Is Davis a Traitor*; or, *Was Secession a Constitutional Right previous to the War of 1861?* Baltimore, 1866.

Several volumes of the "American Statesmen" contain interesting accounts of discussions in the various conventions, as Tyler's *Patrick Henry*, Hosmer's *Samuel Adams*, Lodge's *Hamilton*, Magruder's *Marshall*, Roosevelt's *Morris*. Gay's *Madison* falls far below the general standard of this excellent and popular series. No satisfactory biography of Madison has yet been written, though the voluminous work of W. C. Rives contains much good material. For judicial interpretations of the Constitution one may consult B. R. Curtis's *Digest of Decisions*, 1790–1854; Flanders's *Lives of the Chief Justices*, Phila., 1858; Marshall's *Writings on the Federal Constitution*, ed. Perkins, Boston, 1839; see also Pomeroy's *Constitutional Law*,

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

N. Y., 1868; Wharton's *Commentaries*, Phila., 1884; Von Holst's *Calhoun*, Boston, 1882. Among critical and theoretical works, Fisher's *Trial of the Constitution*, Phila., 1862, and Lockwood's *Abolition of the Presidency*, N. Y., 1884, are variously suggestive; Woodrow Wilson's *Congressional Government*, Boston, 1885, is a work of rare ability, pointing out the divergence which has arisen between the literary theory of our government and its practical working. Walter Bagehot's *English Constitution*, revised ed., Boston, 1873, had already in a profound and masterly fashion, exhibited the divergence between the literary theory and the actual working of the British government. Some points of weakness in the British system are touched in Albert Stickney's *True Republic*, N. Y., 1879; and his *Democratic Government*, N. Y., 1885; see also A. L. Lowell's *Essays on Government*, Boston, 1890. The constitutional history of England is presented, in its earlier stages, with prodigious learning, by Dr. Stubbs, 3 vols., London, 1873-78, and in its later stages by Hallam, 2 vols., London, 1842, and Sir Erskine May, 2 vols., Boston, 1862-63; see also S. R. Gardiner's *Introduction to the Study of English History*, London, 1881; Freeman's *Growth of the English Constitution*, London, 1872; *Comparative Politics*, London, 1873; *Some Impressions of the United States*, London, 1883; Rudolph Gneist, *History of the English Constitution*, 2 vols., London, 1886; J. S. Mill, *Representative Government*, N. Y., 1862; Sir H. Maine, *Popular Government*, N. Y., 1886; Tocqueville's *Democracy in America*, 2 vols., Cambridge, 1863; Bryce's *American Commonwealth*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1888; Lecky's *Democracy and Liberty*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1876.

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

See also Stevens's *Sources of the Constitution of the United States*, N. Y., 1894; Fisher's *Evolution of the Constitution of the United States*, Phila., 1897; Jameson, *Essays in the Constitutional History of the United States*, Boston, 1889; Cooley (and others), *Constitutional History of the United States as seen in the Development of American Law*, N. Y., 1889; Curry, *The Southern States of the American Union*, N. Y., 1894; Stanwood's *History of Presidential Elections*, Boston, 1888; Miss Follett, *The Speaker of the House of Representatives*, N. Y., 1896; Harding, *The Contest over the Ratification of the Federal Constitution in Massachusetts*, N. Y., 1896; Houston's *Critical Study of Nullification in South Carolina*, N. Y., 1896.

Much detailed information may be found in Henry's *Life, Correspondence, and Speeches of Patrick Henry*, 3 vols., N. Y., 1891; Lee's *Life of Richard Henry Lee*, 2 vols., Phila., 1825; Madison's *Papers, etc.*, ed. Gilpin, 3 vols., N. Y., 1841; Tyler's *Letters and Times of the Tylers*, vols. i., ii., Richmond, 1884-85, vol. iii., Williamsburg, 1897; Conway's *Edmund Randolph*, N. Y., 1888; Conway's *Life of Thomas Paine*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1892; Grigsby's *History of the Virginia Federal Convention* (Va. Hist. Soc. Coll., N. S., ix., x.); Miss Rowland's *Life, Correspondence, and Speeches of George Mason*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1892; Miss Rowland's *Life of Charles Carroll of Carrollton*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1897; McRee's *Life of James Iredell*, 2 vols., N. Y., 1857; Stillé's *Life and Times of John Dickinson*, Phila., 1891; McMaster and Stone, *Pennsylvania and the Federal Constitution*, Phila., 1888; Miss Boudinot's *Life of Elias Boudinot*, 2 vols., Boston, 1896; Miss Morris's *Diary and Letters of Gouverneur Morris*, 2 vols.,

BIBLIOGRAPHICAL NOTE

N. Y., 1888; King's *Life and Correspondence of Rufus King*, vols. i.-iv. issued, N. Y., 1894-97, two more to come; Jay's *Correspondence and Public Papers*, 4 vols., N. Y., 1890-93; Wells's *Life of Samuel Adams*, 3 vols., Boston, 1865; Austin's *Life of Gerry*, 2 vols., Boston, 1828-29; Parson's *Memoir of Theophilus Parsons*, Boston, 1859; Belknap's *Minutes of the Convention of 1788* (Mass. Hist. Soc. Proc., 1858); *Federal Convention of Massachusetts. Debates, Resolutions, etc.*, Boston, 1788; *Debates and Proceedings in the Convention of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts held in the year 1788*, Boston, 1856; Staples, *Rhode Island in the Continental Congress*, Providence, 1870; Walker, *New Hampshire Federal Convention*, Boston, 1888; Ford, *Pamphlets on the Constitution*, Brooklyn, 1892.

A monograph of profound interest and indispensable to a correct understanding of the subject is Libby, *The Geographical Distribution of the Vote of the Thirteen States on the Federal Constitution*, Madison, Wis., 1894.

I may also mention my own books, *American Political Ideas*, N. Y., 1885; *Civil Government in the United States*, Boston, 1890; and my articles, "Great Britain," "House of Lords," and "House of Commons," in Lalor's *Cyclopædia of Political Science*, 3 vols., Chicago, 1882-84. That cyclopædia contains also numerous articles on American history by the late Prof. Alexander Johnston. One must stop somewhere, and I will conclude by saying that I do not know where one can find anything more richly suggestive than those articles of Professor Johnston, in whose premature death our country has sustained an irreparable loss.

MEMBERS OF THE FEDERAL CON- VENTION

THE names of those who for various reasons were absent when the Constitution was signed are given in italics ; the names of those who were present, but refused to sign, are given in small capitals.

New Hampshire . .	John Langdon. Nicholas Gilman.
Massachusetts . .	ELBRIDGE GERRY. Nathaniel Gorham. Rufus King. <i>Caleb Strong.</i>
Connecticut . . .	William Samuel Johnson. Roger Sherman. <i>Oliver Ellsworth.</i>
New York	<i>Robert Yates.</i> Alexander Hamilton. <i>John Lansing.</i>
New Jersey . . .	William Livingston. David Brearley. <i>William Churchill Houston.</i> William Paterson. Jonathan Dayton.
Pennsylvania . . .	Benjamin Franklin. Thomas Mifflin. Robert Morris. George Clymer. Thomas Fitzsimmons. Jared Ingersoll.

MEMBERS OF FEDERAL CONVENTION

	James Wilson.
	Gouverneur Morris.
Delaware	George Read.
	Gunning Bedford.
	John Dickinson.
	Richard Bassett.
	Jacob Broom.
Maryland	James McHenry.
	Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer.
	Daniel Carroll. ¹
	<i>John Francis Mercer.</i>
	<i>Luther Martin.</i>
Virginia	George Washington.
	EDMUND RANDOLPH.
	John Blair.
	James Madison.
	GEORGE MASON.
	<i>George Wytbe.</i>
	<i>James McClurg.</i>
North Carolina . .	<i>Alexander Martin.</i>
	<i>William Richardson Davie.</i>
	William Blount.
	Richard Dobbs Spaight.
	Hugh Williamson.
South Carolina . .	John Rutledge.
	Charles Cotesworth Pinckney.
	Charles Pinckney.
	Pierce Butler.
Georgia	William Few.
	Abraham Baldwin.
	<i>William Pierce.</i>
	<i>William Houston.</i>

MEMBERS OF FEDERAL CONVENTION

Of those who signed their names to the Federal Constitution, the six following were signers of the Declaration of Independence : —

Roger Sherman,
Benjamin Franklin,
Robert Morris,
George Clymer,
James Wilson,
George Read.

And the five following were signers of the Articles of Confederation : —

Roger Sherman,
Robert Morris,
Gouverneur Morris,
John Dickinson,
Daniel Carroll.

The ten following were appointed as delegates to the Federal Convention, but never took their seats : —

New Hampshire . . .	John Pickering. Benjamin West.
Massachusetts . . .	Francis Dana.
New Jersey . . .	John Nelson. Abraham Clark.
Virginia	Patrick Henry (declined).
North Carolina . . .	Richard Caswell (resigned). Willie Jones (declined).
Georgia	George Walton. Nathaniel Pendleton.

No delegates were appointed by Rhode Island. In a letter addressed to “the Honourable the Chairman of the General Convention,” and dated “Providence,

MEMBERS OF FEDERAL CONVENTION

May 11, 1787," several leading citizens of Rhode Island expressed their regret that their state should not be represented on so momentous an occasion. At the same time, says the letter, "the result of your deliberations . . . we still hope may finally be approved and adopted by this state, for which we pledge our influence and best exertions." The letter was signed by John Brown, Joseph Nightingale, Levi Hall, Philip Allen, Paul Allen, Jabez Bowen, Nicholas Brown, John Jinkes, Welcome Arnold, William Russell, Jeremiah Olney, William Barton, and Thomas Lloyd Halsey. The letter was presented to the Convention on May 28th by Gouverneur Morris, and, "being read, was ordered to lie on the table for further consideration." See Elliot's *Debates*, v. 125.

The Constitution was ratified by the thirteen states, as follows :—

1. Delaware Dec. 6, 1787.
2. Pennsylvania . . . Dec. 12, 1787.
3. New Jersey . . . Dec. 18, 1787.
4. Georgia Jan. 2, 1788.
5. Connecticut . . . Jan. 9, 1788.
6. Massachusetts . . Feb. 6, 1788.
7. Maryland April 28, 1788.
8. South Carolina . . May 23, 1788.
9. New Hampshire . . June 21, 1788.
10. Virginia June 25, 1788.
11. New York July 26, 1788.
12. North Carolina . . Nov. 21, 1789.
13. Rhode Island . . May 29, 1790.

PRESIDENTS, CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

PRESIDENTS OF THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS

1. Peyton Randolph of Virginia . Sept. 5, 1774.
2. Henry Middleton of South Caro-
lina Oct. 22, 1774.
Peyton Randolph May 10, 1775.
3. John Hancock of Massachusetts May 24, 1775.
4. Henry Laurens of South Caro-
lina Nov. 1, 1777.
5. John Jay of New York . . Dec. 10, 1778.
6. Samuel Huntington of Connecti-
cut Sept. 28, 1779.
7. Thomas McKean of Delaware July 10, 1781.
8. John Hanson of Maryland . Nov. 5, 1781.
9. Elias Boudinot of New Jersey . Nov. 4, 1782.
10. Thomas Mifflin of Pennsylvania Nov. 3, 1783.
11. Richard Henry Lee of Virginia Nov. 30, 1784.
12. Nathaniel Gorham of Massa-
chusetts June 6, 1786.
13. Arthur St. Clair of Pennsylvania Feb. 2, 1787.
14. Cyrus Griffin of Virginia . . Jan. 22, 1788.

GENERAL INDEX
TO THE HISTORICAL WRITINGS

The volumes covered by this index are as follows : —

- 1, 2, 3. THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.
- 4, 5. OLD VIRGINIA AND HER NEIGHBOURS.
6. THE BEGINNINGS OF NEW ENGLAND.
- 7, 8. THE DUTCH AND QUAKER COLONIES IN AMERICA.
9. NEW FRANCE AND NEW ENGLAND.
- 10, 11. THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.
12. THE CRITICAL PERIOD OF AMERICAN HISTORY.

GENERAL INDEX

TO THE HISTORICAL WRITINGS

For capes, forts, lakes, and treaties, see these words. For surnames beginning with the preposition da, de, d', or van, see the name following the prefix. For maps and their makers, see under Geography. For minor titles, omitted from the General Index, see the separate indexes.

ABBOT, GEORGE, Archbishop of Canterbury, interest in Virginia, 4. 80.

Abbott, C. C., palæolithic discoveries, I. 9, II n.

Abenaki Indians. See Norridgewock.

Abercrombie, James, arrives with Loudoun, 9. 306; expedition against Ticonderoga, 317-325.

Aborigines in America, I. 5-15; and the Indians, 17, 18 n.

Acadia, annexed to Massachusetts, 6. 344; Monts's colony, 8. 395, 9. 50-58; meaning of the word, 50; Monts sells, 76; restored to France, 92, 97; Alexander's grant, 93; contest between La Tour and D'Aunay, 93-96; conquest by New England, 96; Temple's grant, 96; passes finally to England, 234; extent, 234, 249. See also Port Royal.

Adam of Bremen, his *Historia Ecclesiastica* and Vinland, I. 240-244; Columbus's knowledge of his work, 2. 60-62.

Adams, John, defends the soldiers in Boston Massacre trial, 10. 86; on destruction of the tea, 108; delegate to Congress, 124, 155; suggests Washington as commander-in-chief, 159; chief justice of

Massachusetts, 185; resolution for formation of state governments, 214; advocates independence, 224; on committee to draft Declaration of Independence, 227; on fall of Ticonderoga, 310; distrusts the army, II. 37; criticises Washington's military policy, 42; on conduct of the British and American armies, 137 n.; peace envoy, 12. 26; dislikes the French, 26; and the separate negotiation, 27; credit for the negotiation, 41; Minister to Great Britain, 164; threatens trade reprisals, 166-168; begs money for Congress, 185-187; and the Tripolitan envoy, 191; vice-president, 417.

Adams, Samuel, on the stamp duty, 10. 19; Stamp Act declaration, 26; on taxation and representation, 55; decides for independence, 63, 67; *Vindex* letters, 70; attempts to arrest for treason, 70, 140-143; in Boston Massacre episode, 81; inaugurates committees of correspondence, 92, 93; connection with Boston Tea Party, 100-107; circular letter on the Port Bill, 121; manœuvres election of delegates to Congress, 123; at-

GENERAL INDEX

- tempt to corrupt, 140; joy at outbreak of war, 145; exempted from offer of amnesty, 161; urges independence, 186; answers Quakers' objections to the Revolution, 219; on the Declaration of Independence, 229, **II.** 251; relation to the Conway Cabal, 40-42; and the half-pay measures, 12. 135; opposes pardon of Shays insurgents, 218; attitude towards the Constitution, 381, 391-393, 396; loss of public favour, 415-417.
- Adirondacks, Algonquin Indians, **I.** 52, 9. 43, 63.
- Adobe brick, criterion of barbarism, **I.** 36; use in pueblos, 98-100.
- Africa, ancient theories on circumnavigability, **I.** 340-342; ancient voyages along coast, 342-348; Mela's map, 349; Portuguese voyages on western coast, 371-375; circumnavigated, 381; origin of name, 2. 369 n.; Dieppe traders on western coast, 9. 2.
- Agriculture, and horticulture, **I.** 57; Peruvian, 3. 113-116, 122, 169; in Virginia, 4. 270-272, 5. 2, 203-205; in New England, 36; in Maryland, 313; in North Carolina, 366; in South Carolina, 380, 381; in the Netherlands, 7. 15; in New Netherland, 188, 197, 198. *See also* Manors, Tobacco.
- Aguado, Juan, royal agent to Hayti, 2. 174, 307; credentials, 308 n.
- Ailly, Pierre d', *Imago Mundi*, 2. 46; at Saint Dié, 361.
- Alaminos, Antonio de, Spanish pilot, in Córdova's expedition, 3. 31.
- Albany, N. Y., French fur-traders' blockhouse on site, 7. 79, 92; Fort Nassau built, 123; first settlement, 135; pre-Revolutionary importance, 241, 8. 66; called Beverwyck, 7. 243; named, 8. 1; and Leisler, 223, 227, 420; in 1765, 317-320.
- Albany Congress, plan of union, 5. 446, 9. 280, **IO.** 9-13; purpose, 9. 279, **IO.** 8; attendance, 9. 279.
- Albemarle, Duke of. *See* Monk.
- Albemarle colony. *See* North Carolina.
- Albigenses, crusade against, 6. 46, 7. 44, 8. 394; survivals, 7. 47.
- Alcántara, Martinez de, half brother of Pizarro, in Peru, 3. 212, 236.
- Alexander VI., pope, donation to Spain, 2. 141; bull of demarcation, 142-148.
- Alexander (Wamsutta), Wampanoag chief, death, 267.
- Alexander, James, Jacobite, 8. 290 n.; Zenger's counsel, 291, 292.
- Alexander, Sir William, grant of Nova Scotia, 9. 93.
- Alexander, William, called Lord Stirling, at battle of Long Island, **IO.** 243; taken prisoner, 244; exchanged, 254.
- Alfragan, Arabian astronomer, influence on Columbus, 2. 51 n.
- Algonquins, Indian group, culture status, **I.** 35, 52, 57; location and tribes, 51, 4. 341, 5. 67, 6. 147, 7. 205, 9. 42-44; reduced by Iroquois, 1. 56; friendship necessary to the French, 9. 63, 64. *See also* Indians.
- Allefonsce, Jean or Jehan, Robertval's lieutenant, voyage on North American coast, 3. 325, 7. 79, 89, 9. 27; purpose, 24, 28; mistaken ideas of voyage, 25; narrative, 26; death, 32.
- Allegiance in the Revolution, Lord Howe's proclamations, **IO.** 267, 365; Washington's counter-proclamation, 276; in occupied territory, **II.** 138 n., 202; British proclamations in the South, 202, 217, 218.
- Allen, Ethan, *Oracles of Reason*, **IO.**

GENERAL INDEX

- 153; captures and commands Ticonderoga, 153, 154.
- Alliacus, Petrus. *See* Ailly.
- Allouez, Claude, Jesuit missionary, explores Lake Superior, 9. 101; hears of the Mississippi, 106; oration to the Indians, 108.
- Almagro, Diego, partnership for expedition to Peru, 3. 206; character, 206; in first expeditions, 207-209; dislike of Pizarro's brothers, 212; in Peru, 220, 226-230; executed, 230; supporters kill Pizarro, 235.
- Almagro the lad, proclaimed governor of Peru, 3. 236; defeat and execution, 237.
- Altona, Dutch province in Delaware, 5. 162.
- Alvarado, Pedro de, called Tonatiuh by the Aztecs, 3. 28 n.; in Grijalva's expedition, 34; grudge against Grijalva, 36; precipitates conflict with Aztecs, 78-81; in Peru, 225; and Las Casas, 299.
- Amazon River, Pinzon's discovery, 2. 322; Orellana's voyage, 3. 233; origin of name, 234 n.
- Amazonian Indians, 3. 95.
- America, antiquity of man in, 1. 5-15; former connection with Old World, 17; peopled from Old World, 17, 24; as a field of archæological study, 43-45, 67, 170; discovery from Greenland inevitable, 204; unrecorded pre-Columbian voyages, 291; barrenness of pre-Columbian voyages, 292-296; great step toward discovery, 321; prophecies of discovery, 2. 36 n., 43, 44; discovery an evolution, 133, 398, 3. 386-388; relation of Columbus and Cabral to discovery, 2. 325; naming, 359, 366, 369, 371-398; realization of a western hemisphere, 385, 413, 418, 450, 3. 327; progress of discovery, 29; discovery as a unique event, 387; earliest English reference to name, 4. 15; considered the Devil's domain, 9. 144. *See also* Geography, Indians, North America, South America, Vinland, Voyages.
- Americans, self-restraint, 12. 278.
- Amherst, Sir Jeffry, English commander-in-chief in America, 9. 317; expedition against Louisburg, 329-332; plan of campaign for 1759, 344; advance on Ticonderoga, 347; fails to support Wolfe, 348; captures Montreal, 359.
- Amidas, Philip, reconnoitring voyage with Barlow, 4. 37.
- Amnesty, Gage's offer, 10. 161. *See also* Allegiance, Conciliation.
- Anáhuac, no empire, 3. 5 n.
- Andagoya, Pascual de, voyage toward Peru, 3. 206.
- Andastes, Susquehannocks, 9. 48.
- André, John, corresponds with Arnold, 11. 257; meeting with Arnold, 261-266; arrest and execution, 267, 273-281.
- Andringa, Joris, Dutch governor of New York, 8. 38.
- Andros, Sir Edmund, governor of Virginia, 5. 137; quarrel with Blair, 138; removed, 139; governor of Jersey, 139; character, 6. 334, 8. 43, 48, 112, 165; viceroy in America, 6. 334, 8. 205; tyranny, 6. 336-339, 8. 206, 9. 202; overthrown, 6. 340, 8. 208; early life, 44; arrival in New York as governor, 45; and the oath of allegiance, 46-48; and the demand for representation, 49-51; interest in New York city, 51-53; and New England in 1675, 53-58, 67, 70, 71; conference with the Iroquois, 62-65, 9. 103; establishes board of Indian commissioners, 8. 66; and King Philip's War, 67-71; knighted, 71; and the New Jersey settlements,

GENERAL INDEX

- 109-111, 163-165; complaints against, 195.
- Anian, mythical strait, 3. 383 n.
- Animals, pleistocene, 1. 15; domestic, as criterion of barbarism, 32; domestic, introduced by Europeans, 32, 253, 2. 151, 154; no domestic, left in Vinland, 1, 252-255; domestic, in Peru, 3. 113; influence of cattle on social development, 117-120; etymological influence of cattle, 120 n.; in Virginia, 5. 2.
- Annapolis, Md., founded, 4. 366; the seat of government, 5. 140, 188.
- Annapolis, N. S. *See* Port Royal.
- Annapolis Convention, 12. 255-257.
- Anne Arundel town. *See* Annapolis, Md.
- Antarctic explorations, 2. 331, 7. 65.
- Antilia, fabulous island, 2. 50.
- Antilles, first appearance of name, 2. 236.
- Antinomian episode in Massachusetts, 6. 142-145, 8. 118; and the Great Awakening, 9. 228.
- Antipodes, Cosmas on, 1. 307; Mela on, 353; and Ceylon, 354. *See also* New World.
- Apache Indians, 1. 47.
- Appleton, Samuel, in attack on Narragansett stronghold, 6. 283.
- Aquedneck, R. I., settlements, 6. 146, 201.
- Aranda, Count, Spanish envoy, prophecy on America, 12. 22.
- Araucanians, 3. 96, 232.
- Archæology, importance of American, 1. 43-45, 170. *See also* Aborigines, Indians.
- Archdale, John, Quaker governor of Carolina, 5. 340.
- Archer, Gabriel, enmity to Captain John Smith, 4. 146; return to Virginia, 178.
- Architecture, relation to culture, 1. 35; social basis of Indian, 77. *See also* Houses.
- Arctic explorations, 7. 63-65, 96, 100, 107. *See also* Northwest passage.
- Argall, Samuel, arrives in Virginia, 4. 168; brings supplies, 190; seizes Pocahontas, 198; attacks the French at Mount Desert, 201, 9. 77-79; destroys Port Royal, 4. 201, 9. 79; at Manhattan, 4. 201, 7. 119; deputy-governor, 4. 204; charges against, 215; removed, 218; knighted, 218; royal commissioner to investigate Virginia, 254; seeks to become governor, 283.
- Ari Thorgilsson (Fróðhi), first Icelandic historian, works, 1. 236; mentions Vinland, 237-239.
- Arickarees, Indian group, 1. 50.
- Aristotle, on earth's shape and western route to Indies, 2. 41.
- Arlington, Earl of, grant of Virginia, 5. 62.
- Armada, Spanish, effect of destruction, 3. 394, 395, 4. 46, 5. 440, 6. 72; defeat, 4. 42-44.
- Armed Neutrality. *See* Neutrality.
- Armstrong, John, at Brandywine, 10. 367, 370; at Germantown, 374.
- Armstrong, Major John, Newburgh address, 12. 129.
- Army, American, in the Revolution: efficiency of minute men, 10. 148; Congress adopts, 156; Washington commands, 157, 173; condition before Boston, 160, 173, 181-183; personnel of the command, 174-181; hardships in invasion of Canada, 195; condition in New York campaign, 223, 239; winter quarters in New Jersey, 275; foreign volunteers, 283; unorganized condition, 283-286, 11. 31; state jealousy in, 10. 286; reorganization of state troops, 288; United States troops, 289;

GENERAL INDEX

- congressional mismanagement, **II.** 33; Valley Forge, 34; political appointments, 35-38; Conway Cabal, 40-55; Steuben trains, 62-65; value of light infantry, 65; compared with the British, 136 n.-139 n.; plan to arm negroes, 206; partisan commanders, 220-223; condition of southern, 225; condition in 1780, 240-242, 288; mutiny, 288-292; backwoods militia, 294; general furlough, **II.** 60; disbanded, 61; compared with Civil War army, 120-123; feared, 125, 133, 140; question of half-pay, 126-128, 132, 134; Newburgh address, 129-132; troops drive away Congress, 133; order of the Cincinnati, 136-139. *See also* battles and commanders by name.
- Army, British, in the French and Indian war: Braddock's force, 9, 281; ignorant of Indian warfare, 283; Johnson's force, 296; rank of colonial officers, 308; Abercrombie's force, 318; force against Louisburg, 329; Forbes's force, 337; in 1759, 343.
- In the Revolution: troops in Boston, **IO.** 67, 82, 116, 132; difficult to recruit, 188; German troops hired, 189; conduct in New Jersey, 276; Burgoyne's army, 314; Indian auxiliaries, 314, 322, 335; desertions, **II.** 81; marauding expeditions, 132; compared with American, 136 n.-139 n.; dependence on the navy, 142. *See also* battles and commanders by name.
- Army, French, in French and Indian war: force sent over with Dieskau, 9, 281; character of the Indian allies, 308, 310, 313-315; at Quebec, 350.
- In the Revolution: arrives, **II.** 245; march to Virginia, 334; share in Yorktown campaign, 342; returns to France, **II.** 60. *See also* Rochambeau.
- Army, standing, colonial, in New York, 8, 304; advised for the colonies, **IO.** 17; Samuel Adams on, 70; question of quartering, 67, 115; Warren's address on, 139; feared, 189, 284, **II.** 32, **II.** 384.
- Arnold, Benedict, joins American army, **IO.** 149; expedition against Ticonderoga, 152-155; captures St. John's, 154; character, 175, 181, 198; invasion of Canada, 194-197; resists Carleton's invasion, 292-295; military reputation, 295; and Congress, 296, 343, **II.** 248; suffers for friendship with Schuyler, **IO.** 301; defeats Tryon at Ridgefield, 304; major-general, 304; relieves Fort Stanwix, 344-346; in Saratoga campaign, 382-389; commands Philadelphia, **II.** 248; charges against and reprimand, 249, 253-258; betrothal and marriage, 250, 255; dislikes French alliance, 252; influenced by moderate loyalists, 252; opens correspondence with Clinton, 256; and Monk, 258; treason and flight, 259-273; attempt of Americans to get possession of, 276; in the British army, 281-284, 301, 338; in England, 283, 285; family, 284; death, 286; and Charles Lee, 286.
- Arrapaho Indians, **I.** 51.
- Articles of Confederation, adoption, **II.** 31, **II.** 111; author, 111; interstate relationship under, 112; provisions, 112-117; fatal defects, 117-120, 167, 170; failure of impost amendment, 258-261. *See also* Union.
- Arundel of Wardour, Lord, interest in Virginia, 4, 66.
- Asbury, Francis, Methodist preacher, **II.** 101; bishop, 102.

GENERAL INDEX

- Ashburton, Lord, in Rockingham's ministry, 12. 6.
- Ashe, Samuel, commands North Carolina militia, 11. 203; defeated at Briar Creek, 204.
- Ashley, Sir Anthony, interest in Virginia, 4. 81.
- Asia, seat of human race, 1. 4; absorbs external interest of Europe, 300-303, 323; visited by Nestorian missionaries, 309; Marco Polo's contribution to knowledge of, 328; myths, 329-331; origin of name, 2. 367 n.-369 n. *See also* North America and countries by name.
- Assemblies, colonial, strife with royal and proprietary governors, 5. 175-178, 352, 433-439, 442, 442 n.-445 n., 8. 18, 250-252, 266, 278-280, 284, 285, 305, 9. 242, 262, 272, 273, 277, 285, 10. 16, 12. 78; retained in state governments, 77, 80. *See also* House of Burgesses.
- Astrolabe, necessary to systematic ocean navigation, 1. 297; introduction, 362; Behaim improves, 2. 73.
- Atahualpa, usurping Inca, 3. 129, 213, 241. *See also* Peru.
- Athabaskans, Indian group, 1. 47.
- Attiwendaronk Indians, 9. 48, 49.
- Aubert, Thomas, alleged voyage, 7. 68, 9. 4-6.
- Augusta, Ga., during the Revolution, 11. 202, 204, 220, 318.
- Aunay Charnisay, Charles, Seigneur d', contest with La Tour in Acadia, 94-96; widow marries La Tour, 96.
- Avalon, Baltimore's province in Newfoundland, 4. 300, 305-308; fate, 312.
- Avila. *See* Gonzalez Pedrarias.
- Ayllon, Lucas Vasquez d', search for northwest passage, 3. 321; attempted colony in Virginia, 321, 4. 109 n.; death, 3. 321.
- Aymaras, Peruvians, 3. 125.
- Azores, Islands, visited by Portuguese, 1. 369; colonized, 374; Columbus at, 2. 124.
- Aztecs, Mexican Indians, culture, 1. 25, 36, 39-41, 118 n., 142, 3. 172-176; confederacy, 1. 118-121, 3. 14; tribal organization, 1. 121, 124-127, 130-133, 3. 72-74, 81; communism, 1. 122; clan, 122, 123; phratry, 123; head of confederacy, 127; collection of tribute, 133; compared with Iroquois confederacy, 135; priesthood, 136; human sacrifice, 136-138; no caste, 136 n.; slavery, 139; kinship through male, 140; marriage, 141; private property, 142; criticism of Morgan's views concerning, 143-150; at Tollan, 3. 9; relation to Toltecs and Chichimecs, 9-11; chiefs and wars, 13-16; folk-lore of god Quetzalcoatl and advent of Spaniards, 20, 29, 41, 42, 78; method of warfare, 45 n. *See also* Mexicans, Mexico City.
- Aztlan, situation, 3. 8.
- Baccalaos, early name for Newfoundland, 2. 237.
- Bacon, Nathaniel, of King's Creek, relation with his kinsman the rebel, 5. 74, 79, 87, 102 n., 105.
- Bacon, Nathaniel, the rebel, early life, 5. 74; councillor, 75; character, 75, 103; unauthorized attack on the Indians, 76; arrest and submission, 77-81; flight, 87; forces a commission from the governor, 87, 88; subdues the Indians, 88, 95; proclaimed a rebel, 89; counter-manifesto, 90-94; policy, 94-100, 112-118, 121-124; captures and burns Jamestown, 101-103; plunders the aristocrats, 103-105; death, 105; collapse of the rebellion, 107; character and fate of his

GENERAL INDEX

- followers, 107-110, 119-121; as a historical figure, 125.
- Bacon, Roger, on westward route to Asia, 1. 322, 2. 45; and the compass, 1. 361; and *Imago Mundi*, 2. 52 n.-54 n.
- Bacon's rebellion, causes, 5. 52-87, 112-125; progress and collapse, 87-111; significance, 111; and Shays's, 123.
- Badajos congress, 3. 318.
- Baffin, William, search for north-west passage, 3. 381.
- Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, discovers Pacific Ocean, 2. 415, 3. 187; escapes from creditors, 182; in command at Darien, 183, 185, 187; and his enemies, 185, 187, 189, 191, 194-196; and Peru, 187, 189, 192-194; character, 192, 198; executed, 197.
- Baldwin, Abraham, and the Connecticut compromise, 12. 297.
- Baltimore, Lord. *See* Calvert.
- Baltimore, Md., growth, 5. 314.
- Bandelier, F. A., researches on Mexican society, 1. 117, 118 n.
- Bannocks, Indian group, 1. 47.
- Baptists, persecution in Massachusetts, 6. 216-224, 225 n.; and in New Netherland, 7. 269; Seventh Day, 8. 408; profit by the Great Awakening, 9. 231.
- Barbarism, and savagery, 1. 29-31; three periods and the Indians, 32-37, 136; and civilization, 38; value of the term, 42; exemplification in America, 43-45; importance of middle period, 140; history of the word, 376 n.
- Barbary States, piracy and blackmail, 5. 396, 12. 188-192; character, 187.
- Barbastro, Luís de, in Tuzulutlan, 3. 298; death, 341.
- Bardsen, Ivar, on Greenland, 1. 184 n., 202, 275.
- Barentz, William, voyages in Arctic Ocean, 3. 378, 7. 64.
- Barlow, Arthur, reconnoitring voyage, 4. 37.
- Barnwell, John, defeats the Tuscaroras, 5. 354, 355.
- Barons' war, importance, 6. 36.
- Barré, Isaac, and colonial resistance, 10. 27, 70-72, 112.
- Barter, in Peru, 3. 171; post-Revolutionary revival, 12. 196.
- Baum, Friedrich, Hessian officer, at Bennington, 10. 329, 332.
- Baxter, George, and Stuyvesant, 7. 297, 299, 310, 311, 313.
- Baxter, Joseph, and Rale, 9. 239.
- Bay of All Saints, Brazil, Vespucci names, 2. 329, 330 n.; mistake on early maps, 329 n., 348.
- Bayard, Nicholas, ancestry, 7. 231; and the Leisler rebellion, 210, 216, 219, 220, 231, 237; accused of complicity with pirates, 267, 268; convicted for treason, 276; release, 277.
- Beaujeu, at Fort Duquesne, 9. 288-290; death, 290.
- Beaumarchais, P. A. C. de, Vergennes's secret agent, 10. 280.
- Beckford, William, member of Parliament, advice on colonial affairs, 10. 38, 71.
- Bedford, Gunning, member of the Federal Convention, on equal state representation, 12. 296.
- Behaim, Martin, improved astrolabe, 2. 73; globe, 344, 345 n.; career, 344 n.
- Bellingham, Richard, treatment of Quakers, 6. 232.
- Bellomont, Lord, and Kidd, 8. 264, 268, 269, 273; character, 265; governor of New York, Massachusetts, and New Hampshire, 266; favours the Leislerians, 266-268; death, 274.
- Bennett, Richard, Puritan leader in Virginia, 4. 354; in Maryland, 365; parliamentary commissioner, 368-370, 372; governor of Virginia, 368.

GENERAL INDEX

- Bennington, Vt., battle, 10. 328-334, 11. 298
- Bering, Vitus, voyages, 3. 383-385; death, 385.
- Berkeley, Lord, grant of New Jersey, 5. 167, 8. 12; a proprietor of Carolina, 5. 317; sells New Jersey, 8. 19.
- Berkeley, Sir William, father, 4. 80; governor of Virginia, 297; and the Puritans, 355, 356, 365; subdues Indians, 357; resigns governorship, 368; assembly elects him governor, 5. 23; receives royal commission, 25; character, 63-67; corrupt administration, 65, 92-94; long assembly, 66, 77; and the Indian troubles, 72-74; and Bacon's rebellion, 76-81, 87-89, 101-103, 107-110; ordered to England, 110; death, 111; interested in Virginia, 129; on education, 286; a proprietor of Carolina, 317; severs Albemarle from Virginia, 323.
- Bermudas, Vesputius at, 2. 279, 314 n., 4. 175; Gates and Somers wrecked on, 175; named, 175; superstitions concerning, 176; Somers dies at, 190; tobacco monopoly, 285.
- Bernaldez, Andres, on Columbus, 2. 4, 11, 177 n.
- Bernard, Francis, governor of Massachusetts, advises colonial consolidation, 10. 6; and the assembly, 16; and colonial resistance, 56, 57, 61, 68; recalled and knighted, 73.
- Berry, Sir John, royal commissioner, 5. 107, 111.
- Béthencourt, Jean de, colony in Canaries, 1. 370, 9. 2.
- Beverly, Major Robert, opposes Bacon, 5. 104, 107; clerk of assembly, 127; and the royal commissioners, 127; order for removal revoked, 129; more troubles, 132, 133.
- Beverly, Robert, historian, on slavery in Virginia, 5. 227; on Virginians, 243; as a historian, 297.
- Bible, translated by Wyclif, 6. 50; influence on English life and literature, 62-65; Puritan method of interpreting, 180; reading, enforced, 182; Indian translation, 257; Erasmus's edition, 7. 21; dissemination in the Netherlands, 21.
- Biblioteca Colombina, 2. 3.
- Biencourt, son of Poutrincourt and Port Royal, 9. 72, 75, 79; death, 93.
- Bill of rights, absence of, an objection to the Constitution, 12. 376, 394.
- Bimini, Indian reference to island of, 3. 315.
- Bjarni Grimolfsson, goes to Vinland, 1. 192 n.; fate, 194 n.
- Bjarni Herjulfsson, viking, sees strange lands, 1. 186.
- "Blackbeard." See Thatch.
- Blackfeet, Algonquin Indians, 1. 51.
- Blackstock Hill, S. C., battle, 11. 299.
- Blackstone, William, settled on site of Boston, 6. 111.
- Blackwell, Francis, attempt to settle Pilgrims in Virginia, 6. 95.
- Blair, James, ecclesiastical commissioner in Virginia, 5. 135, 305; founds William and Mary College, 135-137; president, 137; quarrels, 138, 142, 454.
- Blake, Joseph, governor of South Carolina, 5. 340.
- Blanca, Count Florida, abolishes Indian slavery, 3. 303; American intrigues, 11. 163-166.
- Bland, Giles, Bacon's lieutenant, 5. 101, 121.
- Bland, John, memorial on Navigation Act, 5. 54-59.
- Block, Adrian, on coast of New England, 7. 120.

GENERAL INDEX

- Block Island, ravaged, 6. 157; discovered, 7. 75.
- Blockade, British doctrine, 11. 180; Catherine's proclamation, 182.
- Bloody Brook, Mass., massacre, 6. 277.
- Blue Laws, legendary, 6. 166.
- Blunt, Tom, Tuscarora chief, 5. 353.
- Bobadilla, Francisco de, royal agent in Hayti, 2. 192-195; death, 202.
- Bogardus, Everardus, second clergyman in New Netherland, arrives, 7. 168; character, 189; and Kieft, 228; drowned, 237.
- Bohemia, claim of influence on America, 7. 38.
- Bohemia Manor, Md., 5. 164; Labyrinth settlement, 165.
- Bois, Louis du, leads Walloon emigration, 8. 397.
- Bon Homme Richard, American ship, equipment and crew, 11. 150, 154; battle with the *Serapis*, 154-159.
- Bonnet, Stede, the pirate, 5. 429-431.
- Boone, Daniel, pioneer in Kentucky, 11. 116, 122.
- Boonesborough, Ky., founded, 11. 122.
- Boroughs in Virginia, 4. 220, 265-268.
- Boscawen, Edward, expedition against Louisburg, 9. 329.
- Boston, Mass., settler on site, 6. 111; founded, 127; during King Philip's war, 279; population in 1675, 323; town meeting on surrender of charter, 332; relations with Andros, 336; establishment of a post with New York, 8. 21-25; Huguenot settlers, 401; witchcraft cases, 9. 146-149, 152-155; writs of assistance episode, 10. 14; town meeting on stamp duty, 19; reception of Stamp Act, 21; Stamp Act riots, 27; riot over Hancock's sloop and impressment, 60; vilified in England, 61; troops to coerce, 62, 116, 132; quartering of troops, 67-70; behaviour of troops, 76; "Massacre," 77-87; commemorations of it, 87, 139; town meeting on tea question, 100; reception and destruction of the tea, 100-107; Port Bill, 112, 116, 121; Regulation Act defied, 125; hardships, 139; siege begins, 148; progress of siege, 160, 187; British evacuate, 199-202; instructs for independence, 214. *See also* Massachusetts.
- Botetourt, Lord, governor of Virginia, 10. 75.
- Boudinot, Elias, Huguenot ancestry, 8. 405; on Washington at Monmouth, 11. 80 n.
- Boundaries, London and Plymouth companies, 4. 71-74, 6. 90; Maryland and Pennsylvania, 5. 168, 8. 172-174; conflicting, 4. 337, 5. 166, 6. 109, 112, 114, 126, 190; Massachusetts, 114; New Netherland, 7. 122; settlement of Connecticut and New York, 8. 5-7; line between East and West Jersey, 163; Vergennes desires to limit United States, 11. 164; in treaty of 1783, 12. 21-23, 29, 39.
- Bourlamaque, Chevalier de, evacuates Ticonderoga, 9. 347.
- Bowdoin, James, ancestry, 8. 401; and Shays's rebellion, 12. 214, 215, 218.
- Boyle, Bernardo, apostolic vicar for the Indies, 2. 151; abets disorders in Hayti, 171.
- Braddock, Edward, sent to America, 9. 281; preparation to march against Fort Duquesne, 283, 285; character, 283; underestimates the Indians and militia, 283-285, 287; march and defeat, 286-292;

GENERAL INDEX

- death, 292; retreat of his forces, 292.
- Bradford, Andrew, son of William, printer in Philadelphia, 8. 376; *American Magazine*, 376.
- Bradford, William, of Plymouth, in Scrooby congregation, 6. 86; governor of Plymouth, 86, 100; history of Plymouth, 86, 351; in Holland, 88; sails for America, 98; discussion with Minuit, 7. 143.
- Bradford, William, New York newspaper, 8. 290; first printer in Philadelphia, 375.
- Bradstreet, Anne, verses, 6. 326, 327 n.
- Bradstreet, John, English colonel, ability, 9. 333; captures Fort Frontenac, 334.
- Bradstreet, Simon, governor of Massachusetts, 6. 326, 341.
- Brandywine Creek, Penn., battle, 10. 366-371.
- Brant, Joseph (Thayendanegea), Mohawk chief, aids the British in the Revolution, 10. 335, 338, 11. 104, 109-111, 113; contrasts of character, 101-104; not at Wyoming massacre, 109.
- Brattle, Thomas, liberal views, 9. 203; gives land for Brattle Church, 204.
- Brattle Church, Boston, founded, 9. 204; conditions of membership, 204; recognized, 206.
- Brazil, Ojeda's expedition, 2. 319; Pinzon's expedition, 321; Lepe's voyage, 322; Cabral takes possession for Portugal, 323; called Vera Cruz and Santa Cruz, 324; Vesputius's expedition, 327; and early use of term America, 379, 381; why so named, 382; Huguenot colony in, 3; 342, 9. 33; Dutch in, 7. 62.
- Brazil, fabulous island, 2. 50 n., 215, 3. 356; origin of name, 2. 383.
- Brearley, David, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271; on equal state representation, 293.
- Brent, Giles, deputy-governor of Maryland, 4. 359; manor, 5. 170.
- "Brethren of the Coast," buccaneers, 5. 403, 405.
- Brewster, William, early life, 6. 81; becomes Separatist, 85; in Holland, 88; sails for America, 98.
- Breymann, H. C., Hessian colonel, at Bennington, 10. 330, 333; killed at Freeman's Farm, 388.
- Briar Creek, Ga., battle, 11. 204.
- Brinton, D. G., translator of Maya documents, 1. 159.
- Bristol, England, maritime adventures from, 2. 215, 217.
- Brittany, France, race characteristics, 9. 1; mariners, 2; early interest in Newfoundland fisheries, 3; objects to trade monopoly in Canada, 36, 57.
- Brockholls, Anthony, lieutenant-governor of New York, 8. 45; and the custom duties, 195.
- Brodhead, Daniel, devastates Indian country, 11. 129.
- Brooke, Lord, grant in Connecticut, 6. 150, 7. 176.
- Brooke, Robert, Maryland priest, reprimanded, 5. 192.
- Brookfield, Mass., Indian attack, 6. 273.
- Brooklyn, N. Y., beginnings, 7. 135, 201; in 1679, 8. 89.
- Brooklyn Heights, L. I., strategic importance, 10. 242; American troops withdrawn, 246-248. *See also* Long Island battle.
- "Brother Jonathan," 10. 239 n.
- Browne, Robert, leader of Separatists, 6. 79; recants, 81.
- Browne, Thomas, loyalist commander at Augusta, reprisals, 11. 204.
- Brownists. *See* Separatists.

GENERAL INDEX

- Buccaneering, origin of name, 5. 405. *See also* Piracy.
- Buckingham, Duke of, member of Council for New England, 6. 108.
- Buford, Abraham, American colonel, defeated at Waxhaws, 11. 216.
- Bull, Thomas, and Andros at Saybrook, 8. 56.
- Bunker Hill battle, 10. 161-172.
- Burgoyne, John, British general, sent to Boston, 10. 134; part assigned in invasion of New York, 307; advance, 314; captures Ticonderoga, 315; underestimates his enemy, 317; obstructed march, 319; lack of loyalist support, 321; employs and misunderstands Indians, 322; Jane McCrea episode, 324-328; battle of Bennington, 328-334; critical situation, 347, 380, 386; abandoned by Howe, 361; battles of Freeman's Farm, 381-390; surrounded, 390; Clinton's move to aid, 391; surrender, 392-395; on Schuyler, 396; Congress repudiates the convention, 397-401; paroled, 401; in Parliament, 401, 11. 67; end of his army, 10. 401. *See also* Howe (William), St. Leger.
- Burke, Ædanus, opposition to the Cincinnati, 12. 138.
- Burke, Edmund, Old Whig, 10. 48; colonial policy, 70, 71, 112, 131; favours independence, 11. 7, 12. 2; paymaster, 6; opposes parliamentary reform, 7; on slavery, 84.
- Burlington, N. J., founded, 8. 166.
- Burnet, William, governor of New York, character, 8. 286; fur-trade reforms, 286-289; builds fort at Oswego, 9. 262.
- Burroughs, George, executed for witchcraft, 9. 168, 173, 183.
- Butler Nathaniel, governor of Bermuda, charges against Virginia, 4. 245-251.
- Butler, John, loyalist colonel, 10. 335, 11. 107, 111.
- Butler, Walter, loyalist officer, 11. 109, 111.
- Butler, Zebulon, in Wyoming valley, 11. 106; at the massacre, 107.
- Buttrick, John, major of minute men, at Concord, 10. 145.
- Butts Hill, R. I., seized by Sullivan, 11. 92; British attack, 96.
- Bylandt, Count, Dutch admiral, affair with Fielding, 11. 180.
- Byllinge, Edward, interest in New Jersey, 8. 19, 162.
- Byrd, William, the elder, 5. 299.
- Byrd, William, the historian, library, 5. 285; career, 300; as a writer, 300-302.
- Cabeza de Vaca, Alvar Nuñez, Spanish explorer, adventures among the Indians, 1. 289, 3. 331.
- Cabo de Arenas, identification, 7. 85-87.
- Cabot, John, early life, 2. 214; voyages for England, 217-220; errors in narrative of voyages, 222; chart, 223; course and parts visited, 223-230, 7. 78; fruitlessness of voyages, 2. 230, 238, 4. 13, 7. 67; ultimate results, 2. 232.
- Cabot, Sebastian, son of John, 2. 214; in father's voyages, 217, 220; later career, 220; governor of the Muscovy Company, 220, 4. 16, 7. 93; map, 2. 223-225, 230.
- Cabral, Pedro Alvarez de, accidentally crosses ocean to Brazil, 2. 323; takes possession for Portugal, 324; proceeds to India, 324, 326; consequences of his adventure, 326.
- Cacique. *See* Chief, Chief-of-men.

GENERAL INDEX

- Cadamosto, Luigi, Portuguese navigator, on coast of Africa, **I.** 374.
- Cadwalader, John, American general, at crossing of the Delaware, **10.** 269; duel with Conway, **11.** 55.
- Caen, Emery de, trade monopoly in Canada, **9.** 89; abolished, 90.
- Cæsar, Sir Julius, interest in Virginia, **4.** 80.
- Calef, Robert, and Cotton Mather, **9.** 150; on the witchcraft trials, 163 n., 186.
- California, Cortes discovers Lower, **3.** 332; Drake in, 377, **4.** 32.
- Calvert, Benedict Leonard, fourth Lord Baltimore, minor governor of Maryland, **5.** 182; abjures Catholicism, 196; succeeds to title and dies, 196.
- Calvert, Cecilius, second Lord Baltimore, grant of Maryland, **4.** 312; character, 314, **5.** 160, 174; never visits colony, **4.** 314; original features of his government, 315-320; death, 323, **5.** 167; on rights of legislation, **4.** 332, **5.** 176; powers, **4.** 334; opposition to his grant, 335, 338; and Claiborne, 340-343, 352; during the Commonwealth, 361; Toleration Act, 362-365; and the Puritan power in Maryland, 371-373, **5.** 152, 153; authority temporarily denied, 156-160.
- Calvert, Charles, third Lord Baltimore, governor of Maryland, **5.** 160; succeeds to the title, 167; character, 174, 180; restricts the suffrage, 179; readiness to proclaim William and Mary, 186; deprived of his government, 188; death, 196.
- Calvert, Charles, fifth Lord Baltimore, Protestant, **5.** 196; palatinate restored, 196; and the Catholics, 198; death, 200; will, 200.
- Calvert, Frederick, sixth Lord Baltimore, character, **5.** 200; heir, 201.
- Calvert, George, early life, **4.** 299; Catholicism, 300; first Lord Baltimore, 300; palatinate in Newfoundland, 300, 305-308; in Virginia, 308-310; grant of Maryland, 310-312; death, 312; purpose in colonizing, 312, 318; character, 313.
- Calvert, Leonard, governor of Maryland, **4.** 320; and Claiborne, 340-343, 351, 359-361; death, 361.
- Calvert, Philip, secretary of Maryland, **4.** 373, 374; and Fendall, **5.** 157; governor, 160; chancellor, 161.
- Calvin, John, character, **6.** 67; political bearing of his theology, 68-70.
- Calvinism, in South Carolina, **5.** 377; and public schools, **7.** 37. *See also* Congregationalism, Presbyterianism, Puritans.
- Cam, Diego, Portuguese navigator, discovers Congo River, **I.** 375.
- Cambridge, Mass., named, **6.** 134; assembly convened at, **10.** 89; headquarters of American army besieging Boston, 149, 160, 173. *See also* New Town.
- Cambridge Platform, **6.** 216.
- Cambridge University, England, dominated by Puritanism, **6.** 73, **7.** 44; graduates in New England, **6.** 133.
- Camden, Lord, on colonial policy, **10.** 31; condemns hiring of German troops, 190; in Rockingham ministry, **11.** 348, 12. 6.
- Camden, S. C., Gates's advance, **11.** 226-229; battle, 229-233; reoccupied by Americans, 317.
- Camm, John, wooing, **5.** 148.
- Campbell, Sir Archibald, British colonel, captures Savannah and Augusta, **11.** 202.
- Campbell, William, partisan, at King's Mountain, **11.** 295, 296.
- Canada, Cartier's explorations, 3-

GENERAL INDEX

- 325, 9. 13-22; attempted settlements, 3. 325, 9. 6, 22-24, 29-32; first settlement, 3. 359, 9. 60; policy of development, 3. 359-361, 7. 149, 150, 9. 88, 90, 104; Indian relations, 7. 112, 8. 58, 60, 200-202, 204, 230, 248, 281, 9. 62-71, 80, 86-88, 102, 105, 239, 261-264, 309-311, 340; attack on Schenectady, 8. 224-227; unsuccessful English expeditions against, 229, 281, 283; early explorations, 9. 5, 7; first use of name, 15; fur-trade monopoly, 36-38, 49, 57, 59, 60; Champlain's voyages, 42, 60; change in Indian inhabitants, 42-44; Indian missionaries, 86, 89, 103; captured by the English in 1628, 91; restored to France, 92; inland explorations, 98-101, 106, 111-120; route to the interior, 104; possession taken of the Northwest, 107-109; scheme of empire, 120-122, 132, 258; Louisiana added to French possessions, 130; irrepressible conflict with English colonies, 233, 239; importance of Kennebec River to, 234; policy against English settlements, 239, 241; loss of the control of the Kennebec, 244; loss of Louisburg in 1745, 249-256; in the Ohio valley, 261-273; strategic points, 326; Pitt resolves to destroy, 342; English conquer, 358; boundaries under Quebec Act, 10. 115; strategic importance, 193; invasion in 1775, 193-198; attitude toward the Revolution, 194, 198; French control not desired in United States, 11. 54, 97; Estaing's proclamation, 97; cession asked and refused, 12. 11, 13. *See also* Acadia, French and Indian war, Newfoundland.
- Canary Islands, known to the ancients, 1. 348; visited by Portuguese, 369; colonized, 370, 9. 2. Canas, Peruvian tribe, 3. 123. Caniengas, Mohawks, 9. 45. Cannibalism, in America, 1. 59, 137, 2. 327-329, 413, 3. 62 n., 148, 8. 249 n.; origin of name, 2. 155; remnants, 3. 63 n. Canonchet, Narragansett chief, 6. 280, 284, 295. Canonicus, Narragansett chief, 6. and the Pilgrims, 104. Caonabo, Haytian chief, and the Spaniards, 2. 156, 173, 177 n. Cape Alpha and Omega, Cuba, Columbus names, 2. 119. Cape Ann, Mass., named, 4. 104, 5. 10; settlement, 6. 112. Cape Bojador, Africa, known, 1. 370; passed, 371. Cape Breton Island, Portuguese colony, 2. 236; named, 9. 4. Cape Charles, Va., named, 4. 108. Cape Cod, Mass., named, 4. 65. Cape Fear River, N. C., visitors from New England, 5. 323; Yeamans's settlement, 324. Cape of Good Hope, passed, 1. 381; named, 382; Dutch colony, 7. 60. Cape Gracias a Dios, Central America, Columbus names, 2. 204. Cape Henlopen, Del., and Cabo de Arenas, 7. 85-87; named, 121. Cape Henry, Va., named, 4. 108. Cape Horn, discovered and named, 3. 317, 319, 7. 65. Cape May, N. J., named, 7. 121. Cape Non, Africa, origin of name, 1. 369; passed, 370. Cape St. Vincent, Portugal, naval battle, 11. 169. Cape San Roque, named, 2. 327. Cape Verde, Africa, passed, 1. 374. Cape Verde Islands, and the Phœnicians, 1. 348; discovered, 374. Carey, Thomas, deputy-governor of Carolina, 5. 344; and the Qua-

GENERAL INDEX

- kers, 344, 345; rebellion, 346; accused of inciting the Indians, 347.
- Carib Indians, cannibals, 2. 155, 3. 95; enslaved, 254.
- Carleton, Sir Guy, governor of Canada, 10. 193; at Quebec, 196; invasion of New York, 292-295; commander-in-chief, 11. 347.
- Carolina, frontier country, 5. 315-317; named, 317; grant, 317; Fundamental Constitutions and government, 319-322; distinct settlements, 322-326, 339; Bahama Islands annexed, 324; end of proprietary government, 360; pirates, 421. *See also* North Carolina, South Carolina.
- Carpini, John of Plano, missionary to Jenghis Khan, 1. 320; increases geographical knowledge, 321.
- Carr, Dabney, proposes intercolonial committees of correspondence, 10. 96.
- Carr, Sir Robert, royal commissioner, 7. 331; on the Delaware, 8. 4; in Boston, 9; death, 11.
- Carrington, Edward, and the Ordinance of 1787, 12. 242.
- Carroll, Charles, proposed Catholic colony on the Mississippi, 5. 198.
- Carroll, Charles, of Carrollton, on independence, 10. 221.
- Carroll, Daniel, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271.
- Carroll, John, first Catholic bishop in United States, 12. 104.
- Cartagena, Juan de, with Magellan, 2. 428, 431, 433, 436.
- Carteret, Sir George, grant of New Jersey, 5. 167, 8. 12; a proprietor of Carolina, 5. 317; regnant of New Jersey, 8. 42, 108.
- Carteret, James, son of Sir George, 8. 18, 97.
- Carteret, Peter, governor of North Carolina, 5. 327, 329.
- Carteret, Philip, as governor of New Jersey, 8. 13, 14, 18; relationship to Sir George, 97 n.; and New York's claim to New Jersey, 108-113.
- Cartier, Jacques, early career, 9. 13; first voyage, 13; second voyage, 14; at Stadacona, 15, 20; at Hochelaga, 16-20; captain-general, 22; third voyage, 23; brings Roberval back to France, 31; death, 32.
- Cartwright, George, royal commissioner, 7. 331; in Boston, 8. 8; captured by the Dutch, 8.
- Carvajal, Francisco de, lieutenant of Gonzano Pizarro, grim facetiousness, 3. 240; executed, 240.
- Cary, Sir Henry, member of London Company, 4. 81.
- Caste, not in Mexico, 1. 136 n.; in Peru, 3. 124, 139.
- Castile. *See* Isabella, Spain.
- Castro, Vaca de, royal agent to Peru, 3. 236; defeats young Almagro, 237.
- Caswell, Richard, commands North Carolina militia, defeats loyalists at Moore's Creek, 10. 208; joins Gates, 11. 227; at Camden, 231.
- Cathari. *See* Albigenes.
- Cathay, origin of name, 1. 320. *See also* China.
- Catherine, empress of Russia, refuses to sell soldiers to George III., 10. 189; interest in humanitarian movement, 11. 175; England desires alliance, 175-178, 181; and doctrine of free ships, free goods, 178, 182; in Armed Neutrality, 184; importance of her work, 185; refuses to aid Holland, 192-194.
- Catlin, George, American artist, on Mandan Indians, 1. 49.
- Cato, leads negro insurrection, 5. 385.
- Cattigara, Ptolemy's antipodal city, reappearance in early maps of New

GENERAL INDEX

- World, 2. 354, 355, 355 n., 381 n., 3. 327.
- Cauchis, Peruvian tribe, 3. 123.
- Caughnawaga, Canada, settlement of Christianized Iroquois, 8. 286, 289, 9. 262.
- Cavaliers and Roundheads compared socially, 5. 11-15, 32; emigration to Virginia, 18-21; effect on Virginia, 27-29, 33, 114, 394.
- Cave men, progenitors of Eskimos, 1. 19-23.
- Cavelier. *See* La Salle.
- Cavendish, Lord, member of London Company, 4. 243, 252.
- Cavendish, Lord John, on hiring of German troops, 10. 190; in Rockingham ministry, 11. 348, 12. 6; in coalition ministry, 53.
- Cavendish, Thomas, voyage around the world, 4. 39.
- Cayugas, Iroquois Indians, 9. 45, 47. *See also* Iroquois.
- Cecil, Sir Robert, intrigues against Raleigh, 4. 64; heads London Company's members, 169.
- Célon de Bienville, takes possession of Ohio valley for France, 9. 264-267.
- Censors in Pennsylvania, 12. 178.
- Central America, Columbus on the coast, 2. 203; Vesputius on the coast, 272, 292; conquest, 3. 90; voyages on west coast, 203, 204; struggle over jurisdiction in, 205; Las Casas's peaceful conquest of Tuzulutlan, 292-300. *See also* Mayas.
- Champlain, Samuel, settles Quebec, 3. 359, 9. 60, 92; birth, 38; religion, 39, 59, 81; character, 3. 359, 9. 39, 58, 92; in the West Indies and Mexico, 40; suggests a canal at Panama, 41; and Pontgravé, 41; first voyage to Canada, 42; on coast of New England, 52-55; greeting at Port Royal, 55; his knightly Order of Good Times, 57; interest in Canada, 58, 82; return to Canada, 60; makes alliance with Algonquins and Hurons, 62-64; expeditions against the Iroquois, 65-71, 80, 86-88; married, 80; founds Montreal, 81; viceregal lieutenant, 81; controls the fur-trade, 82; seeks the western sea, 83; brings Recollets to Canada, 86; defends Quebec against Kirke, 91; surrenders, 92; governor, 92; last days, 92.
- Chancas, Peruvian tribe, 3. 126.
- Chandler, Thomas, on Maryland clergy, 5. 190.
- Charles I. of England, relations with Virginia, 4. 279, 283-285, 294, 349, 350; and Baltimore, 307, 308, 311, 318, 321, 342; relations with Massachusetts, 6. 116, 135-138; character, 118; conflict with Parliament, 119-122.
- Charles II. of England, charters Hudson Bay Company, 3. 372; and Baltimore, 4. 361, 5. 159; Virginia's loyalty, 4. 366, 5. 24-26, 62; land grants, 61; comment on Berkeley, 110; instructions on suffrage, 118; knights Morgan, 416; relations with New England, 6. 243-249, 317, 318, 325, 328, 7. 321; measures toward absolutism, 6. 328-331, 8. 27, 40; and the naming of Pennsylvania, 175.
- Charles V. of Spain, and Las Casas, 3. 284; issues the New Laws, 301.
- Charles City County, Va., origin of its name, 5. 45 n.
- Charleston, S. C., named for Charles II., 5. 318; founded, 325, 333; attacked by French and Spanish fleets, 341-343; focus of social life, 361, 383, 387; trade, 381; trade with pirates, 423; action on tea question, 10. 99, 108; futile British attack, 232-235; Prevost's advance and

GENERAL INDEX

- retreat, **II.** 206, 210; captured by British, 214-216. *See also* South Carolina.
- Charlestown, Mass., settled, **6.** 126; fired by the British, **10.** 165.
- Charlottesville, Va., British prisoners quartered, **10.** 401; Tarleton's raid, **II.** 325.
- Charter Oak, **6.** 335.
- Charters: Hudson Bay Company, **3.** 372; Raleigh's, **4.** 35, 36; Virginia, 71-73, 169-171, 258; Maryland, **311.** 316-318, **5.** 188, 196; Massachusetts, **4.** 315, **6.** 116, 332, 344, **9.** 202, **10.** 113; Pennsylvania, **5.** 168, **8.** 176-178, 432-449; Carolina, **5.** 318, 320, 359; Georgia, 391; Rhode Island, **6.** 190, 249, 335, 342; Connecticut, 249, 335, 342, **7.** 320; Dutch West India Company, 129; of Privileges and Exemptions in New Netherland, 154. *See also* Grants.
- Chase, Samuel, and independence, **10.** 221.
- Chatham, Earl of. *See* Pitt.
- Chauvin, Pierre, monopoly of the fur-trade, **9.** 36; death, 37.
- Cheesman, Edward, and Berkeley, **5.** 108.
- Cherokee Indians, **I.** 50 n., 167; mound builders, 166; during the Revolution, **II.** 124.
- Cherry Valley, N. Y., massacre, **II.** 109.
- Chesapeake Bay, character, **5.** 239 n.; and Verrazano Sea, **7.** 71-74, **9.** 11.
- Chester, Penn., named, **8.** 182.
- Cheyenne Indians, **I.** 51.
- Chibchas, Central American Indians, **3.** 92-94.
- Chichimecs, traditional people of Mexico, **3.** 7, 11.
- Chickasaw Indians, **I.** 50, 168.
- Chief, Indian military leader, of clan, **I.** 82; of tribe, 86; of Iroquois confederacy, 90; European mis-
- conception, **III.** 127, **4.** 111, 133, 202; Mexican clan, **I.** 122. *See also* Chief-of-men, Inca, Sachem.
- Chief-of-men, Aztec military executive, **I.** 127, 130-133, **3.** 72-74.
- Child, Robert, in Presbyterian cabal, **6.** 213-215.
- Childs, James, founds free school in South Carolina, **5.** 380.
- Chili, Peruvian invasion, **3.** 128; Almagro governor, 226; Spanish conquest, 232.
- Chimus, Peruvian tribe, **3.** 126.
- China, early knowledge of, **I.** 304, 309; accessible under Mongol empire, 320, 323-326, 332-334; effect of closing, 334-337.
- Chirihuanas, South American Indians, **3.** 158-160.
- Chittenden, Thomas, governor of Vermont, **12.** 179.
- Choctaws, Maskoki Indians, **I.** 50.
- Cholula, Mexican pueblo, **I.** 107, **3.** 17; and Cortes, 49-52.
- Christiansen, Hendrick, at Manhattan, **4.** 201, **7.** 118, 120.
- Christison, Wenlock, Quaker, persecuted, **6.** 240, 241.
- Church, Benjamin, in King Philip's War, **6.** 281, 296, 297, 299.
- Church, Benjamin, corresponds with the enemy, **10.** 180.
- Church of England, liberalism, **4.** 276, **6.** 77; in Virginia, **4.** 290, 354-356, **5.** 135, 305-308, 312, **12.** 93-98; Puritans within, **4.** 353; established in Maryland, **5.** 188-192; established in South Carolina, 377; in Georgia, 393; origin, **6.** 51; forbidden in Massachusetts, 131, 318; royal order for toleration, 317, 323; first services in Boston, 336; establishment in the colonies, **12.** 91; disestablished, 92; American connection after the Revolution, 98-101.

GENERAL INDEX

- Church and State. *See* Religion.
- Cibola. *See* Zuñi.
- Cieza de Leon, Pedro, chronicle on ancient Peru, 3. 104 n.-107 n.
- Cincinnati, Ohio, early name, 12. 233.
- Cincinnati, order of the, 12. 136-141.
- Cintra, Piedro de, Portuguese navigator, reaches Sierra Leone, 1. 374.
- Cipango. *See* Japan.
- Circumnavigation of the earth, first, 2. 430-449; second, 3. 377, 4. 30-33.
- Citizenship, Roman, 6. 15; interstate, under articles of confederation, 12. 112.
- Civil liberty, conception in sixteenth century, 1. 280; spirit in the colonies, 4. 282, 5. 173, 10. 2-4, 25; debt to Puritans, 6. 9, 43, 59-61, 83, 308-310; in Rome, 14, 17; preserved by Germanic tribes, 20; essential to successful civilization, 27; Magna Charta, 35; dangers from protection, 38; fate depended on England, 43, 53, 55; and French Revolution, 56, 60; and union in United States, 56; dark outlook in 1629, 122; antiquity of religious restrictions on, 311, 8, 117; Andros attacks, 6. 338; in the Netherlands, 7. 28, 30-32, 262; incompatible with despotic government of dependencies, 10. 30; self-contradictory attitude of England in 1774, 116; declaration of rights in First Continental Congress, 130; French thought on, 279, 11. 174; debt to Chatham, 24-26; debt to the Revolution, 349-351; Constitution and a bill of rights, 12. 376, 394-396. *See also* Government, Local self-government, Religion, Representation, Zenger.
- Civilization, and barbarism, 1. 38-41; latent brute force, 6. 148, 288. *See also* Culture, Nation-making.
- Claiborne, William, secretary of Virginia, 4. 335; Kent Island affair, 335-343, 350-353, 359-361; parliamentary commissioner, 368; controls Maryland, 369, 370; land grants in Virginia, 373.
- Clan, earliest family group, 1. 71; Indian, 76, 82, 87, 88, 91, 102, 121-123, 140; gentilism and feudalism, 112-114, 116; disintegration of Peruvian, 3. 156-161, 164. *See also* Family, Tribe.
- Clarendon colony, 5. 324; abandoned, 338, 339.
- Clark, G. R., character, 11. 126; conquest of the Northwest, 126-131; later life, 131.
- Clark, William, expedition to Oregon, 3. 376.
- Clarke, John, Baptist, persecuted in Massachusetts, 6. 216-222.
- Clayton, John, botanist, 5. 302.
- Clergy, Spanish, and Columbus's plans, 2. 95 n. *See also* Religion, and the sects by name.
- Cleveland, Benjamin, partisan, at King's Mountain, 11. 295, 297.
- Clinton, George, governor of New York, occupies Hackensack, 10. 275; intercepts message to Burgoyne, 392; power and policy, 12. 172; opposition to the Constitution, 408.
- Clinton, Sir Henry, sent to Boston, 10. 134; in the South, 208, 209, 232-235, 11. 212-218; at battle of Long Island, 10. 243; and Burgoyne, 385, 391, 392; commander-in-chief, 11. 68; evacuates Philadelphia, 68, 69; and Charles Lee, 70-72; at Monmouth, 74, 79; relieves Newport, 96; corresponds with Arnold, 256; efforts to save André, 275; and Cornwallis, 314, 324, 338, 341; superseded, 347.

GENERAL INDEX

- Clinton, James, in Sullivan's expedition, **II**. 111.
- Coddington, William, settles at Portsmouth, **R. I.**, **6**. 146.
- Coelho, Gonçalo, voyage to South America, **2**. 402-407.
- Coke, Thomas, Methodist bishop, **12**. 102.
- Colden, Cadwallader, career, **8**. 332; and the stamp riots, **10**. 28.
- Coligny, Gaspard de, attempted Huguenot colonies, **3**. 342, **4**. 22, **8**. 395.
- Colleton, James, governor of South Carolina, **5**. 335.
- Colleton, Sir John, a proprietor of Carolina, **5**. 317.
- Colonies, Dutch, East Indian, **7**. 57-60; in Brazil, **62**; divergent views on policy in 1609, **113**, **116**. *See also* New Netherland.
- Colonies, English, effect of defeat of Armada, **3**. 394, **4**. 46, **6**. 72; reasons for success, **3**. 405, **6**. 169, **7**. 147, **151**, **9**. 104; Gilbert's attempt, **4**; **33**; Raleigh's attempt, **35-39**, **41**, **44-46**; Hakluyt's reasons for planting, **51-58**; Zones, **74**; become a policy, **6**. 90; right of Crown to soil, **140**, **332**; Crown and parliamentary control, **141**, **145**, **190**, **194-196**, **211**, **243**, **317**, **318**, **333**, **344**, **10**. 38-41; non-English influences, **7**. 34-39, **8**. 385, **414**; significance of the year 1609, **7**. 111-113; land purchases from the Indians, **8**. 187-191; unsuccessful expeditions against Canada, **229**, **281**, **283**; strategic position of New York and Pennsylvania, **243-245**; intercolonial relationship, **9**. 278, **10**. 7; contribution to French and Indian war, **9**. 343, **10**. 17; relation with England from 1690 to 1760, **1-5**; political standards compared with the British, **18**, **84**; willing to grant aid to the empire, **20**; purpose of the Townshend Acts, **36**; reasons for attitude of George III., **50**; Dickinson on rights, **54**; strength of, unappreciated, **65-67**; local vexations, **89**; courage of, depreciated in England, **118**, **165**; make common cause, **121**; vacillating policy of British ministry, **133**, **134**; attitude of middle colonies on question of war, **135-137**; hesitate at offensive war, **138**, **156**, **193**; general preparation for war, **150**; political chaos in 1775, **184**. *See also* Continental Congress, England, New England, Union, and colonies by name.
- Colonies, French, attempted Huguenot, **3**. 342-350, **4**. 19-21, **9**. 33; cause of failure, **7**. 149, **150**; attempt at Sable Island, **9**. 6. *See also* Acadia, Canada.
- Colonies, Portuguese, on Cape Breton Island, **2**. 236; in Brazil, **406**; East Indian, **416-418**.
- Colonies, Spanish, preparation for first, **2**. 151, **154**; attempted, in Veragua, **206**, **207**; on the mainland, **3**. 178-185; Las Casas's attempt, **284-287**; attempted, in Virginia, **321**; in Florida, **341**, **346**; character of American, **4**. 29. *See also* Hispaniola.
- Colonization, Europe not prepared for in 1000, **1**. 297-300.
- Columbus, Bartholomew, brother of Christopher, voyage with Dias, **1**. 383, **ii**. 81, **81 n.-83 n.**; ability, **21**; appearance, **23 n.**; said to have suggested route to Indies, **73**; in England and France, **84-88**; in Hispaniola, **169**; Adelantado, **170**; as a governor, **172**; founds San Domingo, **176**; imprisoned and sent to Spain, **194**; in Christopher's fourth expedition, **200**; puts down mutiny at Jamaica, **208**; and Cabot, **215**.

GENERAL INDEX

Columbus, Christopher, sources of information on, 2. 1-10; writings, 5; birth, family, and early life, 10-19; as a cartographer, 19; in Lisbon, 19, 81-84; expeditions on coast of Africa, 22, 57, 60; marriage, 22, 24; personal appearance, 23; at Porto Santo, 24; plan takes shape, 24, 38; correspondence with Toscanelli, 26-35, 38 n.-41 n.; genesis of his scheme, 35, 37-40, 47, 72; influence of *Imago Mundi* on, 46, 53 n.-55 n.; knowledge of geographical theories, 46 n.; calculation of size of earth and length of westward route to Indies, 47, 51-56; sole purpose of his plan, 56, 67; treatise on the zones, 56; voyage to Arctic Ocean, 57-60; in England, 59; and Vinland, 60-72, 96 n., 104, 112; Portugal rejects his plan, 74-76; personal demands as to rewards, 75, 96; Portugal attempts to forestall, 76; in Spain, 76, 78; death of his wife, 77; said to have sought aid of Genoa and Venice, 78; negotiations and arrangement in Spain, 79, 88-100; and Beatriz de Arana, 80; did not sail with Dias, 82 n.; sends Bartholomew to England, 84; starts for France, 90, 99; desires to deliver Jerusalem, 97, 103, 131, 199, 4. 8; self-consciousness, 2. 98, 131, 199.

First voyage: funds, 2. 101-103; cost 101 n.; preparation, 103; sails from Palos, 104; outward voyage, 104-112; land sighted, 113; take possession, 113-115; landfall, 115; cruises for Japan among the Bahamas, 116; discovers and coats Cuba, 117-119; treachery of Martin Pinzon, 119, 122, 126; at Hispaniola, 120; founds La Navidad, 122; return voyage, 122-125; in Portugal,

125; reception at court, 127; coat of arms, 127 n., 210; belief that he had reached Asia, 128-130, 134, 162-167, 205, 211; European interest in his discovery, 135-140.

Second voyage: equipment, 2. 130, 151; funds, 150; Fonseca's hatred, 152, 180; companions, 152; departure, 153; at the Canaries, 154; discovers Porto Rico, 154; at Hispaniola, 154-158, 170-174; on southern coast of Cuba, 159, 161; discovers Jamaica, 160; believes Cuba to be Asian mainland, 162-167; makes crew swear to this belief, 167, 293 n.; circumnavigates Hispaniola, 169; thinks Hispaniola may be Ophir, 175; return voyage, 176; reception at court, 177; invasions of his monopoly, 178, 308-311.

Third voyage: start, 2. 180; reasons for choosing a southern route, 181; in belt of calms, 182-184; on coast of South America, 184-188; speculation on earth's shape, 186; at San Domingo, 189; attempts to restore order in Hispaniola, 189, 193; Fonseca's machinations, 190; dissatisfaction in Spain with results obtained, 192, 307; imprisoned, 194; sent to Spain in irons, 195; reception at court, 195; not restored to office, 297, 209.

Fourth voyage: purpose, 2. 198; equipment, 200; sails, 200; at San Domingo, 200-202; on coast of Central America, 203-207; at Jamaica, 207; relief and return to Spain, 208; possible influence of Vesputius's first voyage on, 318.

Death, 2. 209; last resting-place, 209; traditional motto, 210; and the egg, 239 n.; relation to Vesputius, 245, 358, 408; litiga-

GENERAL INDEX

- tion over extent of his discoveries, 267-270; and the name America, 369, 387-398; attitude toward Indian slavery, 3. 252-255.
- Columbus, Diego (Giacomo) brother of Christopher, birth, 2. 11 n.; in brother's second expedition, 153; in charge of Hispaniola, 158; mutiny against, 170; and Bobadilla, 193; imprisoned and sent to Spain, 194.
- Columbus, Diego, son of Christopher, birth and early years, 2. 77, 90, 93, 94 n., 191; marriage, 266; claims, 266-270, 3. 177-179; governor of the Indies, 3. 29, 177; conquers Cuba, 274.
- Columbus, Ferdinand, natural son of Christopher, biography of his father, 2. 1, 4-8, 374, 375 n.; library, 2; birth, 80; in father's fourth expedition, 200; motto, 210.
- Colve, Anthony, governor of reconquered New Netherland, 8. 30-36, 45.
- Commerce. *See* Trade.
- Committees of correspondence, origin and importance, 10. 92-96.
- Common Sense*, effect, 10. 205, 206.
- Communism, Indian, 1. 77-81, 93; Mexican, 122; in Virginia, 4. 166, 173, 196.
- Compass, necessary to systematic ocean navigation, 1. 297; introduction, 360-362; deflection during voyage of Columbus, 2. 106.
- Conant, Roger, at Cape Ann settlement, 6. 112.
- Conciliation during the Revolution, Lord Howe's negotiations, 10. 236-239, 248-250; North's measures in 1778, 11. 10, 27.
- Concord and Lexington, Mass., battle, 10. 142-150.
- Conestogas, Susquehannocks, 9. 48.
- Congregationalism, established in Massachusetts, 6. 131, 12. 90; and theocracy in New England, 6. 132, 139, 150, 165, 177, 191, 304, 309-317, 323, 344; power and character of the ministers, 151, 181, 207, 210, 238, 298, 314, 9. 197; Cambridge Platform, 6. 216; innovations of Brattle Church, 9. 204; Saybrook Platform, 215-218; condition in early years of eighteenth century, 220-222; outgrowth of Halfway Covenant, 221; effect of Edwards's teachings, 224. *See also* Great Awakening, Puritans, Separatists.
- Connecticut, Dutch claims and occupation, 6. 149, 7. 135, 172-177, 180, 181, 297-301; Pilgrims in, 6. 149, 7. 174; grant to Say and Brooke, 6. 150, 7. 177; settlement, 6. 152-154, 7. 177; government, 6. 154-156, 9. 211; Pequot War, 6. 156-163, 7. 178-180; charter, 6. 247-249, 7. 320; annexes New Haven, 6. 249, 8. 6; and Andros, 6. 335, 342; claim to New Netherland, 7. 321, 326; New York boundary, 8. 5, 53-58; and Fletcher, 253-255; social conditions, 308; increased conservatism, 9. 212-219; Saybrook Platform, 215-218; founding of Yale College, 218-220; opposition to the Great Awakening, 230; share in the Louisburg expedition, 251; troops for campaign of 1759, 343; instructs for independence, 10. 217; settlement in Wyoming Valley, 11. 105, 12. 175-179; gradual emancipation, 87; financial condition after 1783, 204; western territory, 224, 229; ratifies the Constitution, 379. *See also* New England.
- Constitutions written, of Connecticut, 6. 155; state, 12. 77. *See also* Federal Convention, Government, Ratification.

GENERAL INDEX

- Continental Congress, First, 10. 122-124, 128, 130.
- Continental Congress, Second, personnel at first, 10. 155; status, 156, 184, 186, 284, 290, 11. 30, 12. 110-117, 244; military affairs, 157, 193, 206, 256-258, 283, 287-289, 296, 304, 343, 347, 397-401, 11. 32-37, 42, 54, 62, 87, 144, 255, 258, 12. 125-127, 132; advises colonies to frame governments, 10. 185, 192, 213; and England, 186, 188, 249, 11. 27; financial and commercial affairs, 10. 187, 11. 30, 237-240, 12. 116, 123-125, 128, 170, 185, 258-261; foreign affairs, 10. 193, 206, 216, 280, 11. 11, 88, 161-166, 182, 12. 41, 142, 155; declaration of independence, 206, 215-217, 224-229; decline and weakness, 11. 55, 237, 12. 67, 118-120, 192, 220, 276-281, 322; driven away by troops, 133; and the Shays's Rebellion, 219, 220; territorial measures, 226-235, 240-246; and the Federal Convention, 257, 261-263, 368; migration, 367; end, 414.
- Contrecoeur commands Fort Duquesne, 9. 274, 288.
- Convicts, transported. *See* Servants.
- Conway, H. S., in Rockingham's ministry, 10. 29, 11. 348, 12. 6; dismissed, 10. 53; supports colonial resistance, 71, 112.
- Conway, Thomas, in Conway Cabal, 11. 40, 43, 45, 54, 55.
- Conway Cabal, 11. 40-55.
- Conyngham, Gustavus, cruise off England, 11. 148.
- Coode Rebellion, 5. 185-188.
- Cooper, Anthony Ashley, Earl of Shaftesbury, a proprietor of Carolina, 5. 317; and Locke, 318; and the Fundamental Constitutions, 319.
- Copeland, Patrick, interest in Virginia education, 4. 274.
- Copley, Sir Lionel, governor of Maryland, 5. 188.
- Córdova, Francisco Hernandez de, (first), expedition to Yucatan, 3. 30-33.
- Córdova, Francisco Hernandez de, (second), in Central America, 3. 205; executed, 205.
- Corey, Giles, witchcraft victim, 9. 164, 179.
- Corey, Martha, witchcraft victim, 9. 164, 180, 183.
- Corlear, Arendt van, settles Schenectady, 8. 63; and the Iroquois, 63, 65; death, 63.
- Cornbury, Viscount, governor of New York and New Jersey, 8. 277-281.
- Cornstalk, Shawnee chief, at battle of Point Pleasant, 11. 122.
- Cornwallis, Lord, on Stamp Act, 10. 31; arrives in America, 32; at Long Island, 243; in the New Jersey campaign, 262, 263, 270-275; on Washington, 278; at Brandywine, 376-380; at Monmouth, 11. 73; in the South, 213, 218; on South Carolina disorders, 219; on the partisans, 223; at Camden, 229; invades North Carolina, 293; retreat after King's Mountain, 298; bewildered by Greene's movements, 303; pursuit of Greene in North Carolina, 307-310; at Guilford Court House, 309-311; retreat to Wilmington, 312; in Virginia, 313; campaign against Lafayette, 323-327; at Yorktown, 328; surrounded, 336; surrender, 340.
- Cornwallis, Thomas, councillor in Maryland, 4. 320; and Claiborne, 343.
- Coronado, Francisco de, expedition, 3. 338.
- Cortereal brothers, Gaspar and Miguel, voyages, 2. 234, 9. 6.

GENERAL INDEX

- Cortes, Hernando, character, 3. 36 ; expedition to Mexico, 37 ; actions due to knowledge of Mexican conditions, 37, 41-43, 71 ; founds Vera Cruz, 38 ; cuts loose from Velasquez, 38 ; scuttles his ships, 38 ; force, 40 ; at Cempoala, 41-43 ; at Xocotlan, 43 ; line of march, 43, 49, 52 ; and the Tlascalans, 43-48 ; treachery and massacre of Cholulans, 49-52 ; first sight of Mexico City, 52-54 ; situation in Mexico City, 69-71 ; seizure of Montezuma, 71-76 ; seizure of Cuitlahuatzin, 77 ; destroys idols, 77 ; marches against Narvaez, 78 ; returns to Mexico City, 81 ; result of releasing Cuitlahuatzin, 81-83 ; retreat, 83 ; victory at Otumba, 84 ; alliance with Tezcuco, 85 ; siege of Mexico City, 85-87 ; later life, 87 ; and Pizarro, 217 ; exploration on the Pacific coast, 332.
- Cortlandt, Stephen van, mayor of New York, and Andros, 8. 51 ; and Leisler's Rebellion, 210, 216, 219, 221 n.
- Cosby, William, governor of New York, 8. 289 ; Zenger's comments on, 293.
- Cosmas Indicopleustes, geographical theories, 1. 306-308 ; on India and China, 309.
- Cosmographie Introductio*, contents, 2. 364, 365 ; editions, 365 ; first suggestion of name America, 366-368.
- Cotton, John, minister in Boston, 6. 133 ; joins Antinomians, 143 ; on government, 151 ; death and estimation, 225 ; as a typical Puritan, 8. 374.
- Cotton, influence on slavery, 12. 86, 316.
- Council, question of its functions in Maryland, 5. 177 ; and in New York, 8. 251, 285 ; and in Pennsylvania, 360.
- Council for New England, members and powers, 6. 108, 7. 133 ; grants land to Massachusetts Bay Company, 6. 114 ; surrenders charter, 137.
- Counties, origin of English, 1. 112 n. ; names of Virginia, 5. 7, 8 n., 9 n. ; functions of Virginia, 43-48.
- County lieutenant in Virginia, 5. 48.
- Courcelle, Sieur de, governor of Canada, invades the Iroquois country, 8. 58, 9. 102 ; recalled, 115.
- Coureurs de bois, origin and nature, 9. 105.
- Courts, legal, Virginia House of Burgesses as, 4. 287 ; in Maryland, 331, 5. 171, 172 ; county, in Virginia, 44-47 ; inquisitorial methods in Massachusetts, 6. 165, 201, 221, 313 ; justice in king's name, 317, 318 ; in New Netherland and New York, 7. 132, 155, 8. 310 ; Crown control of colonial judges, 10. 15, 92 ; act to allow trial in England for offences in colonies, 114 ; early state, 12. 81 ; uprisings against, 213, 217. *See also* Judiciary.
- Cousin, Jean, voyage, 1. 173, 174 n.
- Cowley, Ambrose, buccaneer, 5. 418.
- Cowpens, S. C., battle, 11. 304-306.
- "Crackers," origin, 5. 374-376.
- Crandall, John, Baptist, persecuted in Massachusetts, 6. 218-222.
- Cranfield, Edward, governor of New Hampshire, 6. 324.
- Craven, Lord, a proprietor of Carolina, 5. 317.
- Craven, Charles, governor of South Carolina, 5. 354, 356, 358.
- Creek Indians, 1. 35, 50.
- Crees, Algonquin Indians, 1. 51.
- Cresap, Michael, and the Indians, 11. 119-121 ; death, 121.
- Cresap's War. *See* Lord Dunmore's War.

GENERAL INDEX

- Crimes and punishments, colonial, 5. 308-310, 386, 8. 178, 381.
- Cromwell, Oliver, sends commissioners to Virginia, 4. 367; sustains Lord Baltimore, 371, 372; importance, 6. 9; advanced views, 235, 8. 125.
- Crown, authority over colonies, 4. 257, 6. 141, 145, 194, 243, 317, 318, 344, 10. 2, 3, 9, 35, 38-41; and the proprietary governments, 4. 316, 5. 168, 8. 176; right to colonial soil, 4. 279, 140, 332; growth of power, 35, 40-42; successful coalition against, 35; antipathy to local self-government, 42; danger in Calvinism, 71, 82, 84; Stuart attempts at absolutism, 119, 328-331; jealous of joint action of colonies, 10. 13, 57, 188; control of colonial judges, 15, 92. *See also* kings by name.
- Crown Point, N. Y., strategic value, 9. 327, 10. 152; evacuated by the French, 9. 348; captured by Americans, 10. 154.
- Crowne, William, English grant of Acadia, 9. 96.
- Cuba, Columbus discovers and coasts, 2. 117, 159, 161; supposed to be Asian mainland, 118, 162-168; discovery of insularity, 264, 291, 293, 295, 298; confused on maps with Florida, 303-305; conquered, 3. 29, 274.
- Cuitlahuatzin, Montezuma's brother, seized by Cortes, 3. 77; released and supersedes Montezuma, 82; death, 86.
- Culpeper, Lord, grant of Virginia, 5. 62, 131; as governor, 128, 131.
- Culpeper, John, insurrection in North Carolina, 5. 330-333.
- Culture, and race, 1. 28; grades, 29-38; caution on classification, 39, 41.
- Cumaná, Pearl Coast, Las Casas's attempted colony, 3. 285-288.
- Cushing, F. H., at Zuni, 1. 100, 102 n., and the Zuni priests, 3. 337 n.
- Customs. *See* Navigation Acts.
- Cutler, Manasseh, and the Ohio Company, 12. 241; and the Ordinance of 1787, 242.
- Cuyler, Yan Yost, used by Arnold to frighten St. Leger, 10. 345.
- Cuzco, Peru, founded, 3. 124; Pizarro at, 223; besieged by Manco, 228; seized by Almagro, 229.
- Dale, Sir Thomas, high marshal of Virginia, character, 4. 192, 193, 195; code, 194; abolishes communism, 196; expansion of colony under, 197, 202, 262; and the Jesuits, 9. 79.
- Danbury, Conn., captured by Tryon, 10. 303.
- Dane, Nathan, and the Ordinance of 1787, 12. 242; opposes the Constitution, 368.
- Dankers, Jasper, in Maryland, 5. 165; in New York, 8. 71, 85-100.
- Dare, Virginia, first white child born in America, 4. 41, 46.
- Darien, founding of colony, 3. 178-181; abandoned and reestablished, 183; arrival of Pedrarias, 191.
- Dartmouth, Lord, colonial secretary, 10. 98.
- Daughters of Liberty, purpose, 10. 56.
- Davenant, Sir William, poet-laureate, grant of Maryland, 4. 361.
- Davenport, James, revivalist, eccentricities, 9. 227; arrested, 230.
- Davenport, John, character, 164; sermon on regicides, 246 n.; opposes annexation of New Haven to Connecticut, 250; opposes Halfway Covenant, 315; pastor First Church of Boston, 315.

GENERAL INDEX

- Dávila. *See* Gonzalez, Pedrarias.
- Davis, Edward, buccaneer, discovers Easter Island, 5. 419.
- Davis, John, search for northwest passage, 3. 378.
- Dayton, Jonathan, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 267, 271.
- Deane, Silas, commissioner to France, 10. 280.
- Debts, private, and the treaty of 1783, 12. 31, 155 ; public, Washington on, 64 ; foreign loans, 125, 185 ; sacredness, 320.
- Delaware, Lord, appointed governor of Virginia, 172, 179 ; identification with America, 172 ; arrival, 183 ; administration, 188-190 ; return to England, 191 ; death, 216.
- Delaware, Swede and Dutch settlements and Maryland's claim, 5. 161-163 ; New York's claim, 167, 8. 5 ; granted to Penn, 5. 169, 8. 173 ; religious liberty, 115, 12. 89 ; legislative separation from Pennsylvania, 8. 360 ; instructs for independence, 10. 220 ; permits emancipation, 12. 87 ; ratifies the Constitution, 377.
- Delaware Indians, Algonquins, 1. 51 ; mound builders, 168 ; sell Manhattan Island, 7. 140 ; wars with New Netherland, 205-218, 226, 314-318 ; Penn's treaty, 8. 184 ; Pennsylvania land purchases from, 189 ; why peaceful in Pennsylvania, 193 ; in Ohio valley, 9. 263 ; become English allies, 341.
- Delaware River, Gomez sees, 7. 79 ; early cartography, 87 ; Hudson enters, 103 ; Christiansen ascends, 121 ; Fort Nassau built, 135 ; Swedish colony, 277-281 ; Carr overthrows the Dutch, 8. 4.
- Demarcation, bull of, 2. 142-148 ; influence on service of explorers, 407 n. ; opinion of Francis I., 9. 8.
- Demoiselle, La, Miami chief, and Céloron, 9. 278 ; killed, 279.
- Denmark, in Armed Neutrality, 2. 182.
- Denonville, Marquis de, governor of Canada, and Dongan, 8. 201.
- Dermer, Thomas, voyages, 7. 132.
- Dias, Bartholomew, circumnavigates Africa, 1. 381 ; effect of his voyage, 383 ; death, 2. 324.
- Dickinson, John, *Farmer's Letters*, 10. 54 ; hopes for reconciliation, 122 ; opposes independence, 186, 216, 225, 226 ; supposed author of Articles of Confederation, 12. 111 ; member of the Federal Convention, 270.
- Dieppe, France, early trade with Africa, 9. 2 ; and the Newfoundland fisheries, 33 ; as a centre of nautical science, 34.
- Dieskau, Baron, sent to America, 9. 281 ; battle of Lake George, 297-300.
- Digges, Edward, governor of Virginia, 4. 368.
- Dighton rock inscription, 1. 247 n.-249 n.
- Dinwiddie, Robert, governor of Virginia, 5. 456 ; sends Washington to warn off the French, 467, 9. 270 ; war measures impeded by the legislature, 272, 277 ; advises colonial consolidation and taxation, 10. 6, 14.
- Discovery and title to wild lands, 7. 132, 164, 322.
- Dixwell, John, regicide, in New England, 6. 247 n.
- Dominicans and Indian slavery, 3. 270, 271. *See also* Las Casas.
- Donck, Adrian van der, manor, 7. 246 ; and Stuyvesant, 250-253, 263 ; on New Netherland, 267.
- Dongan, Thomas, governor of New York, covets Connecticut, 8. 54 n. ; character, 198 ; Indian diplomacy, 200-202, 9. 103 ; Earl of Limerick, 8. 206.

GENERAL INDEX

- Donop, Count von, commands German troops in British army, 10. 189; at Princeton, 270; killed, 379.
- Dorchester, Mass., opposes aristocratic tendencies, 6. 151; first selectmen, 152; emigration to Connecticut, 152, 154.
- Dorchester adventurers, settlement, 6. 112.
- Dorchester Heights, Mass., seized by Americans, 10. 200.
- Doughty, Francis, settles on Long Island, 7. 211.
- Dover, N. H., settled, 6. 146.
- Drake, Sir Francis, circumnavigates the earth, 3. 377, 4. 30-33; with Hawkins, 22; attacks on the Spanish, 25, 29-31, 38-40; not a buccaneer, 28, 5. 399; rescues Raleigh's colony, 4. 39; and the Armada, 42, 44.
- Drayton, Michael, poet laureate, farewell to Newport's Company, 4. 91-93; verses to George Sandys, 273.
- Drayton, W. H., on independence, 10. 231.
- Dress, Aztec, 3. 60; Virginia law, 4. 289; Virginia colonial, 5. 274; New York colonial, 8. 327-329.
- Drink, Aztec, 3. 64; penalties in Virginia, 4. 289; Virginia colonial, 5. 267; New York colonial, 8. 53, 323.
- Drogio, Zeno's description, 1. 282-285; identity, 286; analogues, 287-291.
- Drummond, William, governor of Albemarle, 5. 75, 323; and Bacon, 75, 90; executed, 109; relief of his widow, 111.
- Drysdale, Hugh, governor of Virginia, 2. 455.
- Duane, James, opposes independence, 10. 214.
- Dudley, Joseph, character, 6. 322; agent to England, 328, 331; rules Massachusetts, 334; press censor, 338; on rights of New England, 339; imprisoned, 340; founder of New England Toryism, 9. 201; governor of Massachusetts, 210; and the Mathers, 210.
- Dudley, Thomas, deputy-governor, Massachusetts Bay Company, 6. 124; character, 124; goes to America, 126.
- Duelling in Virginia, 5. 309.
- Duke's Laws, 8. 3, 45.
- Dummer, Jeremiah, on colonial union, 10. 7.
- Dummer, William, lieutenant-governor of Massachusetts, conflict with the assembly, 9. 243.
- Dunbar, Thomas, retreat after Brad-dock's defeat, 9. 292.
- Dunkers in Pennsylvania, 8. 407.
- Dunmore, Lord, royal governor of Virginia, offers to free slaves and servants who enlist, 10. 210; burns Norfolk, 211. *See also* Lord Dunmore's War.
- Duquesne, Marquis, governor of Canada, sends expedition to Ohio valley, 9. 268; recalled, 282.
- Durant, George, settlement in North Carolina, 5. 322; and Sothel, 334.
- Durham palatinate, 4. 301, 303-305, 323-327.
- Dutch, language, 7. 3, 7; English kinship, 3; meaning of the word, 4; origin of the disparaging use of the term, 183; influence on American progress, 8. 414. *See also* Netherlands, New Netherland.
- Dutch Church in New York, character of the clergy, 7. 189, 228, 8. 100, 102-104; conditions in 1680, 104; independence, 106.
- Dutch East India Company, formation, 7. 58, 117; *See also* Indies.
- Dutch West India Company, attempts to establish, 7. 117, 120; charter and powers, 129; sub-

GENERAL INDEX

- scription, 130; prosperity, 145; charter of Privileges and Exemptions to New Netherland, 154-159; petition of New Netherland against, 252. *See also* New Netherland.
- Dyer, Mary, Quaker, executed, 6. 238; feared, 239 n.
- Dyer, William, collector of the port at New York, 8. 45; indicted for treason, 196; released and rewarded, 196.
- Eannes, Gil, Portuguese navigator, passes Cape Bojador, 1. 371.
- Earth's surface, changes, 1. 16. *See also* Geography.
- East Indies. *See* Indies.
- East Jersey. *See* New Jersey.
- Eastchurch, Thomas, governor of North Carolina, 5. 329, 331.
- Easty, Mary, witchcraft victim, 9. 176-179, 181-183.
- Eaton, Theophilus, leader of New Haven colony, 6. 163; and Stuyvesant, 7. 294.
- Economic conditions, English in sixteenth century, 4. 53-57. *See also* Agriculture, Manufactures, Taxation, Trade.
- Eden, Charles, governor of North Carolina, 5. 356; and the pirates, 428.
- Eden, Sir Robert, governor of Maryland, 5. 200, 10. 220.
- Eden, Garden of, speculations of Columbus on, 2. 187.
- Edenton, N. C., rest of government, 5. 356; no churches in, 364.
- Edict of Nantes, revoked, 6. 55, 8. 399; neutralized, 398, 399; issued, 9. 35.
- Edmundson, William, and Berkeley, 5. 66.
- Education, attempt to establish a university in Virginia, 4. 274; attitude of Puritans, Liberal Churchmen, and Quakers, 276, 6. 182-185, 8. 374, 375; in-struction of Indians, 4. 288, 5. 144, 6. 255; early free schools in Virginia, 5. 5; William and Mary College, 135-137, 144-150; school in Maryland, 189; in Virginia and New England, 286-297, 7. 37; early free schools in South Carolina, 5. 379; Harvard College, 6. 134, 9. 206-211; public schools originate in the Netherlands, 6. 134, 7. 21; in New York, 8. 332; Philadelphia schools, 375.
- Edwards, Jonathan, greatness, 6. 222; mysticism, 223; emphasis on conversion, 224; revival of 1734, 226; quarrel with his church, 231; president of Princeton, 231.
- Eelkens, Jacob, and the Iroquois, 7. 123; and Twiller, 168-170.
- Egede, Hans, in Greenland, 1. 262.
- Elcano, Sebastian, in Magellan's voyage, mutinies, 2. 434; return voyage, 447; crest, 450.
- Eliot, John, Indian Bible, 6. 257; Indian missionary, 258-260, 265; deplores Indian slavery, 299.
- Elizabeth, queen of England, patriotic, 4. 42, 6. 67; penurious, 5. 58; character of her Protestantism, 6. 51, 70; policy, 70-73, 83; and the Puritans, 71, 78.
- Elizabeth City, Va., named, 4. 264.
- Elizabethtown, N. J., 8. 13.
- Ellsworth, Oliver, 12. 271.
- Emigration, of Cavaliers to Virginia, 4. 18-21; Scotch-Irish, 5. 456-462, 8. 412; significance of Puritan, 6. 57; character of New England, 94, 170-175, 7. 258; Pilgrim, 6. 95-99; Puritan, to Massachusetts, 117, 126, 154, 166; to Connecticut, 152-154; to New Haven, 164, 165; of sects to America, 7. 149, 267, 8. 385-414; inducements in New Netherland, 7. 198.
- Enciso, Martin Fernandez de, and Darien, 3. 181-183, 186, 191.

GENERAL INDEX

- Encomiendas, introduction, 3. 265 ;
New Laws on, 301 ; gradual
abolition, 302. *See also* Slavery.
- Endicott, John, sent to Naumkeag,
6. 114-116 ; governor, 117 ;
defaces English flag, 141 ; rav-
ages Block Island, 157 ; on Bap-
tists, 220-222 ; character, 227,
241 ; persecution of Quakers,
238.
- Endrede Andreasson, last bishop of
Greenland, 1. 262.
- England, first step toward supremacy,
2. 213, 233 ; policy of individual-
ism, 3. 404 ; religious persecu-
tion, 404, 6. 48 ; and Spain
during Elizabeth's reign, 4. 11-
13, 22-31, 39-44, 46, 51 ; eco-
nomic condition under Elizabeth,
25, 53-57 ; development of in-
terest in colonization, 51-71, 225 ;
Dutch commercial influence, 52,
7. 39-43, 51-53 ; origin of
settlement of Virginia, 4. 73-93 ;
palatinates, 300-305 ; class condi-
tions, 5. 15-18, 6. 35, 52, 71 ;
Navigation Acts, 5. 53-59, 7.
289 ; French wars, 5. 195, 6.
343, 8. 245, 9. 249, 11. 13 ;
slavery, 5. 232-234 ; later Span-
ish wars, 359, 11. 161-166 ;
efforts against the pirates, 5. 413,
421, 8. 264 ; irrepressible con-
flict with France in America, 5.
440, 9. 233, 240 ; development of
civil liberty, 6. 29, 32, 35, 7. 24,
27 ; character of Germanic inva-
sion, 6. 30-34 ; effect of Norman
conquest, 34 ; importance of Great
Rebellion, 43, 53, 55, 59, 167-
169 ; Lollards, 49-51, 61-66, 7.
44 ; dual character of Reformation,
6. 51-54, 66 ; influence of Bible,
62-65 ; geography of Puritanism,
73-76, 7. 44 ; influence of long
peace, 6. 121 n. ; effect of Revolu-
tion of 1689, 341 ; Dutch reli-
gious influence, 7. 43-46 ; inter-
est in the East Indies, 61 ; claim
to New Netherland, 131-134,
137, 144, 163-165, 170, 320-
324 ; Dutch friendship, 282, 287 ;
commercial rivalry with the Neth-
erlands, 288 ; Dutch wars, 289,
290, 338, 8. 19, 27, 39-41,
11. 189-194 ; personal union
with the Netherlands, 7. 291 ;
importance of New Netherland to
its control of America, 324, 338,
8. 1 ; affair of the Seven Bishops,
349-351 ; captures Acadia and
Quebec in 1628, 9. 91 ; restores
them, 92 ; witchcraft trials, 138-
140, 143 ; Witch Act, 143 ;
allied with Prussia, 302 ; political
condition in 1767, 10. 37 ; Whig
control, 45-49 ; self-contradictory
attitude in the Revolution, 116,
11. 196 ; disbelief in colonial
common cause, 10. 120, 135,
137 ; effect of Concord, 149 ;
effect of New Jersey campaign,
278 ; effect of Burgoyne's sur-
render, 11. 5 ; importance placed
on a restricted colonial trade, 6,
12. 161-166 ; party views on
America in 1778, 11. 7, 9-11 ;
desperate situation in 1778, 13 ;
hope in Chatham, 14-17 ; debt
to Chatham, 21 ; resources taxed,
98 ; threatened invasion foiled,
167 ; naval supremacy, 168, 169,
347 ; exercise of right of search,
169, 172, 178-181, 189 ; de-
sires alliance with Russia, 175-
178, 181 ; and doctrine of free
ships, free goods, 183-185 ; mu-
tual disregard of treaties with Hol-
land, 187 ; effect of Yorktown,
344 ; serious position in 1781,
345 ; debt to the Revolution,
349 ; first American ministry to,
12. 164 ; legal fiction and real
government in, 343-355. *See
also* Colonies, Crown, Parliament,
Peace of 1783, Treaties, and also
colonies, kings, statesmen, and
wars by name.

GENERAL INDEX

- English, acquire primacy, 6. 6, 57 ; Dutch kinship, 7. 3. *See also* England.
- English East India Company, formation, 7. 58 ; activity, 61.
- Entail in Virginia, 5. 40 ; abolished, 12. 83.
- Episcopal church of America, origin, 100 ; first bishops, 101. *See also* Church of England.
- Eratosthenes, on an encompassing ocean, 1. 341 ; on westward route to Indies, 2. 43 ; on size of earth, 47.
- Eric Gnupsson, bishop of Greenland and Vinland, 1. 257 ; search for Vinland, 258.
- Eric the Red, settles Greenland, 1. 182-185 ; his saga, 229. *See also* Sagas.
- Erie Indians, 1. 53, 9. 48 ; extermination, 1. 55, 89, 9. 49.
- Escobar, Pedro de, Portuguese navigator, crosses equator, 1. 375.
- Eskimos, descended from Cave-men, 1. 19-23 ; relation of American and Siberian, 21 n. ; not Indians, 25 ; not natives of Vinland, 217, 218 n. ; destroy Norse settlements in Greenland, 260.
- Espinosa, Gaspar de, chief judge of Darien, 3. 191 ; voyage on the Pacific, 202.
- Espinosa, Gonzalo Gomez de, in Magellan's fleet, 2. 447 ; pensioned and ennobled, 450.
- Estaing, Count d', arrival in America, 11. 88 ; fleet unable to enter New York harbour, 89 ; before Newport, 92-95 ; proclamation to Canada, 97 ; conquests in West Indies, 167 ; at attack on Savannah, 211.
- Estevánico, negro, adventures with Cabeza de Vaca, 3. 331 ; with Fray Marcos, 334 ; reception in Zuni, 335-337.
- Estotiland, Zeno's description, 1. 281 ; identity, 282, 285.
- Eugenius IV., pope, grants heathen countries to Portugal, 1. 373.
- Europe, condition in 1000, 1. 297-300 ; outlook toward Asia only, 300-303 ; effect of Saracen empire, 310 ; effect of Crusades, 312, 314-316 ; condition in 1300, 318 ; origin of name, 2. 367 n.-369 n. ; modern map foreshadowed, 7. 10 ; conditional and of sixteenth century, 9. 34. *See also* the countries by name.
- Eutaw Springs, S. C., battle, 11. 320 ; effect, 321.
- Evans, John, as deputy-governor of Pennsylvania, 8. 365-367.
- Evelin, George, action in Maryland, 4. 351.
- Evertsen, Cornelius, Dutch admiral, captures New York, 8. 28.
- Ewing, James, at crossing of the Delaware, 10. 269.
- Executive, national, in the Federal Convention, in the Virginia plan, 12. 286 ; in the New Jersey plan, 293 ; debate, 327-329 ; single head, 329 ; election and reëligibility, 330-339 ; theory and practice of election, 339-342 ; modelled after mistaken idea of English, 343, 351-354 ; veto power, 354 ; independence a desirable feature, 355-357 ; question of a council, 357-359 ; Senate's share, 358. *See also* Governor.
- Exeter, N. H., settled, 6. 146.
- Expeditions, interior : Cortez in Mexico, 3. 37-53, 69-87 ; Balboa on the isthmus of Panama, 186-188 ; Pizarro in Peru, 207-241 ; Cabeza de Vaca's, 331 ; Fray Marcos's, 333-337 ; Coronado's, 338 ; Soto's, 339-341 ; Champlain's, 359, 9. 65-71, 83-88 ; La Salle's, 3. 362-369, 9. 111-115, 126-132 ; Marquette and Joliet on the Mississippi, 3. 363, 9. 117-120 ; Hennepin's, 3. 371 ; across the Rocky Mountains, 373-376 ;

GENERAL INDEX

- Spotswood crosses the Blue Ridge, 5. 449-452; Céloron in Ohio valley, 9. 264-267. *See also* Voyages.
- Explorations. *See* Expeditions, Voyages.
- Exquemeling, Alexander, Dutch buccaneer, 5. 411.
- Faeroe Islands, Zenos at, 1. 264-267; on Zeno map, 271.
- Fagundes, Alvarez, voyage, 9. 7.
- Fair Haven, Mass., burned by the British, 11. 132.
- Fairfax, sixth Lord, and Washington, 5. 464, 465.
- Fairfield, Conn., burned by the British, 11. 133.
- Familists, belief, 6. 198.
- Family, patriarchal, not primitive, 1. 63-65; primitive kinship through female, 65-68; origin of indissoluble marriage, 69, 74; earliest forms, 71; exogamy, 72; change to male kinship, 72, 73, 76; development of phratry and tribe, 72; Aztec, 140-142; growth of patriarchal, 3. 118-120; in Peru, 161. *See also* Clan.
- Federal Convention, steps toward, 12. 253-257, 263; calling of, 257, 262; conditions favouring, 258; appointment of delegates, 261-263; character and composition, 264-271; Washington president, 271; secrecy, 272, 273; Madison's journal, 272; problems, 273, 276-279; Virginia plan, 276, 280, 284-287; reception of Virginia plan, 287; popular election of representatives, 288; antagonism on state representation, 289-297; New Jersey plan, 290; Hamilton's plan, 292; Connecticut compromise, 297-302, 317; fear of the West, 303; representation according to population, 304; compromise on slave representation, 305-311, 317; compromise on slave trade and commercial powers, 311-313, 316, 317; federal powers, 318-322; expressed prohibitions, 320; state prohibitions, 323; question of paper money, 323-327; debate on the executive, 327-339, 343, 357-359; provisions for the judiciary, 359; provisions for amendment and ratification, 362; signing of the draft, 363; closing scene, 364-366.
- Federalist*, character, 5. 296, 12. 410; authorship, 5. 297 n., 12. 409.
- Fendall, Josias, governor of Maryland, 4. 373, 5. 153; plot against the proprietary, 156-160.
- Fenwick, John, in West Jersey, 8. 19, 162, 163, 166.
- Ferdinand, king of Aragon, no share in first expedition of Columbus, 2. 102; gets credit for the discovery, 139 n.; edicts of 1495 and 1497, 178, 308-311; dissatisfaction with Columbus, 190, 192, 307; and Indian slavery, 3. 255, 264, 271; death, 276.
- Ferguson, Patrick, at King's Mountain, 11. 294-297; killed, 297.
- Fernandez, Dinis, Portuguese navigator, passes Cape Verde, 1. 374.
- Ferrar, Nicholas, deputy-treasurer of London Company, 4. 239; character, 240-242; answers charges, 251-253; attempt to corrupt, 254; copies records, 259-261; zeal for education, 276.
- Fielding, affair with Bylandt, 11. 180.
- Filibuster, origin of the name, 5. 406.
- Finances, requisitions on the states, ii. 238, 240; collapse of continental, 12. 123-125, 185; distress, 193-200; cost of the Revolution, 198; national powers under the Constitution, 320. *See also* Money, Taxation.

GENERAL INDEX

- Firearms, selling of, to the Indians, 7. 124, 206, 247, 8. 67.
- Fisher, Mary, Quaker, in Boston, 6. 232; in Turkey, 233.
- Fisheries. *See* Newfoundland.
- Fitzherbert, Alleyne, peace envoy, 12. 26.
- Five Nations. *See* Iroquois.
- Flag, provisional American, 10. 203; stars and stripes first hoisted, 341.
- Flatlands, L. I., settled, 7. 201.
- Fleete, Henry, and Claiborne, 4. 341-343.
- Fletcher, Benjamin, governor of New York, character, 8. 247; and the assembly, 250; as governor of Pennsylvania, 253; and the Connecticut militia, 253-255; accusations against and recall, 265.
- Flirting, legislation against, 4. 289.
- Florida, Vespucius coasts, 2. 277, date of discovery, 297-303; confused on maps with Cuba, 303-305; discovery by Ponce de Leon, 3. 316; attempted Spanish colonies, 341; Huguenot colony, 342-344; its destruction by Spanish, 344-350; founding of St. Augustine, 346; destruction of Huguenot colony avenged, 352-354; importance of destruction, 354; and South Carolina and Georgia, 5. 317, 325, 336, 341, 356-359, 390-392; Spanish conquest in the Revolution, 11. 167, 346.
- Flushing, L. I., refuses to enforce religious persecution, 8. 272, 273.
- Folkland, idea of, and development of national territory, 12. 221, 245.
- Fonseca, Juan Rodriquez de, head of Spanish department of Indian affairs, 2. 149; character, 149; hatred of Columbus, 152, 180, 190, 197; and Las Casas, 3. 276, 284, 285.
- Food, Indian, 1. 57; Aztec, 3. 62; Peruvian, 113; Virginia colonial, 5. 266-268; New York colonial, 8. 323, 324 n. *See also* Indian corn.
- Forbes, John, character, 9. 336; expedition against Fort Duquesne, 336-341; death, 342.
- Ford, Philip, Penn's steward, 8. 368.
- Forestalling, penalties in Virginia, 4. 293.
- Fort Amsterdam, N. Y., built, 7. 140. *See also* New Amsterdam, New York City.
- Fort Christina, Del., built, 7. 277.
- Fort Crèvecoeur, Ill., La Salle builds, 3. 365, 9. 127; mutiny and destruction, 3. 366, 9. 128.
- Fort Duquesne (Pittsburg), importance of location, 9. 261, 263, 326; rival English colonial claims to site, 268; French build, 272; Braddock's expedition against, 283-293; effect of destruction of Fort Frontenac, 335, 340; Forbes's expedition against, 337-340; isolated and abandoned, 341; named Fort Pitt, 341.
- Fort Edward, N. Y., built, 9. 296; Webb's force at, 311; evacuated by Schuyler, 10. 320.
- Fort Frontenac (Kingston), Canada, built, 8. 61, 9. 124; strategic value, 326, 335; captured, 334.
- Fort Good Hope (Hartford), 7. 135, 173, 177, 307.
- Fort Griswold, Conn., slaughter of garrison, 11. 136 n., 339.
- Fort Le Bœuf, Penn., French block-house, 9. 268; Washington at, 271.
- Fort Lee, N. J., position, 10. 253; evacuated, 261.
- Fort Lyman. *See* Fort Edward.
- Fort Mercer on the Delaware, importance, 10. 372; reduced by the British, 379.
- Fort Mifflin on the Delaware, im-

GENERAL INDEX

- portance, 10. 372; reduced by the British, 379.
- Fort Moultrie, S. C., attack in 1775, 10. 233-235; surrender in 1780, 11. 215.
- Fort Nassau on the Delaware, Dutch and Virginians at, 4. 298, 7. 135, 187.
- Fort Nassau on the Hudson, 7. 123; rebuilt, 135.
- Fort Necessity, Penn., battle and surrender, 9. 275.
- Fort Niagara, N. Y., failure of Shirley's expedition against, 9. 294, 300; capture by Johnson, 345-347; loyalists' headquarters, 11. 104; Sullivan's expedition against, 110, 113.
- Fort Orange, N. Y., built, 7. 135; threatened trouble with the Mohawks, 141; named Albany, 8. 1. *See also* Albany.
- Fort Stanwix (Rome), N. Y., built, 9. 335; siege by St. Leger, 10. 335; sortie, 341; siege raised, 346.
- Fort Washington, N. Y., position, 10. 253; captured, 256-258; effect of capture, 258.
- Fort Watson, S. C., captured by Americans, 11. 315-318.
- Fort William Henry, N. Y., Montcalm's expedition against, 9. 310-313; surrender, 313; massacre, 314.
- Fountain of Youth, Mandeville on, 3. 314; folk-lore, 315; Spanish search for, 315.
- Fox, Charles, on tea tax, 10. 112; on colonial common cause, 120; on North's conciliation measures, 11. 10; effect of Yorktown on, 344; in Rockingham's ministry, 348, 12. 6; and Shelburne, 6, 9, 13, 16-18; favours parliamentary reform, 7; resigns, 18; character, 18; coalition with North, 44-50; coalition ministry, 52; India Bill, 54; overthrow, 55.
- Fox, George, birth, 8. 126; teachings, 127; character, 128.
- Foxes, Algonquin Indians, 1. 51.
- France, becomes interested in America, 3. 323; conflict with England in America, 5. 440, 6. 343, 9. 233, 239; religious persecution, 6. 46-49, 54, 7. 44, 8. 394, 398-401; failure of Reformation, 6. 55, 122; prosperity under Louis XIV., 329; temporary cessation of maritime activity, 7. 92; plan to conquer New York, 8. 202; rise of Huguenots, 393; war with Spain, 9. 8, 12; civil wars, 32; condition at end of sixteenth century, 34; policy in America, 62-64, 104, 120-122, 132; in war of Austrian Succession, 249; in the Seven Years' War, 302; disasters in 1759, 342; interest in American affairs in 1776, 10. 279; assistance, 280, 282; commission sent by Congress to, 280; alliance with United States, 11. 11; policy of alliance, 11. 342 n., 12. 21; war with England, 13; unpopularity of alliance in America, 18, 97; fleet sent to America, 68, 88; sends minister to America, 88; loan of vessels to American navy, 151; alliance with Spain, 165; invasion of England foiled, 167; attitude on maritime rights of neutrals, 171, 182; influence of French philosophers, 174; value of alliance to America, 210, 242; sends troops, 244, 245; and the peace of 1783, 12. 20-25, 43. *See also* Army, Canada, Colonies, and kings and wars by name.
- Francis I. of France, on the bull of demarcation, 9. 8; capture, 12; creates a viceroyalty in the New World, 22, 28.

GENERAL INDEX

- Franklin, Benjamin, plans of union, 5. 446, 9. 280, 10. 9, 10, 186; in Philadelphia, 8. 372, 376; knowledge of colonial political conditions, 10. 8; political foresight, 11; colonial agent in England, 20; on acquiescence in stamp duty, 20; on colonial representation in Parliament, 40; on colonial contribution to French and Indian War, 117; advises payment for the tea, 121; consulted by British ministry, 134; significance of return to America, 135; on Bunker Hill, 172; on committee to draft Declaration of Independence, 227; commissioner to France, 281; superintends maritime affairs, 11. 149; magnanimity, 149; informal peace negotiations, 12. 10; and the separate negotiations, 27, 39; credit for the negotiations, 41; on need of more congressional power, 186 n.; member of the Federal Convention, 266; on the drafted Constitution, 363, 365; presents the draft to legislature of Pennsylvania, 367.
- Franklin, William, royal governor of New Jersey, arrested, 10. 218.
- Franklin, state of, rise and fall, 12. 236-238; lesson, 239.
- Fraser, Simon, British general, at Hubbardton, 10. 316; mortally wounded at Freeman's Farm, 387.
- Frederick the Great, and the Seven Years' War, 9. 301; hatred of George III., 10. 50, 11. 176; on hiring of German troops, 10. 191; encourages America, 11. 12; debt to Chatham, 23; suggests doctrine of free ships, free goods, 173; influence over Catherine, 176, 193; disbelief in stability of United States, 12. 69; trade treaty, 184.
- Free ships, free goods. *See* Neutrality.
- Freeman's Farm, N. Y., first battle, 10. 382-384; second battle, 386-389.
- French and Indian War, first movements, 9. 271-276; troops sent to America, 281; first naval battle, 282; first comprehensive plan, 285, 294; war declared, 301; strategic points, 326; English preparations for campaign of 1759, 342-345; colonial contribution, 10. 17. *See also* fortified places and generals by name.
- Freydis, wife of Thorvard, evil deeds in Vinland, 1. 194-196.
- Frislanda, cartography, 1. 271, 2. 228 n., 3. 356; identity with Færoe Islands, 1. 271 n., 273; Columbus describes, 2. 57.
- Frobisher, Sir Martin, search for northwest passage, 3. 378.
- Frontenac, Louis de Buade, Count of, governor of Canada, designs on New York, 8. 202; designs frustrated, 204; character, 229, 9. 116; invades Iroquois country, 8. 230; defeated by Schuyler, 250.
- Frontier, Scotch-Irish and Palatine settlers, 5. 456, 460-463, 8. 409, 413, 9. 259; Carolina, 5. 315, 388, 389; conditions in America, 315, 463; advance of English settlements, 9. 237, 259-264, 11. 122-125, 129; border warfare, 100, 114, 124, 12. 60; conditions and claims, 11. 115; Lord Dunmore's War, 117-122; importance of battle of Point Pleasant, 122; conquest of the Northwest, 125-129; cardinal events during the Revolution, 130; Great Britain refuses to surrender posts, 12. 157. *See also* Territory.
- Fuca, Juan de la, voyage, 3. 378 n.
- Fuegians, 3. 63, 96.
- Fuller, William, Puritan head of Maryland government, 4. 370; defeats Stone, 371; yields to Fen-

GENERAL INDEX

- dall, 5. 153; in Fendall's plot, 159.
- Fundamental Constitutions of Carolina, 5. 319-322.
- Fur-trade, French, on the Hudson, 7. 79, 92, 9. 28; early Dutch, 7. 118; Dutch monopolies, 119, 121, 157; illicit Dutch, 162, 194; Kieft's reforms, 195; made free in New Netherland, 197; coveted by England, 325; Caughnawaga middlemen, 8. 286; Burnet's measures, 288; controlling interest in New York, 304; monopoly of Canadian, 9. 36-38, 49, 57, 59, 82, 90; interests opposed to settlement, 88; route, 104, 261; diversion to the English, 262.
- Gadsden, Christopher, advocates Stamp Act Congress, 10. 24; broad views for liberty and union, 25; on payment for the tea, 121; captured at Charleston, 2. 276.
- Gage, Thomas, with Braddock, 9. 289; commander-in-chief in America, fears to enforce Stamp Act in New York, 10. 25, 28; unable to quarter soldiers in Boston, 69; advises coercion, 111, 119; governor of Massachusetts, 116; dissolves the assembly, 124; proclamation against town meetings, 125; fortifies Boston Neck, 127; Howe to supersede, 132; fears temper of Boston, 140; attempts to corrupt Samuel Adams, 140; sends troops to Lexington, 142; offers amnesty, 161; plan at Bunker Hill, 164.
- Gama, Vasco da, voyage to Hindustan, 1. 383, 2. 191; effect on Spanish exploration, 400.
- Gamaland, fabulous island in the Pacific, 3. 385.
- Gambling in Virginia, 5. 279.
- Gansevoort, Peter, commands Fort Stanwix, 10. 336; sortie, 341.
- Garcilasso de la Vega, *Royal Commentaries of the Incas*, 3. 108 n.; correctness, 110 n.
- Gardiner, Sir Christopher, in Massachusetts, 6. 126.
- Gardiner, Lyon, builds and commands Fort Saybrook, 7. 177.
- Gardoqui, Diego de, Spanish envoy, negotiations on the Mississippi, 12. 248.
- Gasca, Pedro de la, royal agent to Peru, arrival, 3. 238; defeats and executes Gonzalo Pizarro, 239.
- Gaspee, British sloop, burned by mob in Rhode Island, 10. 90-92.
- Gates, Horatio, with Braddock, 9. 289; character, 10. 178, 269, 298, 348, 389, 11. 50, 110; intrigues against Schuyler, 298-301; responsible for fall of Ticonderoga, 318; in Saratoga campaign, 383-385, 389, 394; credit for Burgoyne's surrender, 11. 38; insubordination, 39; in Conway Cabal, 40, 43-54; commands southern department, 224; Lee's warning, 225; Camden campaign, 225-233; downfall, 233; and the Newburgh address, 12. 129-132.
- Gates, Sir Thomas, member of London Company, 4. 77; lieutenant-governor of Virginia, 173; voyage to Virginia, 174-177, 181; reports to company, 191.
- Geminus, Greek astronomer, on torrid zone, 1. 355.
- General Court of Massachusetts, origin, 6. 127-131; character under new charter, 9. 185.
- Genoa, Italy, trade rivalry with Venice, 1. 316, 327, 336, 5. 401; birthplace of Columbus, 2. 17, 18.
- Gentilism. *See* Clan.
- Geography, Zeno map, 1. 268-272; knowledge in ancient and mediæval Europe, 296, 303;

GENERAL INDEX

Ptolemy map, 304; theories of earth's shape, 307, 308 n., 356, 2. 41-46, 186-188, 198; first knowledge of Pacific Ocean, 1. 321; Marco Polo's contribution, 328; Catalan map, 332; result of intercourse with Mongol empire, 334; impulse for new route to the East, 337; ancient opinion on an encompassing ocean, 340-342, 350, 2. 41-46; ancient theory of the five zones, 1. 351-356; superstitions concerning inhabitants of unknown regions, 358; Medici map, 369; effect of Portuguese voyages, 376-380, 383; Toscanelli's chart, 2. 25, 28 n.; theories on size of earth, 47-55; Toscanelli on westward route to Indies, 28-33; origin of westward route, 35-37, 41-43, 47; misleading "ancient atlases," 65 n.; sixteenth century maps, 221, 305, 353, 4. 48, 7. 83; Cabot map, 2. 223-225, 230; La Cosa map, 227-230, 293-297; Cantino map, 235, 297-299, 306 n.; Waldseemüller's *Tabula Terre Novæ*, 299-303, 371; confusion of Florida and Cuba, 303-305; importance of Vesputius's third voyage, 333-338, 356; Ruysch map, 346-349; Lenox globe, 349-351; Finæus globe, 352-354; influence of Ptolemy and Mela on early cartography of New World, 354-357, 372, 380; Leonardo da Vinci map, 379; Schöner globes, 380; Agnese map, 381, 3. 326, 4. 72; Münster map, 2. 381, 3. 327; Mercator gores, 2. 385; Stobnicza map, 414; and romantic spirit, 3. 1-4; Verrazano map, 325, 7. 72, 9. 11; Verrazano Sea, 3. 326, 329, 356, 4. 72, 7. 72, 9. 11; Gastaldi map, 3. 327, 7. 87; Lok map, 3. 356, 4. 72; Dee map, 3. 357, 358; Joliet map,

369; Smith's map of Virginia, 4. 138; Maiollo map, 7. 73-75, 9. 11; early cartography of east coast of North America, 7. 84-87; Ribeiro map, 86; Santa Cruz map, 86; cartography of Norumbega, 87-91; alleged chart of Denys, 9. 4-6; Luiz map, 7; cartographical union of Hudson and St. Lawrence rivers, 27. *See also* America, North America, South America.

George III. of England, colonial and home policy, 10. 44, 45, 47-52, 11. 16, 351, 12. 3; character, 10. 45-47; personal government, 53, 87, 11. 349, 352, 12. 1. 54; plan to enforce colonial taxation, 10. 97-99; refuses to receive congressional petition, 188; proclaims rebellion, 188; hires foreign soldiers, 188-190; on capture of Ticonderoga, 318; satirical print on, 11. 13 n.; effect of Yorktown, 344, 347; and the coalition ministry, 12. 49, 52-55; disbelief in stability of United States, 68.

Georgia, buffer colony, 5. 390; settlement and government, 390-392; social condition, 392, 8. 392; instructions on independence, 10. 209; conditions in 1779, 11. 199; overrun by British, 201-203; regained by Americans, 348; paper money, 12. 201; ratifies the Constitution, 379.

Gérard, C. A., French minister to United States, 11. 88; seeks to limit claims of United States, 165.

Germain, Lord George, on the colonies, 10. 110; colonial secretary, 191; plan of campaign for 1777, 305-314, 358, 380; war policy, 11. 28, 100, 131, 197, 198, 205; shifts blame for Burgoyne's surrender, 66; dismissed, 347.

GENERAL INDEX

- German troops in British army, 10.
189-191; effect on independence,
203; desert, 277, 11. 81.
- Germanic races, future solidarity,
11. 23.
- Germanic tribes, culture status, 1.
37; mobility, 3. 173 n.; local
self-government, 6. 20, 29; effect
on Roman political organization,
20-23; representation, 29; char-
acteristics of invasion of England,
30-34; counter-effect of Roman
ideas, 31, 34, 39.
- Germans, emigration to America,
4. 144, 5. 347, 371, 462, 8.
303, 406-410, 9. 259, 10.
336.
- Germantown, Penn., battle, 10.
373-379.
- Gerrits, Dirk, Dutch navigator, Ant-
arctic voyage, 7. 65.
- Gerry, Elbridge, member of Federal
convention, 12. 271; refuses to
sign the Constitution, 363.
- Gibraltar, siege, 11. 167, 168, 346,
347, 12. 20; as a factor in the
peace negotiations, 20, 42.
- Gilbert, Bartholomew, on coast of
Virginia, 4. 65, 119.
- Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, advice to
Queen Elizabeth, 4. 27, 28; at-
tempted colony, 33; death, 34.
- Glen, John, and the French attack
on Schenectady, 8. 226, 227.
- Glover, Mrs., of Boston, executed
for witchcraft, 9. 148, 152.
- Glover, John, his amphibious sol-
diers, 10. 247, 269, 11. 96.
- Glover, William, acts as governor
of North Carolina, 5. 345.
- Godfrey, Thomas, mathematician,
8. 376.
- Godfrey, Thomas (second), drama-
tist, *Prince of Parthia*, 8. 377.
- Goffe, William, regicide, in New
England, 6. 245, 275-277,
321.
- Gold, Columbus inquires for, 2. 117;
discovery in Hayti, 157, 175;
effect of discovery on Indian sla-
very, 3. 266; delusion in Vir-
ginia, 4. 144.
- Gomez, Diego, discovers Cape Verde
Islands, 1. 374.
- Gomez, Estevan, with Magellan, 2.
428, 438; on coast of North
America, 3. 322, 7. 9.
- Gonçalves, Antonio, voyage on Afri-
can coast, 1. 372; begins mod-
ern slave trade, 372.
- Gondomar, Count, Spanish ambassa-
dor to London, influence over
James I., 4. 229-231, 233-235,
284.
- Gonzalez Dávila, Gil, in Central
America, 3. 203-206.
- Gooch, William, governor of Vir-
ginia, 5. 455.
- Good, Sarah, witchcraft victim, 9.
162, 180; execution, 180.
- Goode, John, on Bacon's plans, 5.
96-100.
- Goodwin witchcraft case, 9. 148,
152-154.
- Gookin, Daniel, conversion, 4. 356;
Indian superintendent, 6. 279.
- Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, in Plymouth
Company, 4. 79, 6. 108; career,
107; in Council for New Eng-
land, 108; grants and colony in
New England, 115, 126, 137,
188, 318, 320, 325.
- Gorton, Samuel, character and reli-
gious belief, 6. 197-201; troubles
in New England, 201-212; later
life, 212 n.
- Gosnold, Bartholomew, on New
England coast, 4. 65; sails with
settlers of Virginia, 84, 107-109;
death, 115.
- Gourgues, Dominique de, avenges de-
struction of Huguenot colony, 3.
352-354.
- Government, Indian, 1. 82, 85, 89-
91, 100; Mexican, 122-127;
Peruvian, 3. 139-144; genesis
of English colonial, 4. 36, 7.
257-259, 262; Virginia under the

GENERAL INDEX

- London Company, 4. 75, 170-172, 219-221; Massachusetts under first charter, 277, 315, 6. 116, 123, 127-132; Virginia as a royal province, 4. 279, 285-287, 315; palatinate, 300-305, 323-327; Maryland proprietary, 315-317, 329-334; colonial types, 315, 328; Pennsylvania proprietary, 5. 168, 8. 360-362; Fundamental Constitutions of Carolina, 5. 320-322; origin of modern, 6. 22; Connecticut, 154-156; New Haven, 165; New England Confederacy, 191; New Hampshire, 324; Massachusetts under second charter, 344; growth of monarchy, 7. 13; New Netherland, 152, 259, 262; Netherlands, 283-285; New York, 8. 3, 231, 246; East Jersey, 14, 17; West Jersey, 167; true basis of democracy, 359; establishment of state, 10. 185, 209, 213, 218, 12. 75-82; Northwest Territory, 242-244; English, 343-355; conception of American, 361. *See also* Continental Congress, Federal Convention, Local self-government, Nation-making, Representation, Union.
- Governors, early state, 12. 79. *See also* Assemblies.
- Graffenried, Baron de, in North Carolina, 5. 347, 351, 353.
- Grant, James, disastrous reconnaissance on Fort Duquesne, 9. 339; contempt for provincials, 340; at Long Island, 10. 243.
- Grants, of Virginia to Arlington and Culpeper, 5. 62, 131; Dutch ordinance of 1614, 7. 119; to Duke of York, 330, 8. 41; of New Jersey, 12, 42; French fur-trade monopoly, 9. 36-38, 49, 59, 90; of Acadia, 49, 76, 93, 96. *See also* Charters.
- Grasse, Count de, fleet in Yorktown campaign, 11. 329-331, 334, 336; defeated by Rodney in West Indies, 346, 12. 16.
- Gravé, François. *See* Pontgravé.
- Graves, Thomas, defeated by Grasse, 11. 336.
- Gravesend, L. I., settled, 7. 199.
- Gray, Robert, discovers Columbia River, 3. 375.
- Great Awakening of 1734, 9. 225-231.
- Great Rebellion, significance, 6. 53, 55, 56, 59-61, 167-169.
- Green Farms, Conn., burned by British, 11. 133.
- Green Mountain Boys, purpose, 10. 153; capture Ticonderoga and Crown Point, 153. *See also* Vermont.
- Green Spring, Va., battle, 11. 327.
- Greene, Nathanael, character, 10. 176, 259; fortifies Brooklyn Heights, 242; commands Fort Lee, 253, 261; blunders at Fort Washington, 257-259; and Washington, 259, 11. 300; at Brandywine, 10. 366, 369; at Germantown, 375, 376; quartermaster-general, 11. 59; tries André, 274; versed in military law, 279; abused, 300; commands southern department, 301; plan of campaign, 302; campaign, 307-321; and congressional revenue, 12. 128; death, 266.
- Greene, Roger, settlement in North Carolina, 5. 322.
- Greenland, discovered, 1. 179-181; settled, 182-185, 197; application of name, 183; change in climate, 183 n., 202-204; archæological remains, 251; conditions and end of settlement, 256, 260-262; Zeno visits, 265, 266; described, 275-277; on Ruysch map, 2. 348, 353; insularity recognized, 3. 381.
- Greenwich, Conn., settled, 7. 200; controlled by the Dutch, 201.

GENERAL INDEX

- Grenville, George, prime minister, 10. 17; declaratory resolves on taxing colonies, 18; defends Stamp Act, 29; opposes extension of treason-abroad statute, 70.
- Grenville, Sir Richard, convoys Raleigh's settlers, 4. 38.
- Grenville, Thomas, peace envoy, 12. 12; rebuffed, 16.
- Grey, Sir Charles, defeats Wayne, 10. 372; at Germantown, 374, 377.
- Grijalva, Juan de, expedition on Mexican coast, 3. 19, 34-36.
- Grosceilliers, Sieur des, explorations in the West, 9. 101.
- Grube, Master, identity of voyage, 2. 231.
- Guatemala conquest, 3. 90; Las Casas in, 290.
- Guercheville, Marchioness de, and the Jesuits, 9. 74; grant, 76.
- Guiana, Raleigh's quest, 4. 233.
- Guichen, Count de, defeated in the West Indies, 11. 169.
- Guilford, Conn., settled, 6. 165.
- Guilford Court House, N. C., battle, 11. 309-313.
- Gulf of St. Lawrence, alleged discovery, 9. 4; Fagundes's exploration, 7; Cartier in, 13, 14.
- Gunnbjörn, viking, discovers Greenland, 1. 181.
- Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden, interest in America, 7. 275.
- Habeas corpus, writ, denied in England, 6. 119; suspended in Massachusetts, 338, 12. 215; forbidden in Quebec Act, 10. 115. *See also* Civil liberty.
- Hackensack, N. J., settled, 7. 208; Americans occupy, 10. 275.
- Hadley, Mass., Indian attack, 6. 275-277, 294.
- Hakluyt, Richard, as a geographer, 4. 49; *Discourse on Western Planting*, 50-54; in London Company, 77; instructions to settlers of Virginia, 84-90; on Indians, 152.
- Haldimand, Frederick, defends Oswego, 9. 345; manuscripts, 345 n.
- Hale, Nathan, and Major André, 11. 274.
- Half-King, Indian chief, unstable friendship, 9. 269; warns Washington, 274; at Fort Necessity, 275.
- Halfway Covenant in Massachusetts, 6. 314-316, 9. 200; outgrowth, 221; effect of the Great Awakening, 225, 231.
- Hamilton, Alexander, political belief, 5. 114, 12. 267; in the Revolution, 11. 46, 340, 12. 49; birth and ancestry, 147; character, 148; defends Tories, 150-153; Annapolis Convention address, 256; member of the Federal Convention, 267; plan, 292; on electing the president, 340-342; *Federalist*, 409-411; in New York ratifying convention, 411.
- Hamilton, Andrew, defends Zenger, 8. 292-300; on Pennsylvania's progress, 382.
- Hamilton, Henry, commands Detroit, plans united Indian attack, 11. 125; captures Vincennes, 128; surrenders to Clark, 129.
- Hampton, N. H., settled, 6. 146.
- Hampton, Va., named, 4. 220.
- Hampton Court Conference, futile, 6. 84; promotes separatism, 85.
- Hancock, John, riot over his sloop, 10. 60; character, 127; president of provincial congress, 129; attempt to arrest, 140-143; president of Congress, 156; desires command of the army, 157; exempted from offer of amnesty, 161; urges destruction of Boston, 200; grudge against Samuel Adams, 11. 41; governor of Massachusetts, pardons Shays's insurgents, 12. 218; attitude toward the Constitution, 381, 396.

GENERAL INDEX

- Handcock, Tuscarora chief, 4. 353, 355.
- Hanging Rock, S. C., battle, 11. 223.
- Hanham, Thomas, member of Plymouth Company, 4. 79.
- Hansford, Thomas, Bacon's lieutenant, executed, 5. 107.
- Hardy, Sir Charles, governor of New York, advises tax on colonies, 10. 14.
- Harlem, N. Y., in 1679, 7. 96.
- Harlem Heights, N. Y., British attack, 10. 252; Americans withdraw, 254.
- Harrison, Benjamin, on defiance of England, 10. 156; on independence, 203; opposes the Constitution, 12. 403.
- Harrison, Thomas, and Berkeley, 4. 358, 365.
- Harrisse, Henry, research on Columbus, 2. 8.
- Harrod, James, pioneer in Kentucky, 11. 122.
- Hartford, Conn., Dutch fort, 6. 149, 7. 135, 172; settled, 6. 152, 7. 178; boundary treaty, 297-301.
- Hartley, David, peace envoy, 12. 53.
- Harvard, John, endows the college, 6. 133.
- Harvard College, founded and named, 6. 134, 158; one Indian graduate, 256; presidents mentioned, 258, 315, 332, 337 n., 9. 203, 208, 210, 229, 10. 162; liberalism, 9. 203, 208, 213, 214, 219; question of the charter, 206, 210; question of religious test for its officers, 207; Louisburg cross, 256.
- Harvey, Sir John, governor of Virginia, 4. 295; complaints against, 344; deposed, 345-349; reinstated and reprisals, 349; fall and death, 350.
- Hatfield, Mass., convention in 1786, 12. 213.
- Hauk, Erlendsson, Icelandic chronicler, version of saga on Vinland, 1. 229, 233, 239 n., 246; ancestry, 232; manuscripts, 232.
- Hawkins, Sir John, abandons men on Mexican coast, 1. 288, 4. 23; succours Huguenot colony, 3. 346, 4. 19-21; as a slave-trader, 18, 19; affair at San Juan de Ulua, 22-24; and the Armada, 42.
- Hayne, Isaac, American colonel, executed, 11. 138 n.
- Hayti. *See* Hispaniola.
- Heath, William, American general, before Boston, 10. 177; commands in Boston, 397; on Congress and paper money, 399.
- Heimskringla*, Norse chronicle, importance, 1. 179.
- Heister, Philip von, Hessian general in English army, 10. 189; at Long Island, 243.
- Hell Gate, N. Y., named, 7. 120.
- Helluland, location, 1. 188.
- Henderson, Richard, pioneer in Tennessee, 11. 122.
- Hendrick, Mohawk chief, at Lake George, 9. 299; killed, 299.
- Hendricksen, Cornelius, ascends the Delaware, 7. 121.
- Hennepin, Louis de, youthful romantic spirit, 3. 2, 9. 125; explorations of upper Mississippi, 3. 371; false claims, 371, 9. 126; with La Salle, 126; sketches Niagara Falls, 126.
- Henrico County, Va., origin, 4. 198.
- Henry VII. of England, letters patent to Cabot, 2. 217; reward to Cabot, 218.
- Henry VIII. of England, breaks with Rome, 6. 51, 66; character, 66.
- Henry IV. of France, and Canada, 9. 36, 38, 49, 59; murdered,

GENERAL INDEX

- 73 ; results of abandoning his policy, 73.
- Henry the Navigator, Prince, plans and motives, **1.** 364-366, 368 ; sources of information on, 364 n. ; life at Sacred Promontory, 366-368 ; opposition, 368, 371 n. ; first achievements, 370 ; sanctions slave trade, 372, 3. 250 ; death, **1.** 375 ; work carried on, 375.
- Henry, Patrick, in Parsons' Cause, **10.** 22 ; resolution and speech on Stamp Act, 23 ; on Washington, 158 ; opposes the Constitution, **12.** 401, 403.
- Herkimer, Nicholas, plan to relieve Fort Stanwix, **10.** 336 ; at Oriskany, 337-341 ; death, 342.
- Herman, Augustine, Dutch envoy to Maryland, **5.** 162 ; manors in Maryland, 163, 166 ; map of Maryland, 164.
- Herodotus on an encompassing ocean, **1.** 340, 342, 343.
- Herrera, Antonio de, authority, **2.** 286 ; attacks Vespucci, 393.
- Hiawatha, actuality, **1.** 54 n. ; conceives Iroquois confederacy, **9.** 47.
- Hibbins, Ann, executed for witchcraft, **9.** 146-148.
- Higginson, Francis, goes to America, **6.** 117 ; begins Congregationalism in Massachusetts, 131.
- Hillsborough, Lord, colonial secretary, **10.** 53 ; instructions on Massachusetts' circular letter, 58 ; for coercion of colonies, 72 ; superseded, 98.
- Hipparchus, disbelief in an encompassing ocean, **1.** 341 ; on the antipodal world, 354.
- Hispaniola, Columbus lands, **2.** 120 ; thought to be Japan, 120 ; La Navidad founded, 122 ; fate, 155 ; Isabella founded, 157 ; interior explored, 157 ; circumnavigated, 169 ; disorders, 170, 173, 189 ; Aguado in, 174 ; and Ophir, 175 ; San Domingo founded, 176 ; Bobadillo and Columbus, 192-195 ; centre of Spanish colonization, 3. 312 ; headquarters of buccaneers, 5. 405. *See also* Slavery.
- Hobkirk's Hill, S. C., battle, **11.** 317.
- Hochelaga (Montreal), Cartier's visit, **9.** 16-19 ; typical Iroquois town, 18 ; destroyed, 42. *See also* Montreal.
- Hodshone, Robert, Quaker, persecuted in New Netherland, **7.** 270-272.
- Holland. *See* Netherlands.
- Hollender, Peter, governor of New Sweden, **7.** 278.
- Holmes, Obadiah, Baptist, in Plymouth, **6.** 218 ; persecuted in Massachusetts, 219-224.
- Holy Roman Empire, rise and fall, **6.** 4-5, 22, 39.
- Honduras, Columbus on the coast, **2.** 203 ; Vespucci on the coast, 272, 292.
- Hooker, Richard, liberalism, **4.** 276, **6.** 77.
- Hooker, Thomas, pastor of New Town, **6.** 151 ; on government, 151, 154 ; leads emigration to Connecticut, 153 ; father of American democracy, 155.
- Hopkins, Ezekiel, commands American navy, **11.** 144 n. ; cashiered, 145 n.
- Hopkins, Stephen, and the Gaspee affair, **10.** 91.
- Horn, Schouten van, Dutch navigator, voyage, **3.** 319, **7.** 65.
- Horse-racing in Virginia, **5.** 276-278.
- Hortop, Job, wanderings, **1.** 288.
- House of Burgesses, in Virginia, established, **4.** 219 ; functions, 220 ; why so called, 265-268 ; not changed by annulment of charter, 280, 284 ; Hutchinson

GENERAL INDEX

- on, 282; meetings, 285; controls taxation, 287; Cavalier sentiment in, 366; assumes supreme power temporarily, 5. 23; Long Assembly, 66, 77; Bacon's Laws, 81-83; separate chamber, 82 n.; and Bacon, 88; refuses to yield journals, 128; its clerk becomes a royal appointee, 133; in Maryland, temporary assumption of supreme power, 156-158; struggle for rights, 175-180; in Virginia, conflicts with the governors, 354, 433-439, 442-445, 9. 272, 277; pre-Revolutionary resolves, 10. 23, 75.
- House of Commons, supremacy, 12. 345, 350. *See also* Parliament.
- Houses, Indian, 1. 78-80, 93-96, 8. 93-96; pueblos, 1. 99-106; Maya, 153-158; Aztec, 3. 55; Peruvian, 102-111, 167-169; early, in Virginia, 4. 249, 269; Virginia plantation, 5. 258-266; New York manor, 8. 312-315; New York Dutch country, 320-326.
- Howard, Lord, of Effingham, governor of Virginia, character, 5. 132; absentee, 134; removed, 137.
- Howe, George, Viscount, ancestry, 9. 317; military insight, 319; death, 320; effect of his death, 320, 325; monument, 321.
- Howe, Richard, Lord, intercepts French troops, 9. 282; ancestry, 317; commands fleet in America, 10. 133; to offer conciliation, 134; negotiations for conciliation, 236-239, 248-250; allegiance proclamations, 267, 365; and Charles Lee, 352-354; storm prevents fight with Estaing, 11. 93. *See also* Howe (William).
- Howe, Robert, American general, commands in the South, 11. 201; defeated by Campbell, 202.
- Howe, Sir William, ancestry, 9. 317; at Quebec, 355; to supersede Gates, 10. 132; why appointed, 133; at Bunker Hill, 165, 167; in command, 181; evacuates Boston, 201; before New York City, 223; plans for New York campaign, 235, 239, 252; plan for battle of Long Island, 243; before Brooklyn Heights, 246-248; captures New York City, 250-252; baffled at White Plains, 254; threatens New Jersey and Philadelphia, 255; captures Forts Washington and Lee, 257-261; honours, 267; part assigned in Burgoyne's campaign, 307; why not carried out, 312-314, 350, 357; Lee's advice, 352-355, 357; plans to cross New Jersey foiled, 358; abandons Burgoyne, 361; sails for Philadelphia, 362; poor generalship, 363; campaign against Philadelphia, 364-372; clears the Delaware, 379; resigns, 11. 66; Mischianza in his honor, 67. *See also* Howe (Richard).
- Huanca, Peruvian tribe, 3. 125.
- Huascar, Inca, defeated and deposed, 3. 129, 213; murdered, 221.
- Hubbardton, Va., battle, 10. 316.
- Hudson, Henry, Arctic voyages, 3. 379, 380, 7. 96, 99, 101, 107; explores Hudson River, 3. 379, 7. 103-106; death, 3. 380, 7. 108; seeks a passage to Verrazano Sea, 4. 72, 7. 100; ancestry and early life, 95-97; in Dutch service, 97; services desired by France, 98; on coast of New England, 102; enters Delaware River, 103; detained in England, 107; fame, 109.
- Hudson Bay Company, origin, 3. 372; French interference, 373.
- Hudson River, seen by Gomez, 3. 322, 7. 79; Hudson explores, 3. 379, 7. 103-106; Verrazano enters, 7. 74, 82, 9. 10, 28; French

GENERAL INDEX

- traders on, 7. 79, 9. 28; and Norumbega, 7. 82, 87-89; early cartography, 88, 9. 27; Allefonsce ascends, 7. 89, 9. 27.
- Huguenots, attempted colony in Brazil, 3. 342; attempted colony in Florida, 342-354; in Virginia, 5. 238; in South Carolina, 376; rise and fall of the movement, 6. 54, 122, 8. 393-396, 398, 399; kept out of Canada, 6. 97, 7. 150, 9. 90; in Massachusetts, 6. 171, 8. 401; migration, 7. 149, 8. 399; in New York, 396, 397, 402-405; effect of emigration on France, 400.
- Human sacrifice, and middle period of barbarism, 1. 136, 138 n.; in Mexican tribes, 137, 3. 33, 34, 66-68; among the Chibchas, 93; suppressed by the Incas, 148-150, 150 n., 157.
- Humboldt, Alexander von, authority on Columbus, 2. 9 n.; refutes charges against Vespucci, 263, 397.
- Hundred, basis of early representation in Virginia, 4. 219, 267.
- Hunt, Robert, first clergyman of English America, 4. 109.
- Hunter, Robert, governor of New York, character, 8. 282; and the assembly, 283, 284; on his experiences as governor, 285.
- Hunter, William, Maryland priest, reprimanded, 5. 192.
- Huron Indians, kin to the Iroquois, 1. 52, 57, 9. 47; annihilated by Iroquois, 1. 55, 9. 49, 101; site, 48; friendship necessary to the French, 63, 64; and Champlain attack the Iroquois, 64-70, 86-88; remnant in Ohio valley, 263.
- Hurtado. *See* Mendoza.
- Hutchinson, Anne, Antinomian crusade, 6. 143; exiled, 145; settles at Portsmouth, R. I., 146; later life, 146, 7. 211, 216.
- Hutchinson, Edward, slain by Indians, 6. 273.
- Hutchinson, Thomas, ancestry, 6. 146; chief justice of Massachusetts, grants writs of assistance, 10. 153; house sacked, 27; governor, 73; *History of Massachusetts Bay*, 73; hated and misrepresented, 73-75; conduct in Boston Massacre episode, 80-82; on Boston's committee of correspondence, 94; depreciates courage of Americans, 119; on Samuel Adams, 140; a patriot, 11. 353.
- Hyde, Edward, Earl of Clarendon, a proprietor of Carolina, 5. 317.
- Hyde, Edward, governor of North Carolina, and Carey, 5. 345; death, 355.
- Iberville, Le Moyne d', leads attack on Schenectady, 8. 225.
- Iceland, settled, 1. 177; and Massachusetts, 177, 178 n.; growth and literature, 178; present condition, 179 n.; effect of trade monopoly, 260; not reached by Black Death, 261 n.; Columbus in, 2. 59.
- Illinois Indians, 1. 51, 9. 100, 129, 263.
- Imago Mundi*, influence on Columbus, 2. 46, 53 n.-55 n.
- Impressment, in Boston, 10. 59-61; ordered by Parliament, 206.
- Imprisonment for debt in America, 12. 205.
- Incas, Peruvian tribe, 3. 123; become ruling caste, 124, 139, 167. *See also* Peruvians.
- Incas, Peruvian rulers, list, 3. 100 n.; origin of title, 124; power, 141-144, 155; vice-deity, 144, 154; and the vestal nuns, 153; children, 153, 155; wife, 154. *See also* Peru.
- Independence, Samuel Adams decides for, 10. 63, 67; growth of desire for, 64-67, 155, 186,

GENERAL INDEX

- 203-205; legendary Mecklenburg County Resolves, 150-152; steps toward, 185, 192, 213; opposition, 186; colonies instruct for, 209, 212, 213, 217, 218, 220, 221; Lee's resolution, 215; debate, 216, 224-226; vote, 226; declaration, 227, 229; considerations on declaration, 229-231; recognition of, a condition of peace, 250, 11. 11, 27; English ministry favourable to recognition, 348; necessary to union, 354; question of English acknowledgment, 12. 10, 16, 25, 29.
- India Bill, Fox's, 12. 54.
- Indian corn, importance, 1. 33, 4. 184, 5. 3; productive power, 1. 121 n.; mentioned in Vinland saga, 209-211.
- Indians, anthropology and archaeology: type, 1. 1, 218; differentiation, 2, 25, 28 n.; origin, 2-4, 17, 23, 169; no intercourse with Asia, 24; not Eskimos, 25; only one race, 25-28; culture status, 32, 35-37, 39-41, 97, 3. 92-94; languages, 1. 45, 6. 257; groups and their location, 1. 45-57, 98, 3. 95, 96, 5. 348-350, 6. 147, 9. 42-45, 63, 99, 106, 263; cruelty, 1. 58; morality, 61; hospitality, 81, 7. 106; mound builders, 1. 161-168; stage of development at time of discovery, 169; mental characteristics, 4. 152, 9. 22, 66, 269.
- Economic and social life: cannibalism, 1. 59, 2. 154, 328, 413, 3. 62 n., 148, 8. 249 n.; religion, 1. 61, 103, 9. 67; folklore, 1. 61, 62 n.; social basis, 67, 76, 91, 102; marriage, 76, 81; communism, 77-81, 93, 122; houses, 78-80, 93-96, 99-106, 8. 93-96; position of women, 1. 81, 83; structure and rights of clan, 82; funeral customs, 83, 123, 3. 93, 151; origin and structure of phratry, 1. 84; structure of tribe, 85; confederation, 86-91, 4. 110, 7. 205, 9. 46; common social structure, 93; warfare, 219-222, 6. 291-293, 9. 68-70, 283; dance, 4. 134; adoption, 128-130; pestilence, 6. 101, 9. 54. *See also* Aztecs, Mayas, Peruvians.
- Intertribal relations: primacy of the Iroquois, 1. 55-57, 5. 67, 6. 148, 261, 7. 141, 213, 332, 8. 193, 200, 9. 47-49, 101, 263; perpetual war, 1. 58; in North Carolina, 5. 350; in New England, 6. 205-209, 263, 7. 172, 174; Algonquins displace Iroquois in Canada, 42-44.
- Relations with the whites: fear unknown animals, 1. 193, 216, 3. 40, 217 n.; and Northmen, 1. 193, 215; and Columbus, 2. 114, 160; taken to Europe, 128, 4. 66, 6. 91, 7. 68, 8. 282, 9. 14, 22; origin of name, 2. 128; attack Spanish in Hispaniola, 173; Ovando's treatment, 3. 257-259; Powhatans and Virginia, 4. 110-112, 118-121, 133, 140, 153-166, 198-200, 269; massacres in Virginia, 223, 357; receding frontier, 264; plans to educate, 274, 288, 5. 144, 6. 255; in Maryland, 4. 321, 341; war preceding Bacon's Rebellion, 5. 67-76, 83-86, 88, 95; Tuscarora War in North Carolina, 347-355; trouble in South Carolina, 356-358; and the Pilgrims, 6. 101-104; Roger Williams on rights, 140; Pequot War, 156-163, 7. 175, 178; treatment in New England, 6. 205, 253-255, 260, 263-267; missionary work, 255-260, 265, 279, 300, 8. 60, 286, 9. 86, 89, 92, 103, 235, 262; why peaceful in Pennsylvania, 6. 261, 8. 191-194; King Philip's War, 6. 267-303, 8.

GENERAL INDEX

- 55-58, 67-71; French policy, 7. 112, 8. 60, 9. 62-64, 70, 71, 105, 239; sale of firearms, 7. 124, 206, 247, 8. 67; colonial land purchases, 7. 140, 157, 8. 187-191, 9. 238; war with Delawares in New Netherland, 7. 205-218, 226, 314-318; New York commissioners, 8. 66; Penn's treaty, 184; massacre at Schenectady, 224-227; and Frontenac, 229, 9. 116; and Cartier, 15-22; both French and English incite Indian raids, 239-241; destruction of Norridgewock, 243; bounty for Indian scalps, 245; Lovewell's fight, 245-248; decline of French influence, 261-267; as French allies in French and Indian War, 288, 298, 301, 308, 310, 313-315, 338, 346; as English allies, 297, 300, 341; convention at Easton, 340; relations proposed in Albany Plan, 10. 9; in Burgoyne's campaign, 314, 322-328; both sides employ in the Revolution, 11. 100, 124, 137 n.; Lord Dunmore's War, 117-122. *See also* Fur-trade, Iroquois, Mexico, Mexico City, Peru, Slavery (Indian).
- Indies**, book of Cosmas Indicopleustes on, 1. 307, 309; Polo describes, 328; Friar Odoric's visit, 332; Columbus's plan to sail westward to, takes shape, 2. 24; interest in westward route, 24-26; Toscanelli on westward route, 28-33; origin of westward route, 35-37, 41-43, 47, 72; general belief that Columbus had reached, 129; Spanish department, 148-150; Gama's voyage, 191; Portuguese control, 416-418, 7. 55; Dutch control, 3. 395, 7. 57-60, 117; English in, 61. *See also* North America.
- Indigo**, cultivation in South Carolina, 5. 380-382.
- Ingle, Richard, invasion of Maryland, 4. 359-361.
- Ingoldsby, Richard, lieutenant-governor of New York, 8. 230, 281; arrival, 234; Leisler defies, 235.
- Ingram, David, wanderings in America, 1. 288, 4. 23.
- Inns, southern, 5. 255; New York, 8. 331.
- Intendant of Canada, duties, 9. 102.
- Intercourse, plans to improve, between East and West, 12. 251-255. *See also* Trade, Travel.
- International law, former loose ideas, 4. 26, 5. 401. *See also* Neutrality.
- Iowas, Dakota Indians, 1. 48.
- Ipswich, Mass., protests against Andros's tyranny, 6. 338.
- Irish, legendary voyage to America, 1. 172; in Iceland, 172.
- Iroquois (Five Nations, Six Nations), Huron-Iroquois Indians, 1. 53; location and its importance, 54, 8. 244, 9. 18, 42-46; tribes, 1. 54, 5. 355, 8. 288 n., 9. 45-47; confederation, 1. 54, 86-92, 118 n., 135, 9. 46; prowess and conquests, 1. 55, 133 n., 5. 67, 6. 148, 261, 7. 141, 213, 332, 8. 193, 200, 9. 47-49, 101, 263; number, 1. 87 n., conversion, 88 n., 8. 60, 286, 9. 262; "long house," 1. 78-80; relations with the French, Dutch, and English, 3. 361, 6. 162, 262, 7. 123, 141, 8. 60, 66, 200-202, 248, 281, 9. 70, 71, 103, 262; importance in American history, 7. 111, 8. 61; obtain firearms, 7. 124, 206, 8. 67; Courcelle's invasion, 58, 9. 102; conference with Andros, 8. 62-65; defeat King Philip, 70; conference with New England envoys, 70; raid in Canada in 1689, 204; Frontenac's invasion, 230; chiefs in England, 282; and Burnet's fur-trade re-

GENERAL INDEX

- forms, 288; first fight with Frenchmen, 9. 68-70; second defeat by the French, 80; Champlain attacks a village, 86-88; and the Albany Congress, 279; with Johnson's army, 297; attitude in French and Indian War, 340; attitude in the Revolution, 10. 193, 335, 11. 104, 113; with St. Leger's expedition, 10. 335, 338-340, 346; at Wyoming massacre, 11. 107-109; at Cherry Valley massacre, 109; Sullivan's expedition against, 110-113; Mohawk Valley raids, 113.
- Irrigation, criterion of social status in America, 1. 36; use by Pueblo Indians, 98; by Peruvians, 3. 115, 122.
- Irving, Washington, authority on Columbus, 2. 9 n.; satire on Twiller, 7. 166; reception of his *Knickerbocker*, 186.
- Isabella, queen of Castile, absorbed in Moorish war, 2. 79, 88; and Columbus's plan, 90, 95-97, 99, 100; pledging of her jewels, 102 n.; reception of Columbus after first voyage, 127; not given credit for the discovery, 139 n.; edicts of 1495 and 1497, 178, 308-311; dissatisfaction with Columbus, 190, 192, 307; reception of Columbus returning in chains, 196; responsibility for Bobadilla, 196; death, 208; and Indian slavery, 3. 255, 261, 264.
- Isabella, Hispaniola, founded, 2. 157.
- Jackson, Andrew, at Hanging Rock, 11. 223.
- Jamaica, discovery, 2. 160; Columbus shipwrecked, 207, 208; and the pirates, 5. 415, 416.
- James I. of England, accession, 4. 64; charters Virginia companies, 71; *Counterblast to Tobacco*, 206; and the London Company, 227, 231, 236-239, 251-258; Gondomar's influence, 229-231, 233; and Parliament, 230, 244, 257; and Raleigh, 232-235; death, 279; hatred of Presbyterianism, 6. 82, 84; statecraft, 83, 118; consents to Pilgrim migration, 97; *Dæmonologie*, 9. 142.
- James II. of England, flight, 5. 185, 6. 339, 8. 208; unites the northern colonies, 205; friendship for Penn, 343-345; Penn's trust, 347, 351; and the seven bishops, 349-351. *See also* York.
- James, Thomas, Puritan minister in Virginia, 4. 355, 356.
- James City County, origin of its name, 5. 45 n.
- Jamestown, Va., founded, 4. 108; unhealthful, 178, 5. 141; churches, 189, 285; legislature meets at, 219, 285; size in 1676, 5. 75; Berkeley occupies, 101; Bacon captures and burns, 101-103; rebuilt, 140; again destroyed and present condition, 140; attempt to force growth, 246. *See also* Virginia.
- Jan Mayen Island, Arctic Ocean, possible visit of Columbus, 2. 59.
- Japan, Marco Polo describes, 1. 328, 335; Toscanelli on, 2. 32; object of Columbus's first voyage, 104; search for, in the Bahamas, 116; and Hayti, 120.
- Japanese junks driven to America, 1. 173.
- Jaques, Christovão, voyage to South America, 2. 401.
- Jay, John, Bristol merchant, promotes maritime expeditions, 2. 215.
- Jay, John, Huguenot ancestry, 8. 404; peace envoy, suspects and thwarts Vergennes, 12. 25; and the separate negotiations, 27; credit for the negotiations, 41; secretary for foreign affairs, and

GENERAL INDEX

- the navigation of the Mississippi, 248; supports the Constitution, 408; share in the *Federalist*, 409; votes received for vice-presidency, 417.
- Jay, Pierre, Huguenot, persecution and emigration to New York, 8. 404.
- Jefferson, Thomas, on Virginia local government, 5. 43, 49; on slavery, 222, 234, 12. 234; ancestry, 5. 237; *Notes on Virginia*, 302; on government, 6. 28; slow growth of desire for independence, 10. 64; drafts Declaration of Independence, 227; character, 227; assists British prisoners, 401; escape from Tarleton, 11. 325; Religious Toleration Act, 12. 96; influence on cession of western territory, 231; plan of government for territory, 232-234; on the Constitution, 370, 396.
- Jeffries, Sir Herbert, royal commissioner to Virginia, 5. 107; succeeds Berkeley, 110.
- Jesuits, Indian missionaries, 3. 360, 362, 8. 60; growth and power, 9. 73; spirit of propaganda, 74, 100; at Port Royal, 75; with La Saussaye at Mount Desert, 76; treatment by Argall and Dale, 78, 79; supreme in Canada, 100.
- Jews, banished from Spain, 2. 131, 150, 8. 386-388; migration to the Netherlands, 388; in Brazil, 389; in New York, 389-391; in Newport, 389; in Philadelphia, 392; in the southern colonies, 392.
- Jogues, Isaac, Jesuit missionary, at outlet of Lake Superior, 9. 100.
- John II. of Portugal, and Columbus, 2. 74-76, 125, 140; does homage to pope for discovered land, 146 n.
- Johnson, Edward, *Wonder-working Providence*, 6. 305.
- Johnson, Sir John, loyalist, influence, 10. 236, 11. 104; joins St. Leger's expedition, 10. 335; at Fort Niagara, 11. 104; at battle of Newtown, 111.
- Johnson, Sir Nathaniel, governor of Carolina, and the Dissenters, 5. 341; repels French and Spanish attack, 341-343.
- Johnson, Robert, governor of South Carolina, 5. 358; overthrow, 359; and the pirates, 427, 428, 430.
- Johnson, Samuel, on the colonies, 5. 209, 10. 73.
- Johnson, Sir William, influence over the Iroquois, 9. 263; battle of Lake George, 294 300; made a baronet, 300; captures Fort Niagara, 345-347; and Brant, 11. 101.
- Johnson, William, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271.
- Joliet, Louis, on the Mississippi, 3. 363, 9. 117-120; map, 3. 369; education, 9. 113, 117; exploration for copper mines, 114.
- Jón Thórdharon, version of saga on Vinland, 1. 229, 239 n.
- Joncaire-Chabert and Washington at Venango, 9. 270, 271.
- Jones, Paul, cruise in the Ranger, 11. 148; squadron, 150-152; status, 152; cruise off British coast, 152; fight with the Serapis, 153-159; anecdote, 158 n.; effect of his victory, 159; honours, 159; Holland harbours, 159, 188; later life, 160.
- Jónsson, Arngrim, on Norse voyages to America, 1. 180 n., 2. 71.
- Joseph, Master, on size of the earth, 2. 52 n.
- Judiciary, national, in Virginia plan, 12. 287; provisions in the Constitution, 359; duty of interpreting the laws, 360. *See also* Courts.

GENERAL INDEX

- Jumonville, Coulon de, surprised and killed by Washington, 9. 274.
- Justice, individual, among Indians, 1. 61; in Mexican tribes, 123. *See also* Courts, Judiciary.
- Kalb, Johann de, secret mission to America, 10. 279; volunteers, 283; sent south, 11. 223; killed at Camden, 232.
- Kaskaskia, Ill., captured by Clark, 11. 127.
- Kaufmann, Gerard. *See* Mercator.
- Kaws, Dakota Indians, 1. 48.
- Keith, George, schism in Pennsylvania, 8. 355.
- Kemp, Richard, secretary of Virginia, 4. 345.
- Kendall, George, Virginia councillor, executed, 4. 117.
- Kennebec River, Maine, Champlain ascends, 9. 53; importance to Canada, 234; Indians, 235; Shute's conference with the Indians, 239; Indians attack English settlements, 241; French control destroyed, 243, 244.
- Kent Island, Md. *See* Claiborne.
- Kentucky, beginnings, 11. 116, 123; state of Transylvania, 123; county in Virginia, 123; why Virginia retained control, 12. 239.
- Keppel, Lord, in Rockingham's ministry, 12. 6; in Shelburne's ministry, 19; in coalition ministry, 53.
- Kickapoo Indians, 1. 57.
- Kidd, William, character, 8. 263; commissioned against the pirates, 264; piracy, 268-273; arrest, 273; trial and execution, 274.
- Kidnapping, in England, 5. 205, 217; of Indians, 323, 341.
- Kieft, William, director-general of New Netherland, character, 7. 192, 222, 227; autocracy, 193, 210; tax on the Indians, 207, 213; calls an assembly on the question of war, 209; and the administrative reforms, 210; massacres fugitive Indians, 214; tries to shift the responsibility, 215; imposes an excise, 221, 222; charges against, 223-225; removed, 225; attempt to investigate, 233-235; hits back, 235; drowned, 237.
- King, Rufus, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270.
- King Philip's War, premonitions, 6. 268-271; outbreak, 271; progress, 272-278; Narragansetts join, 280; probable incentive, 280 n.; attack on Narragansett stronghold, 281-285; effect of Narragansetts' defeat, 285, 290; fierceness, 286, 288, 303; attack on Lancaster, 290; treatment of prisoners, 291-294; end, and death of Philip, 294-298; Indians sold as slaves, 299; amnesty, 300; outbreak in Maine, 301; destructiveness, 302, 303; cost, 303; Andros's interest, 8. 55-58, 67; Philip in the Berkshires, 68, 69 n.
- King's Chapel, Boston, founded, 6. 337.
- King's Mountain, battle, 11. 295-297; and Bennington, 298.
- Kingship, rudimentary, in America, 1. 86; origin and development, 127-130; and Aztec chief-of-men, 130; and the Inca, 3. 141-145, 154.
- Kingston, N. Y., Walloon settlers, 8. 397; burned by the British, 10. 392.
- Kirke, David, attack on Quebec, 9. 91, 92.
- Kirke, Percy, viceroy in America, 6. 333; not sent, 334.
- Kirkland, Samuel, influence over Iroquois, 1. 88 n., 10. 335.
- Knights of the Golden Horseshoe 5. 451.

GENERAL INDEX

- "Know Ye men," Rhode Islanders called, 12. 210.
- Knowles, John, Puritan minister in Virginia, 4. 355, 356.
- Knox, Henry, ancestry, 5. 460; character, 10. 177.
- Knyphausen, Baron Wilhelm von, Hessian general in British army, 10. 189; at Brandywine, 367; at Germantown, 374, 376; at Monmouth, 11. 73.
- Koopman of New Netherland, duties, 7. 152.
- Koorn, Nicholas, guards Rensselaerwyck staple right, 7. 244.
- Kosciuszko, Thaddeus, volunteers in American cause, 10. 283; fortifies Bemis Heights, 382; with Greene's army, 11. 301.
- Kramer, Gerard. *See* Mercator.
- Kuyter, Joachim, arrives in New Netherland, 7. 199; and Kieft, 219, 233, 235; banished and fined, 236; shipwrecked, 237; justified, 238.
- La Corne, Saint-Luc de, French partisan, unsuccessful attack on Oswego, 9. 346.
- La Cosa, Juan de, in Columbus's first voyage, 2. 103; in Columbus's second voyage, 153; map, 227-230, 293-297, 306 n.; voyage to South America, 248, 319; voyages to Pearl Coast, 410; high constable of Darien, 412, 3. 178; death, 180.
- La Galissonière, Marquis de, governor of Canada, sends expedition to claim Ohio valley, 9. 264.
- La Montagne, Jean de, Kieft's councillor, 7. 194.
- La Muce, Marquis de, leads Huguenot immigration, 5. 238.
- La Navidad, Hispaniola, started, 2. 122; destroyed, 155.
- La Plata River, discovery, 2. 407, 413; Magellan in, 413.
- La Rábida, monastery in Spain, Columbus at, 2. 92.
- La Salle, Robert Cavelier, Sieur de, scheme for French empire, 3. 362, 364, 9. 120-124, 132, 258; expedition to the Ohio, 3. 363, 9. 111-115; expedition to descend the Mississippi, 3. 364-368, 9. 124-130; takes possession for France, 3. 368, 9. 130; plan for a colony, 3. 368, 9. 131; death, 3. 369, 9. 132; birth and early life, 109; character, 110, 114, 123; at La Chine, 110; reputed earlier trip to the Mississippi, 115.
- La Saussaye, chief of Jesuit colony, at Port Royal, 9. 76; and Argall, 76-78.
- La Tour, Charles de, in Acadia, 9. 93-96.
- La Vérendrye family, father and sons, explorations to Rocky Mountains, 3. 373.
- Labadists in Maryland, 5. 165; in Pennsylvania, 8. 408.
- Ladrone Islands, Magellan discovers, 2. 442.
- Lafayette, Marquis de, volunteers in American cause, 10. 283; and the Conway Cabal, 11. 51-53; at Monmouth, 75; before Newport, 92, 95; seeks aid in France, 243; suggests exchange of André for Arnold, 277; tries André, 279; campaign against Cornwallis, 323-328; cuts off Cornwallis's retreat, 336.
- Lake Champlain, Champlain crosses, 3. 359, 9. 66; strategic value, 327; operations on, in 1776, 10. 292-295.
- Lake George, named, 9. 297; battle, 297-300. *See also* Fort William Henry.
- Lake Huron, discovery, 3. 359, 9. 86.
- Lake Michigan, Nicollet's explorations, 9. 99.

GENERAL INDEX

- Lake Ontario, Champlain crosses, 3. 359, 9. 87.
- Lake Superior, Jogues at outlet, 9. 100; explored, 101.
- Lake Titicaca, Peru, cradle of Peruvian culture, 3. 102.
- Lançarote, Portuguese navigator, on coast of Africa, 3. 374.
- Lancey, James de, chief justice of New York, tries Zenger, 8. 291, 292; Huguenot ancestry, 403.
- Land, Crown rights to soil of colonies, 4. 279, 6. 140, 332; size of grants in Virginia, 5. 27, 28; and in Massachusetts, 36; entail in Virginia, 41; colonial purchases from the Indians, 7. 157, 8. 187-191, 9. 238; quitrent trouble, 8. 18, 179, 360; crown lands become state lands, 12. 84. *See also* Boundaries, Charters, Grants.
- Landais, Peter, conduct in fight with the Serapis, 11. 157; discharged from the navy, 160.
- Landnáma-bók* of Iceland, 1. 178.
- Lane, Ralph, attempted settlement, 4. 37-39.
- Langdon, John, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271.
- Langlade, Charles de, French trader, destroys Miami trading village, 9. 267; at Fort Duquesne, 288.
- Lansing, John, member of the Federal convention, 12. 267; quits, 301; opposes the Constitution, 408.
- Las Casas, Bartolomé de, Apostle to the Indians, authority on Columbus, 2. 1, 4; *History of the Indies*, 2, 3. 309; attacks Vesputius, 2. 390-392; birth and family, 3. 259; bibliography, 259 n.; early years, 260; in Hispaniola, 261; takes orders, 261; character, 261, 272, 310; character of his writings, 262-264; as a slaveholder, 273; in Cuba, 274; becomes an abolitionist, 274-276; and Fonseca, 276, 284, 285; and Ximenes, 277; Protector of the Indians, 277; and introduction of negro slavery in America, 278-284; and Charles V., 284; attempt at colonization, 284-287; becomes a Dominican, 288; obtains decree against enslavement of Peruvians, 289; monastery in Guatemala, 290; idea of Christian conquest, 291; peaceful conquest of Tuzulutlan, 292-300; in Spain, 301; *Destruction of the Indies*, 301; and the New Laws, 301; result of his labours, 303; bishop of Chiapa, 305; final return to Spain, 306; controversy with Sepulveda, 306-308; and Philip II., 308; death, 310.
- Latimer, Hugh, character and work, 6. 52, 53.
- Latitude and longitude, vague calculations, 1. 362.
- Laudonnière, René de, Huguenot, leads colony to Florida, 3. 343; escape, 348.
- Laurens, Henry, Huguenot ancestry, 8. 404; president of Congress, 11. 41; agent to Holland, captured, 190; plan to arm the negroes, 206; peace envoy, 12. 26.
- Laurie, Garvaine, interest in West Jersey, 8. 163.
- Lawrence, Richard, and Bacon's Rebellion, 5. 75, 78, 89, 101, 103; disappears, 109.
- Laws, Dale's code in Virginia, 4. 194; early enactments of Virginia legislature, 288-294; early enactments in North Carolina, 5. 326; Blue, 6. 166; Massachusetts' first code, 313; Duke's, in New York, 8. 3.
- Lawson, John, surveyor general of North Carolina, book, 5. 351; captured and killed by Tuscaroras, 351; on North Carolina, 363.
- Lawyers, in Virginia, 5. 311.

GENERAL INDEX

- Le Caron, Joseph, Recollet missionary, reaches Lake Huron, 9. 86.
- Le Moine, François, Huguenot painter, escape from Florida, 4. 21 ; and Raleigh, 22.
- Leddra, William, Quaker, executed in Boston, 6. 240.
- Ledesma, Pedro de, in Columbus's fourth voyage, 2. 203 n., 318 ; in Vesputius's first voyage, 293.
- Ledyard, Isaac, pamphlet war with Hamilton, 12. 152.
- Lee, Arthur, commissioner to France, 10. 280.
- Lee, Charles, with Braddock, 9. 289 ; career and character, 10. 179-181, 11. 84 ; in Charleston, 10. 233 ; insubordination and treachery, 259-262 ; intrigue against Washington, 262, 265 ; captured, 265, 266 ; treatment in captivity, 351 ; treasonable intrigue with the Howes, 352-355, 357 ; on Congress, 11. 35 ; exchanged, 70 ; at Monmouth, 70-78 ; correspondence with Washington, 81, 82 ; arrest and conviction by court-martial, 82-84 ; abuse of Washington, 87 ; duel with Laurens, 87 ; cashiered, 87 ; death, 87 ; warning to Gates, 225 ; compared with Arnold, 286.
- Lee, Henry, exploit against Paulus Hook, 11. 140 ; "Light Horse Harry," 141 ; with southern army, 301, 303 ; at Guilford, 310 ; captures Fort Watson, 315-317 ; takes Fort Motte, Fort Granby, and Augusta, 318 ; supports the Constitution, 12. 368, 403.
- Lee, Richard, position in Virginia, 5. 22 ; visits Charles II. in exile, 24 ; Bacon arraigns, 93.
- Lee, Richard (younger), library, 5. 285.
- Lee, Richard Henry, offers resolution for independence, 10. 216 ; and the Ordinance of 1787, 12. 242 ; opposes the Constitution, 368, 376, 381.
- Legislature, national, in the Federal Convention : in the Virginia plan, 12. 280, 284-286 ; popular election of representatives, 288 ; compromise on state representation, 289-301 ; in New Jersey plan, 290 ; effect of the compromise, 302, 317 ; compromise on slave representation, 304-311, 317 ; compromise on slave-trade and commercial powers, 311-317 ; powers granted, 318-322. *See also* Assemblies, Continental Congress, General Court, House of Burgesses, Representation.
- Leif Ericsson, son of Eric the Red, 1. 187 ; converted, 187 ; voyage to Vinland, 188-191 ; and Agamemnon, 225 ; called the Lucky, 239.
- Leisler, Jacob, calls the first American Congress, 5. 466, 8. 228 ; accuses Van Rensselaer of heresy, 104 ; refuses to pay customs duty, 212 ; position and character, 213 ; anti-Catholic mania, 214, 420 ; probable motive of his conduct, 215, 240-242 ; takes command of the fort, 217, 418 ; declaration, 218 ; proclaims William and Mary, 219 ; ignores the king's proclamation, 219 ; commander-in-chief, 220, 420 ; assumes the government, 220-222 ; unpopular tax, 222 ; authority defied, 223, 420-424 ; calls an assembly, 228 ; ignored by the king, 230 ; unpopularity, 232 ; novels based on his times, 232 ; marriage of his daughters, 233 ; defies Ingholdsby, 235 ; fires on the king's troops, 236 ; resists Slougher, 236, 424 ; arrest, 237 ; trial and execution, 237-240, 425-430 ; execution ill advised, 242 ; attainder reversed, 242, 265.
- Leislerian party in New York, 8.

GENERAL INDEX

- 250 ; charges against Fletcher, 265 ; Bellomont favours, 266 ; gains control, 268 ; violent proceedings, 275, 276 ; discomfiture, 277.
- Leisler's Rebellion, 8. 209-242, 417-431.
- Lenox, Mass., convention in 1786, 12. 213.
- Leonard, Daniel, loyalist, on committees of correspondence, 10. 95.
- Lepe, Diego de, voyage to Brazil, 2. 322.
- Léry, Baron de, attempted colony on Sable Island, 9. 6.
- Lescarbot, Marc, in Acadia with Monts, 9. 51 ; as an author, 51 ; pageant for Poutrincourt, 55.
- Letters of marque, obtained by pirates, 5. 408 ; Congress issues, 10. 206.
- Leverett, John, governor of Massachusetts, reception of Randolph, 6. 321.
- Lewis, Andrew, pioneer, at battle of Point Pleasant, 11. 122.
- Lewis, Meriwether, expedition to Oregon, 3. 376.
- Lexington and Concord, Mass., battle, 10. 142-150.
- Lexington, Ky., founded and named, 11. 123.
- Libraries in Virginia, 5. 283-285.
- Ligneris, French partisan, attempt to relieve Fort Niagara, 9. 346.
- Lima, Peru, founded, 3. 226.
- Lincoln, Benjamin, threatens Burgoyne's rear, 10. 321, 347 ; commands southern department, 11. 203, 205, 210 ; attack on Savannah, 211 ; ability, 214 ; surrenders Charleston, 215 ; at Yorktown, 340 ; commands militia in Shays's Rebellion, 12. 215-217.
- Linschoten, Hans Hugo van, voyage in the Arctic, 7. 64.
- Lisbon, Portugal, founded, 1. 345 ; Columbus at, 2. 19, 22 ; centre of nautical science, 21.
- Literature, in colonial Virginia, 4. 272, 5. 297-302 ; in the Netherlands, 7. 20 ; in colonial New York, 8. 331 ; in colonial Pennsylvania, 372, 377.
- Livingston, R. R., opposes independence, 10. 216 ; on committee to draft Declaration of Independence, 227 ; supports the Constitution, 12. 408.
- Livingston, Robert, secretary of board of Indian commissioners, 8. 66 ; early life, 66 ; and Kidd, 264 ; Leislerian charges against, 275 ; dismissed from office, 276 ; restored, 277 ; advises colonial consolidation, 10. 6.
- Livingston, William, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271.
- Llamas of Peru, 3. 113, 121.
- Lloyd, David, position in Pennsylvania, 8. 371.
- Lloyd, Thomas, search for island of Brazil, 2. 215.
- Loaysa, Garcia de, 3. 317.
- Local prejudice in 1783, 12. 73 ; a survival, 74.
- Local self-government, in Iroquois confederacy, 1. 89 ; systems in America, 4. 75 ; New England, 5. 35-40, 48, 7. 257-259 ; conditions in Virginia, 5. 41-49, 114-118 ; Maryland, 171, 172 ; vestries in South Carolina, 378 ; crushed by Roman system, 6. 17, 18 ; of Germanic tribes, 20, 29 ; in Greece, 26 ; essential to stable nation-making, 27 ; long struggle for, 28 ; establishment in England, 32 ; difficult to harmonize with strong nationality, 42 ; town meetings in Plymouth, 100 ; in Boston on surrender of charter, 332 ; and successful colonization, 7. 151 ; lacking in New Netherland, 152 ; plans to subvert colonial, 10. 3, 5 ; paramount im-

GENERAL INDEX

- portance to the colonies, 7; in Albany Plan, 9; unofficial legislation in Massachusetts, 68; Crown attacks on, 89; town meetings and the Regulating Act, 114, 125; town meetings forbidden by Quebec Act, 115; colonies instruct Congress to preserve, 209, 212, 220; strong sentiment for, in 1783, 12. 67. *See also* Representation
- Locke, John, and Shaftesbury, 5. 318; Fundamental Constitutions, 319; and Penn, 8. 353, 354.
- Logan, James, character and ability, 8. 370.
- Logan, John (Tagjuthà), Mingo chief, family slain, 11. 118, 119; character, 118; speech, 120; death, 121.
- Lok, Michael, map, 3. 356, 4. 72, 7. 73, 100; opinion of slavery, 4. 18.
- Lollardism in England, 6. 49-51, 61-66, 7. 44-46.
- London, Bishop of, jurisdiction over colonial church, 5. 305.
- London Company, first charter, 4. 71-77, 6. 90; original members, 4. 77-83; first expedition and instructions, 84-90; impatient for returns, 133, 145; Smith's answer to complaints, 147-151; second charter and membership, 169-172; communistic program, 173; code of laws, 194; third charter, 209; lotteries, 210; becomes a political force, 211-214; factions, 215-217, 242-244; control by king's opponents, 217, 6. 96; grants representation to Virginia, 4. 219-221; king's hostility and interference, 236-239, 245; Butler's attack, 245-251; overthrow, 251-259; records, 259-261; influence of overthrow on development of Virginia, 261, 278-284; and on Massachusetts Bay Company, 277; grants land to Pilgrims, 6. 97. *See also* Virginia.
- Londonderry, N. H., settled, 6. 171.
- Long Island, Dutch settlements and purchase, 7. 135, 201; value as a wampum field, 203, 204; English settlements, 204; Stirling's claim, 291; disaffection of English towns, 310, 328; league of English towns, 328; granted to York, 330; rival colonial claims, 8. 5; included in New York, 7. demand for representation, 26; protest against second Dutch government, 30; question of allegiance to New York, 46; in 1769, 89-96; battle, 10. 242-246. *See also* Brooklyn Heights.
- Lord Dunmore's War, 11. 117-122.
- Lords of Trade, organization, 6. 319; reports and complaints of royal governors, 10. 2-4; desire colonial union, 5; objections to Albany Plan, 12.
- Lothrop, Thomas, ambushed, 6. 278.
- Loudoun, Earl of, English commander-in-chief in America, 9. 306; character, 307; plans to attack Ticonderoga, 307; futile expedition against Louisburg, 310; recalled, 317.
- Louis XIV. of France, and William III., 5. 185; subsidizes Charles II., 6. 328; designs on New York, 8. 202; and the Huguenots, 398-400; and Canada, 9. 101. *See also* France.
- Louisburg, Cape Breton Island, fortified, 9. 249; capture in 1745, 250-257; Loudoun's expedition against, in French and Indian War, 310; strategic value, 327; restored to France by treaty of Aix la Chapelle, 328; situation and defences, 328; capture in 1758, 329-332.

GENERAL INDEX

- Louisiana, possession taken for France, 3. 368, 9. 130; La Salle's attempted colony, 131; development, 258. *See also* Canada, Mississippi River.
- Louisville, Ky., fortress, 11. 129.
- Lovelace, Lord, governor of New York, 8. 280; death, 281.
- Lovelace, Francis, governor of New York, 8. 20, 25; on the establishment of a post, 22-24; land purchases and debts, 37; Dutch confiscations, 37; arrest, 37; death, 43.
- Lovell, James, in Conway Cabal, 11. 40.
- Lovewell, John, fight with the Indians, 9. 245-247; death, 247; ballad on the fight, 247.
- Lowndes, Rawlins, opposes the Constitution, 12. 398, 399.
- Loyalists, in middle colonies, 10. 135; disconcerted by Concord, 150; leave Boston, 202; disarming recommended, 206; defeated in North Carolina, 207; British overestimate aid of, 235, 306, 310, 311, 329; in St. Leger's expedition, 335, 339; leave Philadelphia, 11. 68; tried for treason, 69, 204; in New York, 104, 12. 145; at Fort Niagara, 11. 104; character of frontier, 104, 111, 124; in the South, 200; defeated by Pickens, 203; views of moderate, 251; at Yorktown, 340; relation to the Revolution, 352-354, 12. 33; question of indemnification, 11, 14, 33-38, 50, 144, 154; post-bellum persecution, 142-144, 153; laws against, 150-152; emigration, 146, 154; effect of persecution and emigration, 154-158.
- Lucas, Nicholas, interest in West Jersey, 8. 163.
- Ludwell, Philip, opposes Bacon, 5. 101, 104, 119; governor of Carolina, 339.
- Ludwell, Thomas, opposes Bacon, 5. 104, 121.
- Luque, Fernando de, share in Peruvian expeditions, 3. 206, 207.
- Lussan, Raveneau de, buccaneer, 5. 407, 420.
- Lutherans, treatment in New Netherland, 7. 269.
- Lyman, Phineas, Johnson's lieutenant, 9. 295; credit for battle at Lake George, 300.
- Macaulay, Lord, charges against Penn, 8. 345-347, 353 n.
- McClure, Sir Robert, finds northwest passage, 3. 320.
- McClurg, James, as a writer, 5. 302.
- McCrea, Jane, episode in Burgoyne's campaign, 10. 324-327.
- Macdonald, Donald, commands loyalists at Moore's Creek, 10. 208.
- Macdonald, Flora, in North Carolina, 5. 372, 10. 207.
- McDowell, Charles, partisan, at King's Mountain, 11. 295, 297.
- Mace, Samuel, searches for White's colony, 4. 64.
- Macrobius on the torrid zone, 1. 355.
- Madagascar, pirate rendezvous, 8. 259.
- Madeira Islands, known to Phœnicians, 1. 348; visited by Portuguese, 369; colonized, 370.
- Madison, James, education, character, and ability, 5. 292, 12. 268-270; share in *The Federalist*, 5. 297, 12. 409; radical remedy for defects in Articles of Confederation, 118; on Ordinance of 1787, 244; suggests a commercial interstate convention, 254; member of the Federal Convention, 268; journal of the convention, 272; author of Virginia plan, 276; in Virginia ratifying convention, 403; considers the Union indissoluble, 412.

GENERAL INDEX

- Madoc, Welsh prince, voyage, **1**. 49.
- Magaw, Robert, defends Fort Washington, **10**. 257.
- Magellan, Ferdinand, birth and character, **2**. 419-421, 443; sources of information, **419** n., 430; early years in East Indies, 421-424; service in Morocco, 424; plan to circumnavigate the earth, 425; plan rejected by Portugal, 426; enters service of Spain, 427; expedition fitted out by Spain, 428; fleet and crew, 428; Portuguese machinations, 429; crossing of the Atlantic, 430; winter quarters in Patagonia, 432; mutiny, 432-436; voyage through the strait, 437; on the Pacific, 438-442; at the Ladrões, 442; at the Philippines, 442; death, 443-445; massacre of leading men of the crew, 445; voyage continued to the Moluccas, 445; fate of the *Trinidad*, 446; return of the *Victoria*, 447-449; greatness of the voyage, 449; honors for survivors, 450.
- Magellan Straits, seen by Jaques, **2**. 402; on *Schöner's* globe, 425; Magellan's passage, 437.
- Magna Charta secured, **6**. 36.
- Maine, Popham's colony, **4**. 83, **6**. 92; Argall at Mount Desert Island, **4**. 201, **9**. 76-78; Gorges's colony, **6**. 188; Tarratine War, 301; annexed to Massachusetts, 325, 344; Gorges's claim valid, 325; sold to Massachusetts, 325; Duke of York's claim, **8**. 8; Andros takes possession, 71; French and English claims, **9**. 234; advance of settlement, 237. *See also* Kennebec River.
- Malleus Maleficarum*, **9**. 142.
- Man, antiquity, **1**. 13 n.-15 n.; reason for his superiority, 70, 71 n.
- Manco Capac Yupanqui, Inca, submits to Pizarro and proclaimed, **3**. 224; insurrection, 227; defeated, 229; overthrow, 231; mountain fastness, 243; death, 245.
- Mandans, Indian group, **1**. 48, 57; mound-builders, 50, 168; circular communal houses, 94-96.
- Manhattan Island, N. Y., and Norumbega, **7**. 82, 89; French fur-traders' village on, 90; Dutch traders at, 118; Argall warns them, 119; meaning of the name, 139; purchased, 140. *See also* New Amsterdam, New York City.
- Manichæan belief and polity, **6**. 45.
- Manors (patroonships), system in Maryland, **5**. 169-172; effect of slavery, 172; establishment in New Netherland, **7**. 154-159; inducement, 159; failure of first, 159-161; success of Rensselaerwyck, 161, 240; attempt to introduce indented servants, 197; disputes between Rensselaerwyck and the government, 242-249; system in New York, **8**. 310; Schuyler's manor, 311-317; abolition of privileges, 12. 84.
- Mansfield, Lord, on slaves in England, **5**. 234; on libel, **8**. 295; advises coercion of Boston, **10**. 111.
- Manufacturers, early attempts in Virginia, **4**. 144, 270; conditions in colonial Virginia, **5**. 241-245, 253; lacking in Carolinas, 366, 381; in the Netherlands, **7**. 17, 18, 40; influence of Dutch on English, 39-43, 52; forbidden to the patroons, 157; prohibition removed, 198.
- Marchena, Antonio de, Spanish friar, and Juan Perez, **2**. 93 n.; in Columbus's second expedition, 153.
- Marcos de Nizza, Franciscan friar, in Peru, **3**. 333; journey to Zúñi, 334-337; accused of falsehood, 334 n., 339.
- Margarite, Pedro, in Columbus's

GENERAL INDEX

- second expedition, 2. 153; leads disorders and deserts, 171; complains against Columbus, 181.
- Marin, French officer, expedition to the Ohio valley, 9. 268.
- Marin, French partisan, attempt to relieve Fort Niagara, 9. 346.
- Marina, Indian woman, services to Cortes, 3. 49.
- Marion, Francis, partisan commander, 10. 221; operations, 235, 299, 303; captures Fort Watson, 315-317; takes Forts Motte and Granby, 318.
- Markham, William, deputy-governor of Pennsylvania, 8. 179.
- Markland, identity, 1. 189; ship from, 259.
- Marquette, Jacques, on the Mississippi, 3. 363, 9. 118-120; character, 117; death, 120.
- Marshall, John, greatness, 5. 311; at Great Bridge, 10. 211; supports the Constitution, 12. 404.
- Martha's Vineyard, named, 4. 65; Duke of York's claim, 8. 7; plundered by British, 11. 132.
- Martin, John, Virginia councillor, 4. 108; and the House of Burgesses, 288.
- Martin, Josiah, governor of North Carolina, rouses the loyalists, 10. 208.
- Martin, Luther, counters Howe's proclamation, 10. 365; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 211; quits, 302.
- Martin, Richard, defends London Company in Parliament, 4. 213, 214.
- Mary, "Bloody," of England, result of persecutions, 6. 67.
- Martyr, Peter, source on Columbus, 2. 4; doubts whether Columbus reached Asia, 130 n.; on Vesputius, 242 n.; on Giovanni Vespucci, 244 n.; on Pinzon's voyage to Mexican coast, 291; on Gomez's voyage, 3. 322.
- Maryland, charter and government, 4. 311, 316, 329-334, 8. 176-178; named, 4. 311; religious toleration, 317-319, 362-365; asylum for Catholics, 318; settlement, 320; relations with the Indians, 321; early prosperity, 322; population in 1675, 323; opposition in Virginia, 335, 337, 345; trouble with Claiborne, 336, 339-343, 350-353, 359-361; Stone governor, 361; granted to Sir William Davenant, 361; Puritan immigration and designs, 365-367, 5. 394; control of parliamentary commissioners, 4. 369, 370; Catholics disfranchised and Puritans control, 370; civil war, 371; proprietary regains control, 372, 5. 153; attempt to restrict tobacco planting, 59; duty on tobacco, 154; Fendall's revolt, 155-160; Quakers in, 161, 178; dispute with the Dutch, 162; York and Penn infringe on Baltimore's claim, 166-169; manorial government, 169-172; effect of slavery on the manors, 172; assembly and proprietary, 173-180; nepotism, 175; suffrage restricted, 179; incipient rebellion in sympathy with Bacon's, 181; proprietary and royal customs duties, 182-184; anti-Catholic panic and Coode's Rebellion, 185-187; overthrow of the palatinate, 188; Copley first royal governor, 188; Church of England established, 188; anti-Catholic measures, 188, 192-194, 197; Annapolis capital, 188; unpopularity and character of established church, 190, 199; relief of Protestant dissenters, 192; military requisitions, 195; restoration of the palatinate, 196; population in 1715, 196; popularity of the palatinate, 199, 10. 220; sympathy with the colonial com-

GENERAL INDEX

- mon cause, 5. 199, 439, 10. 221 ; social conditions, 5. 312 ; industrial change, 313 ; represented in the Congress of 1690, 441 ; illegal taxation in 1770, 10. 89 ; instructs for independence, 221 ; gallant conduct of troops, 244 ; proprietary not indemnified, 12. 84 ; allows emancipation, 87 ; paper money, 202 ; demands cession of state western claims to the United States, 226-228, 230 ; ratifies the Constitution, 397. *See also* Calvert.
- Mascoutin Indians, 9. 99.
- Maskoki (Muskogi) Indian group, 1. 50, 57, 5. 350.
- Mason, George, sympathy with Bacon's Rebellion, 5. 121.
- Mason, George, statesman, on slavery, 5. 222 ; mode of plantation life, 270-273, 289 ; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271 ; refuses to sign the draft, 314, 363 ; opposes the Constitution, 403.
- Mason, John, grant in New England, 9. 115, 137, 318, 324.
- Mason, John, in Pequot War, 6. 159.
- Massachusetts, government, 4. 277, 315, 6. 116, 344 ; land grants, 5. 36 ; political training of its local government, 51 ; restrictions on immigration, 213 ; trade with Carolina, 328, 330 ; conflicts between governors and assemblies, 439, 9. 242, 243, 10. 4, 16 ; settlement, 6. 125-127 ; establishment of representation, 127-129 ; bicameral legislature, 129-131 ; character of General Court, 130, 211, 238, 313, 9. 185 ; ecclesiastical polity, 6. 131 ; theocracy, establishment, opposition, and overthrow, 132, 139, 150, 211, 213, 216, 241, 250, 309-314, 317, 323, 336, 344, 8. 131, 9. 198-202, 205 ; conditions in 1634, 6. 133 ; population
- in 1634, 133 ; in 1643, 192 ; in 1675, 323 ; Harvard College, 134, 9. 206-211 ; enmity in England, 6. 136, 141, 244, 318 ; charter endangered, 137, 195, 249, 328, 331 ; prepares to resist Charles I., 138 ; Roger Williams episode, 138-141 ; Antinomian episode, 142-145 ; migration to Connecticut, 152-154 ; annexes New Hampshire, 187 ; relation with Parliament, 194-196, 211, 215 ; Gorton episode, 203-211 ; Presbyterian cabal, 213-215 ; Cambridge Platform, 216 ; persecution of Baptists, 216-224 ; persecution of Quakers, 231-243, 8. 130 ; demands of Charles II., 6. 243, 248, 317, 318, 325, 327, 328 ; coins money, 244, 318 ; royal commissioners, 249, 318, 7. 331, 332, 8. 8-11 ; administration of justice, 6. 313 ; first legal code, 313 ; Halfway Covenant, 314-316, 9. 200, 221, 225, 231 ; general attitude toward the Stuarts, 6. 317 ; reception of Randolph, 321 ; his intrigues, 321-323, 328 ; birth of Toryism, 322, 9. 201 ; loses New Hampshire, 6. 324 ; relation with Maine, 325, 344 ; refuses to surrender charter, 331 ; charter annulled, 332 ; legal effect, 333 ; Church of England introduced, 336 ; tyranny of Andros, 338, 8. 206, 9. 202 ; insurrection, 6. 340, 8. 208 ; old government reestablished, 6. 341 ; acquires Plymouth, Maine, and Acadia, 344 ; new charter, 344, 9. 202 ; and the Duke of York's claim, 8. 7 ; refuses to aid Fletcher, 255 ; early witchcraft trials, 9. 145-149 ; liberalism compared with Connecticut, 212-215, 220 ; Great Awakening, 226-232 ; expedition against Kennebec Indians, 243 ; bounty for Indian scalps,

GENERAL INDEX

- 245; share in the Louisburg expedition, 251; monument to George, Viscount Howe, 321; troops for campaign of 1759, 343; advises concerted action on Stamp Act, 10. 19; proposes Stamp Act Congress, 24; Stamp Act declaration, 26; petition to the king and circular letter to other colonies, 55; refuses to rescind, 58; assembly dissolved, 58, 59; unofficial legislation, 68; illegal local officers, 89; salary of the judges, 92, 93, 97; committees of correspondence, 94; Regulating Act, 113, 124, 138, 11. 351; asks sympathy of other colonies, 10. 121; response, 121; selects delegates to Congress, 123; political standards, 138; prepares for war, 125, 127, 129; Suffolk County Resolves, 127; provincial congress, 128; committee of safety, 129; militia organized, 129; declared in rebellion, 132; passive resistance, 138; reverts to old charter, 185; instructs for independence, 213; relation to Charles II. and George III., 11. 351; emancipates slaves, 12. 88; attempt to disestablish Congregational church, 89-91; claim to Vermont, 180; financial and commercial distress, 204, 210-212; attempt to issue paper money, 212; Shays's Rebellion, 213-221; cedes western territory, 224, 229; ratification of the Constitution, 379-397. *See also* Boston, Colonies, King Philip's War, Massachusetts Bay Company, New England, Puritans, Salem Village, and battles by name.
- Massachusetts Bay, early settlements in and near, 6. 109-113.
- Massachusetts Bay Company, lesson from London Company, 4. 277; origin, 6. 113; grant of land, 114; sends Endicott to Naumkeag, 115; granted royal charter, 116; settlers sent out, 117; government transferred to America, 123; king's motives in granting charter, 135. *See also* Massachusetts.
- Massasoit, Wampanoag chief, and the Pilgrims, 4. 184, 6. 102; shelters Roger Williams, 141; death, 267.
- Massa-wachusett Indians, friendly, 6. 147; converts, 265.
- Matanzas Inlet, Florida, origin of name, 3. 351.
- Mather, Cotton, on Quakers, 6. 229; on theocracy, 250; attainments, 9. 149; character, 150; and the Salem witchcraft, 150-152, 155, 170-173, 186, 197; connection with the Goodwin witchcraft case, 152-155; religious conservatism, 197, 205, 206; and Harvard College, 209.
- Mather, Increase, on suffrage, 6. 315; against surrender of charter, 332; in London, 341, 8. 207, 208, 9. 202; *Cases of Conscience*, 186; religious conservatism, 197, 206; and Harvard College, 203, 208.
- Mathews, British general, marauding expedition to Virginia, 11. 132.
- Mathews, Samuel, opposition to Maryland, 4. 345, 372; and Harvey, 348, 349; governor of Virginia, 368; household, 5. 6; death, 23.
- Maverick, Samuel, settled in Massachusetts Bay, 6. 111, 126; in Presbyterian cabal, 214; enmity to New England, 244; royal commissioner, 249, 7. 331, 8. 8; intrigue against New Netherland, 7. 326.
- May, Cornelius, in Delaware Bay, 7. 121; first director-general of New Netherland, 134.
- Mayas, Central American Indians,

GENERAL INDEX

- culture status, **1.** 25, 36, 39; compared with Mexicans, 150-154, 159; hieroglyphics, 151, 151 n.-153 n., 155; age of ruined cities, 154-159; hostility to Córdoba, **3.** 32; compared with Peruvians, 172-176.
- Mayhew, Jonathan, suggests committees of correspondence, **10.** 92.
- Mayhew, Thomas, Indian missionary, **6.** 255.
- Maypure Indians, **3.** 95.
- Meade, William, revives Episcopal church in Virginia, **12.** 98.
- Mecklenburg County Resolves, real and legendary, **10.** 150-152.
- Medina-Celi, Duke of, and Columbus's plan, **2.** 89, **4.** 59.
- Megapolensis, John, intolerance, **7.** 269.
- Meherrin Indians, **5.** 350.
- Mela, Pomponius, on an encompassing ocean, **1.** 350; on the five zones, 353; on the antipodal world, 354; authority in Spanish peninsula, 365; influence on early cartography of New World, **2.** 355-357, 372, 378, 380.
- Melville, Andrew, on church and state, **6.** 82.
- Melyn, Cornelius, arrival in New Netherland, **7.** 199; settlement on Staten Island, 207; and Kieft, 219, 233, 235; banished and fined, 236; shipwrecked, 237; justified, 238; return with mandamus to Stuyvesant, 252.
- Ménard, René, Jesuit missionary, explores Lake Superior, **9.** 101.
- Mendoza, Andrea Hurtado de, viceroy of Peru, **3.** 240.
- Mendoza, Luis de, with Magellan, **2.** 428, 433, 435.
- Menefie, George, and Harvey, **4.** 348, 349.
- Menendez de Avilés, Pedro, character, **3.** 344, 350; destroys Huguenot colony, 345-350, **4.** 21.
- Mennonites, persecution and migration to Pennsylvania, **8.** 407.
- Menomonee Indians, **1.** 51.
- Mercator, Gerard, projections, **2.** 385; use of term America, 385.
- Merchants' Exchange, first New York, **8.** 25.
- Merrymount, Mass., settlement, **6.** 111; dispersed, **111.** 127.
- Metacom. *See* Philip.
- Methodists, and the Church of England, **12.** 101; growth in America, 101; American church separated from the English, 102; first bishops, 102.
- Mexicans, Pueblo Indian group, Spanish misconceptions of their society, **1.** 111; criticism of Spanish views, 114; Morgan's explanations, 116; remains, 116; Bandelier's researches, 117; Aztecs a type, 150. *See also* Aztecs, Mexico, Pueblo Indians.
- Mexico, Vespucius on coast, **2.** 273-277; prehistoric, **3.** 4; traditional races, 5-8, 10; Nahua invasion, 8; coat of arms of present republic, 12; Córdoba's expedition, 31-33; Grijalva's expedition, 34-36; Spanish expectations concerning, 35; Cortes on coast, 37; Cortes's inland march, 39-52; Narvaez and Cortes, 78-80; conditions and effects of Spanish conquest, 88-90. *See also* Aztecs, Mexicans, Mexico City.
- Mexico City, founded, **1.** 97, **3.** 11; composite pueblo, **1.** 110; appearance, 150; situation, **3.** 12, 16, 55; tributary area, 16; oppression of tributary pueblos, 18; first contact with Spanish, 18; Cortes before, 52-54; historical sources, 54 n.; houses, 55, 60; population, 57; gardens, 57 n.; phratries, 59; dress of inhabitants, 60; food, 61-64; markets, 64; currency, 64; worship, 65-68; situation of Cortes in, 69-71;

GENERAL INDEX

- seizure of Montezuma, 71, 74-76; and of other chiefs, 77; Alvarado precipitates conflict, 78-81; deposition and death of Montezuma, 82; retreat of Cortes, 83; siege, 85-87. *See also* Aztecs.
- Miami Indians in Ohio valley, 1. 51, 9. 263; and the French and English, 266.
- Miantonomo, Narragansett chief, defeated by Uncas, 6. 205; slain, 207-209; effect of death, 263.
- Michel le Basque, buccaneer, 5. 409.
- Micmac Indians, 1. 52.
- Middleton, attacks London Company, 4. 212.
- Mifflin, Thomas, in Conway Cabal, 11. 40, 43, 54; president of Congress, on Washington's retirement, 12. 62.
- Milborne, Jacob, Leisler's lieutenant, 8. 223; marries Leisler's daughter, 233; arrest, 237; trial and execution, 237-240, 431.
- Milford, Conn., settled, 6. 165.
- Military colonies, in Peru, 3. 136-138; rudiments in Mexico, 136 n.
- Militia, Washington urges uniform organization, 12. 64. *See also* Army, Minute men.
- Miller, Thomas, acting governor of North Carolina, and Culpeper, 5. 329-332.
- Milton, John, advanced views, 6. 235; books burnt, 331.
- Mingo Indians in Ohio valley, 9. 263; English allies, 341.
- Minisink, N. Y., sacked by Brant, 11. 110.
- Minnitarees, Indian group, 1. 48; mound-builders, 50.
- Minorca, importance, 11. 176; offered to Russia, 177; captured by Spanish, 346.
- Minuit, Peter, Director-general of New Netherland, 7. 139; discussion with Bradford, 143; recalled, 163; leads colony to New Sweden, 276.
- Minute men, organization, 10. 129; familiar with war, 129; value, 148, 328.
- Mischianza in honour of Howe, 11. 67.
- Missions. *See* Indians.
- Mississippi River, discovery, 3. 316; Soto's expedition, 340; French explorations, 362-369, 9. 100, 106, 111, 115, 118-120, 130; question of free navigation, 12. 246-250, 401.
- Mississippi valley, claims and occupation in 1782, 12. 21.
- Missouri Indians, 1. 48.
- Missouri River, discovered, 9. 119.
- Mobile, Ala., origin of the name, 3. 340 n.; captured by Spanish, 11. 167.
- Mohawk Valley, N. Y., German settlers, 8. 303; suffering during the Revolution, 11. 113.
- Mohawks, Iroquois tribe, 1. 54; meaning of word, 60 n.; migration to Canada, 88 n.; segregated from the Onondagas, 9. 47. *See also* Iroquois.
- Mohegan Indians, 1. 51; phratry and clan names, 84; and the Pequots and Mohawks, 6. 148, 7. 141, 172, 174, 332; defeat Narragansetts, 6. 205-208; and the English, 263, 269.
- Molucca Islands, Polo describes, 1. 328, 335; Portuguese reach, 2. 418; controversy over ownership, 3. 318; Spanish claim ceded, 319.
- Money, in ancient Mexico, 3. 64; of the Chibchas, 94; tobacco currency, 5. 25, 59, 251-254; coined in Massachusetts, 6. 244, 318; wampum as, 7. 202; chaotic condition in early New York, 8. 54; Massachusetts issues paper, 229; New York issues paper, 283; Congress issues paper, 10.

GENERAL INDEX

- 187; depreciated currency, **II.** 30, 237-239, **12.** 194; specie drain, 196; coins in circulation in 1785, 196; state craze for paper, 200-210, 212; states forbidden to issue paper, or to coin, 323; question of national paper, under the Constitution, 323-327.
- Mongol empire, power, **I.** 319; character, 319; friars visit, 320; Polos in, 323-327; why not Christianized, 324; overthrow, 334.
- Monk, George, Duke of Albemarle, a proprietor of Carolina, **5.** 317; Lee thinks to emulate, **II.** 84; and Arnold, 258.
- Monmouth, N. J., battle, **II.** 73-80.
- Monro, Col., defends Fort William Henry, **9.** 312; surrenders, 313.
- Monroe, James, opposes the Constitution, **12.** 403.
- Montagnais, Adirondacks, **9.** 63.
- Montbars the Exterminator, buccaneer, **5.** 407.
- Montcalm, Louis Joseph, Marquis de, French commander-in-chief in America, **9.** 303; character, 303; voyage to America, 304; and Vaudreuil, 305; captures Oswego, 308; expedition against Fort William Henry, 310-313; unable to prevent a massacre, 313-315; defends Ticonderoga, 321-325; defence of Quebec, 350; battle of Plains of Abraham, 356; mortally wounded, 358.
- Montesino, Antonio, Dominican monk, crusade against Indian slavery, **3.** 270-272; in Virginia, 321; death, 321.
- Montezuma II., Aztec chief-of-men, mistaken for a king by Spanish, **I.** 111, 127; elected, **3.** 18; and the Great Khan, 36; seized by Cortes, **71.** 74-76; priest-commander, 72-74; deposited, 82; killed, 83.
- Montgomery, John, governor of New York, **8.** 289.
- Montgomery, Richard, American brigadier-general, **10.** 178; commands invasion of Canada, 194; killed at Quebec, 197.
- Montreal, named, **9.** 20; founded, 82; captured by British, 359; captured by Americans, **10.** 194; recaptured, 198. *See also* Hochelaga.
- Monts, Pierre du Guast, Sieur de, monopoly of fur-trade, **9.** 36, 57, 59; grant, 49; voyage to Acadia, 50; gives up Canadian affairs, 81. *See also* Acadia, Port Royal.
- Moore, James, governor of South Carolina, **5.** 340.
- Moore, James, defeats the Tuscaroras, **5.** 355; provisional governor of South Carolina, 359.
- Moore's Creek, N. C., battle, **10.** 208.
- Moors, character, **I.** 312; significance of kingdom in Spain, **6.** 12. *See also* Moriscos.
- Moquis, Pueblo Indian group, **I.** 96; pueblos, 105.
- Morales, Gaspar de, in Gulf of San Miguel, **3.** 200.
- Moravians, migration to Pennsylvania, **8.** 408.
- Morgan, Daniel, commands American sharpshooters, **10.** 173; character, 174; captured at Quebec, 197; exchanged, 254; at Freeman's Farm, 387; slighted, **II.** 299; joins southern army, 299; commands detachment, 302; at Cowpens, 304-306; joins Greene, 306; retires, 308.
- Morgan, Sir Henry, buccaneer, **5.** 409; exploits, 410-415; metamorphosis, 416.
- Morgan, Lewis, criteria of culture, **I.** 29-40; adopted by Senecas, 86 n.; on status of Pueblo Indians, 97; views on Mexican society, 116, 132 n.; rules on narratives of

GENERAL INDEX

- Spanish explorers, 143, 144 ; inconsistencies, 145-150.
- Moriscoes, converted Moors in Spain, condition, 3. 391 ; rebellion, 396 ; expulsion, 397.
- Morison, Francis, royal commissioner, 5. 107.
- Morris, Gouverneur, ancestry, 8. 234 ; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270.
- Morris, Robert, financial services to the nation, 10. 286, 12. 198 ; on securing a revenue for Congress, 128 ; member of the Federal Convention, 270.
- Morton, Joseph, governor of Carolina, and the pirates, 5. 423.
- Morton, Thomas, *New English Canaan*, 6. 110 ; character, 110, 111 ; settles Merrymount, 111 ; sent back to England, 111, 126.
- Moscoso, Luis de, Soto's lieutenant, 3. 340.
- Moultrie, William, repulses British attack on Charleston, 10. 233 ; defeats British at Port Royal, 11. 204 ; on South Carolina's neutrality, 209.
- Mound-Builders, vague speculations, 1. 161-163 ; antiquity of mounds, 163 ; compared with Mexicans and Zuñis, 164 ; culture status, 165 ; mounds by different tribes, 166-168 ; and Indians, 168.
- Mount Desert Island, La Saussaye and Argall at, 4. 201, 9. 76-78 ; discovered, 52.
- Mount Vernon, life at, 5. 273.
- Mowatt, Henry, British naval officer, burns Portland, 10. 192.
- Mugwump, origin and use of term, 6. 258.
- Mundus Novus*, Vesputius's letter published under title of, 2. 339-341 ; success, 342 ; Ringmann's edition, 343. *See also* New World.
- Munsee Indians, 1. 51.
- Münster, Sebastian, use of term America, 2. 381, 389 n., 3. 327.
- Murray, Mrs. Lindley, saves Putnam's troops, 10. 251.
- Muscovy Company, organized, 2. 221, 4. 16, 7. 63, 93.
- Musgrove's Mills, S. C., battle, 11. 235.
- Music, ancient Nahuatl, 3. 295, 296 n. ; in colonial Virginia, 5. 281 ; in the Netherlands, 7. 18.
- Muyscas. *See* Chibchas.
- Nahuas, Pueblo Indian group in Mexico, 1. 96 ; invasion of Mexican tableland, 3. 5, 8 ; music, 295, 296 n. *See also* Aztecs, Mexicans.
- Nakuk Pech, Maya chief, chronicle of Spanish conquest, 1. 158.
- Names, queer transformations, 1. 270, 2. 329 n. ; character of Virginia and New England geographical, 5. 8-11, 45 ; Cavalier, in Virginia, 29 ; Huguenot, in America, 5. 238, 8. 401 ; former partiality for classical, 12. 233 ; of territories in Jefferson's plan, 234.
- Nantasket, Mass., settled, 6. 111.
- Nantucket, Mass., Duke of York's claim, 8. 7.
- Narragansett Bay, R. I., Verrazano in, 7. 75.
- Narragansett Indians, and Pilgrims, 6. 104 ; location, 147 ; refuse to join Pequots, 158, 159 ; war with Mohegans, 205-209 ; unfriendly, 263 ; in King Philip's War, 280-285, 295, 296.
- Narvaez, Pánfilo de, and Cortes, 3. 78 ; expedition in southern United States, 330 ; death, 331.
- Nashville, Tenn., founded, 11. 130.
- Natchez, Miss., captured by Americans, 11. 129.
- Natchez Indians, 1. 50 n.
- Nation-making, of the Iroquois, 1. 56 ; evolution, 6. 6-10, 13, 57 ;

GENERAL INDEX

- and political history, 9; philosophy, 10; Oriental method, 11-13; Roman method, 14-20; English method, 24; continuity of ideas in Germanic invasion, 31; conflict of Roman and English ideas, 39, 55-57; influence of Puritans, 169.
- Nations, rise of modern, 6. 40-42.
- Naumkeag, Mass., settlement, 6. 112, 116; named Salem, 116.
- Navigation, introduction of compass and astrolabe, 1. 360-362; vague calculations of latitude and longitude, 362. *See also* Voyages.
- Navigation Acts, origin and provisions, 5. 53, 7. 289; consequences, 5. 53, 126; Bland's remonstrance, 54-59; effect on tobacco, 59, 129, 202, 254; infractions in Carolina, 327; effect on piracy, 423; early infractions in Massachusetts, 6. 318, 319; and trade with New Netherland, 7. 324, 326; writs of assistance, 10. 14; commissioners of the customs in Townshend Acts, 36; Gaspee affair, 90; and United States trade, 12. 165.
- Navy, American, construction, 11. 143-146; register of ships, 145; service rendered, 146-148; control under Articles of Confederation, 12. 115. *See also* Jones.
- Navy, British, development, 4. 26; impressment, 10. 59, 206; military dependence upon, 11. 142, 329, 335; captures made by, 146; supremacy, 168, 246, 347; exercise of right of search, 169, 172, 178-181, 189. *See also* Howe (Richard), sea kings, Rodney.
- Navy, French, attempted invasion of England, 11. 166; overthrow, 347. *See also* Estaing, Grasse, Guichen, Ternay.
- Naylor, James, religious enthusiast, 8. 129.
- Nestorian missionaries in Asia, 1. 309; heretics, 310.
- Netherlands, persecution and revolt, 3. 393, 7. 48-50; conquests in East Indies, 3. 394, 7. 57-60; alliance with Elizabeth, 4. 25; commercial connection with England, 53, 7. 39-43, 51-53; religious liberty, 4. 313, 6. 88; and the Navigation Act, 5. 55, 7. 289; sea power, 5. 401, 7. 56; efforts to suppress piracy, 5. 421; Pilgrims in, 6. 86; public schools, 134, 7. 21; and the Roman Empire, 5; and the Frankish Empire, 7-10; in Lotharingia, 10-12; growth of little states, 13; resulting political advantages, 14; geographical advantages, 14, 46; agricultural and industrial growth, 15-18; topography, 16; fine arts, 18, 24; culture, 19-21; urban and rural population, 22; burgher type, 23; discordant political factors, 25-27; conditions of civil liberty, 28, 262; absorption by the House of Burgundy, 28; under Charles the Bold, 29; Great Privilege, 30; under the Hapsburgs, 31-33; influence on American progress, 36, 8. 414; importance of the woolen industry, 7. 40; religious influence on England, 43-46; Protestantism, 47; division, 50; further history of the Flemish, 50, 54; growth of the Dutch at expense of the Flemish, 54; Australasian explorations, 60; control of Brazil, 62; Arctic explorations, 64; Antarctic explorations, 65; independence acknowledged, 112; parties in 1609, 114-116; divergent views on colonization, 116-118; triumph of the war party, 124; inauguration of a colonial policy, 127; charter of the Dutch West India Company, 129; alliance with Charles I.,

GENERAL INDEX

- 137; renewed war with Spain, 145; English friendship, 282; effect of treaty of Münster, 283; government, 283-285; parties after treaty of Münster, 285-287; attempted union with the Commonwealth, 287; commercial rivalry with England, 288; wars with England, 289-291, 301-310, 329-338, 8. 19, 27-29, 39-41, 11. 189-194; personal union with England, 7. 291; immigration of Jews, 8. 388; inducement to Huguenots, 399; harbour Paul Jones, 11. 159, 188; on rights of neutrals, 171; ships searched by British, 179-181, 189; opinions on the Revolution, 186; mutual disregard of treaties with England, 187; joins Armed Neutrality, 189; peace with England, 12. 44; trade treaty with United States, 184. *See also* New Netherland.
- Neutral Nation Indians, 1. 53.
- Neutrality, early disregard of rights of neutrals, 5. 402, 11. 170; Consolato del Mare, 171-173; origin of doctrine of free ships, free goods, 173; adoption of the doctrine, 178, 182, 184; British depredations on neutral commerce, 179-181, 189; Armed Neutrality, 182; England's opposition, 183.
- New Albion, Drake names, 3. 377, 4. 32.
- New Amstel, Dutch settlement on the Delaware, 5. 162; resists the English, 8. 4; called Newcastle, 4.
- New Amsterdam, beginnings, 7. 140; conditions, 158, 189-191, 196, 267, 303; subscription for a church, 212; municipal government desired, 252; incorporated, 265; defences, 301; captured, 333-338; named New York, 8. 1. *See also* Manhattan Island, New Netherland, New York City.
- New Bedford, Mass., burnt by British, 11. 132.
- New Berne, N. C., founded, 5. 347; Indian massacre, 353.
- New England, exploration of coast, 4. 65, 6. 91, 7. 76, 102, 131, 9. 52-55; a Virginian's opinion, 5. 4; character of its geographical names, 10; character of settlers, 132, 213, 217, 6. 170-174; reasons for social difference from Virginia, 5. 34, 294; origin and character of its local government, 35-40, 48, 49, 7. 257; small farms, 5. 36; militia, 47; architecture, 260; school system, 292-296, 7. 37; illegal trade with North Carolina, 328, 330; settled through religious differences, 6. 94, 145, 186; parcelled out by Charles I., 137; Gorges governor, 137; effect of Pequot War, 163; population in 1640, 166; importance of migration, 174; settlement not intended to promote religious liberty, 175-178; laws against Quakers, 236; regicides, 245-247, 275, 276 n.; abundant sources, 304; romantic history, 304; under Andros, 334-341, 8. 205; effect of Revolution of 1689, 6. 341-347; and Norumbega, 7. 81; named, 131; extent under charter of Council of New England, 133; growth threatens New Netherland, 171, 199-201, 319; dispute with the Dutch over Connecticut, 173-181, 291-301; trade with New Netherland, 187; and New Netherland during the first English-Dutch war, 303-310; preparation against reconquered New Netherland, 8. 31; resumption of old governments, 209; conquers Acadia, 9. 96; purpose of settlement, 104;

GENERAL INDEX

- gloomy outlook in 1692, 156 ;
Indian depredations, 241 ; captures
Louisburg, 250-256 ; ports closed,
10. 132 ; forbidden to fish on
the Banks, 132 ; factor in Bur-
goyne's campaign, 312 ; religious
intolerance before 1800, 12. 88-
91 ; commercial control under the
Constitution feared, 312, 399,
401. *See also* next title, Colo-
nies, King Philip's War, Puri-
tans, and colonies by name.
- New England Confederacy, liberal-
izing effect, 6. 187 ; causes, 187 ;
population in 1643, 188, 192 ;
formed, 188 ; constitution, 191 ;
value, 192 ; act of sovereignty,
193 ; distrusted in England, 193,
244, 248 ; acts against Gorton,
210 ; against Quakers, 234, 237 ;
weakened, 251 ; Narragansetts in-
timidated, 263 ; measures in King
Philip's War, 278-281, 290, 300.
See also New England.
- New France. *See* Canada.
- New Hampshire, founded, 6. 145 ;
joined to Massachusetts, 146,
187 ; dissent permitted, 187 ;
royal province, 324 ; share in
Louisburg expedition, 9. 251 ;
troops for campaign of 1759, 343 ;
quarrel with governor over repre-
sentation, 10. 3 ; instructs for
independence, 218 ; forms new
government, 218 ; gradual eman-
cipation, 12. 87 ; uprising against
the courts, 217 ; ratifying conven-
tion adjourns, 397 ; ratifies the
Constitution, 405. *See also* New
England, Vermont.
- New Hampshire Grants. *See* Ver-
mont.
- New Haven colony, founded, 6. 164,
165, 7. 200 ; theocracy, 6. 165 ;
administration of justice, 166,
313 ; population in 1643, 192 ;
regicides, 245-247 ; annexed to
Connecticut, 249, 8. 6, 9. 211 n. ;
settlement in New Jersey, 6. 250,
8. 16 ; political discontent, 6.
314 ; contact with New Nether-
land, 7. 201 ; attempted settle-
ments in New Jersey and Pennsyl-
vania, 278 ; controversy with New
Netherland, 292-296 ; contrasted
with Connecticut, 8. 15. *See also*
Connecticut, New England.
- New Haven, Conn., Tryon attacks,
11. 133.
- New Jersey, grant to Berkeley and
Carteret, 5. 167, 8. 12 ; an-
nexed to New England, 6. 335,
8. 205 ; Nicolls's grant, 12 ;
Elizabethtown founded, 13 ; con-
flicting grants, 14 ; named, 14 ;
government under the Conces-
sions, 14, 17 ; New Haven set-
tlers, 15-17 ; early government
troubles, 18 ; Berkeley's interest
sold to Quakers, 19 ; regrant of
East Jersey to Carteret, 42, 108 ;
Quaker claim to West Jersey ig-
nored, 42, 108 ; boundary line
of East and West Jersey, 42,
163 ; troubles arising from York's
claim of government, 108-113,
163-165, 168 ; York cedes the
government, 113, 114, 170 ;
Penn's award in West Jersey,
162 ; settlements in West Jersey,
163, 164 ; Burlington founded,
166 ; Penn's draft of government
for West Jersey, 167 ; united as
a royal province, 279 ; executive
union with New York, 279 ; sal-
ary controversy with Cornbury,
279 ; troops for campaign of
1759, 9. 343 ; dispute over inde-
pendence and new government,
10. 218 ; retreat of American
army across, 262 ; British driven
from, 268-276 ; Howe's attempt
to cross foiled, 358 ; permits
emancipation, 12. 87 ; paper
money, 203 ; ratifies the Consti-
tution, 377. *See also* Colonies,
Delaware River, and battles by
name.

GENERAL INDEX

- New Laws on Indian slavery, 3. 301.
- New London, Conn., burnt by Arnold, 11. 339.
- New Netherland, Virginians at Fort Nassau, 4. 298, 7. 187; boundaries, 5. 166, 7. 122; in Connecticut valley, 6. 149, 7. 135, 173-181, 291-301; growth promotes New England Confederacy, 6. 187; fall, 249, 7. 332-338; pioneer traders at Manhattan, 118; Ordinance of 1614, 119; explorations, 120; control of the United New Netherland Company, 121-124; treaty with the Iroquois, 123; control of the Dutch West India Company, 129; English claims, 131-134, 137, 144, 163-166, 170, 320-324, 326; government, 134, 152, 259, 262; first settlers, 134-137; Minuit director-general, 139; threatened breach with the Iroquois, 141-143; intercourse with Plymouth, 143; growth, 154, 188, 266-268, 318; establishment of manors, 154-159; early manors, 159-162; disputes with the patroons, 162, 240-249; Twiller director-general, 166; attempt to forestall English settlements, 170-173; trade with New England, 187; removal of Twiller, 191; Kieft director-general, 192; his autocratic methods and reforms, 193-196; character of the population in Kieft's time, 196; monopoly abolished, 197; encouragement of settlers, 198; English settlers, 199, 211; contact with New Haven, 201; control of Long Island, 201, 204, 291, 310, 313, 326, 328; wars with the Delaware Indians 205-218, 226, 314-318; Kieft and the popular demands, 209-211, 219; financial needs, 220, 302; excise, 221, 222, 233, 302; protest against Kieft, 223-225; Stuyvesant director-general, 225; his autocracy, 230, 233-237, 296; step toward representation, 238; difficulties in the government, 240; Stuyvesant and the popular demands, 250-253, 264, 296, 302, 310-313, 328; memorial to the States General, 252, 263; phases of development, 266; cosmopolitanism, 267; religious persecution, 267-275; English settlements in New Jersey broken up, 278; relations with New Sweden, 278, 281; during the first English-Dutch war, 301-310; internal weakness, 319; validity of Dutch claim, 322; essential to English control in America, 324, 338, 8. 1; portents of disaster, 7. 325; granted to the Duke of York, 329; secret expedition against, 330; peaceful submission to the English, 8. 4. *See also* Hudson River, New Amsterdam, New York.
- New Paltz, N. Y., Walloons settle, 8. 397.
- New Providence, Bahama Islands, harbours pirates, 5. 422; redeemed, 426.
- New Rochelle, N. Y., Huguenot settlement, 8. 403.
- New Sweden, origin, 7. 275-277; warned by English and Dutch, 277; progress, 278-280; overthrow, 281.
- New Town (Cambridge), Mass., settled, 6. 127; college founded, 134; name changed, 134; discontent with theocratic and aristocratic tendencies, 150, 151; migration to Connecticut, 153.
- New World, first use of term, 2. 336-338; original application of term, 344-357; called America, 366-368. *See also* America.
- New York, granted to the Duke of York, 7. 330; captured from the

GENERAL INDEX

Dutch, 332-338; importance to English control in America, 8. 1; Nicolls governor, 2; Duke's Laws, 3; autocratic government, 3, 25; settlement of the Connecticut boundary, 5-7; claims in New England, 7; ceded by the Dutch, 19; departure of Nicolls, 19; Lovelace governor, 20, 28; demand for representative government, 26, 49-51, 197; captured by the Dutch, 28; Dutch government, 28-39; restored to England, 41; York's second grant, 41; Andros governor, 43; re-establishment of English rule, 45; allegiance of Long Island towns, 46; oath of allegiance to England, 46-48; economic and moral conditions under Andros, 52; revival of claim to Connecticut, 53-58; importance of Iroquois friendship, 61; conditions around Manhattan in 1680, 73-85, 88-100; custom-house inspections, 86-88; religious conditions in 1680, 100-106; estate and revenue in 1680, 104, 106; question of control over New Jersey, 108-114, 163-165, 168-171; dissatisfaction with Andros, 195; troubles over customs duties, 195, 196; Dongan governor, 198; first assembly, 198; becomes a royal province, 199; French designs against, 202; annexed to New England, 205, 206; fear of French invasion and Catholic plot, 210-212, 417, 421; conditions favouring Leisler's revolt, 214-216; rising against Nicholson, 217, 418; Leisler's declaration, 218; Leisler assumes control, 219-222, 419; conditions of Leisler's control, 222-224, 227, 228, 231; French raid on Schenectady, 224-227; Leisler's assembly, 228; William III.'s provisions for government, 230; Leisler's defiance of Ingoldsby,

234-236; Leisler and Sloughter, 236, 424; overthrow of Leisler, 236, 237; his trial and execution, 237-240, 425-431; strategic position, 243-245, 10. 235, 305; bears brunt of Canadian wars, 245; first assembly under William and Mary, 246; anti-Catholic legislation, 247, 337; desire to annex Connecticut and Pennsylvania, 247; Fletcher governor, 247; party strife, 250, 266, 268, 275-277; governor and assembly, 251, 278, 284, 285, 305; Fletcher recalled, 265; Bellomont governor, 266; Cornbury governor, 277; appointment of a treasurer, 278; Ingoldsby acting governor, 280; Hunter governor, 282; paper money, 283, 12. 203; Burnet's fur-trade reforms, 8. 286-289; Zenger's trial, 290-300; extent in colonial times, 303; causes of slow growth, 304; colonial economic conditions, 304; debt and taxation, 305; conditions of government, 305; politics, 305-308; social conditions, 308-310; manors, 310-317; Albany in 1765, 317-320; type of the Dutch country house, 320-326; colonial dress, 327-329; indentured servants, 333; slavery, 334; negro plot of 1712, 336; and of 1741, 336-342; centre of distribution for non-English population, 385; immigration and treatment of the Jews, 389-391; immigration of Huguenots, 396, 402-405; troops for campaign of 1759, 343; tenure and salary of chief justice, 10. 15; assembly suspended by Parliament, 37; influences adverse to the Revolution, 135, 150; strife over New Hampshire Grants, 136, 12. 181; refuses to join non-importation agreement, 10. 137; British ministry favours, 137; joins common cause, 137; exposed

GENERAL INDEX

- position influences discussion of independence, 222, 224; adopts independence, 229; Carleton's invasion, 292-295; British plans for 1777, 307; military situation, 1778-1781, 11. 88, 98, 198; suffering from loyalist attacks, 104, 109, 113, 12. 145; anti-loyalist legislation, 146, 150-152; trade restrictions, 172-175; claim to western territory, 225; cedes it, 228; defeats impost amendment to Articles of Confederation, 260; importance to the Union, 407; contest over ratification of the Constitution, 408-412; proposes another convention, 413; fails to choose presidential electors, 415. *See also* Burgoyne, Colonies, Howe (William), Iroquois, New Netherland, New York City, St. Leger, Washington, and battles and fortified places by name.
- New York City, population in 1776, 5. 246; cosmopolitanism, 7. 1, 8. 330, 415; change in the government, 3; abolition of class divisions, 20; post with Boston, 21-25; Merchants' Exchange established, 25; Dutch capture, 28; Dutch defensive measures, 32-36; Andros's reforms, 51; in 1680, 73-85; Wolley on its climate, 101; flour monopoly, 107; and the pirates, 259-263, 267; in 1735, 301-303; colonial cheerfulness and refinement, 329; amusements, 330; clubs and inns, 331; literature and schools, 331-333; reception of Stamp Act, 10. 21; riots, 28; breaks non-importation agreement, 88; action on tea, 99; conditions in 1775, 136; British capture, 250-252; British evacuate, 12. 61. *See also* New Amsterdam, New York.
- New York Harbour, Verrazano in, 7. 74; Hudson in, 103.
- New Zealand discovered, 7. 60.
- Newark, N. J., settled and named, 6. 250, 8. 16.
- Newburgh address, 12. 129-132.
- Newcastle, Del. *See* New Amstel.
- Newfoundland, and Markland, 1. 189; and Estotiland, 285; early cartography, 2. 229, 236, 238 n. 348, 451; early exploitation of the fisheries, 236-238, 4. 15, 7. 67, 9. 4, 7, 33; called Baccalaos, 2. 237; Baltimore's palatinate, 4. 300, 305-308, 312; question of pre-Cabotian voyages, 9. 3; fisheries prohibited to New England, 10. 132; fisheries cut off, 11. 30, 146; France and Spain plan to monopolize the fisheries, 165; importance of the fisheries to America, 12. 24, 27; fisheries in the peace of 1783, 30, 43.
- Newgate, Conn., prison and the prison ships, 11. 137.
- Newport, Christopher, captures Spanish carrack, 4. 63; commands first expedition to Virginia, 84, 107; explores the James, 110; return to England, 112, 191; brings supplies, 132, 174, 181; attempts to cross the Blue Ridge, 137; jests on his name, 140; wrecked at Bermudas, 174.
- Newport, R. I., stone mill, 1. 248, 6. 203 n.; founded, 146, 201; incorporated in Rhode Island, 190; Jews in, 8. 389; British occupy, 10. 267, 11. 89; French and Americans attack, 91-96; British evacuate, 98; French army at, 245, 246.
- Newport News, Va., origin of name, 4. 108 n.
- Newspapers, first, in Virginia, 5. 286; early colonial, 8. 289 n.; first, in Pennsylvania, 376. *See also* Zenger.
- Newtown (Elmira), N. Y., battle, 11. 111.
- Niagara Falls, Champlain hears of,

GENERAL INDEX

9. 59; La Salle hears, 113; Hennepin sketches, 126.
- Niagara River. *See* Fort Niagara.
- Nichollet, Charles, fined for preaching sedition, 5. 177.
- Nichols, Richard. *See* Nicolls.
- Nicholson, Sir Francis, deputy-governor and lieutenant-governor of Virginia, 5. 134, 140; character, 135, 142-144; favours William and Mary College, 137; governor of Maryland, 137; recalled, 144; plan of union, 151; removes the capital of Maryland, 188; founds King William School, 189; royal governor of South Carolina, 359; lieutenant-governor of New York, 8. 206; predicament due to the overthrow of Andros, 209; accused of Catholicism, 212, 214, 215, 417; defensive measures misinterpreted, 216; overthrow, 217; goes to England, 218; leads fruitless attack on Canada, 281; conquers Nova Scotia, 282.
- Nicola, Louis, scheme to make Washington king, 12. 127.
- Nicollet, Jean, western explorations, 3. 363, 9. 98-100.
- Nicolls, Richard, royal commissioner, dual nature of his commission, 7. 330; captures New Amsterdam, 332-338; governor of New York, character, 8. 2; autocracy, 3, 11; grant in New Jersey, 12; resigns, 19; death, 20; and the oath of allegiance, 46; and the Iroquois, 60.
- Nicolls, William, and Leisler, 8. 231, 237.
- Nicuesa, Diego de, governor of Spanish province on mainland, 3. 179; suffering of his colony, 184; treatment at Darien, 185; lost at sea, 185.
- Nieuwenhuysen, Wilhelmus van, minister in New York, 8. 100; feud, 102.
- Nikulas Sæmundsson, abbot in Iceland, mentions Vinland, 1. 235.
- Nine Men, Board of, in New Netherland, 7. 238-240, 249-253, 264, 296.
- Ninety-Six, S. C., strategic importance, 11. 220; siege and evacuation, 318.
- Nipmuck Indians, location, 6. 147; in King Philip's War, 269, 273-278, 290-295.
- Non-importation agreement, first, 10. 56; affects London, 71; Virginia supports, 76; New York merchants break, 88; association formed in First Congress, 130.
- Nordenskjöld, Baron, authority on Zeno narrative, 1. 262.
- Norfolk, Va., growth, 5. 245; burnt by Dunmore, 10. 211; sacked by British, 11. 132.
- Normandy, France, race characteristics, 9. 1; mariners, 2; early interest in Newfoundland fisheries, 3; objects to trade monopoly in Canada, 37, 57. *See also* Dieppe.
- Norumbega. *See* Norumbega.
- Norridgewock, Maine, village of christianized Algonquin Indians, importance of location, 9. 235; Rale in, 235-237; inhabitants take the war path, 241; stormed, 243; tribe exterminated, 244.
- North, Lord, chancellor of the exchequer, 10. 53; character, 53; compromise on Townshend Acts, 71; favours coercion, 72, 112; prime minister, 87; his five acts of colonial regulation, 112-115; policy of peace or war, 133; measures of conciliation, 11. 5, 8, 27; his defence of them, 9; implores the king to form new ministry, 15; remains prime minister, 26; effect of Yorktown, 344; overthrow of ministry, 347, 12. 1; coalition with Fox, 44-50; coalition ministry, 52, 55.
- North America, and Drogo, 1. 286;

GENERAL INDEX

- identified with Asia, 2. 129, 134, 218, 222, 348, 353, 451, 3. 203, 327, 357 n., 9. 22; cartographical separation from Asia, 2. 350, 380, 385, 414, 3. 320, 356, 357, 385; application of name America to, 2. 385; Spanish explorations of interior, 3. 331-341; French explorations of interior, 361-374, 9. 111-120, 126-132; crossed, 3. 376; final recognition as a separate continent, 385; early cartography of eastern coast, 7. 84-87. *See also* America.
- North Carolina, Raleigh's attempted settlement, 4. 35-39, 41, 44-46; Bacon's plans concerning, 5. 99; settlement, 322-324; early governors, 323, 326; legislation to attract immigrants, 326; unlawful trade with New England, 327-329; Miller acting governor, 329; Culpeper usurpation, 330-333; Sothel's administration, 333-335; Ludwell governor, 339; Archdale governor, 340; trouble over established church and test oath, 343-345, 356; rival governments of Carey and Glover, 345; Hyde governor, 345; Carey's insurrection, 346; growth, 347; Indians in, 348-351; Tuscarora War, 351-355; Eden governor, 356; paper money, 356, 12. 201; becomes a royal province, 5. 359; social conditions, 361-373; geographical conditions, 361-363; industries, 366; absence of towns, 367; German and Scotch-Irish settlers, 371-373; provincial character, 388; and the pirates, 425, 427, 428; Regulators' War, 10. 89; Mecklenburg County Resolves, 150-152; defeat of the loyalists, 207-209; instructs for independence and local self-government, 209; conditions in 1779, 11. 199; Cornwallis's invasion, 293, 298; partisan warfare, 293; western claim, 12. 21; sentiment on slavery in 1776, 86; duty on imported slaves, 87; cedes western claim, 236; cession revoked, 238; and the state of Franklin, 238; tardy ratification of the Constitution, 413. *See also* Carolina, Greene (Nathanael), and battles by name.
- Northampton, Mass., Indian attack, 6. 294; development of Halfway Covenant in church at, 9. 222; beginning of Great Awakening, 226; church quarrel with Edwards, 231.
- Northern Neck, Va., negro plot, 5. 228.
- Northmen, conversion, 1. 187. *See also* Greenland, Iceland, Vinland.
- Northwest, route used by the French, 9. 104; Indian conditions in 1670, 105-107; France takes possession, 107-109. *See also* Frontier, Territory.
- Northwest Passage, why sought, 2. 222, 4. 72, 7. 63, 9. 9; search for, 3. 320, 363, 378, 380, 381, 7. 71, 9. 10, 14.
- Northwest Territory, Clark's conquest, 11. 126-129; annexed to Virginia, 128; importance of conquest, 130. *See also* Territory.
- Norton, John, Boston minister, character, 6. 227, 229.
- Norumbega, Horsford's views, 1. 255, 7. 81; and Norway, 2. 72 n.; location, 4. 65, 7. 81-91, 9. 27, 28, 52.
- Norwalk, Conn., burnt by British, 11. 133.
- Notley, Thomas, governor of Maryland, 5. 181.
- Nottoway Indians, 5. 350.
- Nova Scotia conquered by Nicholson, 8. 282. *See also* Acadia.
- Nova Zembla, discovered, 3. 379, 7. 64.

GENERAL INDEX

- Nurse, Rebecca, witchcraft victim, 9. 165, 174.
- Ocampo, Sebastian de, circumnavigates Cuba, 2. 264.
- Occupation, and title to wild lands, 7. 132, 164, 322; what constitutes, 165.
- Odoric, friar of Pordenone, in China and India, 1. 332.
- Oglethorpe, James, settlement of Georgia, 5. 390-392; character, 390 n.
- Ohio Company, origin, 12. 240.
- Ohio River, La Salle's expedition, 3. 363, 9. 111-115. *See also* next title.
- Ohio valley, beginnings of English occupation, 5. 466, 9. 260, 264, 11. 122-125; effect on the French, 9. 261; Indians, 263; French possession asserted, 264-267; Duquesne sends expedition to control, 268-270; Washington's mission, 270, 271; Fort Duquesne built, 272; failure of Washington's expedition, 273-276; effect of Fort Duquesne on English prestige, 277, 293; English gain control, 340; Lord Dunmore's War, 11. 117-122. *See also* Fort Duquesne, Frontier, Territory.
- Ojeda, Alonso de (first), in Columbus's second expedition, 2. 152; voyage to South America, 248, 269, 319; governor of Darien, 3. 179, 181; shipwreck and death, 181.
- Ojeda, Alonso de (second), and the destruction of Las Casas's colony, 3. 286.
- Ojibway Indians, 1. 51, 9. 99; French friendship, 105.
- Old Britain. *See* Demoiselle.
- Old Dominion, origin of term, 5. 27.
- Old King (Sayenqueraghta), Seneca chief, at Wyoming massacre, 11. 107; at Cherry Valley, 110 n.
- Old South Church, Boston, founded, 6. 315, 9. 201; Episcopal service in, 6. 336.
- Oldham, John, in Massachusetts, 6. 126; in Connecticut valley, 152; murdered, 157.
- Olid, Cristóval de, in Central America, 3. 205; death, 205.
- Olonnois, buccaneer, 5. 408.
- Omaha Indians, 1. 48.
- Onas, Indian name for governors of Pennsylvania, 8. 59 n., 186.
- One Hundred Associates, privileges and duties, 9. 90.
- Oneidas, Iroquois Indians, 1. 54; meaning of name, 9. 45; segregated from the Mohawks, 47. *See also* Iroquois.
- Onondagas, Iroquois Indians, 1. 54; meaning of name, 9. 45. *See also* Iroquois.
- Onontio, Iroquois name for governors of Canada, 8. 59 n.
- Opekankano, Powhatan's brother, and the Virginians, 4. 118, 119, 164, 223, 357.
- Ordinance of 1614, Dutch, 7. 119.
- Ordinance of 1784, draft, 12. 232-235.
- Ordinance of 1787, 12. 242-245.
- Oregon, American claims, 3. 375; Lewis and Clark's expedition, 376.
- Orellana, Francisco de, voyage on the Amazon, 3. 233.
- Orinoco River, Columbus at the delta, 2. 184; described, 185 n.
- Oriskany, N. Y., battle, 10. 338-342.
- Orkney, Earl of, absentee governor of Virginia, 5. 140.
- Oswald, Richard, informal peace negotiations, 12. 10; envoy, 26.
- Oswego, N. Y., importance of founding, 8. 288, 9. 262; captured and destroyed by the French, 308; effect of capture, 309; re-

GENERAL INDEX

- built, 345 ; successfully defended, 346.
- Otis, James, on writs of assistance, 10. 14 ; *Vindication* of colonial control of expenditures, 16 ; proposes Stamp Act Congress, 24 ; on colonial representation in Parliament, 40 ; on rescission of circular letter, 58 ; assaulted, 76 ; at Bunker Hill, 168.
- Otoe Indians, 1. 48.
- Ottawa Indians, 1. 51, 9. 64 ; war party with Champlain, 65-70 ; Champlain among, 84 ; driven westward by the Iroquois, 106.
- Otumba, Mexico, Cortes's victory at, 3. 84.
- Orando, Nicolas de, governor of Hispaniola, 2. 198 ; and Columbus, 201, 207, 208 ; character as governor, 3. 256 ; treatment of Indians, 257-259 ; and the encomiendas, 264 ; recalled, 269.
- Oviedo, Gonsalvo Hernandez de, on Pedrarias, 3. 191 ; inspector-general at Darien, 191.
- Oxenstjerna, Count Axel, interest in New Sweden, 7. 276.
- Oxford University, Virginians at, 5. 290 ; conservative, 6. 73, 7. 44, 10. 191 ; inculcates passive obedience, 6. 331.
- Pachacamac, Peruvian god, 3. 145.
- Pachacutec, Inca, conquests, 3. 126 ; and the military colonies, 136 ; and the Chirihuanas, 158.
- Pacific Ocean, first European knowledge of Asian shore, 1. 321 ; Columbus unwittingly hears of, 2. 205 ; hypothetical indication on Stobnicza's map, 414 ; Balboa's discovery, 415, 3. 188 ; first realization of its extent, 2. 416 n. ; Magellan names and crosses, 438-442.
- Paine, Thomas, character, 10. 204 ; effect of *Common Sense*, 205, 206 ; *The Crisis*, his apothegm, 267.
- Palatinates, origin and nature, 4. 301-305, 323-327 ; Avalon, 305 ; Maryland, 316, 329-334 ; American type, 328 ; Pennsylvania, 5. 168, 8. 176-178 ; Carolina, 5. 320-322.
- Palatine, title in Carolina government, 5. 321.
- Palatinates, migration to America, 5. 347, 371, 8. 409 ; dialect, 5. 372, 8. 409 ; union with Scotch-Irish, 414 ; influence on American progress, 414.
- Pampas Indians, 3. 96.
- Pamunkey, Queen of, and Virginia, 5. 83-86, 104.
- Panætius on torrid zone, 1. 355.
- Panama, Colombia, founded, 3. 201 ; pirates sack, 5. 413-415 ; Champlain suggests a canal at, 9. 41.
- Panton, Anthony, and Harvey, 4. 346, 349.
- Parishes, in Virginia, 5. 41-43, 114-118 ; in South Carolina, 378.
- Parke, Daniel, suffers at Bacon's hands, 5. 104.
- Parke, Daniel (younger), and Blair, 5. 139.
- Parker, John, commands minute men at Lexington, 10. 144.
- Parker, Sir Peter, attack on Charleston, 10. 232-235.
- Parker, William, in Plymouth Company, 4. 79.
- Parliament, English, and the London Company, 4. 212-214, 256 ; and James I., 231, 244, 257 ; control over the colonies, 257, 5. 168, 435-438, 6. 190, 194-196, 211, 233, 7. 177, 10. 18, 38-41 ; Rump commissioners in Virginia and Maryland, 4. 367-370 ; causes of Stamp Act, 5. 446, 8. 255, 257, 9. 243, 273, 281, 10. 13 ; first House of Commons, 6. 36 ; Henry VIII.'s reliance, 66 ; conflict with Charles I., 118-122, 167 ; Grenville

GENERAL INDEX

- ministry, 10. 17; reimburses colonial war expenditures, 17; resolves to tax colonies, 18; colonies deny the right to tax, 19; Stamp Act passed, 20; Rockingham ministry, 29, 11. 348, 12. 6; debate on repeal of Stamp Act, 10. 29-31; declaratory act, 31; Grafton ministry, 32; Townshend Acts, 34-36; suspends New York Assembly, 37; conditions in 1767, 37; reform, 50, 11. 24, 12. 7, 49, 57; changes in ministry adverse to colonies, 53; Henry VIII.'s statute on treason abroad extended to the colonies, 70; debate on repeal of Townshend Acts, 71-73; repeal of Townshend Acts except as to tea, 87; North ministry, 87; debate on destruction of tea, 110-112; five acts to regulate colonies, 112-115; opposition to the five acts, 118; attempt to avert war, 131; king's policy approved, 132, 191; Massachusetts declared in rebellion, 132; further coercive acts, 132; hiring of German troops discussed, 190; American ports closed, 206; impressment of Americans ordered, 206; debate on North's conciliation measures, 11. 8-11; fall of North ministry, 348, 12. 1; Whig approval of the Revolution, 2, 3; measures of Rockingham ministry, 7; Shelburne ministry, 19; Whig breach, 19; Fox-North coalition, 44-50; attack on treaty of peace, 50; fall of Shelburne ministry, 51; coalition ministry, 52; adoption of the treaty, 53; rebukes personal interference of George III., 54; fall of coalition ministry, 55; Pitt ministry, 55. *See also* Colonies, Crown, England, George III.
- Parris, Samuel, minister of Salem Village, 9. 157; church troubles, 158; his household and the beginnings of the witchcraft delusion, 159-161, 192.
- Parsons, Holden, and the Ohio Company, 12. 241.
- Parsons' Cause, 10. 21-23.
- Patagonians, 2. 436 n., 3. 96.
- Paterson, William, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271; offers the New Jersey plan, 290; on equal state representation, 293-295; becomes a Federalist, 302.
- Patroons. *See* Manors.
- Patterson, Alexander, in Wyoming valley, 12. 176-178.
- Patuxent Indians, 4. 341.
- Paul III., pope, forbids further enslavement of Indians, 3. 301.
- Paulding, John, arrests André, 11. 268.
- Paulus Hook, N. J., British fort, Lee's exploit against, 11. 140.
- Pawnees, Indian group, 1. 50, 57.
- Peace of 1783, obstacles, 12. 9; question of preliminary acknowledgment of independence, 10, 16, 25, 26; informal negotiations, 10-12; England's preliminary offer, 12-14; French demands on England, 14; Vergennes's hostility to American interests, 20-25, 27; boundary questions, 21-23, 29; fishery questions, 24, 27, 30, 43; Jay's suspicions of Vergennes, 25; negotiations begin, 26; Americans negotiate independent of France, 27-29, 39, 41; failure to establish commercial freedom, 31; question of private debts, 31; question of indemnifying loyalists, 33-38, 50, 53; preliminary articles signed, 38; secret article, 38, 247; an American triumph, 40; English-Spanish treaty, 42; French-English treaty, 43; Dutch-English treaty, 44; American treaty unpopular in England, 50; failure

GENERAL INDEX

- of a commerce treaty, 53; treaty signed, 53; Congress unable to carry out its provisions, 142, 155; resulting British action, 155-158.
- Pearl Coast, Columbus at, 2. 188; question of discovery, 263, 268-270; voyages of La Cosa and Vesputius, 410; Las Casas's attempted colony, 3. 284-287.
- Pearson, Richard, fight with Paul Jones, 11. 153-158; knighted, 158 n.
- Pedrias Dávila (Pedro Arias de Avila), governor of Spanish mainland colonies, character, 3. 190; and Balboa, 191-197; superseded, 201; founds Panama, 201; retains governorship, 202; and Gonzalez, 204; death, 208.
- Pegolotti, Francesco, Florentine merchant, book on route to China, 1. 333.
- Peirce, Michael, killed by Indians, 6. 295.
- Pell, Thomas, settlement at Pelham Manor, 7. 319.
- Pembroke, Earl of, in London Company, 4. 81.
- Penn, Sir William, and his son, 8. 132, 134.
- Penn, William, grant, 5. 168, 8. 172-174; character, 114, 137; birth and education, 132; as a Quaker, 133-162; appearance, 134; and his father, 134; marriage, 152; home life, 152; interest in West Jersey, 162, 169; claim against the Crown, 171; purpose in colonizing, 171; story of his Tudor ancestry, 175 n.; principles of his government, 178-180, 359; in Pennsylvania, 181; lays out Philadelphia, 182; on Pennsylvania, 183; treaty with the Indians, 184; influence over the Indians, 186; return to England, 194; grant revoked and restored, 253, 354, 356; plan of union, 256; and James II., 343-345, 347, 351; Macaulay's charges against, 345-347, 353 n.; and the Seven Bishops affair, 351; accused of Jacobite complicity, 352; retirement, 353; and Locke, 353, 354; and William III., 354, 363; widowed and remarried, 356; second visit to Pennsylvania, 356; life in Pennsylvania, 357, 358; return to England, 364; financial difficulties, 368; last years, 369; heirs, 369; heirs indemnified after the Revolution, 12. 84.
- Penn, William (third), character, 8. 367.
- Pennsylvania, charter, 5. 168, 8. 176-178, 432-449; boundaries, 5. 168, 8. 172-174; transported convicts in, 5. 215; Baltimore a port of, 314; German settlers, 372, 8. 406-410; why the Indians were peaceful, 6. 261, 8. 191-194; religious liberty, 115, 178, 361, 362, 12. 89; modern tyranny, 8. 168; Penn's purpose in settling, 171; naming of, 176; principles of Penn's government, 178-180; rapid growth, 180, 194, 382-384; Penn's opinion, 183; treaty with the Indians, 184; land purchases from the Indians, 189; strategic position, 243; temporary royal province, 253, 355, 356; politics, 358-360, 372; second constitution, 361, 362; and colonial defence, 363; Evans's false alarm, 365; Evans's powder money, 367; colonial culture, 370-378; schools, 375; economic conditions, 378; slavery and servitude, 379-381; law and order, 381; philanthropy, 382; distribution centre for non-English population, 385; Scotch-Irish settlers, 413; western claim, 9. 268, 11. 116, 117; attitude of the assembly on Fort Duquesne, 9. 277; troops for campaign of

GENERAL INDEX

- 1759, 343; influences adverse to the Revolution, 10. 135; joins common cause, 137; dispute over independence, 218-220; strife over Wyoming Valley, 11. 105-107, 12. 175-179; early state government, 79; indemnification of the proprietary, 84; gradual emancipation, 87; council of censors, 178; paper money, 202; contest over ratification of the Constitution, 371-378. *See also* Colonies, Philadelphia, and battles by name.
- Pennsylvania-Dutch dialect, 8. 409.
- Penobscot River, Maine, and Norumbega, 7. 81, 87, 89, 91, 9. 52.
- Pensacola, Fla., Spanish besiege, 11. 167, 346.
- Pepperell, William, commands the attack on Louisburg, 9. 251; created a baronet, 256.
- Pequawket Indians, Lovewell's fight, 9. 246-248.
- Pequot Indians, location and supremacy, 1. 52, 6. 147, 148, 7. 172; war, 6. 156-163, 7. 175, 178-180.
- Percy, Lord, at Concord, 10. 146; hesitates to attack Dorchester Heights, 201; at Long Island, 243; sent to occupy Newport, 267.
- Percy, George, on suffering at Jamestown, 4. 114; and Smith, 123; commands in Virginia, 179, 191.
- Perestrelo, Bartholomew, at Porto Santo, 1. 370; governor, 2. 22; Columbus studies his charts, 24.
- Perez, Juan, prior of La Rabida, interest in Columbus's scheme, 2. 92.
- Peru, list of Incas, 3. 100 n.; development of nationality, 122, 138, 166; beginnings, 123; government of conquests, 124, 130, 131; conquests, 125-128; rebellion suppressed, 128; civil war, 129, 212; extent of empire, 129-131; military roads, 131-133; couriers, 133, 134 n.; rope bridges, 135; military colonies, 136; reason for easy conquest by Spanish, 138, 241-243; ruling caste of Incas, 139; power and character of the Inca, 141-145, 151-155; religion, 145-151; Spanish first hear of, 187, 189; Balboa prepares an expedition for, 192-194; Morales's expedition toward, 200: origin of the name, 200; Pizarro's plans, 206; his first attempts, 207-210; Pizarro reaches the coast, 210; landing of the Pizarros, 214; Spanish and Atahualpa at Caxamarca, 215-217; capture and ransom of Atahualpa, 218-220; division of the spoil, 220; execution of Atahualpa, 221-223; first attack on the Spanish, 223; Manco proclaimed Inca by Pizarro, 224; influx of Spanish adventurers, 225; rising against the Spanish, 227-229, 231; Spanish civil war, 229-231; Pizarro's rule, 235; Pizarro assassinated, 235; Castro's rule, 236; New Laws and Gonzalo Pizarro's rebellion, 237; overthrow of Gonzalo Pizarro, 238-240; conquest completed, 240; last Incas, 243-246; pirates on the coast, 5. 420. *See also* Peruvians.
- Peruvians, culture status, 1. 25, 36, 39, 3. 97, 116, 122, 155, 156-158; method of recording, 97-100; age of culture, 101, 103-117; architecture, 102-111, 167-169; domesticated animals, 113; agriculture, 113, 116, 122, 169; tools, 117; hindrances to development, 117, 121; tribes, 123; appearance, 123; consolidation and dominance of Incas, 124; calculation of the year, 147 n.; drink, 148 n.; mum-

GENERAL INDEX

- mies, 151; clan system, 156-161; development of family, 161; industrial organization, 162-167; allotment of land, 163; division of produce, 164, 167; hunts, 170; development of arts, 171; compared with Mexicans and Mayas, 172-176; fear of horses, 217 n.; paralyzed by presence of Spaniards, 219, 220. *See also* Peru.
- Peters, Samuel, his Blue Laws, 6. 166.
- Philadelphia, population in 1776, 5. 246; laid out, 8. 182; growth, 182; in 1700, 357; theatre, 378; population in 1750, 379; Jews in, 392; centrality, 10. 9, 356; action on tea question, 99, 108; Congress meets, 130, 155; panic, 266, 371; strategic value as capital, 356; Howe's advance, 365-372; British occupy, 372; *Mischianza*, 11. 67; British evacuate, 68; loyalists leave, 68; Arnold commands, 69, 248; reception of Washington's army, 334; Federal Convention meets, 12. 263. *See also* Pennsylvania.
- Philesius Vosgesigena. *See* Ringmann.
- Philip II. of Spain, and Las Casas, 3. 308; and the Huguenots, 351.
- Philip, Wampanoag chief. *See* King Philip's War.
- Philippine Islands, Magellan discovers, 2. 442; Magellan's death, 443-445; retained by Spain, 3. 319.
- Philipse, Frederick, and Leisler, 8. 210, 219, 221 n.
- Phillips, William, British general, at capture of Ticonderoga, 10. 315; in Virginia, 11. 313; death, 323.
- Phips, Sir William, governor of Massachusetts, 9. 169, 203; wife accused of witchcraft, 184.
- Phœnicians, voyages on African coast, 1. 342-348.
- Phratry, growth from clan, 1. 72; origin and structure of Indian, 84; analogy to Teutonic hundred, 85; in Mexico City, 121, 123, 3. 59.
- Physicians in Virginia, 5. 303-305.
- Pickens, Andrew, defeats loyalists in South Carolina, 11. 204; partisan commander, 221; at Cowpens, 305.
- Pickering, Timothy, and the British retreat from Lexington, 10. 147.
- Pierre of Dieppe, buccaneer, 5. 408.
- Pigafetta, Chevalier Antonio, journal on Magellan's voyage, 2. 430.
- Pigot, Sir Robert, at Bunker Hill, 1. 165; commands Newport, 2. 91; at Butts Hill, 96.
- Pilgrims, grant near the Delaware, 4. 276, 6. 96, 97; in Holland, 86-89; migration to America, 94-99; land at Cape Cod, 99; found Plymouth, 99; compact, 155 n.; desire to settle in New Netherland, 7. 126-128. *See also* Plymouth, Scrooby congregation.
- Pinckney, C. C., member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270; on slave representation and slave-trade, 306, 311; in the South Carolina ratifying convention, 398.
- Pinckney, Charles, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270.
- Pineda, Alvarez de, discovers the Mississippi, 3. 316.
- Pinzon, Martin Alonzo, and Columbus at La Rábida, 2. 92; in Columbus's first expedition, 104; deserts, 119; overtaken, 122; treacherous attempt to get the credit of the discovery, 126; death, 127.
- Pinzon, Vicente Yañez, in Columbus's first expedition, 2. 104; voyage to Mexican coast, 283-

GENERAL INDEX

- 293, 307-311, 321 n.; voyages to South America, 321, 412; proposed voyage to the La Plata, 409.
- Piracy, Elizabethan sea kings not pirates, 4. 28, 5. 399; ancient, 395; on Mediterranean Sea and Indian Ocean, 396, 12. 188-191; vikings not pirates, 5. 397; attributes, 397-400; cause of great development in seventeenth century, 400-403, 8. 258; development of West Indian buccaneering, 5. 403-409; blackmail, 409; Morgan's career, 409-417; international action against the buccaneers, 413, 417, 421; sack of Panama, 413-415; decline of West Indian, 417; in the South Sea, 418-421; relation of the English colonies to, 421-431, 8. 260-263, 267; Blackbeard's career, 5. 427-429, 431; Bonnet's career, 429-431; Kidd's career, 429, 8. 263-265, 268-274; Madagascar rendezvous, 259.
- Pirua, traditional Peruvian dynasty, 3. 103, 112.
- Pitcairn, John, British major, at Lexington, 10. 144; killed at Bunker Hill, 168.
- Pitt, William (elder), controls war affairs, 9. 315; popularity, 316; policy of destruction of New France, 342; denounces Stamp Act, 10. 30; upholds parliamentary control of colonies, 31; Earl of Chatham, ministry, 32; leader of New Whigs, 49; George III.'s hatred, 49, 11. 16, 26; on state papers of Congress, 10. 131; final attempt to avert war, 131; condemns hiring of German troops, 190; clings to hope of conciliation, 11. 7, 20; England's hope in 1778, 14-17; proposed colonial policy, 17-19; death, 20; greatness, 21-26.
- Pitt, William (younger), on the Revolution, 11. 345; introduces question of parliamentary reform, 12. 7; in Shelburne ministry, 19; ministry, 55; character, 55; free-trade bill, 162.
- Pittsburg, Penn., named, 9. 341; importance, 11. 116; rival claims to, 116. *See also* Fort Duquesne.
- Pizarro, Fernando, accompanies his brother to Peru, 3. 211; character, 211; in Spain, 221; return to Peru, 226; besieged in Cuzco, 228; captured by Almagro, 230; released, 230; executes Almagro, 230; reception in Spain, 231.
- Pizarro, Francisco, in Darien, 3. 181; early years, 199; partnership for expedition to Peru, 206; first attempts, 207-209; on coast of Peru, 210; in Spain, 211; captain-general, 211; brothers, 211; in Peru, 212, 214; considered a god, 215, 220 n., 224; meeting with Atahualpa, 215-217; and Cortes, 217; seizes Atahualpa, 218; receives ransom, 219; executes Atahualpa, 221-223; march to Cuzco, 223; proclaims Manco Inca, 224; founds Lima, 226; created a marquis, 226; extent of his government, 226; assassinated, 235.
- Pizarro, Gonzalo, accompanies his brother to Peru, 3. 212; besieged in Cuzco, 228; captured by Almagro, and escapes, 230; expedition over the Andes, 233-235; successful rebellion, 237; defeat and execution, 238-240; aims at independence, 302 n.
- Pizarro, Juan, goes to Peru with his brother, 3. 212; death, 229.
- Plantation life in Virginia, 5. 256-274.
- Plymouth, Mass., political conditions, 4. 328; named, 6. 93, 99 n.; founded, 99, 7. 128; hardships, 6. 99; reinforcement, 101; relation with Indians, 101-104;

GENERAL INDEX

- acquires title, 105; significance, 105; slow growth, 106; Merry-mount dispersed, 111; trouble with Cape Ann settlement, 112; fort on the Connecticut, 149, 7. 174; tolerant, 6. 186; Gorton banished, 201; Holmes rebuked, 218; annexed to Massachusetts, 344; intercourse with New Netherland, 7. 143; ostracizes a mandamus councillor, 10. 125. *See also* King Philip's War, New England, Pilgrims.
- Plymouth Company, charter, 4. 71-76, 6. 90; members, 4. 79; attempted colony, 83, 6. 92; grant to Pilgrims, 105; new patent, 108. *See also* Council for New England.
- Po, Fernando, Portuguese navigator, crosses the equator, 1. 373.
- Pocahontas, daughter of Powhatan, and Captain John Smith, 4. 121-131, 203; aids the settlers, 131, 162; seized as a hostage, 198; marriage and conversion, 199; visit to England, 202; death, 204; descendants, 204.
- Point Comfort, Va., named, 4. 108.
- Point Pleasant, W. Va., battle, 11. 121.
- Poles in Virginia, 4. 144; franchised, 270.
- Political standards, of colonies and England compared, 10. 18, 84, 98; high, in Massachusetts, 138.
- Politics, beginning of continental, 5. 439; birth of Toryism in Massachusetts, 6. 322, 9. 201; in New York, 8. 250, 305-308; in Pennsylvania, 358; first American parties, 12. 369. *See also* Assemblies.
- Pollock, Thomas, and Sothel, 5. 334; president of North Carolina council, 355.
- Polo, Maffeo, of Venice, at court of Kublai Khan, 1. 323, 324; return to Venice, 325.
- Polo, Marco, son of Nicolò, in China, 1. 324; return to Venice, 325; dictates account of travels, 327; title and importance of book, 328; effect, 329, 331; on Quinsay, 2. 32 n.
- Polo, Nicolò, brother of Maffeo, at court of Kublai Khan, 1. 323, 324; return to Venice, 325.
- Polybius on an encompassing ocean, 1. 341.
- Pomeroy, Benjamin, punished for revivalism, 9. 230.
- Pomeroy, Seth, in Johnson's army, 9. 296; at siege of Boston, 10. 177.
- Ponca Indians, 1. 48.
- Ponce de Leon, Juan, in Columbus's second expedition, 2. 153; governor of Porto Rico, 3. 29; search for fountain of youth, 315; discovers Florida, 316; attempted colony and death, 316.
- Pontgravé (François Gravé, Sieur du Pont), monopoly of the fur-trade, 9. 36, 37; and Champlain in Canada, 41, 60, 62.
- Pontiac, Ottawa chief, at Fort Duquesne, 9. 289.
- Poor whites, origin and distribution, 5. 218-220, 368-371, 373-376, 6. 173.
- Popham, George, in Plymouth Company, 4. 79; attempted colony, 83, 6. 92.
- Popham, Sir John, in Plymouth Company, 4. 71, 6. 92; as a highwayman, 4. 95.
- Population, Iroquois confederacy, 1. 87 n.; Zuñi pueblo, 104; Cholula pueblo, 107; overestimation of Mexican, 121 n.; Greenland, 256; Mexico City, 3. 57; England in 1575, 4. 25; Virginia in 1619, 219; in 1622, 222; in 1670, 5. 7, 27; in 1700 and 1750, 222; Maryland in 1675, 4. 323; colonial in 1715, 5. 196 n.; New York City in

GENERAL INDEX

- 1776, 246; in 1680, 8. 105; Philadelphia in 1776, 5. 246; in 1685, 8. 194; in 1700, 357; Baltimore in 1770, 5. 314; North Carolina in 1760, 384; South Carolina in 1760, 384; Georgia in 1770, 392; Plymouth in 1643, 6. 106; Massachusetts in 1634, 133; in 1643, 211; in 1675, 323; Connecticut in 1637, 154; New England in 1640, 166; New England Confederacy in 1643, 188, 192; Boston in 1675, 323; dense urban, in the mediæval Netherlands, 7. 22; New Netherland in 1653 and 1664, 267; Pennsylvania in 1685, 8. 194; New York in 1735, 301; Pennsylvania cities in 1750, 379; slave, in 1790, 12. 315 n.
- Porter, John, and the test oath in North Carolina, 5. 344; accused of inciting the Tuscaroras, 347.
- Portland, Duke of, nominal prime minister, 12. 52.
- Portland, Maine, burnt by British, 10. 192.
- Port Royal (Annapolis), Acadia, founded, 9. 52; Lescarbot's pageant, 55; early life at, 56; Poutrincourt returns to, 72; Jesuits arrive, 75; burnt by Argall, 79; rebuilt, 79; Aunay controls, 94; French attack, 250. *See also* Acadia.
- Port Royal, S. C., Huguenot colony, 3. 343; Scotchmen settle and Spanish destroy, 5. 336; British attack, 11. 204.
- Porto Rico, discovered, 2. 154.
- Portsmouth, N. H., settled, 6. 146.
- Portsmouth, R. I., settled, 6. 146, 201; incorporated in Rhode Island, 190.
- Portsmouth, Va., sacked by British, 11. 132.
- Portugal, prepared for maritime adventure, 1. 339; exploration of coast of Africa, 371-375, 381; papal grant of heathen countries, 373; effort to locate Prester John, 380; rejects Columbus's plan, 2. 74-76; bull of demarcation, 142-148; treaty of Tordesillas, 148; Gama reaches Hindustan, 191; northwest voyages, 233, 9. 6, 7; claims in North America, 2. 235; colony on Cape Breton Island, 236, 9. 7; establishment of claim to Brazil, 2. 323; Vespuccius serves, 325; controls East Indian trade, 416-418, 7. 55; and Magellan, 2. 426, 429; controversy with Spain over East Indies, 3. 318; effect of Spanish annexation, 395, 7. 57. *See also* Henry the Navigator.
- Posidonius, on an encompassing ocean, 1. 341; on size of earth, 2. 48.
- Post, C. F., Moravian missionary, secures Indian alliance, 9. 341.
- Post, Virginia legislature and the Post-office Act, 5. 435-438; Spotswood postmaster-general, 455; established between New York and Boston, 8. 21-25; conditions in 1783, 12. 73; control under the Articles of Confederation, 115.
- Potato, culture in Peru, 3. 113, 114.
- Potomac River, interstate conference on its improvement, 12. 253.
- Pott, Francis, 4. 346; and Harvey, 4. 346, 347.
- Pott, John, governor of Virginia, character, 4. 295; convicted of several offences, 296; pardoned, 296; and Baltimore, 309; and Harvey, 348.
- Pottawatomie Indians, 1. 51, 9. 100, 105, 114.
- Potts, Richard, on early conditions in Virginia, 4. 113.
- Pouchot, M., defends Fort Niagara, 9. 346; surrenders, 347.
- Poutrincourt, Baron de, in Acadia

GENERAL INDEX

- with Monts, 9. 51; founds Port Royal, 52; on the coast of New England, 54; greeting at Port Royal, 55; returns to Port Royal, 72; and the Jesuits, 75; death, 79.
- Powder money incident in Pennsylvania, 8. 367.
- Powhatan, Indian chief, called an emperor, 1. 111 n., 4. 111; and Smith, 120-130, 132, 153-163; crowned, 133.
- Powhatans, Algonquin Indians, 1. 51; and the Virginia settlers, 4. 110-112, 118-135, 141, 149, 153-166, 198-200; massacres of the settlers, 223, 357; retire before the advancing settlement, 264, 269; present condition, 5. 84.
- Pownall, William, colonial policy, 10. 70, 71, 112.
- Presbyterianism, in England, 6. 78, 214, 215; Melville on, 82; James I.'s hatred, 82-84; New Hampshire settlers, 171; cabal in Massachusetts, 213-215; tendency in Connecticut, 9. 215-218; in Virginia, 12. 96; American organization, 102. *See also* Scotch-Irish.
- Prescott, Richard, British general, commands at Newport, character, 11. 90; captured, 90; exchanged for Lee, 91.
- Prescott, William, commands at Bunker Hill, 10. 162.
- President of Congress under the Articles of Confederation, 12. 114. *See also* Executive.
- Presqu'Isle (Erie), Penn., French blockhouse, 9. 268.
- Press, forbidden in Virginia, 5. 286; censorship in Massachusetts, 6. 338; development in the Netherlands, 7. 19; in colonial Pennsylvania, 8. 375; attempts to abridge freedom, 10. 3; Quebec Act on, 115. *See also* Newspapers, Zenger.
- Prester, John, mythical Christian potentate in the East, 1. 329; Friar Odoric on, 332 n.; believed to be in Africa, 380 n.
- Preston, Thomas, British captain, in Boston Massacre, 10. 78.
- Prevost, Augustine, British general, invades Georgia, 11. 202; barbarity, 203, 205; advance to Charleston, 206; refuses South Carolina's offer of neutrality, 209; retreat, 210.
- Prideaux, John, English general, expedition against Fort Niagara, 9. 345; killed, 346.
- Priesthood, Aztec, 1. 123, 132, 136, 3. 72-74; Peruvian, 150. *See also* Religion.
- Primary assembly, in Maryland, 4. 332; town meeting, 5. 38; Germanic, 6. 29; in Plymouth, 100; attempted in Massachusetts, 128. *See also* Representation.
- Primogeniture, in Virginia, 5. 40; abolished, 12. 83.
- Princeton, N. J., battle, 10. 273.
- Pring, Martin, voyage to New England, 4. 65.
- Printz, John, governor of New Sweden, 7. 279-281.
- Prison ships and Newgate prison, 11. 137 n.
- Privateering, origin, 5. 401; Congress authorizes, 10. 206; in the Revolution, 11. 146, 147.
- Privileges and Exemptions, New Netherland charter, 7. 154-159.
- Probanzas, trial to secure rights of heirs of Columbus, 2. 267-270.
- Property, private, effect on society, 1. 73; common, of Indians, 80, 122; private, of Aztecs, 142; earliest private, in cattle, 3. 119; lack of development of private, in Peru, 124. *See also* Communism.

GENERAL INDEX

- Prostitution, among the Aztecs, **I.** 141; among the Peruvians, **3.** 161.
- Protestantism, true lesson, **3.** 399; influence on English interest in America, **4.** 13; struggle for control in America, **5.** 440; compared with Roman Catholicism, **6.** 44; early heresies, 45; revival, 49; Lollards, 49, 61-66; English Reformation, 51-54, 66; failure in France, 54, 122; Calvin's theology, 67-70; crisis in 1629, 122; debt to Puritans, 183. *See also* Puritans, Religion, and sects by name.
- Providence (Annapolis), Md., Puritans settle, **4.** 366; attempted independence, 367; becomes the capital, **5.** 188.
- Providence, R. I., beginnings, **6.** 141; incorporated in Rhode Island, 190; Gorton in, 202-204.
- Prussia. *See* Frederick the Great.
- Ptolemy, Claudius, map of the world, **I.** 303; on the far East, 321; disbelief in an encompassing ocean, 341, 350; on size of earth, **2.** 48; influence on early cartography of New World, 354, 372, 378, 380, **3.** 327; editions of his work, **2.** 363.
- Pueblo Indians, of same race as other Indians, **I.** 25; culture status, 96-99, 103; social basis, 102; government, 103; Spanish misconceptions, 111; criticism of Spanish accounts, 114-118. *See also* Aztecs, Mayas, Mexicans, and next title.
- Pueblos, origin, **I.** 99; type, 100; description, 104-109; question of existence in Peru, **3.** 157. *See also* Mexico City.
- Pulaski, Count Casimir, volunteers in American cause, **10.** 283; with southern army, **11.** 210; killed at Savannah, 212.
- Punishments. *See* Crimes.
- Puritans, attitude toward education, **4.** 276, **6.** 182-185, **8.** 374; treatment in Virginia, **4.** 353-359; relation with Separatism, 353, **6.** 76, 78, 79, 131; settlement in Maryland, 365-367; governors of Virginia, 368; rule in Maryland, 370-373; compared with the Cavaliers, **5.** 14, 32; later conditions in Maryland, 174, 190, 394; survival in the South, 394, 462; debt of civil liberty to, **6.** 9, 43, 59-61, 83, 308-310; origin, 52, 53, 65; relation with Elizabeth, 53, 70-72; significance of migration, 57; become Calvinists, 71; become powerful, 72; sea rovers, 72; geographical distribution, 73-76, **7.** 44; not advocates of religious liberty, **6.** 77, 175-177; opposed to hierarchy, 78; disagreement on ecclesiastical polity, 78; Melville's exposition, 82; James I.'s hatred, 82-85; motive of emigration, 94; scheme for refuge in America, 113, 114, 123; crisis in England, 118, 122; deny private inspiration, 144, 180, 228; militant spirit, 162, 289, 303; end of migration, 166; results of migration, 166-175; theocracy, 177, 309; ethical impulse, 178; appeal to reason, 179; interpretation of Scriptures, 180; individual opinion and intellectual vigor, 180-182; value of theological discussion, 182; methods destroy their ideals, 183; intellectual correspondence of Scotland and New England, 183; self-consciousness, 304-309; reliance on Old Testament, 305; judged by wrong standard, 307; influence of the Netherlands, **7.** 46. *See also* Congregationalism, Massachusetts, New England, Pilgrims, Religion, Separatists.

GENERAL INDEX

- Putnam, Ann, wife of Thomas, and the Salem witchcraft, 9. 160, 194. *See also* Salem Village.
- Putnam, Ann, daughter of Thomas, and the Salem witchcraft, 9. 160; confession, 186. *See also* Salem Village.
- Putnam, Israel, in Johnson's army, 9. 296; in Abercrombie's army, 320; rescued from the stake, 333; joins the army before Boston, 10. 148; at Bunker Hill, 163; commands Brooklyn Heights, 242; successful retreat from New York City, 251; commands Fort Washington, 253; commands Philadelphia, 266; commands the Hudson Highlands, 304; compelled to evacuate by Clinton, 391.
- Putnam, Rufus, and the Ohio Company, 12. 240.
- Quakers, in Virginia, 5. 66; in Maryland, 161, 178, 192; and the test oath in North Carolina, 344, 356; creed, 6. 227-230, 8. 125-129, 138-147, 161; eccentric actions, 6. 230, 231 n.; aggressiveness, 232, 8. 130; persecution in Massachusetts, 6. 232-242, 251, 8. 131; Roger Williams protects, 6. 234-236; Charles II.'s order concerning, 243; Indian war a punishment for tolerating, 279; persecution in New Netherland, 7. 270-272; buy Berkeley's interest in New Jersey, 8. 19; opposition to slavery, 127, 380; origin of name, 128; confused with other enthusiasts, 129; and Calvinism, 130; Penn's conversion, 133; Penn's services, 135; use of the pronouns, 147-150; settlement in West Jersey, 164; and Catholics in England, 346; attitude toward education, 374, 375; extent of exodus to Pennsylvania, 406; adverse to the Revolution, 10. 136, 218. *See also* Pennsylvania.
- Quarry, Robert, acting governor of Carolina, complicity with pirates, 5. 423.
- Quebec, Canada, founded, 3. 359, 9. 60; meaning of the name, 60; treason in, 61; first winter, 62; early conditions, 88, 90; captured by the English in 1628, 91; restored to France, 92; unsuccessful expedition against, in 1690, 156; situation, 349; position of French army in 1759, 350; problems of attack, 351; Wolfe prepares to get above, 352-355; bombardment, 353; English ascend to Plains of Abraham, 355; battle, 356-358; fall, 359; march of the Americans against, 10. 194-197; unsuccessful assault, 197. *See also* Stadacona.
- Quebec Act, importance to the colonies, 10. 115.
- Quesada, Gaspar, with Magellan, 2. 428, 433, 436.
- Quetzalcoatl, Mexican god, attributes, 3. 20-23; contest with Tezcatlipoca, 24; exile, 25; influence of expected return on reception of Spaniards, 26-29, 41, 42, 78.
- Quevedo, Juan de, bishop of Darien, 3. 191; on Indian mortality under Balboa's rule, 193 n.
- Quichés, Central American Indians, 1. 96. *See also* Mayas.
- Quichuas, Peruvian tribe, 3. 123.
- Quidor, Iroquois name for Schuyler, 2. 249.
- Quincy, Josiah, defends the soldiers, 10. 86.
- Quincy, Mass., first settlements, 6. 110.
- Quinine, introduction, 4. 5.
- Quinsay, China, Toscanelli on, 2. 31; Polo on, 32 n.
- Quintanilla, Alonso de, interest in Columbus, 2. 79, 90, 95, 99.

GENERAL INDEX

- Quipus*, Peruvian method of recording, 3. 97-100, 175.
- Quito, Ecuador, founded, 3. 127; Spanish conquer, 232.
- Quit rent troubles, 5. 226, 336, 8. 18, 179, 360.
- Quitus, Peruvian tribe, 3. 127.
- Race, different meanings of term, 1. 26; and culture, 28; evolution, 28 n.
- Radisson, Pierre d'Esprit, Sieur, explorations, 9. 101.
- Rahl, J. G., Hessian colonel, at Trenton, 10. 264, 270; killed, 270.
- Railroads, influence on the Union, 12. 71.
- Rale, Sebastian, Jesuit missionary, at Norridgewock, 9. 235-239, 241; killed, 244; character, 244.
- Raleigh, Sir Walter, voyage with Gilbert, 4. 33; and Elizabeth, 34, 62; patent, 35, 36; attempted colony, 36-39, 41, 41-46, 64; battle of Cadiz, 44, 46; seeks to interest Elizabeth in colonization, 51, 58; financial difficulties, 61; first expedition to Guiana, 63; literary companions, 63; imprisoned, 64, 232; second expedition to Guiana, 233-235; executed, 235.
- Randolph, Edmund, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271; presents the Virginia plan, 276; on fundamental needs of the federal government, 279; refuses to sign the Constitution, 314, 363; supports it in Virginia convention, 403.
- Randolph, Edward, sent to Massachusetts, 6. 320; character, 320; intrigues against Massachusetts, 321-323, 328.
- Randolph, Peyton, president of Congress, 10. 130.
- Ratcliffe, John, Virginia councillor, 4. 108; president, 117; deposed, 132, 150; complains in England, 138, 146; arrested in Virginia, 178; killed by Indians, 179.
- Ratification of the Constitution, Congress submits the draft to the States, 12. 368; calling of the Pennsylvania convention, 372-374; pamphlet war, 374; objections in Pennsylvania, 376; lack of a bill of rights an objection, 376, 394; Pennsylvania ratifies, 377; Delaware ratifies, 377; New Jersey ratifies, 377; rejoicing and violence, 378, 406, 412; Georgia ratifies, 378; Connecticut ratifies, 379; conditions in Massachusetts, 379-382; composition of Massachusetts convention, 382; debates in Massachusetts convention, 383-391; Boston mass meeting, 392; charges of corruption, 393; Massachusetts ratifies and suggests amendments, 395-397; New Hampshire postpones action, 397; Maryland ratifies, 397; contest in South Carolina, 397-400; importance of South Carolina's ratification, 400; conditions in Virginia, 401-403; debates in Virginia convention, 403; Virginia ratifies, 404; New Hampshire ratifies, 405; necessity of New York's ratification, 407; New York convention, 408, 411; *Federalist*, 409-411; New York ratifies, 412; New York proposes another framing convention, 413; tardiness of Rhode Island and North Carolina, 413.
- Rawdon, Lord Francis, British general, in the South, 11. 213, 215; at Camden, 227, 231, 314; defeats Greene at Hobkirk's Hill, 317; retreats, 317; at Ninety-Six, 318; goes to England, 319.
- Raynal, Abbé, depreciates discovery of America, 4. 2.
- Recollets arrive in Canada, 9. 86.

GENERAL INDEX

- Recreations, sports in Virginia, 5. 276-281; music in Virginia, 281; colonial theatres, 282, 387, 8. 378; in North Carolina, 5. 368; in South Carolina, 387; in New York, 8. 330, 331.
- Reed, Joseph, and Howe's negotiations, 10. 237; charges against Arnold, 11. 253; and the mutinous troops, 290, 291.
- Reformation. *See* Protestantism.
- Regicides in New England, 6. 245-247, 275-277, 321.
- Regulating Act for government of Massachusetts, 10. 113; defied, 124, 138; Suffolk County Resolves on, 128; repealed, 11. 8; made Revolution inevitable, 351.
- Regulators' War in North Carolina, 10. 89.
- Religion, Indian, 1. 61; Aztec, 123, 136, 3. 20-27, 65-68, 72-74; primitive union of church and state, 1. 127, 3. 72-74, 144, 154, 164, 8. 116-119; human sacrifice, 1. 136-138, 3. 33, 34, 66-68, 98, 148-150, 157; conversion of the Northmen, 1. 187; Kublai Khan's desire for Christian missionaries frustrated, 324; conquest and conversion, 365, 2. 150, 443, 3. 88, 291, 306-308; vicarious sacrifice, 80 n.; Peruvian, 144-154; persecution in Europe, 392-394, 396-404, 4. 9, 6. 46-50, 54, 55, 61, 67, 80, 81, 86, 7. 49, 8. 387, 398-401; toleration and freedom in America, 4. 313, 319, 362-365, 5. 192, 320, 341, 356, 6. 139, 186, 189, 224, 234, 7. 152, 8. 3, 15, 115, 178, 361, 362, 12. 89, 91-93, 96, 242; intolerance and persecution in America, 4. 354-357, 365, 371, 5. 188, 192-194, 197, 341, 343, 6. 125, 131, 140, 145, 210, 218-224, 226, 232, 236-242, 7. 267-275, 8. 247, 337, 349, 421, 12. 89-91; established church in America, 5. 188, 190, 305, 343, 377, 6. 132, 12. 89, 92; debt to Roman Empire, 6. 15; ignored in Massachusetts' charter, 117; theocracy in New England, 132, 165, 177, 187, 191, 216, 309-312, 9. 202; differences promote settlement of New England, 6. 147, 150, 186, 187, 8. 120; political bearing of intolerance, 6. 189, 196, 279; Stuart policy of toleration, 336, 8. 349-351; conversion of the Frisians, 7. 9; and commercialism, 47; disassociation of tolerance and devoutness, 8. 116; vitality of persecution, 121; Christianity and individuality, 122-125; effect of rigid organization, 9. 213; condition in early years of eighteenth century, 220-222; Edwards on conversion, 224; revivals, 225; silence of the Constitution on, debated in Massachusetts convention, 12. 385. *See also* Indians (missions), Protestantism, Puritans, and sects by name.
- Rensselaer, Kilian van, patroonship, 7. 161; death, 245. *See also* Rensselaerwyck.
- Rensselaer, Nicholas van, heresy charges, 8. 104.
- Rensselaerwyck, established, 7. 161; prosperity, 240; independence and usurpations, 242-249; obedience forced, 249.
- Repatriamientos, origin, 2. 173, 3. 255; reversion of encomiendas to, 303; abolished, 303.
- Representation, establishment in Virginia, 4. 219-221; in Maryland, 332-334, 5. 176, 177; and taxation, 125, 6. 37, 127, 10. 19; in Georgia, 5. 392; unknown in Rome, 6. 18; importance in English political methods, 24; and federalism, 25, 26; Germanic origin, 26, 29; essential to stability, 26-28, 37; fallacy of

GENERAL INDEX

- small republics, 27, 12. 69; development in England, 6. 29-36; in America, 30, 33; disuse on the continent, 39; established in Massachusetts, 127-129; first selectmen, 152; popular boards in New Netherland, 7. 209-211, 219, 221, 238-240; petitioned for in New Netherland, 225; popular conventions in New Netherland, 310-313, 328; in New Jersey, 8. 14, 167; demanded in New York, 26, 49-51, 197; in New York, 198, 231, 246; in Pennsylvania, 361; right to, in New Hampshire, 10. 3; of colonies in Parliament, 40, 55; parliamentary, in 1767, 37, 47; under Articles of Confederation, 12. 112. *See also* Legislature, Suffrage.
- Requisitions, colonies offer to England, 10. 20; on the states, 11. 238, 240, 12. 116; failure, 124.
- Revere, Paul, engraving on Boston Massacre, 10. 86; carries news of Boston Tea Party, 107; carries warning of approach of British troops, 142.
- Revolution, American, foreshadowed, 5. 199, 439, 446, 447, 6. 346; opening scene, 10. 15; influence on British politics, 51, 11. 349; dark days, 10. 266, 11. 30, 236, 246; British plans for 1777, 10. 305-314; four periods, 11. 1-5; Germain's policy from 1778, 28; in the North, 1778-1781, 88, 98, 131, 198; cardinal events on the frontier, 130; becomes a phase in a world contest, 160; evils of political chaos, 237; war of principles, 350, 355; conservatism, 350, 12. 75, 104; necessary to union, 11. 354; cessation of hostilities, 12. 59; reason for languid conduct, 123; trade aspect, 161; economic distress, 193; cost, 198. *See also* Army, Colonies, Conciliation, Continental Congress, England, George III., Independence, Parliament, Peace of 1783, and battles, generals, and states by name.
- Revolution of 1689, effect in Maryland, 5. 185-188; in England, 6. 339; effect in Massachusetts, 340-342. *See also* Leisler.
- Rhett, William, drives the French from before Charleston, 5. 343; captures Bonnet, 430.
- Rhode Island, beginnings, 6. 141, 146, 201; toleration, 186; disliked, 188; political effect of toleration, 189; refused admission to New England Confederacy, 190; parliamentary charter, 190; trouble with Gorton, 201-205; upholds religious liberty and Quakers, 234-236; royal charter, 249; charter rescinded, 335; rescission void, 342; letters of marque against the Dutch, 7. 307; deprives Catholics of the franchise, 8. 115, 12. 89 n.; share in Louisburg expedition, 9. 251; troops for campaign of 1759, 343; Gaspee episode, 10. 90-92; instructions on independence, 213; old charter its first state government, 213; adopts gradual emancipation and negro suffrage, 12. 88; franchises Catholics, 91; commercial and financial distress, 204; paper-money troubles, 206-210; sympathy with Shays's Rebellion, 218; not represented in the Federal Convention, 263; tardy ratification of the Constitution, 413. *See also* Colonies, New England, Newport.
- Ribaut, Jean, leads Huguenot colony in Florida, 3. 342; arrives with reinforcements, 346; plan to attack Spaniards foiled by storm, 347; surrender and massacre, 348-350.
- Ricahecrian Indians, 5. 85 n.

GENERAL INDEX

- Rice, cultivation in North Carolina, 5. 366; in South Carolina, 380-382; export of, and the pirates, 424.
- Richmond, Duke of, denounces coercion of Massachusetts, 10. 118; condemns hiring of German troops, 190; moves for peace, 11. 19, 20; in Rockingham ministry, 348, 12. 6; approves of the Revolution, 2; in Shelburne ministry, 19.
- Richmond, Va., population in 1790, 5. 245; site selected, 300.
- Ridgefield, Conn., battle, 10. 304.
- Riedesel, Baron von, commands Brunswick troops in British army, 10. 189; in Burgoyne's campaign, 314; at Hubbardton, 316.
- Riedesel, Baroness von, on hardships at Saratoga, 10. 390; on Schuyler's kindness, 395-397.
- Ringmann, Matthias, called Philseus Vogesigena, edition of *Mundus Novus*, 2. 343; at Saint Dié, 362; plan for a Ptolemy, 363; death, 370.
- Ringrose, Basil, buccaneer, 5. 418.
- Rio de Janeiro, named, 2. 330.
- Rios, Pedro de los, governor of Darien, and Pizarro, 3. 208-210.
- Rittenhouse, David, astronomer, 2. 376.
- River-drift men in Europe, 1. 15, 19.
- Rivers, influence on Virginia society, 4. 263, 5. 239.
- Roads, Aztec, 1. 134; Peruvian, 3. 131-133. *See also* Travel.
- Roanoke Island, N. C., Raleigh's colony, 4. 41, 44-46.
- Robertson, James, pioneer in Tennessee, 11. 124; defeats Cherokees, 124, 125; founds Nashville, 129.
- Roberval, Jean François, Sieur de, his New World titles, 9. 22, 28; arrives in Canada, 24; to found a colony, 29; and his niece, 30; failure of the colony, 31; death, 32.
- Robinson, John, organizes Scrooby congregation, 6. 85; character and influence, 85; in Holland, 87, 88; stays there, 98.
- Robinson, John, commissioner of customs, assaults Otis, 10. 76.
- Robinson, William, Quaker, executed, 6. 238.
- Rochambeau, Count de, lands with French troops, 11. 245; conference with Washington, 328; joins Washington's army, 332; picture at Versailles, 342; departs for France, 12. 60.
- Roche, Marquis de la, voyage to Canada, 9. 35.
- Rockingham, Marquis of, prime minister, 10. 29, 11. 348, 12. 6; leads Old Whigs, 10. 48; protests coercion of Massachusetts, 118; favours independence, 11. 7; denounces war of desolation, 28; and the king, 12. 4, 6; measures, 7; opposes parliamentary reform, 7; death, 18.
- Rocky Mount, S. C., battle, 11. 223.
- Rocky Mountains, discovery, 3. 374.
- Rodney, Sir George, character, 11. 168; at Cape St. Vincent, 169; provisions Gibraltar, 169; in West Indies, 169; captures St. Eustatius, 194; defeats Grasse, 346, 12. 16.
- Roldan, chief justice in Hispaniola, revolts, 2. 189; death, 202.
- Rolfe, John, marries Pocahontas, 4. 199; first to cultivate tobacco, 208.
- Roman Catholicism, power increased by Crusades, 1. 314; papal temporal power and the Donation of Constantine, 2. 143 n.-147 n.; Maryland an asylum for, 4. 316; first mass in English America, 321; deprived of franchise by Puritans in Maryland, 370; ruling power

GENERAL INDEX

- in Maryland, 5. 174; general fear of, in the colonies, 185, 8. 210-214; Maryland laws against, 5. 188, 192-194; continued influence in Maryland, 196, 313; private worship allowed, 197; under the restored palatinate, 197-199; scheme for colony in Mississippi valley, 198; number in Maryland, 313; relation to the struggle for control in America, 440; significance of date, 476, 6. 3; preserves the imperial idea, 20-22; apogee, 22; political decline, 40; compared with Protestantism, 44; other colonial measures against, 8. 247, 337, 349, 421, 12. 89 n., 90; and Quakers in England, 8. 343; first church in New England, 12. 103; strength in America in 1784, 103; first American bishop, 104. *See also* Protestantism, and popes by name.
- Roman Empire, date of end, 6. 1-6, 57; importance of imperial idea, 2, 5, 6, 21, 40; considered indestructible, 3; reunited, 4; redivided, 4. *See also* Holy Roman Empire, Nation-making.
- Rotch, Francis, and the tea ships, 10. 101-107.
- Roundheads. *See* Puritans.
- Rousby, Christopher, revenue collector in Maryland, and Talbot, 5. 183.
- Rowe, John, suggests destruction of the tea, 10. 106.
- Rowlandson, Mary, narrative of Indian captivity, 6. 291-294.
- Royal Americans in Forbes's army, 9. 337.
- Royal commissioners of Charles II., capture New Amsterdam, 6. 249, 7. 330, 332-338; baffled by Massachusetts, 6. 249, 318, 7. 331, 8. 8-11.
- Rubruquis, Willem de, Franciscan monk, mission to Great Khan, 1. 320; increases geographical knowledge, 321.
- Ruiz, Bartholomew, in Pizarro's second expedition, 3. 207; remains at Gallo Island, 209 n.
- Ruiz, Sancho, in Columbus's first expedition, 2. 103.
- Rush, Benjamin, anonymous letter on Washington, 11. 44.
- Russell, John, gentleman pioneer in Virginia, 4. 142.
- Rut, John, English navigator, voyage, 2. 231, 237 n.
- Rutgers v. Waddington, 12. 147, 150-153.
- Rutherford, Griffith, defeats Cherokees, 11. 124.
- Rutledge, John, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270.
- Sable Island, attempted colony, 9. 6.
- Sachem, civil Indian executive, of clan, 1. 82, 83; in Iroquois confederacy, 89; among pueblo Indians, 103; of Aztec clan, 122; Aztec tribal, 125. *See also* Chief.
- Sacs, Algonquin Indians, 1. 51.
- Sacsahuaman hill, near Cuzco, Peru, fortress, 3. 104-111, 168.
- Saga of Vinland, versions, 1. 229-234, 239 n.; corroborated by other Icelandic documents, 234-244; a history, 245-247.
- Sagas, classification, 1. 224, 227-229.
- Saguenay River, Canada, Roberval explores, 9. 31.
- St. Augustine, Florida, founded, 3. 346; American expedition against, 11. 202. *See also* Florida.
- St. Brandan, mythical island, on Toscanelli map, 2. 50 n.; on Lok map, 3. 356.
- St. Clair, Arthur, evacuates Ticonderoga, 10. 315; responsibility, 318; governor of Northwest Territory, 12. 244.
- Saint-Dié, France, college and town, 2. 360; scholars at, 361.

GENERAL INDEX

- St. Eustatius, Dutch West Indian island, importance, **II.** 187; captured by British, 194; recaptured, 346.
- St. John's, Canada, captured by Americans, **IO.** 154, 194; recaptured, 154.
- St. Lawrence Gulf and River, Cartier in, **3.** 325, **9.** 14; on Dee map, **3.** 358; Aubert's alleged voyage, **7.** 68, **9.** 4; naming of, **7.** 68, 69; impressiveness, **9.** 15; notion of union with the Hudson, 27.
- St. Leger, Barry, part assigned in Burgoyne's campaign, **IO.** 307; army, 334; besieges Fort Stanwix, 335; effect of Oriskany, 343; flight, 346.
- St. Louis on the Illinois River, founded, **9.** 131.
- St. Luson, Sieur de, takes possession of the Northwest for France, **9.** 107-109.
- St. Mary's, Md., founded, **4.** 321; captured by Ingle, 360; capital taken from, **5.** 188; decay, 189. *See also* Maryland.
- Saint-Pierre, Legardeur de, expedition to Ohio valley, **9.** 269; with Dieskau, 298; killed, 299.
- Saint-Simon, Marquis de, joins Lafayette before Yorktown, **II.** 336.
- Salaries, colonial controversies over, **5.** 321, **8.** 279, **IO.** 4, 15, 92, 93, 97.
- Salem, Mass., settled, **6.** 112; named, 116; Episcopal service prevented, 131; Roger Williams at, 139-141; seat of government, **IO.** 113. *See also* Salem Village.
- Salem, N. J., founded, **8.** 163.
- Salem Village (Danvers), Mass., Cotton Mather's connection with the witchcraft delusion, **9.** 150-152, 155, 170-173, 186, 197; bibliography of the witchcraft, 151 n.; situation, 157; church troubles, 157-159; beginnings of the witchcraft troubles, 159-161; persons accused, 161-169, 184; malice as an element in the accusations, 165, 167-169, 180-191, 195; special court, 169; recommendations of the ministers, 170-172; convictions on spectral evidence, 173; trials, 174-180; executions, 179, 180, 186; protestations of innocence, 180-183; reaction, 183-185; special court abolished, 186; confessions of miscarriage of justice, 188; explanation of the delusion, 189-195; historical importance of the troubles, 195; reaction on the clergy, 197. *See also* Witchcraft.
- Salisbury, Earl of. *See* Cecil.
- Salomon, Haym, financial aid during the Revolution, **8.** 392.
- Saltonstall, Sir Richard, on religious persecution, **6.** 224.
- "Sam Adams regiments," **IO.** 82.
- Samoset, Indian, friendly with Pilgrims, **6.** 102.
- San Domingo, Hayti Island, founded, **2.** 176.
- San Juan de Ulloa, Mexico, Grijalva at, **3.** 35; Cortes at, 37; Hawkins's fight, **4.** 22-24.
- San Salvador Island, Columbus's landfall, **2.** 115; identity, 115.
- Sanchez, Gabriel (Raphael), Columbus's letter to, published, **2.** 135.
- Sanctuary, Aztec right, **I.** 140 n.
- Sandys, Sir Edwin, member of the London Company, career, **4.** 81; leader in party opposed to king's pretensions, 216, 236; treasurer, 217; bestows representation on Virginia, 219, 221; election opposed by the king, 237; withdraws, 238; prepares answer to charges against the company, 252; assists Pilgrims, 276, **6.** 96; in-

GENERAL INDEX

- terest in education in Virginia, 4. 276.
- Sandys, George, in Virginia, 4. 273; on Pott, 295.
- Santangel, Luis de, interest in Columbus, 2. 95, 99; Columbus's letter to, 128.
- Santarem, João de, Portuguese navigator, crosses equator, 2. 375.
- Saracen Empire, barrier between Europe and Asia, 1. 310.
- Saratoga, N. Y., Burgoyne retreats to, 9. 389; surrender at, 394, 395. *See also* Burgoyne.
- Sargasso Sea, Columbus in, 2. 107; situation, 107 n.-109 n.; and Atlantis, 108 n.
- Sargent, Winthrop, and the Ohio Company, 12. 241.
- Sataspes, voyage on west coast of Africa, 1. 347.
- Savagery and barbarism, 1. 29-31; three periods, 31, 32; unknown to mediæval Europeans, 213, 375 n., 377 n.; history of the word, 376 n.; knowledge of the ancients concerning, 377 n.
- Savannah, Ga., surrender to British, 11. 202; French-American attack, 211.
- Say-and-Sele, Lord, grant in Connecticut, 6. 150, 7. 176.
- Saybrook, Conn., fort built, 6. 150, 7. 177.
- Saybrook Platform, 9. 215-218.
- Sayle, William, first governor in South Carolina, 5. 324.
- Sayri Tupac, Inca, pensioner of Spain, 3. 245.
- Schaats, Gideon, minister at Albany, 8. 100.
- Schenectady, N. Y., settled, 8. 63; meaning of the name, 64 n.; massacre, 224-227.
- Schöner, Johann, America on his globes, 2. 380; confuses facts on Vespucci, 387; southern strait on his globes, 425; identifies North America with Asia, 451.
- Schools. *See* Education.
- Schout, duties of the office in the New Netherland government, 7. 152.
- Schuyler, Peter, and the Iroquois, 8. 66, 248, 9. 103, 263; defeats Frontenac, 8. 250; takes Iroquois chiefs to England, 282; manor, 311-317; protest against Leisler, 420.
- Schuyler, Philip, commands northern department, 10. 178, 194; character, 297; hated by his New England army, 297, 344; Gates's intrigue against, 300, 301; blame for failure of invasion of Canada, 300; blame for loss of Ticonderoga, 318, 319; evacuates Fort Edward, 320; removed from command, 347; house burnt by British, 389; magnanimity, 395-397; friendship for Arnold, 11. 260.
- Scotch loyalists, in North Carolina, 10. 207; on the frontier, 11. 104; in South Carolina, 200.
- Scotch-Irish, in North Carolina, 5. 373; influence on American progress, 456, 460, 462, 463, 8. 414; origin, 5. 457-459, 8. 411; reasons for migrating, 5. 459, 8. 412; frontier settlements, 5. 460-462, 8. 413, 9. 259; prominent descendants, 5. 460, 461; objectionable name, 8. 410; religious toleration, 413, 12. 96; union with the Palatines, 8. 414; Whigs, 11. 200.
- Scotland, power of the church, 6. 82; compared with New England, 183-185; witchcraft trials, 9. 142, 143.
- Scott, John, adventurer, 7. 326; president of league of Long Island towns, 328; arrested, 329.
- Scrooby congregation, gathered, 6. 85; escape to Holland, 86. *See also* Pilgrims.
- Sea kings, English, of Elizabeth's

GENERAL INDEX

- time, influence on America, 4. 12; policy of development, 26-28, 5. 400; not buccaneers, 4. 28, 5. 399; Drake's achievements, 4. 29-33, 38-41; defeat of the Armada, 41-44; final blow to Spain's naval power, 44; Puritans, 6. 72.
- Seabury, Samuel, ordained as bishop, 12. 100.
- Seal of Virginia, 5. 25-27.
- Sedgwick, Robert, Massachusetts major, conquers Acadia, 9. 96.
- Seminole Indians, 1. 50.
- Senate, state, origin and early character, 12. 77, 79, 80. *See also* Legislature.
- Seneca, prophecy of discovery of America, 2. 43.
- Senecas, Iroquois Indians, 1. 54, 9. 45; segregated from the Onondagas, 47. *See also* Iroquois.
- Separatists, polity, 6. 78; organized, 79; opposed, 79; persecuted, 80; effect of James I.'s threat, 85; Massachusetts settlers become, 131. *See also* Pilgrims, Scrooby congregation.
- Sepulveda, Juan de, controversy with Las Casas, 3. 306-308.
- Serapis, British ship, equipment, 11. 153; battle with Bon Homme Richard, 154-159.
- Servants, white indentured, demand for, in Virginia, 5. 205; convicts and kidnapped children sent to America, 205; term of service and treatment, 206; notion that Virginians are descended from convicts, 207-210; redemptioners, 211; character, number, and distribution of transported convicts, 211-214; protests against transportation of convicts, 213, 220; transported political offenders, 214; career of white freedmen and their descendants, 216-220, 369-371, 373-376; taxation, 226; as tutors, 289; in New England, 6. 172; attempt to introduce by patroons, 7. 197; in New York, 8. 333; Dunmore attempts to enlist, 10. 210. *See also* Slavery.
- Setebos, Patagonian deity, 2. 437.
- Seven Years' War, early grounds, 6. 343; beginning, 9. 301. *See also* French and Indian War.
- Severn River, Md., battle in 1655, 4. 371.
- Sevier, John, defeats Cherokees, 11. 124; at King's Mountain, 295, 297; governor of the state of Franklin, 12. 237; governor of Tennessee, 239.
- Sewall, Samuel, judge of Salem witches, 9. 170; public acknowledgment of error, 188.
- Seymour, Sir Edward, on Virginia's desire for a college, 5. 136.
- Seymour, John, governor of Maryland, reprimands Catholic priests, 5. 192.
- Shaftesbury, Earl of. *See* Cooper.
- Sharpe, Horatio, governor of Maryland, 5. 200; advises tax on colonies, 10. 14.
- Sharpless, Edward, clerk of House of Burgesses punished, 4. 287.
- Shattuck, Job, leader in Shays's Rebellion, 12. 213; captured, 214.
- Shawnee Indians in Ohio valley, 1. 51, 9. 263; mound-builders, 1. 166, 168; English allies, 9. 357.
- Shawomet, R. I., Gorton's settlement, 6. 204; expedition against, 210; new settlement, 212.
- Shays, Daniel, at Springfield, 12. 214, 215; retreat and capture, 215-217.
- Shays's Rebellion, causes, 12. 210-213; outbreak, 213-215; suppression, 215-217; pardon of insurgents, 218; attitude of Congress, 219, 220.
- Sheffield, Lord, pamphlet on American trade, 12. 190.
- Shelburne, Earl of, colonial policy,

GENERAL INDEX

10. 31, 11. 26; in Grafton ministry, 10. 33; in Rockingham ministry, 11. 348, 12. 6; character, 5; and Fox, 6, 9, 13, 16-18; favours parliamentary reform, 7; begins informal peace negotiations, 10; on Franklin's peace suggestions, 12-14, 17; ministry, 19; his negotiations denounced, 50; resigns, 51; justified, 53.
- Shelby, Isaac, pioneer, defeats Indians, 10. 129; at King's Mountain, 295, 296.
- Shenandoah Valley, Va., Spotswood's expedition to, 5. 450; settlement, 461.
- Sheriffs, duties and appointment in Maryland, 4. 330, 5. 178; and in Virginia, 47, 82.
- Sherman, Roger, on committee to draft Declaration of Independence, 10. 227; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271; suggests compromise on representation in Congress, 297; pregnant suggestions on the executive, 329.
- Sherwood, William, career, 5. 119 n.
- Ship-building, in New Netherland, 7. 163; cost in New England, 12. 163.
- Shippen, Margaret, betrothed to Arnold, 11. 250; marriage, 255; ignorant of Arnold's treason, 256; devotion, 284.
- Ships, viking, 1. 198-201; clumsiness of caravels, 359.
- Shirley, William, governor of Massachusetts, project to attack Louisburg, 9. 250; and his assembly, 278, 294; suggests a stamp tax and consolidation, 281, 10. 13, 18; part in the first campaign of French and Indian War, 9. 294; failure of expedition against Fort Niagara, 300; superseded as commander-in-chief, 306.
- Shoshones, Indian group, 1. 47.
- Shute, Samuel, governor of Massachusetts, conference with the Maine Indians, 9. 239; conflict with the assembly, 242; sails suddenly for England, 242.
- Silk, attempted culture in Virginia, 4. 271, 5. 3.
- Sinclair, Henry, Earl of Orkneys, and Nicolò Zeno, 1. 264; voyage of discovery, 265; the Zichmni of Zeno narrative, 274.
- Sioux Indians, 1. 48, 5. 349.
- Six Nations. *See* Iroquois.
- Slavery, in Mexican tribes, 1. 139; beginning of modern, 372, 3. 247, 249-251; religious motive, 1. 372, 3. 250, 4. 18; ancient, 3. 247-249, 6. 11, 16; influence of discovery of America, 3. 253.
- Indian: Vespucci enslaves Bermuda natives, 2. 280; opposition to the New Laws in Peru, 3. 237, 238; beginnings, 253-255; origin of repartimientos, 255; royal Spanish orders for forced labour and conversion, 264; encomiendas, 265; effect of the discovery of gold, 266; horrors, 267-269; Dominicans denounce, 270-272; Las Casas begins his labours against, 274-276; Ximenes's attitude, 277; first attempted reforms, 277; Las Casas renews attempt to abolish, 289; pope forbids further enslavement, 301; New Laws, 301; gradual and final abolition, 302, 308; policy of abolition, 302 n.; kidnapping in South Carolina, 5. 338, 341; New England Indians sold, 6. 299.
- Negro: conditions of early, in Europe, 3. 251, 252 n.; Las Casas and its introduction in America, 278-284; early English slave trade, 4. 18, 19; negroes considered not human, 18, 5. 223; introduction in Virginia, 4. 221;

GENERAL INDEX

- number of Virginia slaves in 1649, 5. 2; and in 1670, 7; and in 1750, 222; effect on Maryland manors, 172; English monopoly of slave trade, 221; anti-slavery sentiment in Virginia, 222, 234, 12. 85; its decay, 5. 223, 12. 86; question of baptism, 5. 225; property in slaves, 225; taxation in Virginia, 226; treatment of slaves in Virginia, 226-228, 10. 210; fear of insurrections, 5. 228; Virginia laws, 229-232; in England, 232-234; immorality, 235-237; plantation negro quarters, 256; treatment in North Carolina, 367; characteristics in South Carolina, 381-387, 11. 200, 203; number in North and South Carolina in 1760, 5. 384; insurrection in South Carolina, 385; in Georgia, 392, 393; in New England, 6. 172; Quaker condemnation, 8. 127, 380; in colonial New York, 334-336; negro plot of 1712, 336; and of 1741, 336-342; in colonial Pennsylvania, 380; Dunmore attempts to enlist slaves, 10. 210; plan to arm slaves, 11. 206; English opinion before 1800, 12. 84; and the Declaration of Independence, 85; conditions in 1776, 85; effect of cotton, 86, 316; early state laws against slave trade, 87; measures for gradual emancipation, 87; immediate emancipation in Massachusetts, 88; Jefferson's policy of restricting, 232, 234-236; forbidden in Northwest Territory, 235, 243; beginning of national questions, 304; compromise in the Constitution on slave representation, 305-309; effect of the compromise, 309-311; compromise on slave trade, 311-313; believed moribund in 1787, 314. *See also* Servants.
- Slechtenhorst, Brandt van, governs Rensselaerwyck, 7. 246; insubordination, 247-249.
- Sloughter, Henry, governor of New York, 8. 230; arrival, 236; and Leisler, 236-239, 424; death, 247.
- Sluyter, Peter, in Maryland, 5. 165; in New York, 8. 71, 85-101.
- Smallwood, William, American general, at Long Island, 10. 244; at Germantown, 375, 376.
- Smith, Adam, on colonial representation in Parliament, 10. 40; on colonial trade, 11. 6.
- Smith, Francis, British colonel, at Concord, 10. 142.
- Smith, Captain John, genius for adventures, 4. 94; early life, 96; on the Mediterranean, 97; adventures with Turks, 98-103; character, 103, 106; enslaved, 103-105; escape, 105; goes to Virginia, 106; accused of plotting mutiny, 107; councillor, 108; explores the James, 110; acquitted, 112; quarrel with Wingfield, 115-117; capture and rescue by Pocahontas, 118-131; president of the colony, 132; map of Virginia, 138; as leader of the colony, 142, 167, 171; answer to company's complaints, 147-151; coerces the Indians and obtains supplies, 154-166; wounded and returns to England, 178; service to Virginia, 185, 187; coasts and names New England, 203, 6. 93, 7. 131; and Pocahontas in England, 4. 203; later life, 272, 6. 94; disparages New England, 94; influence on Hudson, 7. 101.
- Smith, Jonathan, speech in Massachusetts ratifying convention, 12. 388-391.
- Smith, Joshua, connection with Arnold's treason, 11. 262, 265, 266.

GENERAL INDEX

- Smith, Melancton, opposes the Constitution, 12. 408; converted, 412.
- Smith, Sir Thomas, treasurer of London Company, 4. 78, 211, 216; quarrel with Warwick, 217; displaced by Sandys, 217; heads opposition, 242.
- Smith, Thomas, Claiborne's lieutenant, 4. 343; hanged, 352.
- Smith, William, lawyer, Zenger's counsel, 8. 291; disbarred, 292.
- Smith, William, historian, on New York education, 8. 332; *History of New York*, 332.
- Smuggling, in Spanish colonies, 4. 404; thrives under trade restrictions, 12. 160. *See also* Navigation Acts.
- Smyth, J. F., libel on planter's life, 5. 268-270.
- Snorro Sturleson, wealth, 1. 178 n.; *Heimskringla*, 179.
- Snorro, son of Thorfinn, born in Vinland, 1. 193.
- Social conditions, in England under Elizabeth, 4. 53-57; early Virginia laws, 289-294; Puritans and Cavaliers compared, 5. 11-15; no class distinctions in England, 15-18; reasons for difference between New England and Virginia, 34; in New England 37, 6. 171-174, 8. 308; in Virginia, 5. 202-312; Virginia classes, 237; in Maryland, 312; in North Carolina, 326, 361, 363-373, 388; in South Carolina, 361, 376-389; in Georgia, 392; in the mediæval Netherlands, 7. 23; in New Netherland, 189-191, 196, 267, 303; in New York, 8. 53, 73-106, 308-342; in Pennsylvania, 357, 375-383. *See also* Poor whites, Servants, Slavery.
- Socialism in Peru, 3. 165.
- Society, change in idea of primitive, 1. 64 n.; change from gentile to political basis, 112-114. *See also* Clan, Culture, Government.
- Solis, Juan Diaz de, pilot major, 2. 250, 412; voyage to Mexican coast, 283-293; voyage to South America, 412; last voyage and death, 412.
- Somers, Sir George, in the London Company, 4. 77; voyage to Virginia, 174-177, 181; death, 190.
- Sons of Liberty, object, 10. 27.
- Sosa, Lope de, to supersede Pedrarias, 3. 201; death, 202.
- Sothel, Seth, governor of North Carolina, 5. 333; banished, 334; in Charleston, 337; death, 338.
- Soto, Fernando de, with Córdova in Central America, 3. 205; with Pizarro in Peru, 214, 216; denounces execution of Atahualpa, 222; governor of Cuba, 339; expedition on the mainland, 339-341; death, 340; explorations unknown to La Salle, 9. 121.
- South America, Columbus's speculations on, 2. 186-188, 198; early cartography, 349, 350, 354, 371, 381; extension of name America to whole of, 382; Portuguese attempts to circumnavigate, 401-407, 409, 412, 413; native groups, 3. 95, 96. *See also* America, Brazil, Peru.
- South Carolina, settlement, 5. 324; West governor, 335; early political troubles, 335, 337; relations with the Spanish, 336, 341-343, 357, 359, 390; executive union with North Carolina, 339; progress under Archdale and Blake, 340; triumph of the Dissenters, 341; assists North Carolina against the Tuscaroras, 354; Indian war, 356-358; overthrow of the proprietary, 358; social conditions, 361, 387-389, 394; character of settlers, 376, 8. 392; religious conditions, 5. 377, 12.

GENERAL INDEX

- 92; local government, 5. 378; education, 379; industries, 380-382, 424; slavery, 382-387; slave insurrection, 385; and the pirates, 421-425, 427-431; troops for campaign of 1759, 9. 343; state government, 10. 209; instructions on independence, 209; suffering during the Revolution, 236; conditions in 1779, 11. 199-201; offers to remain neutral, 207-209; overrun by British, 216; Clinton's allegiance proclamations, 217, 218; disorders, 219; strategic points, 220; partisan warfare, 220, 223, 235; paper money, 12. 201; influence in the Federal Convention, 308; contest over ratifying the Constitution, 397-400. *See also* Carolina, Charleston, Colonies, Cornwallis, Greene (Nathanael), and battles by name.
- South Georgia Island, discovered, 2. 332.
- South Shetland, discovered, 7. 65.
- Southampton, Earl of, interest in colonization, 4. 65; leads country party in London Company, 216, 237; elected treasurer, 239; imprisoned, 245; preserves copy of company's records, 260; death, 260.
- Southampton, L. I., settled, 7. 204.
- Southhold, L. I., added to New Haven, 6. 165; settled, 7. 204.
- Sovereignty, priority of state and national, 12. 107-109; under Articles of Confederation, 114-116.
- Spaniards, bring domestic animals to America, 1. 32; cruelty compared with Indian, 59 n., 3. 90; misconception of Indian society, 1. 111; Morgan's rules on their narratives, 143, 144; fairer criticism, 144-149; religious motive in explorations and conquests, 366, 2. 443, 3. 89, 291, 306, 308. *See also* Slavery (Indian), Spain.
- Spain, claim to Canary Islands, 1. 370; war of Castile with Portugal, 2. 56; war and surrender of Granada, 79, 96; papal grant of the Indies, 141; bull of demarcation, 142-148; treaty of Tor-desillas, 148; department of Indian affairs, 148-150; grants right of private voyages, 178; remonstrance against Cabot's voyage, 217; progress of discovery in America, 3. 29; controversy with Portugal over East Indies, 318; zenith of power, 388; cessation of colonial activity, 389, 7. 112; effect of Moorish war, 3. 390-392; religious persecutions, 393, 399-403, 4. 9, 6. 48, 7. 49, 8. 386-388; effect of destruction of Armada, 3. 394, 4. 46, 5. 440, 6. 72; seizes Portugal, 3. 395, 7. 57; rebellion and expulsion of the Moriscoes, 3. 396; effect of expulsion, 397; character of American colonies, 4. 6, 29; use and results of American wealth, 7-11; struggle with Elizabethan England, 11-13, 22-31, 39-44, 46, 51, 70, 5. 401-403; and the English colonies, 4. 70, 90, 228, 5. 315, 336, 341-343, 357, 359, 390, 392, 441; influence over James I., 4. 229-231, 233-235, 256; treaty of America, 5. 413; family alliance with France, 421; Moors in, 6. 12; quick development of despotism, 43; control in the Netherlands, 7. 32, 49, 50; relations with America, France, and England in 1779, 11. 161-166; war with England, 166; attempted invasion of England, 167; attitude toward rights of neutrals, 172, 173, 181, 182; and the peace of 1783, 12. 20,

GENERAL INDEX

- 22, 42; and the navigation of the Mississippi, 246-249. *See also* Spaniards.
- Spelman, Henry, rescued by Pochontas, 4. 199 n.
- Spencer, Joseph, American general, at siege of Boston, 10. 177.
- Spencer, Nicholas, suffers at Bacon's hands, 4. 93, 104.
- Spitzbergen, discovered, 3. 378, 7. 68.
- Sports. *See* Recreations.
- Spotswood, Alexander, governor of Virginia, and the assembly, 5. 354, 433-439, 442-445; ancestry and career, 432; character, 434; administrative energy, 434; prescience of colonial community of interests, 442; expedition to the Shenandoah valley, 449-452; on dangers from Canada, 452-454; quarrels with Blair and is removed, 454; postmaster-general, 455; last years, 455.
- Springfield, Mass., settled, 6. 154; attacked by Indians, 278, 294.
- Stadacona (Quebec), Cartier at, 9. 15-17, 20; destroyed, 42.
- Stamford, Conn., settled, 6. 165.
- Stamp Act, causes, 5. 354 n., 445-447, 8. 255, 257, 9. 243, 273, 281; recommended, 10. 13; declaratory resolves, 18; colonial objections, 19; passed, 20; reception in America, 21, 23, 26; Congress, 24; riots, 26-30; debate on repeal, 29-31; reception of repeal, 31.
- Standish, Miles, sails with Pilgrims, 6. 98; disperses Merrymount settlers, 111.
- Stark, John, ancestry, 5. 460; in Johnson's army, 9. 296; in American army, 10. 149; at Bunker Hill, 163; character, 175; slighted by Congress, 330; at Bennington, 330-333; brigadier-general, 334.
- Staten Island, N. Y., settled, 7. 199, 207, 8. 397; adjudged to New York, 43.
- States, loyalty to, 12. 74; early governments, 75-82; sovereignty, 107-109, 114-116; admission of new, 320; prohibitions under the Constitution, 323. *See also* Colonies, Union, United States, and states by name.
- Stephen, Adam, blunder at Germantown, 10. 377; cashiered, 378.
- Stephens, Samuel, governor of North Carolina, 5. 326.
- Steuben, Baron Friedrich von, career, 11. 59; sent to America, 60; reception, 61; settles, 62; trains the army, 62-64; inspector-general, 64; manual of tactics, 65; recognizes value of American light infantry, 65; and Lee at Monmouth, 78; tries André, 275; in Virginia, 301; at Yorktown, 340.
- Stevens, Edward, American general, at Camden, 11. 229-231.
- Stevenson, Marmaduke, Quaker, executed, 6. 238.
- Stewart, Lazarus, in Wyoming valley, 11. 106.
- Stirling, Earl of, grant of Long Island, 7. 291.
- Stirling, Lord. *See* Alexander (William).
- Stith, William, president of William and Mary College, *History of Virginia*, 5. 298.
- Stoddard, Solomon, and the Halfway Covenant, 9. 222.
- Stone, John, murdered by Pequots, 7. 175.
- Stone, William, governor of Maryland, 4. 361; welcomes Puritans, 365; and the Parliamentary commissioners, 369, 370; defeated and captured by the Puritans, 371.
- Stony Point, N. Y., British fortress, 11. 133; stormed by Americans, 134-136; evacuated, 137-139.

GENERAL INDEX

- Stormont, Lord, in coalition ministry, 12. 53.
- Stoughton, William, apothegm on settlers of New England, 6. 174 ; judge of the Salem witches, 9. 169.
- Strabo, on an encompassing ocean, 1. 341 ; unknown to mediæval Europe, 350 ; on the inhabitable world, 356 n. ; prophecy on America, 2. 44.
- Strachey, Henry, peace envoy, 12. 26.
- Strong, Caleb, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270.
- Stuart, Charles, British colonel, commands in South Carolina, 11. 319 ; at Eutaw Springs, 320 ; retreat to Charleston, 320.
- Stuyvesant, Peter, and Baltimore, 5. 162 ; director-general of New Netherland, 7. 225 ; arrival, 229 ; autocracy, 230, 233-237, 296 ; meaning of his name, 230 ; family, 231 ; character, 231, 275, 341 ; difficulties, 240 ; and Rensselaerwyck, 247-249 ; and the popular demands, 250, 251, 264, 296, 302, 310-313 ; mandamus, 251 ; religious persecutions, 269-275 ; expedition against New Sweden, 281 ; and Stirling's agent, 291 ; relations with Connecticut and New Haven, 292-301, 321, 326-328 ; and the English settlers, 297, 310, 313 ; accused of inciting the Indians against the English, 303-305 ; and the Indians, 316-318 ; and the surrender of New Amsterdam, 332-338 ; vindicated, 339 ; last years, 340.
- Suffolk County Resolves, 10. 127.
- Suffrage, in Virginia, 5. 77, 82, 116-118 ; negro, in Virginia, 232 ; in Maryland, 179, 198 ; in Massachusetts, 6. 132, 150, 213, 311, 323, 344, 9. 185, 197, 202 ; in Connecticut, 6. 155 ; in New Haven, 165, 187 ; Halfway Covenant, 314, 9. 200 ; under early state governments, 12. 82 ; negro, in New York, 88 ; in Northwest Territory, 232, 242.
- Sullivan, John, character, 10. 176 ; in Canada, 198 ; at Long Island, 243 ; captured, 244 ; exchanged, 254 ; at Brandywine, 367, 369 ; at Germantown, 374, 376 ; attack on Newport, 11. 91-96 ; expedition against Iroquois, 110-113.
- Sulpicians, expedition with La Salle, 9. 111-114.
- Sumter, Thomas, partisan commander, 11. 222 ; at Rocky Mount and Hanging Rock, 223 ; operations, 234 ; at Fishing Creek, 235 ; at Blackstock Hill, 299 ; takes Orangeburg, 318 ; opposes the Constitution, 12. 400.
- Sun worship in Peru, 3. 145-154.
- Susquehannocks, Huron-Iroquois Indians, 1. 53 ; annihilated by the Five Nations and Bacon, 5. 67, 89, 8. 192, 9. 49 ; raids in Virginia and Maryland, 5. 68, 71 ; envoys killed, 69-71 ; refuse to join the Five Nations, 9. 48 ;
- Sweden, in Armed Neutrality, 11. 182. *See also* New Sweden.
- Symes, Benjamin, school in Virginia, 5. 6, 287.
- Szokolny, John, Polish pilot, voyage in northern seas, 1. 292 n.
- Talavera, Fernando de, interest in Columbus, 2. 79, 95.
- Talbot, George, and the customs officer in Maryland, 5. 182-184.
- Talcott, John, exterminates Narragansetts, 6. 296.
- Tallegwi, identified with the Cherokee Indians, 1. 167.
- Tallmadge, Benjamin, connection with André's arrest, 2. 269, 274.

GENERAL INDEX

- Talon, Jean Baptiste, intendant of Canada, policy, 9. 102; recalled, 115.
- Tar, colonial production, 4. 144, 168, 5. 366.
- Tariff, protective, condemned, 5. 52, 58, 226, 12. 159-161, 312; state acts, 169; failure of impost amendment to Articles of Confederation, 258-261.
- Tarleton, Banastre, before Charleston, 11. 215; at Waxhaws, 216; at Camden, 231; at Fishing Creek, 235; at Blackstock Hill, 299; sent against Morgan, 303; at Cowpens, 304-306; raids in Virginia, 325, 327 n.
- Tarratine Indians, war, 6. 301.
- Tasmania, discovered, 7. 60.
- Taunton, Mass., and King Philip's War, 6. 270, 272, 297.
- Taxation, tribute to Aztec confederacy, 1. 119, 133; Peruvian, 3. 164; conditions in Virginia, 5. 42, 46, 60, 83, 117, 122, 226; and representation, 125, 6. 37, 127, 10. 19, 23; Virginia's governor asks permission of the burgesses to levy a tax, 5. 133; proprietary export duty in Maryland, 154; parliamentary charter right to tax in Maryland and Pennsylvania, 168, 8. 177; trouble over royal customs duties in Maryland, 5. 182, 184; church-rate in Maryland, 188, 190; attempted impost in South Carolina, 358; assessment of local, in South Carolina, 378; Virginia burgesses and the Post Office Act, 435; in New England Confederacy, 6. 190; in Massachusetts under Andros, 338; Kieft attempts to tax the Indians, 7. 207; excise in New Netherland, 221, 222, 233, 302; Stuyvesant's enforcement of the customs duties, 249; in reconquered New Netherland, 8. 35; custom house inspections, 86-88; trouble over customs duties in New York, 195, 196; heavy, in New York, 304; declaration of parliamentary right to tax colonies, 10. 31; parliamentary right of external taxation of colonies, 34; self-, only solution of colonial problem, 41; unpopular in the Revolution, 11. 238; control under Articles of Confederation, 12. 116; right to levy imposts refused to Congress, 124, 128. *See also* Stamp Act, Tea, Townshend Acts.
- Tea, introduction, 7. 59; tax in Townshend Acts, 10. 35; tax retained on principle, 71, 73, 91; scheme to enforce tax, 97-99; action in the colonies, 99, 108; reception and destruction of, in Boston, 100-110; effect in England, 110; attempt to repeal tax, 112; tax repealed, 11. 8.
- Tecpanecas, Mexican tribe, 3. 13.
- Telegraph, influence on the Union, 12. 71.
- Temple, Sir Thomas, English grant of Acadia, 9. 96.
- Tennent, Gilbert, revivalist, 9. 227.
- Tennessee, beginnings, 11. 123; effect of defeat of Cherokees, 125. *See also* Franklin (state of), Frontier, Territory.
- Tenochtitlan (Mexico City), significance of name, 3. 11. *See also* Mexico City.
- Ternay, Chevalier de, French naval officer, brings troops, 11. 244; blockaded, 246.
- Terrarossa, Italy, claim as birthplace of Columbus, 2. 17.
- Territory beyond the Alleghanies, state claims, 12. 222-226; cession of state claims to Northwest, 226-230; Jefferson's plan for government in 1784, 232-235; state of Franklin, 236-238; installation of national control confined to unsettled, 239; beginning of settlement in Northwest, 240;

GENERAL INDEX

- Indian claims extinguished, 241 ; Ordinance of 1787, 242-246 ; question of free navigation of the Mississippi, 246-250 ; threats of secession, 249 ; plans to improve intercourse with the East, 251 ; fear of, in Federal Convention, 303. *See also* Frontier.
- Tessouat, Ottawa chief, and Champlain, 9. 84.
- Tezcatlipoca, Aztec god of darkness, rival of Quetzalcoatl, 3. 24 ; human sacrifice to, 27, 66.
- Tezcucans, Mexican tribe, 1. 118, 3. 13 ; alliance with Cortes, 85.
- Thatch (Teach), Robert, pirate, exploits, 11. 427-429 ; death, 431.
- Thayendanegaa. *See* Brant.
- Theatre, in Williamsburg, 5. 282 ; in Charleston, 387 ; beginnings in Philadelphia, 8. 378.
- Theocracy. *See* Religion.
- Thomas, John, American general, at siege of Boston, 10. 177.
- Thompson, William, Puritan minister in Virginia, 4. 355-357.
- Thorbrand Snorrason, killed by Indians in Vinland, 1. 219, 235.
- Thorfinn Karlsefni, marries Gudrid, 1. 192 ; unsuccessful colony in Vinland, 192-194 ; descendants, 193 n.
- Thorhall Gamlason, called the Vinlander, 1. 190 n., 235 n. ; goes to Vinland, 192 n.
- Thorir, Arctic voyage, 1. 244 n.
- Thorkell Gellison, authority on Greenland and Vinland, 1. 237.
- Thorne, Robert, Bristol merchant, on Cabot's landfall, 2. 225 ; interest in Rut's voyage, 232.
- Thorpe, George, sent as rector of proposed college in Virginia, 4. 275.
- Thorstein Ericsson, unsuccessful voyage to Vinland, 1. 191.
- Thorvald Ericsson, in Vinland, 1. 191.
- Thorvard, evil deeds in Vinland, 1. 194-196.
- Throgmorton, John, settlement in New Netherland, 7. 211.
- Thule, use of term by ancient writers, 1. 351 ; Columbus on, 2. 57, 59.
- Thurlow, Lord, in North ministry, 10. 87 ; on coercion of colonies, 115 ; in Rockingham ministry, 12. 6.
- Ticonderoga, N. Y., meaning of name, 9. 68 ; site of Champlain's first Indian battle, 68, 70 ; Loudoun plans to attack, 307 ; Abercrombie's futile attack, 318-325 ; strategic value, 327, 10. 152 ; Amherst's expedition against, 9. 347 ; evacuated by the French, 348 ; captured by Americans, 10. 153-155 ; Arnold retreats to, 295 ; Burgoyne captures, 315-319.
- Tituba, servant of Parris, and the Salem witchcraft, 9. 159, 162, 163, 179, 192.
- Tlaxtecutli*, Aztec military executive, 1. 126. *See also* Chief-of-men.
- Tlacopans, Mexican tribe, 1. 118, 3. 14.
- Tlaloc, Mexican elemental deity, 3. 21, 22.
- Tlascala, Mexican pueblo, 1. 106, 108, 3. 17 ; fight with Cortes, 43-47 ; alliance with Cortes, 47, 84.
- Tobacco, first mention, 1. 118, 4. 205 ; diffusion, 205 ; introduction into Europe and opposition, 206-208 ; influence on Virginia society, 208, 271, 5. 202-205 ; Charles I. attempts to monopolize the trade, 4. 283-285 ; low price, 5. 3 ; as currency, 25, 59, 131, 190, 251-254 ; effect of the Navigation Acts, 59, 129, 202, 254 ; attempts to check production, 130, 178, 204 ; Plant-cutters' Riot,

GENERAL INDEX

- 130, 132; proprietary duty in Maryland, 154; wheat rivals it in Maryland, 314; cultivation in New Netherland, 7. 188.
- Todkill, Anas, Virginia colonist, on early conditions, 4. 137, 142, 159.
- Toledo, Francisco 'de, viceroy of Peru, and the^s Chirihuanas, 3. 158.
- Toleration. *See* Religion.
- Tollan (Tula), Mexico, and the Toltecs, 3. 6; early Aztec settlement, 9.
- Toltecs, traditional people of Mexico, 3. 5-11.
- Tonty, Henri de, La Salle's lieutenant, at Fort Crèvecœur, 3. 365, 9. 127; rejoins La Salle, 3. 367, 9. 130; at Fort St. Louis, 3. 368.
- Tories, Virginia clergy usually, 5. 307, 378, 12. 94; birth of party in Massachusetts, 6. 322, 9. 201; in New York, 8. 305. *See also* Loyalists.
- Toscanelli, Paolo del Pozzo dei, letters on westward route to the Indies, 2. 25-35, 38 n.-41 n.; sailing chart, 25, 28 n.; death, 33 n.; and origin of westward route, 36; on size of earth and of Asia, 49; and Vespuccius, 241 n.
- Town meetings. *See* Local self-government.
- Towns, lacking in Virginia and North Carolina, 5. 245, 367; attempts to force growth by legislation, 246.
- Townshend, Charles, first lord of trade, colonial knowledge and policy, 10. 17; chancellor of the exchequer, 33; character, 33, 44; measures to tax colonies, 34-36; responsible for the Revolution, 43; death, 44.
- Townshend, Thomas, in Shelburne ministry, 12. 19.
- Townshend Acts, 10. 34-36; real purpose, 36; resistance in the colonies, 54-59; partial repeal, 71-73, 87. *See also* Tea.
- Township, origin, 1. 112, 113 n.; in New England, 5. 37, 43; and the South Carolina parish, 378. *See also* Local self-government.
- Tracy, Marquis de, military commander in Canada, 9. 101.
- Trade, European, in 1000, 1. 300; routes between Europe and Asia, 302; effect of Saracen conquest, 310; importance of Constantinople, 311; effect of Crusades, 316; rivalry of Venice and Genoa, 316; European, at end of thirteenth century, 318; with Asia checked, 335, 336; need of new route to Asia, 337; modern^l slave, 372, 3. 250, 4. 18, 5. 221, 12. 87; Spanish regulation of Indian, 2. 150; Portuguese-East Indian, 191, 7. 55; joint stock companies, 2. 220, 4. 16, 7. 58; between the Netherlands and England, 4. 53, 7. 41; influence on English plans of colonization, 4. 53; attempt of Charles I. to monopolize tobacco, 283-285; Virginia law against forestalling, 292-294; colonial rivalry, 5. 4; conditions of Virginia, 239-241, 246; Virginia country store, 248; policy of restriction, 52, 11. 6, 12. 159-166; illegal New England-North Carolina, 5. 328-331; North Carolina, 366; South Carolina, 381, 424; piratical, 404, 421-425, 8. 260; with the Indians, 6. 254, 11. 117; geographical advantages of the mediæval Netherlands, 7. 14; and religion, 47, 9. 221; Dutch, in the East Indies, 7. 57-60; English, in the East Indies, 61; East Indian, and Arctic explorations, 63; Muscovy Company, 93; United New Netherland Company, 121, 124;

GENERAL INDEX

- monopoly of the Dutch West India Company, 129; patroon, in New Netherland, 156; between New Netherland and New England, 187; rivalry of England and the Netherlands, 288; New York, under Andros, 8. 52; New York in 1680, 105-107; Pennsylvania, 378; non-importation agreements, 10. 56, 88, 130; Parliament closes American ports, 132, 206; Congress opens them to the world, 206; cut off by the war, 11. 30; coasting, ruined, 146; failure of a treaty with England, 12. 31, 53; influence of the Revolution on restricted, 161; Pitt's free-trade bill, 162; West Indian, 162-164; America threatens reprisals, 166-168; conflicting state measures, 168-171; attempt to establish congressional control, 170; interstate war, 171-175; treaties with Holland and Prussia, 184; Barbary depredations, 188-192; distress in Rhode Island and Massachusetts, 204; Spanish treaty and the navigation of the Mississippi, 247-250; compromise on national control under the Constitution, 311-313, 316, 317; New England control under the Constitution feared, 312, 399, 401. *See also* Fur-trade, Navigation Laws, Travel.
- Transylvania. *See* Kentucky.
- Travel, colonial conditions, 5. 250, 276; conditions in 1783, 12. 71-73.
- Treason, extension to colonies of Henry VIII.'s statute, 10. 63, 70, 116, 140, 141; loyalists hanged for, 3. 69; rarity in America, 82. *See also* Arnold, Lee (Charles).
- Treat, Robert, relieves Northfield in King Philip's War, 6. 277; in attack on Narragansetts, 283; governor of Connecticut, 335.
- Treaties, Tordesillas, 2. 148; Utrecht, 5. 221, 9. 233; America, 5. 413; Verdun, 7. 10; Southampton, 138, 144; Münster, 283, 286; Hartford, 299; Breda, 8. 19; Westminster, 41; St. Germain-en-Laye, 9. 92; Aix-la-Chapelle, 258; trade, with Holland and Prussia, 12. 184; with Morocco, 191. *See also* Peace of 1783.
- Trenton, N. J., Hessians at, 10. 263; battle, 268-270; reception of Washington in 1789, 12. 418.
- Tribe, growth from clan, 1. 72; structure of Indian, 85; government of Mexican, 124.
- Trinidad Island, discovery, 2. 184.
- Trinity Church, New York, founded, 8. 302; lawsuits, 302.
- Trott, Nicholas, chief justice of South Carolina, 5. 359.
- Truman, Thomas, murders Susquehannock envoys, 5. 68-71.
- Trumbull, Jonathan, governor of Connecticut, on Howe's negotiations, 10. 239; "Brother Jonathan," 239 n.
- Tryon, William, governor of North Carolina, defeats Regulators, 10. 90; governor of New York, 90; plot against Washington, 224; raids in Connecticut, 303, 11. 133.
- Tucker, Josiah, doubts stability of United States, 12. 68.
- Tupac Amaru, last of the Incas, 3. 246.
- Tupac Yupanqui, Inca, conquests, 3. 127.
- Tupi-Guarani Indians, 3. 96.
- Turks, barbarians, 1. 312; character of conquests, 313; crusade against, 313, 315; effect of their conquest of Constantinople, 336.
- Turner, William, destroys the Nipmucks, 6. 245.
- Tuscaroras, Huron-Iroquois Indians,

GENERAL INDEX

- I. 53, 5. 349; join Iroquois confederacy, I. 56, 5. 355, 8. 288 n.; war in North Carolina, 5. 350-355.
- Tuzulutlan, province in Central America, character, 3. 292; Las Casas's peaceful conquest, 293-300; called Land of True Peace, 300.
- Twelve Men, Board of, in New Netherland, 7. 209-211.
- Twiller, Wouter van, director-general of New Netherland, character, 7. 166-168, 182, 189-191; and Elkens, 168-170; and the English in Connecticut valley, 173-181; land purchases, 188; charges against, 189, 191; recalled, 192.
- Uncas, Mohegan chief, in Pequot War, 6. 160; defeats Miantonomo, 205-209; disapproves of missionaries, 266.
- Underhill, John, an Antinomian, 6. 143; in Pequot War, 160; in New Netherland, 7. 217; destroys an Algonquin stronghold, 218; manifest against Stuyvesant, 305; confiscates Fort Good Hope, 307; later life, 307.
- Union, Iroquois confederation, I. 86-91, 9. 46; Mexican confederation, I. 118-121; colonial education for, 5. 126, 199, 439-447, 6. 345-347, 8. 255, 9. 278; Nicholson's plan, 5. 151; first American Congress, 441, 8. 228; Albany Congress and Plan, 5. 445, 9. 279-281, 10. 7-13; and liberty in Rome, 6. 14, 18; preserved by Catholic church, 20-22; advance through representation, 25; Greek federations, 26; Norman invasion strengthened nationality, 35; and liberty in the United States, 56; federal germs in Connecticut government, 155; New England Confederacy a league, 191; of colonies desired by James II., 334; by William III., 343, 8. 253; Penn's plan, 256; British plan for colonial, 10. 5; kind desired by colonies, 6; Stamp Act Congress, 24-26; importance of committees of correspondence, 96; Franklin's plan in 1775, 186; Virginia instructs for a confederation, 212; Lee's resolution for a confederation, 216; interstate jealousies, 286, 11. 37, 12. 73; political chaos during Revolution, 10. 184, 290, 11. 31, 237; Articles of Confederation, 11. 31, 12. 111-120; sentiment for, weakens, 11. 56, 12. 65-68; independence essential to, 11. 354; Washington urges a closer, 12. 63; social changes favouring, 105; sentiment for a distinct southern, 400. *See also* Continental Congress, Federal Convention, Local self-government, New England Confederacy, United States.
- Unitarianism as a gauge of liberalism, 9. 212; beginnings, 12. 103.
- United New Netherland Company, monopoly, 7. 121; continued prosperity without monopoly, 124; desires to colonize, 125.
- United States, real factor in estimating value of the discovery of America, 4. 6, 11-13; debt to Chatham, 11. 21; critical period, 12. 65; disbelief in its stability, 68, 167, 182; elements of success, 69; inventions that have influenced stability, 70; relation to the states, 107-109, 282-284, 318; supposed scheme for a monarchy, 127; foreign contempt, 183; effect of cession of state claims to western territory, 230; government compared with Great Britain, 343-355; conception of its government, 361; inauguration of

GENERAL INDEX

- the federal government, 414-417, 419. *See also* Continental Congress, Federal Convention, Independence, Union.
- Usselinx, William, urges Dutch colonization, 7. 116; and New Sweden, 275.
- Utic, John, and Harvey, 4. 348, 349.
- Valcour Island, Lake Champlain, battle, 10. 294.
- Valdivia, Pedro de, conquest of Chili, 3. 232.
- Valparaiso, Chili, founded, 3. 232.
- Van Berckel, E. F., magistrate of Amsterdam, and commercial treaty with United States, 11. 190.
- Vane, Henry, character, 6. 142; governor of Massachusetts, 142; Antinomian, 143; returns to England, 145; on religious liberty, 235, 8. 124
- Varennes. *See* La Vérendrye.
- Varnhagen, F. A. de, monographs on Vespucci, 2. 241 n.; refutes charges against Vespucci, 397.
- Vassall, William, in Presbyterian cabal, 6. 213-215.
- Vaudreuil, Philippe de, governor of Canada, policy, 9. 239, 241.
- Vaudreuil, Pierre François, Marquis de, governor of Canada, 9. 282; and Montcalm, 305.
- Vaughan, William, project to capture Louisburg, 9. 250; occupies the grand battery at Louisburg, 254.
- Vaz, Tristram, Portuguese navigator, at Madeira Islands, 1. 370.
- Vela, Blasco Nuñez, viceroy of Peru, and the New Laws, 3. 237; rebellion against, 238; killed, 238.
- Velasquez, Diego, governor of Cuba, 3. 29; engages in slave-catching, 30; and Cortes, 37, 38, 78.
- Venezuela, origin of name, 2. 262.
- Venice, instigates capture of Constantinople, 1. 315; trade rivalry with
- Genoa, 316, 327, 5. 402; prestige imperilled, 1. 336.
- Venn, Charles, on coercion of Boston, 10. 111.
- Ventadour, Duke of, viceroy of New France, 9. 89.
- Vera Cruz, Mexico, founded, 3. 38.
- Veragua, Columbus on coast, 2. 205; attempted settlement, 206, 207.
- Vergennes, Count de, on Bunker Hill, 10. 172; assists America secretly, 280; seeks Spanish aid for America, 11. 161; hostility to American interests, 164, 12. 20-25, 27; first peace demands, 14; and the separate negotiations, 39.
- Verhulst, William, director-general of New Netherland, 7. 139.
- Vermont, conflicting claims to, 10. 136, 12. 180-182; plays part in army intrigue, 10. 297, 298, 12. 179; forms state government, 179; attitude on Shays's Rebellion, 218.
- Verrazano, Giovanni da, voyage on coast of North America, 3. 324, 7. 70-78, 9. 9-12; early life, 7. 69, 9. 8; death, 7. 78, 9. 12; and Aubert, 4.
- Verrazano Sea, origin, 1. 326, 7. 71, 73, 9. 11; on maps, 1. 326, 356, 4. 72, 7. 72, 9. 11; influence, 4. 72, 7. 100, 9. 11, 24.
- Vespucci, Giovanni (Juan), as a navigator, 2. 243.
- Vespucci, Americus, different spellings of name, 2. 240 n.; birth and early years, 240; as an astronomer, 241; authorities, 241 n.; as a cartographer, 242; character, 243; in Spain, 243; connection with Berardi, 244, 309; relation with Columbus, 245, 408; letters to Medici and Soderini, 245-247; forged letters, 246 n., 320 n.; résumé of his voyages, 247-249; marriage, 249; pilot

GENERAL INDEX

major, 250; death, 250; character of letter to Soderini, 251-255, 406; capacity in earlier voyages, 252; his lost book, 255-257; Latin version of letter to Soderini, 257, 363-365; lost intermediate French version, 257, 363; original Italian text, 257-259, 362; important change in Latin text, 260-262; change in text leads to charge of attempting to supplant Columbus, 262, 387-395; refutation of charge, 263-271, 397, 389; popularity of letters, 270, 398 n.

First voyage: start, 2. 271; landfall, 272, 311; on Yucatan coast, 272; experiences in Mexico, 273-277; on Florida coast, 277; on Atlantic coast, 278; at the Bermudas, 280, 314 n.; enslaves Indians, 280; final port on Atlantic coast, 281, 313; contemporary allusions to, 282-293; influence on La Cosa map, 293-297, 306 n.; influence on Cantino map, 297-299, 306; actuality, 305-307, 321 n.; probable origin, 307-311; date of landfall, 311 n.; why not followed up, 315-318; possible influence on fourth voyage of Columbus, 318.

Second voyage: with Ojeda and La Cosa, 2. 319; start, 319; landfall, 319, 319 n.; on coast of Brazil, 319-321; on Pearl Coast, 321.

Third voyage: enters service of Portugal, 2. 325; start, 326; meets Cabral, 326; landfall in Brazil, 327; on coast of Brazil, 327-330; leaves coast near La Plata River, 330; discovers South Georgia Island, 332; return to Lisbon, 332; importance, 333-335; letter to Medici calling his discoveries a New World, 336-338; letter published under title

Mundus Novus, 339-344; early cartographical application of the term, 344-357; not considered a rival to Columbus, 358; this New World called America, 366-368; original application of name America, 371-382, 389 n.; gradual extension of name to whole hemisphere, 382-386; overshadows Columbus, 390.

Other voyages: fourth, 2. 401-407; returns to service of Spain, 407; fifth and sixth, 410, 411 n. Vestry, in Virginia, 5. 41-43, 82, 114-118; in South Carolina, 378.

Vice-president, election and duties, 12. 335, 359.

Vignau, Nicolas de, story of adventures, 9. 82; probable basis of truth, 83; sequel, 85.

Vikings, derivation of name, 1. 175 n.; exodus, 176; various destinations, 176; ship, 198-201; not pirates, 5. 397.

Villegagnon, Nicholas de, Huguenot colony in Brazil, 3. 342, 9. 33.

Villiers, Coulon de, at Fort Necessity, 9. 275.

Vincennes, Ind., during the Revolution, 11. 128.

Vinland, literature on, 1. 180 n.-182 n.; Leif Ericsson's discovery, 189; named, 190, 191 n.; Thorvald Ericsson in, 191; Thorfinn Karlsefni's unsuccessful colony, 192-194; expedition of Thorvard and Freydis, 194-196; narrative verisimilar, 196, 204-224, 245; location, 208-213; character of records on, 229-234, 239 n.; corroborative accounts, 234-245; narrative based on a historical saga, 246; absurd speculations, 247-250; no colony founded, 250-255; Horsford's views, 255 n.; Bishop Eric's search, 258; other voyages, 258; forgotten, 292; and Columbus, 2. 60-72, 96 n.,

GENERAL INDEX

104, 112; earliest association with America, 71, 3. 382.
 Viomenil, Baron de, at Yorktown, 11. 340.
 Viracocha, Peruvian sky-god, Spaniards called sons of, 3. 214.
 Viracocha, Inca, conquests, 3. 125.
 Virgil, on the torrid zone, 1. 354 n.; on shape of earth, 357, 358 n.
 Virginia, attempted Spanish settlement, 3. 321; named, 4. 37; first charter, 71-73, 75-77; first expedition and its instructions, 84-93; Spanish opposition, 90, 229; voyage of first colonists, 107; first councillors, 108; settlement, 109; relations established with the Powhatans, 110; first Indian attack, 112; number and character of first settlers, 113, 141-143, 145; suffering during the first summer, 113-115; internal troubles, 115-118, 132, 146, 178; arrival of the First Supply, 132; arrival of the Second Supply, 132; crowning of Powhatan, 133, 137; early value of the Indian alliance, 141; gold delusion, 143; early industries, 144, 168; Smith's answer to the company's complaints, 147-151; changed relations with the Powhatans, 153; 166; supplies coerced from the Indians, 154-165; communism, 166, 196; Smith's rule, 167; second charter, 169-171; autocratic local government, 171; Lord Delaware first governor, 172; arrival of the Third Supply, 177; anarchy and famine, 179-181; colony abandoned, but saved by Delaware's arrival, 181-183; debt to Smith, 185-187; sources of weakness, 188; recovery under Delaware's personal administration, 189-191; need of craftsmen, 191; Dale's laws, 194; communism abolished, 197; outgrows Jamestown, 197; beginning and effect of tobacco culture,

208, 227, 271, 5. 202-205, 244, 251-254; third charter, 4. 209; Argall's misrule, 215, 218; Yeardley governor, 218, 284; population at various periods, 219, 297, 5. 7, 27, 222; establishment of representation, 4. 219-221; first negro slaves, 221; importation of marriageable women, 222; Indian massacres, 223, 357; review of the founding, 225-228; royal province, 258; extent in 1624, 262-265; influence of the rivers, 263, 5. 239; legislature, 4. 265-268, 285-288, 5. 82 n.; conditions in 1624, 4. 268-275; James I.'s intentions, 278; effect of overthrow of the company, 279-283; relations with Charles I., 283-285, 294; early popular legislation, 4. 288-294; "kingdom," 294, 5. 25; governors from Yeardley to Berkeley, 4. 295-297; reception of Baltimore, 308-310; relations with Maryland, 335, 337-341, 345, 373, 5. 152; Harvey deposed, 4. 343-350; Puritans in, 353-357, 365; loyalty to Charles II., 366, 5. 24; submits to the Commonwealth, 4. 367-369, 5. 21-23; conditions in 1649, 1-7; geographical names, 7-9; extent and influence of the Cavalier immigration, 18-21, 27-29, 33, 112-118; Berkeley elected governor, 23; resumption of royal control, 25; seal, 26; reasons for social difference from New England, 34; local government, 40-51, 114-118; prolific in leaders, 51; influence of the Navigation Acts, 54-60, 129, 202; discontent, 60; Arlington-Culpeper grant, 61-63; corruption in the government, 65; Long Assembly, 66; Indian war, 67-74, 76, 83-86, 88, 95; beginning of Bacon's Rebellion, 76-81, 87-89; Bacon's Laws, 81-

GENERAL INDEX

83; Bacon's plans and manifesto, 89-100, 124; Bacon's capture and destruction of Jamestown, 101-103; his reprisals on the aristocrats, 103-105; his death, 106; collapse of the rebellion, 107; royal commissioners in, 107; Berkeley's barbarity, 107-110; his removal, 110; causes and aspects of the rebellion, 111-125; education for union, 126, 6. 345; assembly and governor, 5. 127, 132-134, 433-439, 442-445; Culpeper governor, 128, 131; Plant-cutters' Riot, 129-131; Howard governor, 132, 134; Nicholson's administrations, 134, 140-144; William and Mary College, 135-137, 144-150; Andros deputy-governor, 137; Andros and Blair, 138, 139; Williamsburg the capital, 141; white servitude, 205-220, 289; slavery, 220-237, 12. 85-87, 313; classes, 5. 237; nationality of tidewater settlers, 237-239; exports and imports, 240; industries, 241-244; absence of town life, 245-248; typical country store, 248; travel, 250, 276; extravagance and hospitality, 254-256; plantation life, 256-274; food and drink, 266-268; dress, 274; weddings and funerals, 275; recreations, 276-283; culture and education, 283-297; literature, 297-302; science, 302, medicine, 303-305; religion, 305-308, 12. 93-98; crime and punishment, 5. 308-310; lawyers and law-abiding, 311; aid in suppressing the Tuscaroras, 353, 442-445; Spotswood governor, 432, 434; early resistance of a parliamentary tax, 435-438; not represented in Leisler's congress, 441; early attempts to cross the Blue Ridge, 448; Spotswood's expedition, 449-454; Spotswood

and Blair, 454; Gooch's and Dinwiddie's administrations, 455; influence of the Scotch-Irish immigration, 461-463, 465; first contact with the French settlements, 465-467; early loose application of name, 6. 90; disastrous attempt of Puritan colony, 95; assembly impedes Dinwiddie's war measures, 9. 272, 277; troops in Braddock's expedition, 287; troops for campaign of 1759, 343; Parsons' Cause, 10. 21-23; Stamp Act resolutions, 23; resolutions of 1769, 75; attempt to cajole, 75; establishes intercolonial committees of correspondence, 95; Dunmore attempts to enlist slaves, 210; burning of Norfolk, 211; instructs delegates to propose independence, 212; new government, 213; interest in the frontier, 11. 117; conquest and claim to western territory, 128, 12. 21, 225; British marauding expedition, 11. 132; Arnold's expedition, 301, 323; campaign of Lafayette and Cornwallis, 323-328; Yorktown campaign, 330-342; paper money, 12. 202; cedes northwestern claims, 229, 231; why Kentucky was not ceded, 239; sentiment for a separate southern confederation, 400; contest over ratifying the Constitution, 401-404; importance of its ratification, 405. *See also* Colonies, London Company. Virginia Company. *See* London Company. Voltaire, on the Crusades, 1. 316 n.; on English people, 5. 17; on Pennsylvania, 8. 115, 186 n.; influence, 10. 280. Voyages, Madoc's legendary, 1. 49; Chinese, to Fusang, 171; legendary Irish, 172; legendary Japanese, 173; Jean Cousin's, 173;

GENERAL INDEX

- Gunnbjörn's, to Greenland, 181; Eric the Red's, to Greenland, 182; Leif Ericsson's, to Vinland, 188-191; of other Northmen to Vinland, 191-196, 238, 258; of Northmen to Baffin's Bay, 198; Thorir's Arctic, 244 n.; Zeno, 263-267; to Estotiland and Dro-gio, 281-285; unrecorded pre-Columbian, 291; barrenness of pre-Columbian, 292-296; first European, around Indo-China, 326; ancient, on African coast, 342-348; physical obstacles to ocean, 359-363; to the Azores, 369; Portuguese, on African coast, 370-375, 381-383; Columbus's first, 2. 103-126; Columbus's second, 153-155, 158-169, 176; Columbus's third, 180-189; Gama's, 191; Columbus's fourth, 200-208; John Jay's search for island of Brazil, 215; Cabots', 217-231, 4. 13; Rut's, 3. 231; Cortereals', 234; northern and southern compared, 238; Vespucci's first, 247, 271-280; second, 248, 319-321; third, 248, 326-333; fourth, 249, 401-407; Ocampo's, 264; of Pinzon and Solis to Honduras, 283-293, 310, 321 n.; table of Spanish and Portuguese, 284; Pinzon's first, to South America, 321; Lepe's, 322; of Niño and Guerra, 322 n.; of Bastidas, 322 n.; Cabral's, 323; casual sequence of, from Columbus to Magellan, 399-401; of Jaques, 401; Coelho's, 401-406; Vespucci's fifth and sixth, with La Cosa, 410; of Pinzon and Solis to South America, 412; Solis's last, 413; Portuguese, in East Indies, 418; Magellan's, 428-449; Córdova's, 3. 30-33; Grijalva's, 34; Cortes's, 37; Espinosa's, 202; Gonzalez's, 204; Ponce de Leon's, 315; Pineda's, 316; Ayllon's, 321; Gomez's, 322, 7. 79; Verrazano's, 3. 324, 7. 70-77, 9. 9-11; Cartier's, 3. 325, 9. 13-24, 31; Drake's, 3. 377, 4. 30-32; Frobisher's, 3. 378; Davis's, 378; Barentz's, 378; Hudson's, 379, 7. 96-109; Baffin's, 3. 381; Bering's, 384; of Gilbert and Raleigh, 4. 33; of Amidas and Barlow, 37; of Cavendish, 39; Gosnold's, 65, 6. 91; Pring's, 4. 65; Bartholomew Gilbert's, 65; Weymouth's, 65, 6. 91; Arctic, 7. 63, 96, 100; Antarctic, 65; alleged, of Aubert and Denys, 68, 9. 4-6; Allens-son's, 7. 79, 9. 24-29; Roche's, 35; Champlain's, 42, 52-55. *See also* Expeditions.
- Vries, David Pieters de, at Zwaan-endaal, 7. 160; and Eelkens, 169; settlement on Staten Isl-land, 199; Vriesendaal, 208; heads the Twelve Men, 209; and the Indians, 213-216; leaves for Holland, 217; and Printz, 280.
- Wabenaki Indians, 1. 52. *See also* Abenaki.
- Wadsworth, Joseph, hides Con-necticut's charter, 6. 335; and Fletcher, 8. 254.
- Wadsworth, Samuel, in King Phil-ip's War, 6. 290; ambushed and killed, 294.
- Wafer, Lionel, buccaneer, 5. 418.
- Waldenses, emigration to America, 5. 238, 8. 397.
- Waldseemüller, Martin (Hylaco-mylus), *Tabula Terre Novæ*, 2. 299-301, 371; at Saint-Dié, 362; plan for a Ptolemy, 363; *Cosmographie Introductio*, 364, 365; names the New World America, 366-368; publishes the Ptolemy, 370; extent of his ap-plication of name America, 371-374.

GENERAL INDEX

- Walker, Sir Hovenden, fruitless attempt against Canada, 8. 283.
- Wall Street, New York City, origin, 7. 301.
- Walloons, meaning of the word, 7. 136; in New Netherland, 136, 8. 397.
- Walpole, Sir Robert, British prime minister, colonial policy, 10. 5; principles of control, 45.
- Wampum, as currency, 6. 318, 7. 202; Long Island the chief source, 203.
- Ward, Artemas, commander of American army before Boston, 10. 160.
- Warfare, Indian, 1. 58-61, 219-221, 9. 283; maritime, in sixteenth century, 5. 400-403; part played in nation-making, 6. 11, 24-26; truculence of war with savages, 162, 288; increased humanity, 286-288, 11. 136 n.; character of border, 9. 240; former popularity of convergent movements, 343, 10. 195, 308, 311; Massachusetts militia familiar with, 10. 129; change in mode, 170; strategic value of the capital, 355; value of flanking movements, 367, 368. *See also* Neutrality.
- Warner, Augustine, suffers at Bacon's hands, 5. 104; speaker of the House of Burgesses, 117.
- Warner, Seth, captures Crown Point, 10. 154; at Hubbardton, 317.
- Warren, Joseph, character, 10. 126; takes lead in preparing for war, 126, 129; drafts Suffolk County Resolves, 127; address at Boston Massacre commemoration, 139; president of Massachusetts provincial congress, 160; volunteers at Bunker Hill, 164; killed there, 168.
- Warren, Peter, and the attack on Louisburg, 9. 252, 256.
- Warwick, Earl of, leads faction in London Company, 4. 215, 217, 243; head of Board of Commissioners, 6. 190.
- Warwick, R. I., Gorton's settlement, 6. 212. *See also* Shawomet.
- Washington, Augustine, education, 5. 288, 290.
- Washington, George, on Dighton rock inscription, 1. 247 n.; pedigree, 4. 82, 5. 29-32; life at Mount Vernon, 273; diversions, 278; education, 288; last illness, 304; and Fairfax, 464; mission to the French in Ohio valley, 467, 9. 270, 271; driven from site of Fort Duquesne, 272; advance against Fort Duquesne, 273; surprises Jumonville, 274; question of perfidy, 274; at Fort Necessity, 275; surrender and retreat, 276; at Braddock's defeat, 291, 292; with Forbes, 337.
- During the Revolution: slow growth of desire for independence, 10. 64; drafts resolutions on non-importation, 76; offers to raise troops to relieve Boston, 122; in Congress, 130, 155; appointed commander-in-chief of American army, 157; character, military reputation, and influence, 157-159, 240, 247, 277, 359, 375, 379, 11. 56, 398, 12. 64; accepts, 10. 159; on Bunker Hill, 172; takes command, 173; task of army organization, 182-184, 187, 199, 283-289, 11. 31-33, 241; compels British to evacuate Boston, 10. 200-202; moves army to New York, 222; preparation to defend New York City, 223, 240-242; plot against, 224; repulses Howe's unofficial negotiations, 237; retreat from Long Island, 246-248; evacuates New York City, 251; abandons Manhattan Island, 254; orders respecting Fort Washington dis-

GENERAL INDEX

obeyed, 255-258; and Greene, 259, *II.* 300; Lee refuses to reinforce, *IO.* 259, 261; Lee intrigues against, 262, 265; retreat across New Jersey, 262; attack on Trenton, 268-270; eludes Cornwallis, 271-273; regains New Jersey, 274; results of New Jersey campaign, 275; counters Howe's allegiance proclamation, 276; Cornwallis on, 278; raises money for his troops, 286; dictatorial powers, 289, 371; confidence in Arnold, 296, *II.* 260; threatens reprisals for Lee, *IO.* 351; foils Howe's plan to cross New Jersey, 358; uncertain of Howe's movements, 360, 362; offers battle at Brandywine, 366; skilful manœuvres after Brandywine, 371; plan of attack at Germantown, 373, 374-376; on Valley Forge, *II.* 34; rebukes Gates, 39; unfavourably contrasted with Gates, 40; Conway Cabal against, 40-55; forged letters, 50; pursues Clinton, 69; plans battle of Monmouth, 72-74; and Lee at Monmouth, 76, 77 n.; correspondence with Lee, 81; Lee's Parthian shot, 87; on employment of Indians, 138 n.; on arming negroes, 207; on paper money, 239; levies contributions, 240; and Arnold's treason, 269-273; on justice of André's condemnation, 275; and the attempt to secure Arnold, 277 n.; suppresses mutiny, 291; conference with Rochambeau on combined attack, 328; Yorktown campaign, 330-342; returns to the Hudson, *II.* 60; farewell to his officers, 61; resigns his command, 62; and the half-pay measures, 126, 132; scheme to make him king, 127; and the Newburgh address, 130-132; president of the Cincinnati, 132.

After the Revolution: in retirement, *II.* 62; circular letter on the needs of the country, 64; on need of a stronger union, *II.* 118, 192; belief in future greatness of United States, 250; interest in improvement of intercourse with the West, 251-253; suggests an interstate commission, 253; member of the Federal Convention, 261; president of the convention, 271; appeal to the convention, 275; urges ratification of the Constitution, 394; elected president, 415; progress to New York, 417-419; inauguration, 419.

Washington, Henry, royalist commander at Worcester, *5.* 30, 464.

Washington, John, great-grandfather of George, emigration to Virginia, *5.* 30, 68; and the Susquehannock envoys, 69-71, 80 n.; suffers at Bacon's hands, 104.

Washington, Lawrence, brother of John, emigration to America, *5.* 69.

Washington, Lawrence, of Sulgrave, ancestor of George, *4.* 82, *5.* 29.

Washington, Lawrence, brother of George, education, *5.* 288, 290; in Cartagena expedition, 455 n.

Washington, Martha, life at Mount Vernon, *5.* 273.

Washington, William, American cavalry colonel, with southern army, *II.* 302, 303; at Cowpens, 305, 306; at Guilford, 310, 311.

Watauga River, Tenn., battle, *II.* 124, 125.

Watertown, Mass., demands civil rights, *6.* 127, 151; emigration to Connecticut, 154.

Watson, Elkanah, journey, *5.* 251.

Watson, George, mandamus councillor, resigns, *IO.* 125.

Watts, Stephen, loyalist major at Oriskany, *IO.* 338.

GENERAL INDEX

- Waxhaws, N. C., battle, **II**. 216.
- Wayne, Anthony, at Brandywine, **IO**. 366, 370; defeated by Grey, 372; at Germantown, 377; "Mad Anthony," **II**. 134; storms Stony Point, 134-136; and his mutinous troops, 289; in Georgia, 348.
- Webb, Daniel, with Loudoun, **9**. 306; tardy reinforcement for Oswego, 308; at Fort Edward, 312.
- Webster, Daniel, on Ordinance of 1787, **12**. 244.
- Webster, James, British colonel, at Camden, **II**. 231.
- Webster, Pelatiah, on evils of paper money, **II**. 237-239.
- Weems, Mason, question of his ordination, **12**. 98; as an author, 99 n.
- Wentworth, John, royal governor of New Hampshire, popular, **IO**. 184.
- Werowocomoco, Va., chief village of the Powhatans, **4**. 110.
- Wessagusset, Mass., settlement, **6**. 109.
- West, Francis, helps Smith coerce the Powhatans, **4**. 155, 164; governor of Virginia, 295.
- West, John, acting governor of Virginia, **4**. 348.
- West, Joseph, governor of South Carolina, **5**. 325, 335.
- West. *See* Frontier, Territory.
- West Indies, trade with Virginia, **5**. 246; chronic hostilities and buccaneering in, 403-406, 421, 425-427; French conquests, **II**. 167; British capture St. Eustatius, 194; British disasters, 346; Rodney's victory, 346, **12**. 16; United States trade, 162-164. *See also* the islands by name.
- West Jersey. *See* New Jersey.
- West Point, N. Y., American fortifications, **IO**. 256, **II**. 133; importance, 259. *See also* Arnold.
- Westbrook, Thomas, expedition against Maine Indians, **9**. 243.
- Weston, Thomas, settlement at Wessagusset, **6**. 109.
- Wethersfield, Conn., settlers from Massachusetts, **6**. 152, 154; Indian attack, 159.
- Weymouth, George, on New England coast, **4**. 65, **6**. 91; lauds New England, 91.
- Whale fishery, Hudson's voyage gives impulse to, **7**. 101.
- Whalley, Edward, regicide, in New England, **6**. 245-247.
- Wheat culture in Pennsylvania and Maryland, **5**. 313.
- Wheelwright, John, ally of Anne Hutchinson, **6**. 143.
- Whitaker, Rev. Alexander, apostle of Virginia, on Dale, **4**. 195; Puritan, 353; death, 354.
- Whitbourne, Richard, on Newfoundland, **4**. 306.
- White, Andrew, Jesuit, in Maryland, **4**. 321, 360.
- White, John, plans Puritan refuge in America, **6**. 113.
- White, John, governor of Raleigh's colony, **4**. 41; returns to England, 41; attempts to succour the colony, 44-46.
- White Plains, N. Y., American base, **IO**. 254, **II**. 88; battle, **IO**. 255.
- "White trash." *See* Poor whites.
- Whitefield, George, revival in New England, **9**. 226; second visit to New England, 229; motto for Louisburg expedition, 252; in America, **12**. 101.
- Wicker, Lambert, American naval officer, **II**. 147.
- Wilkinson, James, aid to Gates, **IO**. 264; tattles, **II**. 45; challenges Gates, 50.
- Willard, Samuel, pastor of Old South Church, **6**. 337; head of Harvard College, 337 n., **9**. 209; accused of witchcraft, 184; non-

GENERAL INDEX

- resident vice-president of Harvard, 208.
- Willard, Simon, relieves Brookfield, 6. 274.
- Willett, Marinus, sortie from Fort Stanwix, 10. 341; first hoists stars and stripes, 341.
- William III. of Netherlands and England, colonial policy, 5. 137, 151, 188, 6. 340, 342-344, 8. 208, 219, 253; proclaimed in the colonies, 5. 186, 187, 6. 341, 8. 219; character, 6. 342; birth, 7. 287; stadholder, 290; landing in England, 8. 208; and Penn., 354, 363.
- William and Mary College, founded, ii. 135-137; Andros's hostility, 138; site, 141; growth, 144; Indian students, 144; first commencement, 145; student life, 145-148; a tradition, 148; influence, 150, 295.
- Williams, James, partisan commander, 11. 221; operations, 235; at King's Mountain, 295, 297; killed, 298.
- Williams, Roger, character, 6. 139; on religious liberty, 139, 203, 224, 235, 356; political bearings of doctrines, 139, 140, 189; on Indian rights, 140; exiled, 141; settles Providence, 141; prevents alliance of Pequots and Narragansetts, 159; obtains charter for Rhode Island, 190; appeal against Massachusetts, 235; dislike of Quakers, 236.
- Williamsburg, Va., founded as the capital, 5. 141; conditions, 245, 282.
- Williamson, Andrew, defeats Cherokees, 11. 124.
- Willoughby, Sir Hugh, voyage and death, 4. 16, 7. 63.
- Wilmington, N. C., size in 1776, 5. 367.
- Wilson, James, opposes independence, 10. 214, 216; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 270; on equal state representation, 295; anti-federal derision, 375; in the Pennsylvania ratifying convention, 376.
- Wilson, John, bigotry, 6. 222, 239.
- Windsor, Conn., Puritan fort, 6. 149; settlers from Massachusetts, 152, 154.
- Wingfield, Edward Maria, in London Company, 4. 77; quarrel with Smith, 107, 115; councillor in Virginia, 108; president, 109; *Discourse of Virginia*, 116; dissatisfaction with his rule, 116; deposed, 117; fined for defaming Smith, 117; returns to England, 138.
- Winnebago Indians, 1. 48, 9. 99; mound-builders, 1. 168.
- Winslow, Edward, Massachusetts agent in England, 6. 193, 215; defence of New England Confederacy, 193; *New England's Salamander discovered*, 215.
- Winslow, Josiah, on treatment of Indians, 6. 253; leads attack on Narragansetts, 281.
- Winthrop, John, governor of Massachusetts, 6. 124, 145; character, 124, 125, 225; on Antinomianism, 144; on limited suffrage, 151; on parliamentary control of colonies, 212, 213; death, 225; on witchcraft, 9. 145.
- Winthrop, John (younger), builds Saybrook fort, 6. 150, 7. 176; character, 6. 236, 248; deplors execution of Quakers, 239 n.; governor of Connecticut, secures a charter, 248, 249, 7. 320; in New Netherland, 334.
- Wise, John, pastor of Ipswich, punished for protesting Andros's tyranny, 6. 338; character, 338, 339; *Vindication of New England Churches*, 339.
- Witchcraft, condemnation for, in

GENERAL INDEX

- Normandy, 9. 133; universal belief, 134-137; bibliography, 135 n., 152 n.; rise of scepticism, 137; specimen English trial, 138-140; epidemic of condemnations, 140-143, 205; papal bull against, 141; text-book, 142; James I.'s treatise, 142; Witch Act in England, 143; last trials, 143; comparatively few cases in America, 144; early trials in Massachusetts, 145-148; the Goodwin case, 148, 152-155. *See also* Salem Village.
- Wolfe, James, arrives in America, 9. 317; effects a landing at Louisburg, 330; credit for capture of Louisburg, 332; sent against Quebec, 344; problems, 351; illness, 352; project to get above the city, 352; preparations, 354; ascent to Plains of Abraham, 355; battle, 356; death, 357.
- Wollaston, Captain, settlement in Quincy, 6. 110.
- Wolley, James, on New York climate, 71. 101; on the clerical feud, 102.
- Wonder-working Providence*, epitome of Puritan philosophy, 6. 305-307.
- Wooster, David, American general, at siege of Boston, 10. 177.
- Worcester, Mass., destroyed by Indians, 6. 294; defies Regulating Act, 10. 125, 127.
- Wormeley, Ralph, library, 5. 283.
- Wright, Sir James, royal governor of Georgia, reinstated, 11. 205.
- Writs of assistance, episode in Massachusetts, 10. 14; legalized, 36.
- Wyandots, remnant of Huron Indians, 1. 56 n., 9. 263; squaw council, 1. 83 n.; clans common with Iroquois, 88.
- Wyatt, Sir Francis, governor of Virginia, 4. 283, 284, 297, 350.
- Wyclif, John, doctrines, 6. 50; translates and circulates Bible, 50; security, 50. *See also* Lollards.
- Wyoming valley, Penn., history of settlement, 10. 105-107; massacre, 107-109; war on the Connecticut settlers, 12. 175-179.
- Wythe, George, professorship at William and Mary, 5. 150; member of the Federal Convention, 12. 271.
- Ximenes, Francisco, and Indian slavery, 3. 277.
- Xocotlan, Mexico, reception of Cortes, 3. 43.
- Yale, Elihu, endows Yale College, 9. 219.
- Yale College, conservatism, 9. 213, 218; founded, 218.
- Yamassee Indians, friendly with the English, 5. 356; war on South Carolina, 357, 390.
- Yates, Robert, member of the Federal Convention, 12. 267; quits, 301; opposes the Constitution, 408.
- Yeamans, Sir John, establishes Clarendon colony, 5. 324; governor of Carolina, brings first negro slaves, 325.
- Yeadley, Sir George, deputy governor of Virginia, 4. 202, 204; governor of Virginia and knighted, 218, 283, 284; death, 295.
- Yonkers, N. Y., origin of the name, 7. 246.
- York, James, Duke of, grant, 5. 166, 7. 330, 8. 41; laws for New York, 3; grant to Carteret and Berkeley, 12, 42; on the demand for representation in New York, 49-51; and the Jesuits, 61; cedes the government of New Jersey, 113, 170; unpopularity, 169; grants representation to New York, 197; becomes king, 199. *See also* James II.

GENERAL INDEX

- Yorktown, Va., Cornwallis at, **II.**
 328; elements in the campaign,
 328-334; Grasse defeats British
 fleet, 336; Cornwallis surrounded,
 336, 337; arrival of Washington's
 army, 337; Clinton's counter-
 stroke, 338; investment and sur-
 render, 340; Clinton's attempted
 relief, 341; credit of the cam-
 paign, 341; effect, 343, 344.
- Yucatan, Vespucius on coast, **2.**
 272; Córdova's expedition, **3.**
 32; Grijalva's expedition, **34.**
 275; on St. Olaus monastery,
 276, 280 n.; on Estotiland and
 Drogio, 281-287.
- Zeno, Carlo, brother of Nicolò, ser-
 vices to Venice, **I.** 263; letters
 from Antonio, 267.
- Zeno, Nicolò, called the Chevalier,
I. 263; wrecked on Færoe
 Islands, 263; aids Sinclair, 264;
 visits Greenland, 265; death,
 265.
- Zeno, Nicolò, the younger, tears up
 Zeno narrative, **I.** 267; pub-
 lishes remains and maps, 268; at-
 tempts emendations, 268-272;
 denounced, 272; veracity, 286,
 287, 290.
- Zones, ancient theory of the five,
I. 351-356; disproved by Portu-
 guese voyages, 376; Columbus's
 treatise, **2.** 56; of settlement in
 United States, **4.** 73-75.
- Zuñi, Cushing at, **I.** 100; popula-
 tion, 104; pueblo, 106, 109;
 Coronado at, 106, **3.** 338; and
 legend of the Seven Cities, 332;
 Fray Marcos's journey to, 333-
 337; tradition of Estevánico's
 visit, 337.
- Zuñiga, Don Pedro de, Spanish
 ambassador at London, reports on
 English colonizing plans, **4.** 70,
 210, 229.
- Zuñis, Pueblo Indians, culture sta-
 tus, **I.** 36; character, **3.** 337 n.;
 illustration of reasoning limited by
 experience, **6.** 264.
- Zarco, Gonsalvez, at Madeira
 Islands, **I.** 370.
- Zenger, J. P., character of his
 newspaper, **8.** 290; arrested and
 held on information for libel, 291;
 counsel disbarred, 292; Hamilton
 defends, 292; the alleged libel,
 293; question of evidence of truth
 of libel, 295; Hamilton's speech,
 296-299; acquittal, 299.
- Zeno, Antonio, brother of Nicolò,
 joins Nicolò in Færoe Islands, **I.**
 264; voyage of discovery, 265,
 285; lands visited, 266; death,
 267; letters to his brother Carlo
 and other papers, 267; narrative
 based on remains of these docu-
 ments, 268; emendations in the
 map, 268-272; narrative de-
 nounced, 272; sets up no claim to
 discovery of America, 273; veri-
 similitude, 274-280, 290; com-
 pared with Bardsen's description,

THE END

OCT 19 1917

BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY



3 9999 09877 458 9

